Global existence of small amplitude solutions for a model quadratic quasi-linear coupled wave-Klein-Gordon system in two space dimension, with mildly decaying Cauchy data

A. Stingo
Université Paris 13,
Sorbonne Paris Cité, LAGA, CNRS (UMR 7539),
99, Avenue J.-B. Clément,
F-93430 Villetaneuse
2018

Abstract

The aim of this paper is to study the global existence of solutions to a coupled wave-Klein-Gordon system in space dimension two when initial data are small, smooth and mildly decaying at infinity. Some physical models strictly related to general relativity have shown the importance of studying such systems, but very few results are known at present in low space dimension. We study here a model two-dimensional system, in which the non-linearity writes in terms of “null forms”, and show the global existence of small solutions. Our goal is to prove some energy estimates on the solution when a certain number of Klainerman vector fields is acting on it, and some optimal uniform estimates. The former ones are obtained using systematically quasi-linear normal forms, in their para-differential version; the latter ones are recovered by deducing a new coupled system of a transport equation and an ordinary differential equation from the starting PDE system, by means of a semi-classical micro-local analysis of the problem. We expect the strategy developed here to be robust enough to enable us, in the future, to treat the case of the most general non-linearities.

The author is supported by a PhD fellowship funded by the FSMP and the Labex MME-DII, and by For Women in Science fellowship funded by Fondation L’Oréal-UNESCO.

Keywords: Global solution of coupled wave-Klein-Gordon systems, Klainerman vector fields, Semiclassical Analysis.
## Contents

### Introduction

1 Main Theorem and Preliminary Results

1.1 Statement of the main theorem ........................................... 11
1.2 Preliminary Results ..................................................... 14
   1.2.1 Paradifferential calculus ........................................ 15
   1.2.2 Semi-classical pseudodifferential calculus ...................... 19
   1.2.3 Semi-classical Operators for the Wave Solution: Some Estimates 22
   1.2.4 Operators for the Klein-Gordon solution: some estimates ........ 42

2 Energy Estimates

2.1 Paralinearization and Symmetrization ................................. 50
   2.1.1 Paralinearization ............................................ 50
   2.1.2 Estimates of quadratic terms ................................ 54
   2.1.3 Symmetrization ............................................. 63
2.2 Normal forms and energy estimates .................................... 66
   2.2.1 A first normal forms transformation and the energy inequality 66
   2.2.2 A second normal forms transformation. .......................... 75
   2.2.3 Propagation of the energy estimate ............................. 92

3 Uniform Estimates

3.1 Semilinear normal forms .............................................. 97
   3.1.1 Normal forms for the Klein-Gordon equation .................. 97
   3.1.2 Normal forms for the wave equation .......................... 100
3.2 From PDEs to ODEs .................................................. 102
   3.2.1 Derivation of the ODE and propagation of the uniform estimate on the Klein-Gordon component ...................... 105
   3.2.2 The derivation of the transport equation ...................... 114
3.3 Analysis of the transport equation and end of the proof ........... 130
   3.3.1 The inhomogeneous transport equation ....................... 130
3.3.2 Propagation of the uniform estimate on the wave component ........................................ 136
3.3.3 Proof of the main theorems ......................................................................................... 140

A Appendix A ...................................................................................................................... 143

B Appendix B ...................................................................................................................... 157
  B.1 Some preliminary lemmas ........................................................................................... 157
  B.2 First range of estimates ............................................................................................... 167
  B.3 Last range of estimates ............................................................................................... 188
  B.4 The sharp decay estimate of the Klein-Gordon solution with a Klainerman vector field ................................................................. 201

Index .................................................................................................................................. 227
Introduction

The result we present in this paper concerns the global existence of solutions to a quadratic quasi-linear coupled system of a wave equation and a Klein-Gordon equation in space dimension two, when initial data are small smooth and mildly decaying at infinity. We prove this result for a model non-linearity with the aim of extend it, in the future, to the most general case. Keeping this long term objective in mind, we shall try to develop a fairly general approach in spite of the fact that we are treating here a simple model. The Cauchy problem we consider is the following

\begin{equation}
\begin{cases}
(\partial_t^2 - \Delta_x) u(t,x) = Q_0(v,\partial_t v), \\
(\partial_t^2 - \Delta_x + 1)v(t,x) = Q_0(v,\partial_t u),
\end{cases}
\end{equation}

with initial conditions

\begin{equation}
\begin{cases}
(u,v)(1,x) = \varepsilon(u_0(x),v_0(x)), \\
(\partial_t u,\partial_t v)(1,x) = \varepsilon(u_1(x),v_1(x)),
\end{cases}
\end{equation}

where \( \varepsilon > 0 \) is a small parameter, and \( Q_0 \) is the null form:

\[ Q_0(v,w) = (\partial_t v)(\partial_t w) - (\nabla_x v) \cdot (\nabla_x w). \]

We also suppose that, for some \( n \in \mathbb{N} \) sufficiently large, \((\nabla_x u_0, u_1)\) is in the unit ball of \( H^n(\mathbb{R}^2,\mathbb{R}) \times H^n(\mathbb{R}^2,\mathbb{R}) \), \((v_0,v_1)\) in the unit ball of \( H^{n+1}(\mathbb{R}^2,\mathbb{R}) \times H^{n}(\mathbb{R}^2,\mathbb{R}) \), and that

\begin{equation}
\sum_{1 \leq |\alpha| \leq 3} \left( \|x^\alpha \nabla_x u_0\|_{H^{|\alpha|}} + \|x^\alpha v_0\|_{H^{|\alpha|+1}} + \|x^\alpha u_1\|_{H^{|\alpha|}} + \|x^\alpha v_1\|_{H^{|\alpha|}} \right) \leq 1.
\end{equation}

Some physical models, especially related to general relativity, have shown the importance of studying such systems to which several recent works have been dedicated. Most of the results known at present concern wave-Klein-Gordon systems in space dimension 3. One of the first ones goes back to Georgiev [9]. He observed that the vector fields’ method developed by Klainerman was not well adapted to handle at the same time massless and massive wave equations because of the fact that the scaling vector field \( S = t\partial_t + x \cdot \nabla_x \) is not a Killing vector field for the Klein-Gordon equation. To overcome this difficulty he adapted Klainerman’s techniques, introducing a strong null condition to be satisfied by semi-linear nonlinearities that ensures global existence. In 2012 Katayama [18] showed the global existence of small amplitude solutions to coupled systems of wave and Klein-Gordon equations under certain suitable conditions on the non-linearity that include the null condition of Klainerman [19] on self-interactions between wave components, and are weaker than the strong null condition of Georgiev. Consequently, the result he obtains applies also to certain other physical systems such as Dirac-Klein-Gordon equations, Dirac-Proca equations and Klein-Gordon-Zakharov equations. Later, this problem was also studied by LeFloch, Ma [22] and Wang [31] as a model for the full Einstein-Klein-Gordon system (E-KG)
The authors prove global existence of solutions to wave-Klein-Gordon systems with quasi-linear quadratic non-linearities satisfying suitable conditions, when initial data are small, smooth and compactly supported, using the so-called hyperboloidal foliation method introduced by Le Foch, Ma in [22]. Global stability for the full (E-KG) has been then proved by LeFloh-Ma [21, 20] in the case of small smooth perturbations that agree with a Scharzschild solution outside a compact set (see also Wang [30]). In a recent paper [17] Ionescu and Pausader prove global regularity and modified scattering in the case of small smooth initial data that decay at suitable rates at infinity, but not necessarily compactly supported. The quadratic quasi-linear problem they deal with is the following

$$\begin{aligned}
\{ & \Box u = A^{\alpha\beta} \partial_{\alpha} u \partial_{\beta} v + D v^2 \\
& - (\Box + 1) v = u B^{\alpha\beta} \partial_{\alpha} \partial_{\beta} v
\end{aligned}$$

where $A^{\alpha\beta}, B^{\alpha\beta}, D$ are real constants. The system keeps the same linear structure as (E-KG) in harmonic gauge, but only keeps quadratic non-linearities that involve the massive scalar field $v$ (semilinear in the wave equation, quasi-linear in the Klein-Gordon equation). Moreover, the non-linearity they consider does not present a null structure but shows a particular resonant pattern. Their result relies, on the one hand, on a combination of energy estimates to control high Sobolev norms and weighted norms involving the admissible vector fields; on the other hand, on a Fourier analysis, in connection with normal forms and analysis of resonant sets, to prove dispersive estimates and decay in suitable lower regularity norms. The only results we know about global existence of small amplitude solutions in lower space dimension are due to Ma. In space dimension 2 he considers the case of compactly supported Cauchy data and adapts the hyperboloidal foliation method mentioned above to $2 + 1$ spacetime wave-Klein-Gordon systems (see [23]). In particular, in [23] he combines this method with a normal form argument to treat some quasi-linear quadratic non-linearities, while in [24] he studies the case of some semi-linear quadratic interactions. In a very recent paper [23] he also tackles the one-dimensional problem, studying a model semi-linear cubic wave-Klein-Gordon system. In this work he finally overcomes the restriction on the support of initial data and generalizes the hyperboloidal foliation method, combining the hyperboloidal foliation of the translated light cone with the standard time-constant foliation outside of it. The analysis of the problem and the deduction of the estimates of interest is then made separately inside and outside the mentioned light cone.

The result we prove in this paper is the following:

**Theorem 1.** There exists $\varepsilon_0 > 0$ such that for any $\varepsilon \in (0, \varepsilon_0]$, system (1) with initial data satisfying (2), (3) admits a unique global solution defined on $[1, +\infty[$, with $\partial_{t,x} u \in C^0([1, +\infty[: H^n(\mathbb{R}^2))$ and $(v, \partial_t v) \in C^0([1, +\infty[: H^{n+1}(\mathbb{R}^2) \times H^n(\mathbb{R}^2))$.

We describe below the strategy of the theorem’s proof. First of all, we rewrite system (1) in terms of unknowns

$$u_\pm = (D_t \pm |D_x|) u, \quad v_\pm = (D_t \pm \langle D_x \rangle) v, \quad  \Box v, \partial^2_x \partial v = u B^{\alpha\beta} \partial_{\alpha} \partial_{\beta} v$$

where $D_{t,x} = -i \partial_{t,x}$, and introduce the admissible Klainerman vector fields for this problem, i.e.

$$\Omega = x_1 \partial_2 - x_2 \partial_1, \quad Z_j = x_j \partial_t + t \partial_j, \quad j = 1, 2.$$ 

We also denote by $\mathcal{Z} = \{\Gamma_1, \ldots, \Gamma_5\}$ the family made by above vector fields together with the two spatial derivatives, and if $I = (i_1, \ldots, i_p)$ is an element of $\{1, \ldots, 5\}^p$, $\Gamma^I w$ is the function obtained letting $\Gamma_{i_1}, \ldots, \Gamma_{i_p}$ act successively on $w$. We then set

$$u_\pm^I = (D_t \pm |D_x|) \Gamma^I u, \quad v_\pm^I = (D_t \pm \langle D_x \rangle) \Gamma^I v,$$
and introduce the following energies:

$$E_0(t; u_\pm, v_\pm) = \int_{\mathbb{R}^2} \left( |u_+(t, x)|^2 + |u_-(t, x)|^2 + |v_+(t, x)|^2 + |v_-(t, x)|^2 \right) dx,$$

then for \( n \geq 3 \),

$$E_n(t; u_\pm, v_\pm) = \sum_{|\alpha| \leq n} E_0(t; D_x^{\alpha} u_\pm, D_x^{\alpha} v_\pm),$$

which controls the \( H^n \) regularity of \( u_\pm, v_\pm \), and finally, for any integer \( k \) between 0 and 2,

$$E^k_n(t; u_\pm, v_\pm) = \sum_{|\alpha|+|I| \leq 3 \atop |I| \leq 3-k} E_0(t; D_x^{\alpha} u_\pm, D_x^{\alpha} v_\pm)$$

that takes into account the decay in space of \( u_\pm, v_\pm \) and of at most three of their spatial derivatives. By a local existence argument, an a-priori estimate on \( E_n \) on a certain time interval will be enough to ensure the extension of the solution to that interval. For this reason, we are led to prove a result as the following one, in which \( R = (R_1, R_2, R_3, R_4) \) denotes the Riesz transform:

**Theorem 2.** Let \( K_1, K_2 \) two constants strictly bigger than 1. There exist two integers \( n \gg \rho \gg 1, \varepsilon_0 \in [0,1] \) small enough, some small real \( 0 < \delta < \delta_2 \ll \delta_1 \ll \delta_0 \ll 1 \) and two constants \( A, B \) sufficiently large such that, if functions \( u_\pm, v_\pm \), defined by (1) from a solution to (1), satisfy

$$\|\langle D_x \rangle^{\rho+1} u_\pm(t, \cdot)\|_{L^\infty} + \|\langle D_x \rangle^{\rho+1} R u_\pm(t, \cdot)\|_{L^\infty} \leq A\varepsilon t^{-\frac{1}{2}},$$

$$\|\langle D_x \rangle^{\rho} v_\pm\|_{L^\infty} \leq A\varepsilon t^{-1},$$

$$E_n(t; u_\pm, v_\pm) \leq B^2 \varepsilon^2 t^{2\delta}, \quad 0 \leq k \leq 2,$$

(6)

for every \( t \in [1, T] \), then on the same interval \([1, T]\) we have

$$\|\langle D_x \rangle^{\rho+1} u_\pm(t, \cdot)\|_{L^\infty} + \|\langle D_x \rangle^{\rho+1} R u_\pm(t, \cdot)\|_{L^\infty} \leq \frac{A}{K_1} \varepsilon t^{-\frac{1}{2}},$$

$$\|\langle D_x \rangle^{\rho} v_\pm\|_{L^\infty} \leq \frac{A}{K_1} \varepsilon t^{-1},$$

(7)

$$E_n(t; u_\pm, v_\pm) \leq \frac{B^2}{K_2} \varepsilon^2 t^{2\delta}, \quad 0 \leq k \leq 2,$$

$$E^k_n(t; u_\pm, v_\pm) \leq \frac{B^2}{K_2} \varepsilon^2 t^{2\delta}, \quad 0 \leq k \leq 2.$$
problem, the first step towards the derivation of the mentioned inequality is to highlight the very
quasi-linear contribution to above non-linearities and make sure that it does not lead to a loss
of derivatives. For this reason, we write the above system in a vectorial fashion by introducing
vectors
\[ U^I = \begin{bmatrix} u^I_L \\ 0 \\ u^I_\perp \\ 0 \end{bmatrix}, \quad V^I = \begin{bmatrix} v^I_L \\ 0 \\ v^I_\perp \end{bmatrix}, \quad W^I = U^I + V^I, \]
and successively \textit{para-linearize} the vectorial equation satisfied by \(W^I\) (using the tools introduced
in subsection \[\ref{sec:2.2.1}\]) to stress out the quasi-linear contribution to the non-linearity. Finally, we
\textit{symmetrize} it (in the sense of subsection \[\ref{sec:2.1.3}\]) by introducing some new unknown \(W^I_s\)
comparable to \(W^I\). What we would need to show in order to prove the last two inequalities in \(\ref{sec:7}\) is that,
using the estimates in \(\ref{sec:6}\), the derivative in time of the \(L^2\) norm to the square of \(W^I_s\) is bounded
by \(c_{\rho} \|
W^I\|_{L^2}\). By analysing the semi-linear contributions in the symmetrized equation satisfied
by \(W^I_s\), we find out that the \(L^2\) norm of some of those ones can only be estimated making
appear the \(L^\infty\) norm on the wave factor and the \(L^2\) norm on the Klein-Gordon one. Because
of the very slow decay in time of the wave solution (the decay rate being \(t^{-1/2}\), as assumed in
the first inequality of \(\ref{sec:6}\)), we are hence very far away from the wished estimate. Consequently,
the second step for the derivation of the right energy inequality consists in performing a normal
form argument to get rid of those quadratic terms and replace them with cubic ones. For that,
we first use a Shatah’ normal form adapted to quasi-linear equations (see subsection \[\ref{sec:2.2.1}\]) as
already used by several authors (we cite \[\ref{sec:28}, \ref{sec:1}, \ref{sec:4}, \ref{sec:6}\] for quasi-linear Klein-Gordon equations,
and \[\ref{sec:12}, \ref{sec:16}, \ref{sec:1}, \ref{sec:17}\] for quasi-linear equations arising in fluids mechanics), but also a semi-
linear normal form argument to treat some other terms on which we are allowed to lose some
derivatives (see subsection \[\ref{sec:2.2.2}\]). These two normal forms’ steps lead us to define some new
energies \(\tilde{E}_n(t; u^\perp, v^\perp), \tilde{E}_3^k(t; u^\perp, v^\perp)\), equivalent to the starting ones \(E_n(t; u^\perp, v^\perp), E_3^k(t; u^\perp, v^\perp)\),
that we are able to propagate. That concludes the first part of the proof.

The last thing that remains to prove is that \(\ref{sec:6}\) implies the first two estimates in \(\ref{sec:7}\). The
strategy we employ is very similar to the one developed in \(\ref{sec:29}\): we deduce from the starting
system \(\ref{sec:11}\) a new coupled one of an ordinary differential equation, coming from the Klein-Gordon
equation, and of a transport equation, derived from the wave one. The study of this system will
provide us with the wished \(L^\infty\) estimates. We start our analysis by another normal form in
order to replace almost all quadratic non-linear terms in the equations satisfied by \(u^\perp, v^\perp\) with
cubic ones. The only contributions that cannot be eliminated are those depending on \((v^+, v^-)\)
which are resonant and should be suitably treated. We do not use directly the normal forms
obtained in the previous step. In fact, our aim is basically to obtain an \(L^\infty\) estimate for at most \(\rho\)
derivatives of the solution, having a control on their \(H^s\) norm for \(s \gg \rho\). This permits us to
lose some derivatives in the normal form reduction, so the fact that the system is quasi-linear is
no longer important.

We define two new unknowns \(u^{NF}, v^{NF}\) by adding some quadratic perturbations to \(u^\perp, v^\perp\), in
such a way that they are solution to
\[
(D_t + |D_x|)u^{NF} = q_w + c_w + w^{NF}, \quad (D_t + |D_x|)v^{NF} = r^{NF}_{kg},
\]
where \(w^{NF}, c_w, r^{NF}_{kg}\) are cubic terms, whereas \(q_w\) is the mentioned bilinear expression in \(v^+, v^-\)
that cannot be eliminated by normal forms but whose structure will successively provide us with
remainder terms. Then, if we define
\[
\tilde{u}(t, x) = tu^{NF}(t, tx), \quad \tilde{v}(t, x) = tv^{NF}(t, tx),
\]

\[
\tilde{u}(t, x) = tu^{NF}(t, tx), \quad \tilde{v}(t, x) = tv^{NF}(t, tx),
\]
and introduce \( h := t^{-1} \) the semi-classical parameter, we obtain that \( \tilde{u}, \tilde{v} \) verify

\[
(D_t - \text{Op}_h^w(x \cdot \xi - |\xi|))\tilde{u} = h^{-1} \left[ q_w(t, tx) + c_w(t, tx) + \nu_w^{NF}(t, tx) \right] \\
(D_t - \text{Op}_h^w(x \cdot \xi - \langle \xi \rangle))\tilde{v} = h^{-1} r_{kg}^{NF}(t, tx)
\]

where \( \text{Op}_h^w \) is the Weyl quantization introduced, along with the semi-classical pseudo-differential calculus, in subsection 2.2.4. We also consider the following operators

\[
M_j = \frac{1}{h} (x_j|\xi| - \xi_j), \quad L_j = \frac{1}{h} (x_j - \xi_j).
\]

whose symbols are given respectively (up to the multiplication by \(|\xi|\) for the former case) by the derivative with respect to \( \xi \) of symbols \( x \cdot \xi - |\xi| \) and \( x \cdot \xi - \langle \xi \rangle \) in (10). Using the equation satisfied by \( u^{NF} \) (resp. \( v^{NF} \)), we can express \( M_j \tilde{u} \) (resp. \( L_j \tilde{v} \)) in terms of \( Z_j u^{NF} \) (resp. \( Z_j v^{NF} \)) and of \( q_w, c_w, \nu_w^{NF} \) (resp. \( r_{kg}^{NF} \)). As done in [29], we first introduce the lagrangian

\[
\Lambda_{kg} = \left\{ (x, \xi) : x - \frac{\xi}{|\xi|} = 0 \right\}
\]

which is the graph of \( \xi = -d\phi(x) \), with \( \phi(x) = \sqrt{1 - |x|^2} \), and decompose \( \tilde{v} \) into the sum of a contribution micro-localised on a neighbourhood of size \( \sqrt{h} \) of \( \Lambda_{kg} \), and another one micro-localised out of that neighbourhood (in the spirit of [14]). The second contribution can be basically estimated in \( L^\infty \) by \( h^{\frac{1}{2} - \sigma} \) times the \( L^2 \) norm of some iterates of operator \( L \) acting on \( \tilde{v} \) (which are controlled by the \( L^2 \) hypothesis in theorem 2). The main contribution to \( \tilde{v} \) is then represented by \( \tilde{u}_{\Lambda_{kg}} \), which appears to be solution to

\[
[D_t - \text{Op}_h^w(x \cdot \xi - \langle \xi \rangle)]\tilde{u}_{\Lambda_{kg}} = \text{controlled terms}.
\]

Developing the symbol in the above left hand side on \( \Lambda_{kg} \) we finally obtain the wished ODE, which combined with the a-priori estimate of the “controlled terms” allows us to deduce from (6) the second estimate in (7) (with \( \rho = 0 \), the general case being treated in the same way up to few more technicalities).

The same strategy is employed to obtain some uniform estimates on \( \tilde{u} \). We introduce the lagrangian

\[
\Lambda_{w} = \left\{ (x, \xi) : x - \frac{\xi}{|\xi|} = 0 \right\}
\]

which, differently from \( \Lambda_{kg} \), is not a graph but projects on the basis as an hypersurface. For this reason, the classical problem associated to the first equation in (10) is rather a transport equation than an ordinary differential equation. It is obtained in a similar way by decomposing \( \tilde{u} \) into two contributions: one denoted by \( \tilde{u}_{\Lambda_{w}} \) and micro-localised in a neighbourhood of size \( h^{\frac{1}{2} - \sigma} \) (for some small \( \sigma > 0 \)) of \( \Lambda_{w} \); another one micro-localised away from this neighbourhood. As for the Klein-Gordon component, this latter contribution can be easily controlled thanks to the \( L^2 \) estimates that the last two inequalities in (6) infer on the iterates of \( M_j \) acting on \( \tilde{u} \). By micro-localisation we derive that \( \tilde{u}_{\Lambda_{w}} \) satisfies

\[
[D_t - \text{Op}_h^w(x \cdot \xi - |\xi|)]\tilde{u}_{\Lambda_{w}} = \text{controlled terms},
\]

and by developing symbol \( x \cdot \xi - |\xi| \) on \( \Lambda_{w} \) we obtain the wished transport equation. Integrating this equation by the method of characteristics, we finally recover the first estimate in (6) and conclude the proof of theorem 2.
Chapter 1

Main Theorem and Preliminary Results

1.1 Statement of the main theorem

NOTATIONS: We warn the reader that, throughout the paper, we will often denote \( \partial_i \) (resp. \( \partial_{x_j} \), \( j = 1, 2 \)) by \( \partial_0 \) (resp. \( \partial_j \), \( j = 1, 2 \)), while symbol \( \partial \) without any subscript will stand for one of the three derivatives \( \partial_a, a = 0, 1, 2 \). \( \nabla_x f \) is the classical spatial gradient of \( f \), \( D := -i\partial \) and \( R_j \) denotes the Riesz operator \( D_j|D_x|^{-1} \), for \( j = 1, 2 \). We will also employ notation \( \|\partial_{t,x} w\| \) with the meaning \( \|\partial_t w\| + \|\partial_x w\| \) and \( \|Rw\| = \sum_j \|R_j w\| \).

We consider the following quadratic, quasi-linear, coupled wave-Klein-Gordon system

\[
\begin{cases}
(\partial_t^2 - \Delta_x)u(t, x) = Q_0(v, \partial_t v), \\
(\partial_t^2 - \Delta_x + 1)v(t, x) = Q_0(v, \partial_t u),
\end{cases}
\tag{1.1.1}
\]

with initial conditions

\[
\begin{cases}
(u, v)(1, x) = \varepsilon(u_0(x), v_0(x)), \\
(\partial_t u, \partial_t v)(1, x) = \varepsilon(u_1(x), v_1(x)),
\end{cases}
\tag{1.1.2}
\]

where \( \varepsilon > 0 \) is a small parameter, and \( Q_0 \) is the null form:

\[
Q_0(v, w) = (\partial_t v)(\partial_t w) - (\nabla_x v) \cdot (\nabla_x w).
\tag{1.1.3}
\]

Our aim is to prove that there is a unique solution to Cauchy problem (1.1.1) - (1.1.2) provided that \( \varepsilon \) is sufficiently small and \( u_0, v_0, u_1, v_1 \) decay rapidly enough at infinity. The theorem we are going to demonstrate is the following:

**Theorem 1.1.1** (Main Theorem). There exist an integer \( n \) sufficiently large and \( \varepsilon_0 \in ]0, 1[ \) sufficiently small such that, for any \( \varepsilon \in ]0, \varepsilon_0[ \), any real valued \( u_0, v_0, u_1, v_1 \) satisfying:

\[
\|\nabla_x u_0\|_{H^n} + \|v_0\|_{H^2} + \|u_1\|_{H^n} + \|v_1\|_{H^n} \leq 1,
\tag{1.1.4}
\]

system (1.1.1) - (1.1.2) admits a unique global solution \((u, v)\) with \( \partial_{t,x} u \in C^0 \left([1, \infty[; H^n(\mathbb{R}^2)\right) \), \( v \in C^0 \left([1, \infty[; H^{n+1}(\mathbb{R}^2) \right) \cap C^4 \left([1, \infty[; H^n(\mathbb{R}^2) \right) \).
The proof of the main theorem is based on the introduction of four new functions $u_+, u_-, v_+, v_-$, defined in terms of $u, v$ as follows:

\[
\begin{align*}
  u_+ &:= (D_t + |D_x|)u, \\
  u_- &:= (D_t - |D_x|)u, \\
  v_+ &:= (D_t + \langle D_x \rangle)v, \\
  v_- &:= (D_t - \langle D_x \rangle)v,
\end{align*}
\]

and on the propagation of some a-priori estimates made on them in some interval $[1, T]$, for a fixed $T > 1$. In order to state this result we consider the admissible Klainerman vector fields for the wave-Klein-Gordon system:

\[
\Omega := x_1 \partial_2 - x_2 \partial_1, \quad Z_j := x_j \partial_t + t \partial_j, \quad j = 1, 2
\]

and denote by $\Gamma$ a generic vector field in $\mathcal{Z} = \{\Omega, Z_j, \partial_j, j = 1, 2\}$. If $\mathcal{Z}$ is assumed ordered, i.e.

\[
\mathcal{Z} = \{\Gamma_1, \ldots, \Gamma_5\}
\]

then for a multi-index $I = (i_1, \ldots, i_n)$, $i_j \in \{1, \ldots, 5\}$ for $j = 1, \ldots, n$, we define the length of $I$ as $|I| := n$, and $\Gamma^I := \Gamma_{i_1} \cdots \Gamma_{i_n}$ the product of vector fields $\Gamma_{i_j} \in \mathcal{Z}$, $j = 1, \ldots, n$. Vector fields $\Gamma$ have two relevant properties: they act like derivations on non-linear terms; they always considered in the so-called Klainerman vector fields’ method for the wave equation, as it does not commute with the Klein-Gordon operator.

We also introduce the energy of $(u_+, u_-, v_+, v_-)$ at time $t \geq 1$ as

\[
E_0(t; u_\pm, v_\pm) := \int \left( |u_+(t, x)|^2 + |u_-(t, x)|^2 + |v_+(t, x)|^2 + |v_-(t, x)|^2 \right) \, dx,
\]

together with the generalized energies

\[
E_n(t; u_\pm, v_\pm) := \sum_{|\alpha| \leq n} E_0(t; D_x^\alpha u_\pm, D_x^\alpha v_\pm), \quad \forall n \in \mathbb{N}, n \geq 3,
\]

and

\[
E^k_3(t; u_\pm, v_\pm) := \sum_{\substack{|\alpha| + |I| \leq 3 \atop |I| \leq 3 - k}} E_0(t; D_x^\alpha u^I_\pm; D_x^\alpha v^I_\pm), \quad 0 \leq k \leq 2,
\]

where, for any multi-index $I$,

\[
u^I_\pm := (D_t \pm |D_x|)\Gamma^I u, \quad v^I_\pm := (D_t \pm \langle D_x \rangle)\Gamma^I v.
\]

Energy $E_n(t; u_\pm, v_\pm)$, for $n \geq 3$, is introduced with the aim of controlling the Sobolev norm $H^n$ of $u_\pm, v_\pm$ for large values of $n$. The reason of dealing with $E^k_3(t; u_\pm, v_\pm)$ is, instead, to control the $L^2$ norm of $\Gamma^I u_\pm, \Gamma^I v_\pm$, for any general $\Gamma \in \mathcal{Z}$ and $|I| \leq 3$. In particular, superscript $k$ indicates that we are considering only products $\Gamma^I$ containing at most $3 - k$ vector fields in $\{\Omega, Z_m, m = 1, 2\}$. For instance, the $L^2$ norms of $\Omega^3 u_\pm, \Omega^2 Z^2_1 v_\pm$ are bounded by $E^0_3(t; u_\pm, v_\pm)$ but not by $E^2_3(t; u_\pm, v_\pm)$, while the $L^2$ norms of $Z^2_1 u_\pm, \partial_t \Omega Z Z_2 v_\pm$ are controlled by both $E^2_3(t; u_\pm, v_\pm), E^0_3(t; u_\pm, v_\pm)$, etc. The interest of distinguishing between $k = 0, 1, 2$, is to take into account the different growth in time of the $L^2$ norm of such terms depending on the number of vector fields $\Omega, Z_m$ acting on $u_\pm, v_\pm$, as emerges from a-priori estimate (1.1.11d).
Theorem 1.1.2 (Bootstrap Argument). Let $K_1, K_2 > 1$ and $H^{\rho, \infty}$ be the space defined in (1.2.1) (iii). There exist two integers $n \gg \rho$ sufficiently large, some $0 < \delta < \delta_2 < \delta_1 < \delta_0 < 1$ small, two constants $A, B > 1$ sufficiently large and $\rho_0 \in [0, (2A + B)^{-1}]$ such that, for any $0 < \varepsilon < \varepsilon_0$, if $(u, v)$ is solution to (1.1.1)-(1.1.2) on some interval $[1, T]$, for a fixed $T > 1$, and $u_{\pm}, v_{\pm}$ defined in (1.1.3) satisfy:

\begin{align*}
(1.1.11a) & \quad \|u_{\pm}(t, \cdot)\|_{H^{\rho+1, \infty}} + \|R u_{\pm}(t, \cdot)\|_{H^{\rho+1, \infty}} \leq A\varepsilon t^{-\frac{3}{2}}, \\
(1.1.11b) & \quad \|v_{\pm}(t, \cdot)\|_{H^{\rho, \infty}} \leq A\varepsilon t^{-1}, \\
(1.1.11c) & \quad E_n(t; u_{\pm}, v_{\pm})^2 \leq B\varepsilon t^{\frac{\delta}{2}}, \\
(1.1.11d) & \quad E_3^k(t; u_{\pm}, v_{\pm})^2 \leq B\varepsilon t^{\frac{\delta}{2}}, \quad \forall 0 \leq k \leq 2,
\end{align*}

for every $t \in [1, T]$, then in the same interval they verify also

\begin{align*}
(1.1.12a) & \quad \|u_{\pm}(t, \cdot)\|_{H^{\rho+1, \infty}} + \|R u_{\pm}(t, \cdot)\|_{H^{\rho+1, \infty}} \leq \frac{A}{K_1} \varepsilon t^{-\frac{3}{2}}, \\
(1.1.12b) & \quad \|v_{\pm}(t, \cdot)\|_{H^{\rho, \infty}} \leq \frac{A}{K_1} \varepsilon t^{-1}, \\
(1.1.12c) & \quad E_n(t; u_{\pm}, v_{\pm})^{\frac{1}{2}} \leq \frac{B}{K_2} \varepsilon t^{\frac{\delta}{2}}, \\
(1.1.12d) & \quad E_3^k(t; u_{\pm}, v_{\pm})^{\frac{1}{2}} \leq \frac{B}{K_2} \varepsilon t^{\frac{\delta}{2}}, \quad \forall 0 \leq k \leq 2.
\end{align*}

The a-priori estimates on the uniform norm of $u_{\pm}, R u_{\pm}, v_{\pm}$ made in the above theorem translate in terms of $u_{\pm}, v_{\pm}$ the sharp decay in time we expect for the solution $(u, v)$ to starting problem (1.1.1). Indeed, from definitions (1.1.3) it appears that

\begin{align*}
D_t u = \frac{u_{+} + u_{-}}{2}, \quad &D_x u = R\left(\frac{u_{+} - u_{-}}{2}\right), \\
D_t v = \frac{v_{+} + v_{-}}{2}, \quad &v = \langle D_x \rangle^{-1}\left(\frac{v_{+} - v_{-}}{2}\right),
\end{align*}

so (1.1.11a), (1.1.11b) imply

\[\|\partial_t u(t, \cdot)\|_{H^{\rho, \infty}} \leq A\varepsilon t^{-\frac{3}{2}}, \quad \|\partial_t v(t, \cdot)\|_{H^{\rho, \infty}} + \|v(t, \cdot)\|_{H^{\rho+1, \infty}} \leq A\varepsilon t^{-1}.\]

Furthermore, the following quantity

\[\|\partial_t u(t, \cdot)\|_{H^n} + \|\nabla_x u(t, \cdot)\|_{H^n} + \|\partial_t v(t, \cdot)\|_{H^n} + \|\nabla_x v(t, \cdot)\|_{H^n} = 0\]

is equivalent to the square root of $E_n(t; u_{\pm}, v_{\pm})$, which implies that the propagation of a-priori energy estimate (1.1.12c) is equivalent to the propagation of a certain estimate on the above Sobolev norms. For this reason, the propagation of the a-priori estimate on $E_n(t; u_{\pm}, v_{\pm})$ and a local existence argument will imply theorem (1.1.1).

Before ending this section and going into the core of the subject, we briefly remind the general definition of null condition for a multilinear form on $\mathbb{R}^{1+n}$ and a result by Hörmander (see (1.1)).

**Definition 1.1.3.** A $k$-linear form $G$ on $\mathbb{R}^{1+n}$ is said to satisfy the null condition if and only if, for all $\xi \in \mathbb{R}^n, \xi = (\xi_0, \ldots, \xi_n)$ such that $\xi_0^2 - \sum_{j=1}^{n} \xi_j^2 = 0$,

\[G(\underbrace{\xi, \ldots, \xi}_k) = 0.\]
Example: The trilinear form \( \xi_0^2 \xi_a - \sum_{j=1,2} \xi_j^2 \xi_a \) associated to \( Q_0(v, \partial_a w) \) satisfies the null condition (1.1.13), for any \( a = 0, 1, 2 \). This is the most common example of null form.

Lemma 1.1.4 (Hörmander [10], Lemma 6.6.5.). Let \( G \) be a \( k \)-linear form on \( \mathbb{R}^{1+n} \), \( k = k_1 + \cdots + k_r \), with \( k_j \) positive integers, and \( \Gamma \in \mathbb{Z} \). For all \( u_j \in C^{k+1}(\mathbb{R}^{1+n}) \), all \( \alpha_j \in \mathbb{N}^{1+n} \), \( |\alpha_j| = k_j \), and \( u_j^{(k_j)} := \partial^{\alpha_j} u_j \),

\[
\Gamma G(u_1^{(k_1)}, \ldots, u_r^{(k_r)}) = G((\Gamma u_1)^{(k_1)}, \ldots, (\Gamma u_r)^{(k_r)}) + \ldots + G(u_1^{(k_1)}, \ldots, (\Gamma u_r)^{(k_r)}) + G_1(u_1^{(k_1)}, \ldots, u_r^{(k_r)}),
\]

where \( G_1 \) satisfies the null condition.

Remark 1.1.5. Previous lemma simplifies when the multi-linear form \( G \) satisfying the null condition is \( Q_0(v, \partial_a w) \), for any \( a = 0, 1, 2 \). Indeed, the structure of the null form is not modified by the action of vector field \( \Gamma \) in the sense that

\[
\Gamma Q_0(v, \partial_a w) = Q_0(\Gamma v, \partial_a w) + Q_0(v, \partial_\alpha \Gamma w) + G_1(v, \partial w),
\]

where \( G_1(v, \partial w) = 0 \) if \( \Gamma = \partial_m \), \( m = 1, 2 \), and

\[
G_1(v, \partial w) = \begin{cases} 
-Q_0(v, \partial_m w), & \text{if } a = 0, \Gamma = Z_m, m \in \{1, 2\}, \\
0, & \text{if } a = 0, \Gamma = \Omega, \\
-Q_0(v, \partial_\alpha w), & \text{if } a \neq 0, \Gamma = Z_a, \\
0, & \text{if } a \neq 0, \Gamma = Z_m, m \in \{1, 2\} \setminus \{a\}, \\
(-1)^a Q_0(v, \partial_m w), & \text{with } m \in \{1, 2\} \setminus \{a\}, \text{if } a \neq 0, \Gamma = \Omega.
\end{cases}
\]

If \( \Gamma^I \) contains at least \( k \leq |I| \) space derivatives then

\[
\Gamma^I Q_0(v, \partial_\alpha w) = \sum_{|I_1|+|I_2|=|I|} Q_0((\Gamma^I v, \partial_1 \Gamma^{I_2} w) + \sum_{k \leq |I_1|+|I_2|<|I|} c_{I_1, I_2} Q_0(\Gamma^{I_1} v, \partial \Gamma^{I_2} w),
\]

with \( c_{I_1, I_2} \in \{-1, 0, 1\} \). In the above equality we should think of multi-index \( I_1 \) (resp. \( I_2 \)) as obtained by extraction of a \( |I_1| \)-tuple (resp. \( |I_2| \)-tuple) from \( I = (i_1, \ldots, i_n) \), in such a way that each \( i_j \) appearing in \( I \) and corresponding to a spatial derivative (e.g. \( \Gamma_{i_j} = D_m \), for \( m \in \{1, 2\} \)), appears either in \( I_1 \) or in \( I_2 \), but not in both. For further references, we define

\[
\mathcal{J}(I) := \{(I_1, I_2) | I_1, I_2 \text{ multi-indices obtained as described above}\}.
\]

1.2 Preliminary Results

The aim of this section is to introduce most of the technical tools that will be used throughout the paper. In particular, subsections [1.2.1] and [1.2.2] are devoted to recall some definitions and results about paradifferential and pseudo-differential calculus respectively; subsection [1.2.3] and [1.2.4] are dedicated to the introduction of some special operators that we will frequently use when dealing with the wave and the Klein-Gordon component. Subsections [1.2.1] [1.2.2] barely contain proofs (we refer for that to [3], [21], [8], [32]), whereas subsections [1.2.3] [1.2.4] are much longer and richer in proofs and technicalities.
1.2.1 Paradiﬀerential calculus

In the current subsection we recall some deﬁnitions and properties that will be useful in chapter 2. We ﬁrst recall the deﬁnition of some spaces (Sobolev, Lipschitz and Hölder spaces) in dimension \(d \geq 1\) and afterwards some results concerning symbolic calculus and the action of paradiﬀerential operators on Sobolev spaces (see for instance \([23]\)). We warn the reader that we will use both notations \(\hat{w}(\xi)\) and \(\mathcal{F}_{\alpha}(\xi)\) for the Fourier transform of a function \(w = w(x)\).

**Deﬁnition 1.2.1 (Spaces).** (i) Let \(s \in \mathbb{R}\), \(H^s(\mathbb{R}^d)\) denotes the space of tempered distributions \(w \in S'(\mathbb{R}^d)\) such that \(\hat{w} \in L^2_{\text{loc}}(\mathbb{R}^d)\) and

\[
\|w\|_{H^s(\mathbb{R}^d)}^2 := \frac{1}{(2\pi)^d} \int (1 + |\xi|^2)^s|\hat{w}(\xi)|^2 d\xi < +\infty;
\]

(ii) For \(\rho \in \mathbb{N}\), \(W^{\rho,\infty}(\mathbb{R}^d)\) denotes the space of distributions \(w \in \mathcal{D}'(\mathbb{R}^d)\) such that \(\partial_\xi^a w \in L^\infty(\mathbb{R}_r)\), for any \(\alpha \in \mathbb{N}^d\) with \(|\alpha| \leq \rho\), endowed with the norm

\[
\|w\|_{W^{\rho,\infty}} := \sum_{|\alpha| \leq \rho} \|\partial_\xi^a w\|_{L^\infty};
\]

(iii) For \(\rho \in \mathbb{N}\), we also introduce \(H^{\rho,\infty}(\mathbb{R}^d)\) as the space of tempered distributions \(w \in S'(\mathbb{R}^d)\) such that

\[
\|w\|_{H^{\rho,\infty}} := \|\mathcal{F}_w\|_{L^\infty} < +\infty.
\]

**Deﬁnition 1.2.2.** An operator \(T\) is said of order \(\leq m \in \mathbb{R}\) if it is a bounded operator from \(H^{s+m}(\mathbb{R}^d)\) to \(H^s(\mathbb{R}^d)\) for all \(s \in \mathbb{R}\).

**Deﬁnition 1.2.3 (Smooth symbols).** Let \(m \in \mathbb{R}\).

(i) \(S^m_0(\mathbb{R}^d)\) denotes the space of functions \(a(x, \eta)\) on \(\mathbb{R}^d \times \mathbb{R}^d\) which are \(C^\infty\) with respect to \(\eta\) and such that, for all \(\alpha \in \mathbb{N}^d\), there exists a constant \(C_\alpha > 0\) and

\[
\|\partial_\eta^a a(\cdot, \eta)\|_{L^\infty} \leq C_\alpha (1 + |\eta|)^{m-|\alpha|}, \quad \forall \eta \in \mathbb{R}^d.
\]

\(\Sigma^m_0(\mathbb{R}^d)\) denotes the subclass of symbols \(a \in S^m_0(\mathbb{R}^d)\) satisfying

\[
\exists \varepsilon < 1 : \mathcal{F}_{\alpha}(\xi, \eta) = 0 \quad \text{for} \quad |\xi| > \varepsilon(1 + |\eta|).
\]

\(S^m_0\) is equipped with seminorm \(M^m_0(\alpha; n)\) given by

\[
M^m_0(\alpha; n) := \sup_{|\beta| \leq n} \sup_{\eta \in \mathbb{R}^d} \|\partial_\eta^\beta \partial_\alpha^\alpha a(\cdot, \eta)\|_{L^\infty}.
\]

(ii) For \(r \in \mathbb{N}\), \(S^m_r(\mathbb{R}^d)\) denotes more generally the space of symbols \(a \in S^m_0(\mathbb{R}^d)\) such that, for all \(\alpha \in \mathbb{N}^d\) and all \(\eta \in \mathbb{R}^d\), function \(x \rightarrow \partial_\eta^\beta a(x, \eta)\) belongs to \(W^{r,\infty}(\mathbb{R}^d)\) and there exists a constant \(C_\alpha > 0\) such that

\[
\|\partial_\eta^\beta a(\cdot, \eta)\|_{W^{r,\infty}} \leq C_\alpha (1 + |\eta|)^{m-|\alpha|}, \quad \forall \eta \in \mathbb{R}^d.
\]

\(\Sigma^m_r(\mathbb{R}^d)\) denotes the subclass of symbols \(a \in S^m_r(\mathbb{R}^d)\) satisfying the spectral condition \((1.2.1)\). \(S^m_r\) is equipped with seminorm \(M^m_r(\alpha; n)\), given by

\[
M^m_r(\alpha; n) := \sup_{|\beta| \leq n} \sup_{\eta \in \mathbb{R}^d} \|\partial_\eta^\beta \partial_\alpha^\alpha a(\cdot, \eta)\|_{W^{r,\infty}}.
\]
These definitions extend to matrix valued symbols $a \in S^m_r$ ($a \in \Sigma^m_r$), $m \in \mathbb{R}$, $r \in \mathbb{N}$. If $a \in S^m_r$ (resp. $a \in \Sigma^m_r$), it is said of order $m$.

**Definition 1.2.4.** An admissible cut-off function $\psi(\xi, \eta)$ is a $C^\infty$ function on $\mathbb{R}^d \times \mathbb{R}^d$ such that

(i) there are $0 < \varepsilon_1 < \varepsilon_2 < 1$ and

\[
\psi(\xi, \eta) = 1, \quad \text{for } |\xi| \leq \varepsilon_1(1 + |\eta|) \\
\psi(\xi, \eta) = 0, \quad \text{for } |\xi| \geq \varepsilon_2(1 + |\eta|);
\]

(ii) for all $(\alpha, \beta) \in \mathbb{N}^d \times \mathbb{N}^d$ there is a constant $C_{\alpha, \beta} > 0$ such that

\[
|\partial^\alpha_\xi \partial^\beta_\eta \psi(\xi, \eta)| \leq C_{\alpha, \beta} (1 + |\eta|)^{-|\alpha| - |\beta|}, \quad \forall (\xi, \eta).
\]

**Example:** If $\chi$ is a smooth cut-off function such that $\chi(z) = 1$ for $|z| \leq \varepsilon_1$ and is supported in the open ball $B_{\varepsilon_2}(0)$, with $0 < \varepsilon_1 < \varepsilon_2 < 1$, function $\psi(\xi, \eta) := \chi(\frac{\xi}{\varepsilon_2})$ is an admissible cut-off function in the sense of definition 1.2.4. We will only consider this type of admissible cut-off functions for the rest of the paper and refer (abusively) to $\chi$ itself as an admissible cut-off.

**Definition 1.2.5.** Let $\chi$ be an admissible cut-off function and $a(x, \eta) \in S^m_r$, $m \in \mathbb{R}$, $r \in \mathbb{N}$. The Bony quantization (or paraproduct quantization) $Op^B(a(x, \eta))$ associated to symbol $a$ and acting on a test function $w$ is defined as

\[
Op^B(a(x, \eta))w(x) := \frac{1}{(2\pi)^d} \int_{\mathbb{R}^d} e^{ix \cdot \eta} \sigma^\chi_a(x, \eta) \hat{w}(\eta) d\eta,
\]

with $\sigma^\chi_a(x, \eta) := \frac{1}{(2\pi)^d} \int_{\mathbb{R}^d} e^{i(x-y) \cdot \zeta} \chi \left( \frac{\zeta}{\langle \eta \rangle} \right) a(y, \eta) dy d\zeta$.

The operator defined above depends on the choice of the admissible cut-off function $\chi$. However, if $a \in S^m_r$ for some $m \in \mathbb{R}$, $r \in \mathbb{N}$, a change of $\chi$ modifies $Op^B(a)$ only by the addition of a $r$-smoothing operator (i.e. an operator which is bounded from $H^s$ to $H^{s+r}$, see [3]), so the choice of $\chi$ will be substantially irrelevant as long as we can neglect $r$-smoothing operators. For this reason, we will not indicate explicitly the dependence of $Op^B$ (resp. of $\sigma^\chi_a$) on $\chi$ to keep notations as light as possible. Let us also observe that, with such a definition, the Fourier transform of $Op^B(a)w$ has the following simple expression

\[
\mathcal{F}_{x \rightarrow \xi} \left( Op^B(a(x, \eta))w(x) \right)(\xi) = \frac{1}{(2\pi)^d} \int_{\mathbb{R}^d} \chi \left( \frac{\xi - \eta}{\langle \eta \rangle} \right) \hat{a}(\xi - \eta, \eta) \hat{w}(\eta) d\eta,
\]

where $\hat{a}(\xi, \eta) := \mathcal{F}_{y \rightarrow \xi}(a(y, \eta))$, and the product of two functions $u, v$ can be developed as

\[
uv = Op^B(u)v + Op^B(v)u + R(u, v),
\]

where remainder $R(u, v)$ writes on the Fourier side as

\[
R(u, v)(\xi) = \frac{1}{(2\pi)^d} \int \left( 1 - \chi \left( \frac{\xi - \eta}{\langle \eta \rangle} \right) - \chi \left( \frac{\eta}{\langle \xi - \eta \rangle} \right) \right) \hat{u}(\xi - \eta) \hat{v}(\eta) d\eta.
\]

We remark that frequencies $\eta$ and $\xi - \eta$ in the above integral are either bounded or equivalent, and $R(u, v) = R(v, u)$. With the aim of having uniform notations, we introduce the operator $Op^B_{\hat{R}}$ associated to a symbol $a(x, \eta)$ and acting on a function $w$ as

\[
Op^B_{\hat{R}}(a(x, \eta))w(x) := \frac{1}{(2\pi)^d} \int e^{ix \cdot \eta} \delta^\chi_a(x, \eta) \hat{w}(\eta) d\eta,
\]

with $\delta^\chi_a(x, \eta) := \frac{1}{(2\pi)^d} \int e^{i(x-y) \cdot \zeta} \left( 1 - \chi \left( \frac{\zeta}{\langle \eta \rangle} \right) - \chi \left( \frac{\eta}{\langle \zeta \rangle} \right) \right) a(y, \eta) dy d\zeta$.
For future references, we recall the definition of the Littlewood-Paley decomposition of a function \( w \).

**Definition 1.2.6** (Littlewood-Paley decomposition). Let \( \chi : \mathbb{R}^2 \to [0,1] \) be a smooth decaying radial function, supported for \( |x| \leq 2 - \frac{1}{10} \) and identically equal to 1 for \( |x| \leq 1 + \frac{1}{10} \). Let also \( \varphi(\xi) := \chi(\xi) - \chi(2\xi) \in C_0^\infty(\mathbb{R}^2 \setminus \{0\}) \), supported for \( \frac{1}{2} < |\xi| < 2 \), and \( \varphi_k(\xi) := \varphi(2^{-k}\xi) \) for all \( k \in \mathbb{N}^* \), with the convention that \( \varphi_0 := \chi \). Then \( \sum_{k\in\mathbb{N}} \varphi_k(D_x)w \)

(1.2.10)

is the Littlewood-Paley decomposition of \( w \).

The following proposition is a classical result about the action of para-differential operators on Sobolev spaces (see [3] for further details). Proposition [12.8] shows, instead, that some results of continuity over \( L^2 \) hold also for operators whose symbol \( a(x,\eta) \) is not a smooth function of \( \eta \), and that map \( (u, v) \mapsto R(u, v) \) is continuous from \( H^{4,\infty} \times L^2 \) to \( L^2 \).

**Proposition 1.2.7** (Action). Let \( m \in \mathbb{R} \). For all \( s \in \mathbb{R} \) and \( a \in S_0^m \), \( Op^B(a) \) is a bounded operator from \( H^{s+m}(\mathbb{R}^d) \) to \( H^s(\mathbb{R}^d) \). In particular,

(1.2.11)

\( \|Op^B(a)w\|_{H^s} \leq M_0^{m} \left( a; \left[ \frac{d}{2} \right] + 1 \right) \|w\|_{H^{s+m}} \).

**Proposition 1.2.8.**

(i) Let \( a(x,\eta) = a_1(x)b(\eta) \), with \( a_1 \in L^\infty(\mathbb{R}^2) \) and \( b(\eta) \) bounded, supported in some ball centred in the origin and such that \( |\partial^\alpha b(\eta)| \lesssim |\eta|^{-|\alpha|+1} \) for any \( \alpha \in \mathbb{N}^2 \) with \( |\alpha| \geq 1 \). Then \( Op^B(a(x,\eta)) : L^2 \to L^2 \) is bounded and for any \( w \in L^2(\mathbb{R}^2) \)

\[ \|Op^B(a(x,\eta))w\|_{L^2} \lesssim \|a_1\|_{L^\infty} \|w\|_{L^2}. \]

The same result is true for \( Op^B_R(a(x,\eta)) \);

(ii) Map \( (u, v) \in H^{4,\infty} \times L^2 \mapsto R(u, v) \in L^2 \) is well defined and continuous.

**Proof.** As concerns (i) we have that

\[ Op^B(a(x,\eta))w(x) = \int K(x-z, x-y)a_1(y)w(y)dydz \]

with

\[ K(x,y) := \frac{1}{(2\pi)^4} \int e^{ix\eta + iy\zeta} \chi(\frac{\zeta}{\eta}) b(\eta) d\eta d\zeta \]

and \( \chi \) is an admissible cut-off function. After the hypothesis on \( b \) we have that for every \( \alpha, \beta \in \mathbb{N}^2 \),

\[
\left| \partial^\alpha \left[ \chi \left( \frac{\zeta}{\eta} \right) b(\eta) \right] \right| \lesssim \mathbf{1}_{\{|\eta| \leq 1\}} |g_\beta(\zeta)|, \\
\left| \partial^\alpha \partial^\beta \left[ \chi \left( \frac{\zeta}{\eta} \right) b(\eta) \right] \right| \lesssim \mathbf{1}_{\{|\eta| \leq 1\}} |\eta|^{-|\alpha|-1} |g_\beta(\zeta)|, \quad |\alpha| \geq 1,
\]

for some bounded and compactly supported functions \( g_\beta \). Lemma [A.1](i) and corollary [A.2](i) of appendix [A] imply that \( |K(x,y)| \lesssim |x|^{-1}|x|^{-2}y^{-3} \) for any \( (x, y) \), and statement (i) follows by an inequality such as (A.8) with \( L = L^2 \).

In order to prove assertion (ii) we consider a cut-off function \( \psi \in C_0^\infty(\mathbb{R}^2) \) equal to 1 in some closed ball \( B_{C}(0) \), for a \( C \gg 1 \), and decompose \( R(u, v) \) as follows, using (1.2.8):

\[ R(u,v) = \int K_0(x-y,y-z)u(y)v(z)dydz + \int K_1(x-y,y-z)|D_x|^4u(y)v(z)dydz, \]

17
with
\[
K_0(x, y) = \frac{1}{(2\pi)^2} \int e^{ix \cdot \xi + iy \cdot \eta} \left(1 - \chi \left(\frac{\xi - \eta}{\eta}\right) - \chi \left(\frac{\eta}{|\xi - \eta|}\right)\right) \psi(\eta) \, d\xi \, d\eta,
\]
\[
K_1(x, y) = \frac{1}{(2\pi)^2} \int e^{ix \cdot \xi + iy \cdot \eta} \left(1 - \chi \left(\frac{\xi - \eta}{\eta}\right) - \chi \left(\frac{\eta}{|\xi - \eta|}\right)\right) (1 - \psi(\eta)\varphi(2^{-k}\eta)) |\xi - \eta|^{-1} \, d\xi \, d\eta.
\]

Since frequencies \(\xi, \eta\) are both bounded on the support of \(1 - \chi \left(\frac{\xi - \eta}{\eta}\right) - \chi \left(\frac{\eta}{|\xi - \eta|}\right)\), one can show through some integration by parts that \(|K_0(x, y)| \lesssim \langle x \rangle^{-3} \langle y \rangle^{-3}\) for any \((x, y)\), to then deduce that
\[
\left\| \int K_0(x - y, y - z) u(y) v(z) \, dy \, dz \right\|_{L^2(dx)} \lesssim \|u\|_{L^\infty} \|v\|_{L^2}.
\]

Kernel \(K_1(x, y)\) can be split using a Littlewood-Paley decomposition as follows
\[
K_1(x, y) = \sum_{k \geq 1} \frac{1}{(2\pi)^2} \int e^{ix \cdot \xi + iy \cdot \eta} \left(1 - \chi \left(\frac{\xi - \eta}{\eta}\right) - \chi \left(\frac{\eta}{|\xi - \eta|}\right)\right) (1 - \psi(\eta)\varphi(2^{-k}\eta)) |\xi - \eta|^{-1} \, d\xi \, d\eta,
\]
for a suitable \(\varphi \in C_0^\infty(\mathbb{R}^2 \setminus \{0\})\). On the support of \(1 - \chi \left(\frac{\xi - \eta}{\eta}\right) - \chi \left(\frac{\eta}{|\xi - \eta|}\right)\), frequencies \(\eta, \xi - \eta\) are either bounded or equivalent and of size \(2^k\) (which implies in particular that \(|\xi - \eta|^{-4} \lesssim |\xi|^{-3} |\eta|^{-1}\)). After a change of coordinates and some integration by parts one can show that \(|K_{1,k}(x, y)| \lesssim 2^k \langle x \rangle^{-3} \langle 2^k y \rangle^{-3}\), for any \(k \geq 1\), and therefore that
\[
\left\| \int e^{i(x \cdot y) \xi + (y \cdot z) \eta} K_1(x - y, y - z) \langle \langle D_x \rangle^4 u \rangle \langle y \rangle v(z) \, dy \, dz \right\|_{L^2(dx)} \lesssim \sum_{k \geq 1} 2^k \left\| \int \langle x \rangle^{-3} \langle 2^k(y - z) \rangle^{-3} \langle \langle D_x \rangle^4 u \rangle \langle y \rangle \, w(z) \, dy \, dz \right\|_{L^2(dx)} \lesssim \sum_{k \geq 1} 2^k \langle y \rangle^{-3} \langle 2^k y \rangle^{-3} \langle \langle D_x \rangle^4 u \rangle (\cdot - y) \omega (\cdot - y - z) \right\|_{L^2(dx)} \, dy \, dz \lesssim \|u\|_{H^{4,\infty}} \|w\|_{L^2},
\]
which concludes the proof of statement (ii). \(\square\)

The last results of this subsection are stated without proofs. All the details can be found in chapter 6 of [27] (see theorems 6.1.1, 6.1.4, 6.2.1, 6.2.4).

**Proposition 1.2.9 (Composition).** Consider \(a \in S^m_r, b \in S^{m'}_r, r \in \mathbb{N}^*, m, m' \in \mathbb{R}\).

(i) Symbol \(a \ast b := \sum_{|\alpha| < r} \frac{1}{|\alpha|!} \partial_x^\alpha a(x, \xi) \partial_x^\alpha b(x, \xi)\) is well defined in \(S^{m+m'-j}_r\);

(ii) \(Op^B(a)Op^B(b) - Op^B(a \ast b)\) is an operator of order \(\leq m + m' - r\), and for all \(s \in \mathbb{R}\), there exists a constant \(C > 0\) such that, for all \(a \in S^m_r(\mathbb{R}^d), b \in S^{m'}_r(\mathbb{R}^d),\) and \(w \in H^{s+m+m'-r}(\mathbb{R}^d),\)
\[
\|Op^B(a)Op^B(b)w - Op^B(a \ast b)w\|_{H^s} \leq C \left( M^m_r(a; n) M^{m'}_r(b; n_0) + M^m_r(a; n) M^{m'}_r(b; n_0) \right) \|w\|_{H^{s+m+m'-r}},
\]
where \(n_0 = \left[ \frac{d}{2} \right] + 1, n = n_0 + r\). Moreover, \(Op^B(a)Op^B(b) - Op^B(a \ast b) = \sigma_r(x, D_x)\) with
\[
\sigma_r(x, \xi) = (\sigma_{a \ast b})(x, \xi) - \sigma_{a \ast b}(x, \xi)
\]
\[
+ \sum_{|\alpha| = r} \frac{1}{r!(2\pi)^d} \int e^{ix \cdot \xi + it \cdot \eta} \left( \int_0^1 \partial_x^\alpha \sigma_{a \ast b}(x, \xi + t\xi)(1-t)^{r-1} \, dt \right) \theta(\xi, \xi) D_x^\alpha \sigma_b(y, \xi) \, dy \, d\xi.
\]
with \( \theta \equiv 1 \) in a neighbourhood of the support of \( \mathcal{T}_{y \to \eta} \sigma_b(\eta, \xi) \).

These results extend to matrix valued symbols and operators.

**Remark 1.2.10.** If symbol \( a(x, \xi) \) only depends on \( \xi \) then \( \sigma_a \# \sigma_b - \sigma_{a b} = 0 \) and \( \tilde{\sigma}_r \) reduces to the only integral term. Moreover,

\[
(\ref{1.2.12}) \quad \mathcal{T}_{x \to \eta} \tilde{\sigma}_r(\eta, \xi) = \sum_{|\alpha| = r} \frac{1}{\alpha!} \left( \int_0^1 \partial^\alpha_\xi a(\xi + t\eta)(1-t)^{|r|+1-|\alpha|} dt \right) \chi \left( \frac{\eta}{\xi} \right) \eta^\alpha \tilde{b}_r(\eta, \xi),
\]

where \( \chi \left( \frac{\eta}{\xi} \right) \) is the admissible cut-off function defining \( \sigma_b \).

**Corollary 1.2.11.** For \( d = 2 \) and all \( s \in \mathbb{R} \), there exists a constant \( C > 0 \) such that, for \( a \in \mathbb{S}^m_r, b \in \mathbb{S}^m_r, r \in \mathbb{N}^* \), and \( w \in H^{s+m+m'-1} \),

\[
\| \text{Op}^B(a) \text{Op}^B(b)w - \text{Op}(ab)w\|_{H^s} \leq C(M^m_1(a; 3)M^m_0(b; 2) + M^m_0(a; 3)M^m_1(b; 2))\|w\|_{H^{s+m+m'-1}}.
\]

**Proposition 1.2.12 (Adjoint).** Consider \( a \in \mathbb{S}^m_r(\mathbb{R}^d) \), denote by \( \text{Op}^B(a)^* \) the adjoint operator of \( \text{Op}^B(a) \) and by \( a^\ast(x, \xi) = \overline{a}(x, \xi) \) the complex conjugate of \( a(x, \xi) \).

(i) Symbol \( b(x, \xi) := \sum_{|\alpha| < r} \frac{1}{\alpha!} D^\alpha_x a^\ast(x, \xi) \) is well defined in \( \sum_{j<r} \mathbb{S}^m_{r-j} \);

(ii) Operator \( \text{Op}^B(a)^* - \text{Op}^B(b) \) is of order \( m - r \). Precisely, for all \( s \in \mathbb{R} \) there is a constant \( C > 0 \) such that, for all \( a \in \mathbb{S}^m_r(\mathbb{R}^d) \) and \( w \in H^{s+m-r} \),

\[
\| \text{Op}^B(a)^*w - \text{Op}^B(b)w\|_{H^s} \leq CM^m_1(a; n)\|w\|_{H^{s+m-r}},
\]

with \( n_0 = \left[ \frac{d}{2} \right] + 1, n = n_0 + r \).

These results extend to matrix valued symbols \( a \), with \( a^\ast(x, \xi) \) denoting the adjoint of matrix \( a(x, \xi) \).

**Corollary 1.2.13.** For \( d = 2 \) and all \( s \in \mathbb{R} \), there exists a constant \( C > 0 \) such that, for \( a \in \mathbb{S}^m_r, r \in \mathbb{N}^* \) and \( w \in H^{s+m-1} \),

\[
\| \text{Op}^B(a)^*w - \text{Op}(a^\ast)w\|_{H^s} \leq CM^m_1(a; 3)\|w\|_{H^{s+m-1}}.
\]

### 1.2.2 Semi-classical pseudodifferential calculus

In this subsection we recall some definitions and results about semi-classical symbolic calculus in general space dimension \( d \geq 1 \) which will be used in section 3.2. We refer the reader to \([8,32]\) for more details.

**Definition 1.2.14.** An order function on \( \mathbb{R}^d \times \mathbb{R}^d \) is a smooth map from \( \mathbb{R}^d \times \mathbb{R}^d \) to \( \mathbb{R}_+ : (x, \xi) \to M(x, \xi) \) such that there exist \( N_0 \in \mathbb{N}, C > 0 \) and for any \( (x, \xi), (y, \eta) \in \mathbb{R}^d \times \mathbb{R}^d \),

\[
(\ref{1.2.13}) \quad M(y, \eta) \leq C\langle x - y \rangle^{N_0} \langle \xi - \eta \rangle^{N_0} M(x, \xi),
\]

where \( \langle x \rangle = \sqrt{1 + |x|^2} \).

**Definition 1.2.15.** Let \( M \) be an order function on \( \mathbb{R}^d \times \mathbb{R}^d \), \( \delta, \sigma \geq 0 \). One denotes by \( S_{\delta, \sigma}(M) \) the space of smooth functions

\[
(x, \xi, h) \to a(x, \xi, h) \quad \mathbb{R}^d \times \mathbb{R}^d \times [0, 1] \to \mathbb{C}
\]
satisfying for any $\alpha_1, \alpha_2 \in \mathbb{N}^d, k, N \in \mathbb{N}$

\[ |\partial_{x_1}^{\alpha_1} \partial_{x_2}^{\alpha_2} (h \partial_h)^k a(x, \xi, h)| \lesssim M(x, \xi) h^{-\delta(\alpha_1 + \alpha_2)} (1 + \sigma h^\sigma |\xi|)^{-N}. \]

A key role in this paper will be played by symbols $a$ verifying (1.2.14) with $M(x, \xi) = \left(\frac{x + f(\xi)}{\sqrt{h}}\right)^{-N}$, for $N \in \mathbb{N}$ and a certain smooth function $f(\xi)$. This function $M$ is no longer an order function because of the term $h^{-\frac{1}{2}}$, but nevertheless we keep writing $a \in S_{\delta, \sigma}(\left(\frac{x + f(\xi)}{\sqrt{h}}\right)^{-N})$.

**Definition 1.2.16.** In the semi-classical setting we say that $a(x, \xi, h)$ is a symbol of order $r$ if $a \in S_{\delta, \sigma}(\langle \xi \rangle^r)$, for some $\delta, \sigma \geq 0$.

Let us observe that when $\sigma > 0$ the symbol decays rapidly in $h^\sigma |\xi|$, which implies the following inclusion for $r \geq 0$:

$$S_{\delta, \sigma}(\langle \xi \rangle^r) \subset h^{-\sigma r}S_{\delta, \sigma}(1).$$

This means, that, up to a small loss in $h$, this type of symbols can be always considered as symbols of order zero. In the rest of the paper we will not indicate explicitly the dependence of symbols on $h$, referring to $a(x, \xi, h)$ simply as $a(x, \xi)$.

**Definition 1.2.17.** Let $a \in S_{\delta, \sigma}(M)$ for some order function $M$, some $\delta, \sigma \geq 0$.

(i) We can define the *Weyl quantization* of $a$ to be the operator $\text{Op}^w_h(a) = a^w(x,hD)$ acting on $u \in \mathcal{S}(\mathbb{R}^d)$ by the following formula:

$$\text{Op}^w_h(a(x,\xi))u(x) = \frac{1}{(2\pi h)^d} \int_{\mathbb{R}^d} \int_{\mathbb{R}^d} e^{\frac{1}{h} \langle x-y \rangle \cdot \xi} a \left(\frac{x+y}{2}, \xi\right) u(y) \, dy \, d\xi;$$

(ii) We define also the *standard quantization* of $a$:

$$\text{Op}_h(a(x,\xi))u(x) = \frac{1}{(2\pi h)^d} \int_{\mathbb{R}^d} \int_{\mathbb{R}^d} e^{\frac{1}{h} \langle x-y \rangle \cdot \xi} a(x,\xi) u(y) \, dy \, d\xi.$$

It is clear from the definition that the two quantizations coincide when the symbol does not depend on $x$. We also introduce a semi-classical version of Sobolev spaces on which the above operators act naturally.

**Definition 1.2.18.** (i) Let $\rho \in \mathbb{N}$. We define the semi-classical Sobolev space $H^{\rho, \infty}_h(\mathbb{R}^d)$ as the space of tempered distributions $w$ such that $\langle hD \rangle^\rho w := \text{Op}_h(\langle \xi \rangle^\rho)w \in L^\infty$, endowed with norm

$$\|w\|_{H^{\rho, \infty}_h} = \|\langle hD \rangle^\rho w\|_{L^\infty};$$

(ii) Let $s \in \mathbb{R}$. We define the semi-classical Sobolev space $H^s_h(\mathbb{R}^d)$ as the space of tempered distributions $w$ such that $\langle hD \rangle^s w := \text{Op}_h(\langle \xi \rangle^s)w \in L^2$, endowed with norm

$$\|w\|_{H^s} = \|\langle hD \rangle^s w\|_{L^2}.$$

For future references, we write down the semi-classical Sobolev injection in space dimension 2:

\[ \|v_h\|_{H^{\rho, \infty}_h(\mathbb{R}^2)} \lesssim_\sigma h^{-1} \|v_h\|_{H^{\rho + 1 + \sigma}_h(\mathbb{R}^2)}, \quad \forall \sigma > 0. \]

The following two propositions are stated without proof. They concern the adjoint and the composition of pseudo-differential operators. All related details are provided in chapter 7 of [3] or in chapter 4 of [32].
Proposition 1.2.19 (Self-Adjointness). If \( a(x, \xi) \) is a real symbol its Weyl quantization is self-adjoint, i.e.

\[
\left( \text{Op}_h^w(a) \right)^* = \text{Op}_h^w(a)
\]

Proposition 1.2.20 (Composition for Weyl quantization). Let \( a, b \in \mathcal{S}(\mathbb{R}^d) \). Then

\[
\text{Op}_h^w(a) \circ \text{Op}_h^w(b) = \text{Op}_h^w(a \sharp b),
\]

where

\[
a \sharp b = \frac{1}{(\pi \hbar)^{2d}} \int_{\mathbb{R}^d} \int_{\mathbb{R}^d} \int_{\mathbb{R}^d} \int_{\mathbb{R}^d} e^{\frac{2\pi}{\hbar}(y_1 \cdot z_1 + \ldots + y_d \cdot z_d)} a(x + z_1, \xi + \zeta) b(x + y_1, \xi + \eta) \, dy_1 d\eta_1 dz_1 d\zeta,
\]

and

\[
\sigma(y, \eta; z, \zeta) = \eta \cdot z - y \cdot \zeta.
\]

It is often useful to derive an asymptotic expansion for \( a \sharp b \), as it allows easier computations than integral formula \([1.2.10]\). This expansion is usually obtained by applying the stationary phase argument when \( a, b \in \mathcal{S}_{\delta, \sigma_1}(M) \), \( \delta \in [0, \frac{1}{2}] \) (as shown in \([32]\)). Here we provide an expansion at any order even when one of two symbols belongs to \( \mathcal{S}_{\frac{1}{2}, \sigma_1}(M) \) (still having the other in \( \mathcal{S}_{\delta, \sigma_2}(M) \) for \( \delta < \frac{1}{2} \), and \( \sigma_1, \sigma_2 \) either equal or, if not, one of them equal to zero), whose proof is based on the Taylor development of symbols \( a, b \), and can be found in the appendix of \([29]\) (for \( d = 1 \)).

Proposition 1.2.21. Let \( M_1, M_2 \) be two order functions and \( a \in \mathcal{S}_{\delta_1, \sigma_1}(M_1) \), \( b \in \mathcal{S}_{\delta_2, \sigma_2}(M_2) \), \( \delta_1, \delta_2 \in [0, \frac{1}{2}] \), \( \delta_1 + \delta_2 < 1 \), \( \sigma_1, \sigma_2 \geq 0 \) such that

\[
\sigma_1 = \sigma_2 \geq 0 \quad \text{or} \quad [\sigma_1 \neq \sigma_2 \text{ and } \sigma_i = 0, \sigma_j > 0, i \neq j \in \{1, 2\}].
\]

Then \( a \sharp b \in \mathcal{S}_{\delta, \sigma}(M_1 M_2) \), where \( \delta = \max\{\delta_1, \delta_2\} \), \( \sigma = \max\{\sigma_1, \sigma_2\} \). Moreover,

\[
a \sharp b = \sum_{\alpha=\{\alpha_1, \alpha_2\}, |\alpha| = 0, \ldots, N} \frac{(-1)^{|\alpha_1|}}{\alpha!} \left( \frac{\hbar}{2i} \right)^{|\alpha|} \partial_x^{\alpha_1} \partial_\xi^{\alpha_2} a(x, \xi) \partial_x^{\alpha_2} \partial_\xi^{\alpha_1} b(x, \xi) + r_N,
\]

where \( r_N \in h^{N(1-(\delta_1+\delta_2))} \mathcal{S}_{\delta, \sigma}(M_1 M_2) \) and

\[
r_N(x, \xi) = \left( \frac{\hbar}{2i} \right)^N \frac{N}{(\pi \hbar)^{2d}} \sum_{\alpha=\{\alpha_1, \alpha_2\}, |\alpha|=N} \frac{(-1)^{|\alpha_1|}}{\alpha!} \int_{\mathbb{R}^d} e^{\frac{2\pi}{\hbar}(\eta \cdot z - y \cdot \zeta)}
\]

\[
\times \left( \int_0^1 \partial_{\xi}^{\alpha_1} \partial_{\zeta}^{\alpha_2} a(x + tz, \xi + t\zeta) (1 - t)^{N-1} dt \right) \partial_x^{\alpha_2} \partial_\xi^{\alpha_1} b(x + y, \xi + \eta) \, dy d\eta dz d\zeta,
\]

or

\[
r_N(x, \xi) = \left( \frac{\hbar}{2i} \right)^N \frac{N}{(\pi \hbar)^{2d}} \sum_{\alpha=\{\alpha_1, \alpha_2\}, |\alpha|=N} \frac{(-1)^{|\alpha_1|}}{\alpha!} \int_{\mathbb{R}^d} e^{\frac{2\pi}{\hbar}(\eta \cdot z - y \cdot \zeta)} \partial_x^{\alpha_1} \partial_\xi^{\alpha_2} a(x + z, \xi + \zeta) \partial_x^{\alpha_2} \partial_\xi^{\alpha_1} b(x + y, \xi + \eta) \, dy d\eta dz d\zeta.
\]

More generally, if \( h^{N\delta_1} \partial^{\alpha} a \in \mathcal{S}_{\delta_1, \sigma_1}(M_1^N) \), \( h^{N\delta_2} \partial^{\alpha} b \in \mathcal{S}_{\delta_2, \sigma_2}(M_2^N) \), for \( |\alpha| = N \) and some order functions \( M_1^N, M_2^N \), then \( r_N \in h^{N(1-(\delta_1+\delta_2))} \mathcal{S}_{\delta, \sigma}(M_1^N M_2^N) \).
Remark 1.2.22. From the previous proposition it follows that, if symbols \( a \in S_{\delta_1,\sigma_1}(M_1) \), \( b \in S_{\delta_2,\sigma_2}(M_2) \) are such that \( \text{supp} a \cap \text{supp} b = \emptyset \), then \( a \sharp b = O(h^\infty) \), meaning that, for every \( N \in \mathbb{N} \), \( a \sharp b = r_N \) with \( r_N \in h^{N(1-(\delta_1+\delta_2))}S_{\delta,\sigma}(M_1M_2) \).

Remark 1.2.23. We draw the reader’s attention to the fact that symbol \( \sharp \) is used simultaneously in Bony calculus (see proposition 1.2.9) and in Weyl semi-classical calculus (as in (1.2.18)) with two different meaning. However, we avoid to introduce different notations as it will be clear by the context if we are dealing with the former or the latter one.

The result of proposition 1.2.21 and remark 1.2.22 are still true even when one of the two order functions, or both, has the form \( (\frac{x+f(\xi)}{h})^{-1} \), for a smooth function \( f(\xi) \), \( \nabla f(\xi) \) bounded, as stated below (see the appendix of [29]).

Lemma 1.2.24. Let \( f(\xi): \mathbb{R}^d \to \mathbb{R} \) be a smooth function, with \( |\nabla f(\xi)| \) bounded. Consider \( a \in S_{\delta_1,\sigma_1}(\frac{(x+f(\xi))}{\sqrt{h}})^{-m}, m \in \mathbb{N}, \) and \( b \in S_{\delta_2,\sigma_2}(M), \) for \( M \) order function or \( M(x,\xi) = \frac{(x+f(\xi))}{\sqrt{h}}^{-n}, n \in \mathbb{N}, \) some \( \delta_1 \in [0,\frac{1}{2}], \delta_2 \in [0,\frac{1}{2}], \sigma_1,\sigma_2 \geq 0 \) as in (1.2.17). Then \( a \sharp b \in S_{\delta_\sigma}(\frac{(x+f(\xi))}{\sqrt{h}})^{-m}M \), where \( \delta = \max\{\delta_1,\delta_2\}, \sigma = \max\{\sigma_1,\sigma_2\} \), and the asymptotic expansion (1.2.18) holds, with \( r_N \in h^{N(1-(\delta_1+\delta_2))}S_{\delta,\sigma}(\frac{(x+f(\xi))}{\sqrt{h}})^{-m}M \) given by (1.2.19) (or equivalently (1.2.20)).

More generally, if \( h^{N\delta_1}\partial^\alpha a \in S_{\delta_1,\sigma_1}(\frac{(x+f(\xi))}{\sqrt{h}})^{-m'} \) and \( h^{N\delta_2}\partial^\beta b \in S_{\delta_2,\sigma_2}(M^N) \), \( |\alpha| = N, M^N \) order function or \( M(x,\xi) = \frac{(x+f(\xi))}{\sqrt{h}}^{-n'}, \) for some \( m',n' \in \mathbb{N}, \) then remainder \( r_N \) belongs to \( h^{N(1-(\delta_1+\delta_2))}S_{\delta,\sigma}(\frac{(x+f(\xi))}{\sqrt{h}})^{-m'}M^N \).

1.2.3 Semi-classical Operators for the Wave Solution: Some Estimates

From now on we place ourselves in space dimension \( d = 2 \). This technical subsection focuses on the introduction and the analysis of some particular operators that we will use when dealing with the wave component in the semi-classical framework (subsection 1.2.2). More precisely, lemma 1.2.25 will be often recalled to prove that some operator belongs to \( \mathcal{L}(L^2;L^\infty) \) and compute its norm; propositions 1.2.27 [1.2.30] concern the continuity of some important operators like \( \Gamma^{\omega,k} \) defined in (3.2.41), while propositions 1.2.28 [1.2.31] are devoted to prove the continuity of some other operators often arising when considering the quantization of symbolic integral remainders. Finally, lemmas 1.2.33 and 1.2.35 deal with the development of some special symbolic products. While [1.2.35] will be used several times throughout the paper, lemma 1.2.35 is stated explicitly on purpose to prove lemma 3.2.13.

Lemma 1.2.25. There exists a constant \( C > 0 \) such that, for any function \( A(x,\xi) \) with \( \partial_\xi^\alpha \partial_\xi^\beta A \in L^2(\mathbb{R}^2 \times \mathbb{R}^2) \) for \( |\alpha|,|\beta| \leq 3, \) and any function \( w \in L^2(\mathbb{R}^2), \)

\[
(1.2.21) \quad |\text{Op}_h^w(A(x,\xi))w(x)| \leq C||w||_{L^2} \int_{\mathbb{R}^2} (x-y)^{-3} \sum_{|\alpha|,|\beta| \leq 3} ||\partial_\gamma^\alpha \partial_\xi^\beta [A\left(\frac{x+y}{2},h\xi\right)]||_{L^2(\mathbb{R}^2)} dy.
\]

Moreover, if \( A(x,\xi) \) is compactly supported in \( x \) there exists a smooth function, supported in a neighbourhood of \( \text{supp} A \), such that

\[
(1.2.22) \quad |\text{Op}_h^w(A(x,\xi))w(x)| \leq C||w||_{L^2} \int_{\mathbb{R}^2} |\partial_\gamma^\alpha [A\left(\frac{x+y}{2},h\xi\right)]||_{L^2(\mathbb{R}^2)} dy.
\]

Proof. Let us prove the statement for \( A \in S(\mathbb{R}^2 \times \mathbb{R}^2) \) and \( w \in S(\mathbb{R}^2) \). The density of \( S(\mathbb{R}^2 \times \mathbb{R}^2) \) into \( \{A \in L^2(\mathbb{R}^2 \times \mathbb{R}^2)|\partial_\xi^\alpha \partial_\xi^\beta A \in L^2(\mathbb{R}^2 \times \mathbb{R}^2),|\alpha|,|\beta| \leq 3\} \) and of \( S(\mathbb{R}^2) \) into \( L^2(\mathbb{R}^2) \) will then
justifying the definition of $\text{Op}_h(A(x, \xi))w$ for $A$ and $w$ as in the statement, together with inequalities (1.2.21), (1.2.22).

Using integration by parts, Cauchy-Schwarz inequality, and Young’s inequality for convolutions, we can write the following:

$$\left| \text{Op}_h(A(x, \xi))w(x) \right| = \frac{1}{(2\pi)^2} \left| \int_{\mathbb{R}^4} e^{i(x-y) \cdot \xi} A\left(\frac{x+y}{2}, h\xi\right) w(y) \, dy \, d\xi \right|$$

$$= \frac{1}{(2\pi)^4} \int_{\mathbb{R}^2} \hat{w}(\eta) \int_{\mathbb{R}^2} \int_{\mathbb{R}^2} e^{i(x-y) \cdot \xi + iy \cdot \eta} A\left(\frac{x+y}{2}, h\xi\right) \, dy \, d\xi \, d\eta$$

$$= \frac{1}{(2\pi)^4} \int_{\mathbb{R}^2} \hat{w}(\eta) \int_{\mathbb{R}^2} \int_{\mathbb{R}^2} \left(1 - i(x - y) \cdot \frac{\partial}{\partial \xi}\right)^3 \left(1 + i(\xi - \eta) \cdot \frac{\partial}{\partial y}\right)^3 e^{i(x-y) \cdot \xi + iy \cdot \eta}$$

$$\times A\left(\frac{x+y}{2}, h\xi\right) \, dy \, d\xi \, d\eta$$

$$\leq \int_{\mathbb{R}^2} \left| \hat{w}(\eta) \right| \int_{\mathbb{R}^2} \left| (x - y)^{-3} (\xi - \eta)^{-3} \sum_{|\alpha|, |\beta| \leq 3} \left| \frac{\partial^\alpha}{\partial y^\alpha} \frac{\partial^\beta}{\partial \xi^\beta} A\left(\frac{x+y}{2}, h\xi\right) \right| \right| \, dy \, d\xi \, d\eta$$

$$\leq \left\| \hat{w} \right\|_{L^2(\text{d}y \, \text{d}z)} \left\| (\eta)^{-3} \right\|_{L^1(\text{d}y \, \text{d}z)} \int_{\mathbb{R}^2} \left| (x - y)^{-3} \sum_{|\alpha|, |\beta| \leq 3} \left| \frac{\partial^\alpha}{\partial y^\alpha} \frac{\partial^\beta}{\partial \xi^\beta} A\left(\frac{x+y}{2}, h\xi\right) \right| \right| \, dy$$

$$\leq \left\| w \right\|_{L^2} \int_{\mathbb{R}^2} \left| (x - y)^{-3} \sum_{|\alpha|, |\beta| \leq 3} \left| \frac{\partial^\alpha}{\partial y^\alpha} \frac{\partial^\beta}{\partial \xi^\beta} A\left(\frac{x+y}{2}, h\xi\right) \right| \right| \, dy .$$

If symbol $A(x, \xi)$ is compactly supported in $x$ we can consider a smooth function $\theta' \in C_0^\infty(\mathbb{R})$, identically equal to 1 on the support of $A(x, \xi)$, and write

$$\left| \text{Op}_h(A(x, \xi))w(x) \right| = \frac{1}{(2\pi)^2} \left| \int_{\mathbb{R}^2} \hat{w}(\eta) \, d\eta \int_{\mathbb{R}^2} \left(1 - i(x - y) \cdot \frac{\partial}{\partial \xi}\right)^3 e^{i(x-y) \cdot \xi + iy \cdot \eta}$$

$$\times A\left(\frac{x+y}{2}, h\xi\right) \, dy \, d\xi \right|$$

$$\leq \int_{\mathbb{R}^2} \left| \hat{w}(\eta) \right| \, d\eta \int_{\mathbb{R}^2} \left| \theta'\left(\frac{x+y}{2}\right) \left| (\xi - \eta)^{-3} \sum_{|\alpha| \leq 3} \left| \frac{\partial^\alpha}{\partial y^\alpha} A\left(\frac{x+y}{2}, h\xi\right) \right| \right| \right| \, dy \, d\xi \, d\eta$$

$$\leq \left\| w \right\|_{L^2} \int_{\mathbb{R}^2} \left| \theta'\left(\frac{x+y}{2}\right) \sum_{|\alpha| \leq 3} \left| \frac{\partial^\alpha}{\partial y^\alpha} A\left(\frac{x+y}{2}, h\xi\right) \right| \right| \, dy .$$

A very important role in this subsection and in subsection 3.2.2 will be played by functions of the form $\gamma \left(\frac{\xi}{h^{\sigma/2}}, h\xi\right) \psi(2^{-k} \xi)$, where $\gamma \in C^\infty(\mathbb{R}^2)$ is such that $|\partial^\alpha \gamma(z)| \lesssim \langle z \rangle^{-|\alpha|}$, $\psi \in C_0^\infty(\mathbb{R}^2 \setminus \{0\})$, $\sigma > 0$ is a small fixed constant and $k$ is an integer belonging to set $K$, with

$$K := \{ k \in \mathbb{Z} : h \lesssim 2^k \lesssim h^{-\sigma} \} .$$

In various results, such as proposition 1.2.30 we will need a more decaying smooth function $\gamma_1$ verifying that $|\partial^\alpha \gamma_1(z)| \lesssim \langle z \rangle^{-1+|\alpha|}$. We introduce here some notations we will keep throughout the whole paper:

**Notation 1.** For any $n \in \mathbb{N}$, $\gamma_n$ denotes a smooth function in $\mathbb{R}^2$ such that $|\partial^\alpha \gamma_n(z)| \lesssim \langle z \rangle^{-n+|\alpha|}$, for any $\alpha \in \mathbb{N}^2$. We use the simplest notation $\gamma$ for $\gamma_0$.

**Notation 2.** For any integer $m \in \mathbb{Z}$, $b_m(\xi)$ will denote any function satisfying $|\partial^\beta b_m(\xi)| \lesssim \langle \xi \rangle^{m-|\beta|}$, for any $\xi$ in its domain, any $\beta \in \mathbb{N}^2$.

23
Furthermore, if \( \theta = \theta(x) \in C^\infty_0(\mathbb{R}^2) \), there exists a set \( \{ \theta_k(x) \}_{1 \leq k \leq |\beta|} \) of smooth compactly supported functions such that

\[
(1.2.25) \quad \theta(x) \partial_x^\alpha \partial_\xi^\beta \left[ \gamma_n \left( \frac{x|\xi| - \frac{s}{h^{1/2-\sigma}}} h^{1/2-\sigma} \right) \right] = \sum_{k=1}^{|\beta|} h^{-|\alpha|+k} \left( \frac{x|\xi| - \frac{s}{h^{1/2-\sigma}}} h^{1/2-\sigma} \right) \gamma_{n+k} \left( \frac{x|\xi| - \frac{s}{h^{1/2-\sigma}}} h^{1/2-\sigma} \right) b_k(x) b_{|\beta|-k}(\xi).
\]

Proof. Let \( \delta_{ij} \) be the Kronecker delta and \( \sum' \) be a concise notation to indicate a linear combination. For \( i = 1, 2 \),

\[
(1.2.26) \quad \partial_{\xi_i} \left[ \gamma_n \left( \frac{x|\xi| - \frac{s}{h^{1/2-\sigma}}} h^{1/2-\sigma} \right) \right] = h^{-\left( \frac{1}{2} - \sigma \right)} \sum_{j=1}^2 (\partial_{\xi_j} \gamma_n) \left( \frac{x|\xi| - \frac{s}{h^{1/2-\sigma}}} h^{1/2-\sigma} \right) (x_j \xi_i |\xi| - \delta_{ij})
\]

\[
= \sum_{j=1}^2 (\partial_{\xi_j} \gamma_n) \left( \frac{x|\xi| - \frac{s}{h^{1/2-\sigma}}} h^{1/2-\sigma} \right) (x_j \xi_i |\xi| - \delta_{ij} |\xi||\xi| - 2 \delta_{ij}),
\]

which can be summarized saying that

\[
\partial_{\xi_i} \left[ \gamma_n \left( \frac{x|\xi| - \frac{s}{h^{1/2-\sigma}}} h^{1/2-\sigma} \right) \right] = \sum' \gamma_n \left( \frac{x|\xi| - \frac{s}{h^{1/2-\sigma}}} h^{1/2-\sigma} \right) b_{-1} + h^{-\left( \frac{1}{2} - \sigma \right)} \gamma_{n+1} \left( \frac{x|\xi| - \frac{s}{h^{1/2-\sigma}}} h^{1/2-\sigma} \right) b_0(\xi),
\]

for some new functions \( \gamma_n, \gamma_{n+1}, b_0, b_{-1} \). Iterating this argument one finds that, for all \( \beta \in \mathbb{N}^2 \),

\[
\partial_{\xi}^\beta \left[ \gamma_n \left( \frac{x|\xi| - \frac{s}{h^{1/2-\sigma}}} h^{1/2-\sigma} \right) \right] = \sum_{k=0, \ldots, |\beta|} \gamma_{n+k+1} \left( \frac{x|\xi| - \frac{s}{h^{1/2-\sigma}}} h^{1/2-\sigma} \right) b_{k-|\beta|}(\xi),
\]

and obtains (1.2.24) using that, for any \( m \in \mathbb{N}, \alpha \in \mathbb{N}^2 \),

\[
(1.2.27) \quad \partial_x^\alpha \left[ \gamma_m \left( \frac{x|\xi| - \frac{s}{h^{1/2-\sigma}}} h^{1/2-\sigma} \right) \right] = h^{-|\alpha| \left( \frac{1}{2} - \sigma \right)} \gamma_m \left( \frac{x|\xi| - \frac{s}{h^{1/2-\sigma}}} h^{1/2-\sigma} \right) |\xi|^{|\alpha|}.
\]

Equality (1.2.25) is obtained replacing (1.2.26) with

\[
\theta(x) \partial_{\xi_i} \left[ \gamma_n \left( \frac{x|\xi| - \frac{s}{h^{1/2-\sigma}}} h^{1/2-\sigma} \right) \right] = h^{-\left( \frac{1}{2} - \sigma \right)} \sum_{j=1}^2 (\partial_{\xi_j} \gamma_n) \left( \frac{x|\xi| - \frac{s}{h^{1/2-\sigma}}} h^{1/2-\sigma} \right) (\theta(x) x_j \xi_i |\xi| - 1 - \theta(x) \delta_{ij})
\]

\[
= \sum' h^{-\left( \frac{1}{2} - \sigma \right)} \gamma_{n+1} \left( \frac{x|\xi| - \frac{s}{h^{1/2-\sigma}}} h^{1/2-\sigma} \right) \theta_1(x) b_0(\xi),
\]

where \( \theta_1(x) \) is a new compactly supported function. By iteration one finds that, for any \( \beta \in \mathbb{N}^2 \), there is a set of \( |\beta| \) compactly supported functions \( \theta_k(x), 1 \leq k \leq |\beta| \), such that

\[
\theta(x) \partial_{\xi}^\beta \left[ \gamma_n \left( \frac{x|\xi| - \frac{s}{h^{1/2-\sigma}}} h^{1/2-\sigma} \right) \right] = \sum_{k=1}^{|\beta|} h^{-k \left( \frac{1}{2} - \sigma \right)} \gamma_{n+k} \left( \frac{x|\xi| - \frac{s}{h^{1/2-\sigma}}} h^{1/2-\sigma} \right) \theta_k(x) b_{k-|\beta|}(\xi),
\]

which combined with (1.2.27) gives (1.2.25).
In some of the following results we denote by \( \Theta_h \) the operator of change of coordinates

\[
\Theta_h w(x) = w(\sqrt{h}x),
\]

for any \( h \in [0,1] \), and use that for any symbol \( a(x,\xi) \),

\[
(1.2.28) \quad \text{Op}_h^w(a(x,\xi)) = \Theta_h \text{Op}_h^w(\tilde{a}(x,\xi)) \Theta_h^{-1},
\]

with \( \tilde{a}(x,\xi) = a\left(\frac{x}{\sqrt{h}}, \sqrt{h}\xi\right) \).

**Proposition 1.2.27** (Continuity on \( L^2 \)). Let \( \sigma > 0 \) be sufficiently small, \( K \) be the set defined in (1.2.23), \( k \in K \) and \( p \in \mathbb{Z} \). Let also \( \psi \in C_0^\infty(\mathbb{R}^2 \setminus \{0\}) \) and \( a(x) \) be a smooth function, bounded together with all its derivatives. Then \( \text{Op}_h^w(\gamma(\frac{x|\xi| - \xi}{h^{1/2-\sigma}})\psi(2^{-k}\xi)a(x)b_p(\xi)) : L^2 \rightarrow L^2 \) is bounded and

\[
(1.2.29) \quad \left\| \text{Op}_h^w\left(\gamma(\frac{x|\xi| - \xi}{h^{1/2-\sigma}})\psi(2^{-k}\xi)a(x)b_p(\xi)\right) \right\|_{L^2(L^2)} \lesssim 2^{kp}.
\]

**Proof.** Let \( A(x,\xi) = \gamma(\frac{x|\xi| - \xi}{h^{1/2-\sigma}})\psi(2^{-k}\xi)a(x)b_p(\xi) \). For indices \( k \in K \) such that \( h^{1/2-\sigma} \lesssim 2^k \lesssim h^{-\sigma} \) the statement follows from the fact that \( A(x,\xi) \in 2^{kp}S_{\frac{1}{2},0}^1(1) \) and by theorem 7.11 of [3].

For \( k \in K \) such that \( h \lesssim 2^k \lesssim h^{1/2-\sigma} \), \( \tilde{A}(x,\xi) := A(x,\xi) \in 2^{kp}S_{\frac{1}{2},0}^1(1) \) and the result follows by theorem 7.11 of [3] and equality (1.2.28). \( \square \)

**Proposition 1.2.28.** Let \( \sigma, k, p \) be as in the previous proposition. Let also \( q \in \mathbb{Z} \), \( \tilde{\psi} \in C_0^\infty(\mathbb{R}^2 \setminus \{0\}) \), \( a'(x) \) be a smooth function, bounded together with all its derivatives, and \( f \in C(\mathbb{R}) \). Define

\[
(1.2.30) \quad I_{p,q}^k(x,\xi) := \frac{1}{(\pi h)^4} \int e^{\frac{2\pi i}{\pi h}(y-z)} \left[ \int_0^1 \left( \gamma\left(\frac{x|\xi| - \xi}{h^{1/2-\sigma}}\right)\psi(2^{-k}\xi)a(x)b_p(\xi)\right)|_{(x+tz,\xi+t\xi)} f(t) dt \right. \times \tilde{\psi}(2^{-k}(\xi + \eta))a'(x+y)b_q(\xi + \eta) \right] dydzd\eta d\xi
\]

and

\[
(1.2.31) \quad J_{p,q}^k(x,\xi) := \frac{1}{(\pi h)^4} \int e^{\frac{2\pi i}{\pi h}(y-z)} \left[ \int_0^1 \tilde{\psi}(2^{-k}(\xi + t\xi))a'(x+tz)b_q(\xi + t\xi) f(t) dt \right. \times \gamma\left(\frac{x|\xi| - \xi}{h^{1/2-\sigma}}\right)\psi(2^{-k}\xi)a(x)b_p(\xi)\left.|_{(x+y,\xi+\eta)} \right] dydzd\eta d\xi.
\]

Then \( \text{Op}_h^w(I_{p,q}^k(x,\xi)) \) and \( \text{Op}_h^w(J_{p,q}^k(x,\xi)) \) are bounded operators on \( L^2 \) and

\[
\left\| \text{Op}_h^w(I_{p,q}^k(x,\xi)) \right\|_{L^2(L^2)} + \left\| \text{Op}_h^w(J_{p,q}^k(x,\xi)) \right\|_{L^2(L^2)} \lesssim 2^{k(p+q)}.
\]

The same results holds also if \( q = 0 \) and \( \tilde{\psi}(2^{-k}\xi)b_q(\xi) \equiv 1 \).

**Proof.** We show the result for \( \text{Op}_h^w(I_{p,q}^k) \), leaving the reader to check that a similar argument can be used for \( \text{Op}_h^w(J_{p,q}^k) \).

We distinguish between two ranges of frequencies. For indices \( k \in K \) such that \( h^{1/2-\sigma} \lesssim 2^k \lesssim h^{-\sigma} \) we observe that \( I_{p,q}^k(x,\xi) \in 2^{k(p+q)}S_{\frac{1}{2},0}^1(1) \). Indeed, \( \gamma(\frac{x|\xi| - \xi}{h^{1/2-\sigma}})\psi(2^{-k}\xi)a(x)b_p(\xi) \in 2^{kp}S_{\frac{1}{2},0}^1(1) \)
by lemma 1.2.26 while \( \tilde{\psi}(2^{-k}\xi a'(x)b_\eta(\xi) \in 2^kqS_{2^{-\sigma}}(1) \). Hence performing a change of variables \( y \mapsto \sqrt{h}\eta, z \mapsto \sqrt{h}\zeta, \eta \mapsto \sqrt{h}\eta, \zeta \mapsto \sqrt{h}\zeta \), writing (1.2.32)
\[
e^{2i(\eta z - y \zeta)} = \left( \frac{1 + 2iy \cdot \partial_z}{1 + 4|y|^2} \right)^3 \left( \frac{1 - 2iz \cdot \partial_y}{1 + 4|z|^2} \right)^3 \left( \frac{1 - 2i\eta \cdot \partial_z}{1 + 4|\eta|^2} \right)^3 \left( \frac{1 + 2i\zeta \cdot \partial_y}{1 + 4|\zeta|^2} \right)^3 e^{2i(\eta z - y \zeta)},
\]
and integrating by parts in all variables, we get that
\[
\left| T_{p,q}^k(x,\xi) \right| \lesssim 2^{k(p+q)} \int \langle y \rangle^{-3/2} \langle z \rangle^{-3/2} \langle \eta \rangle^{-3/2} \langle \xi \rangle^{-3/2} dxdyd\eta d\xi \lesssim 2^{k(p+q)},
\]
without any loss in \( h^{-\delta} \) due to the fact that we are considering symbols \( A(x,\xi) \in S_{b,\sigma}(1) \) with \( \delta \in \{0,1/2-\sigma,1/2\} \), and the derivatives of \( A(x+\sqrt{h}\eta,\xi+\sqrt{h}\eta) \) (resp. \( A(x+t\sqrt{h}z,\xi+t\sqrt{h}\zeta) \)) with respect to \( y \) and \( \eta \) (resp. with respect to \( z \) and \( \zeta \)). In a similar way one can also prove that \( |\partial_\xi \partial_\eta T_{p,q}^k(x,\xi) \rangle \lesssim_{a,b} h^{-\frac{3}{2}(|a|+|\beta|)}2^{k(p+q)} \), for any \( a,\beta \in \mathbb{N}^2 \). Theorem 7.11 of [8] implies then the statement in this case.

For indices \( k \in K \) such that \( h \lesssim 2^k \leq h^{1/2-\sigma} \) we observe that
\[
\gamma \left( \frac{x}{h^{1/2-\sigma}} \right) \tilde{\psi}(2^{-k}\sqrt{h}\xi) a \left( \frac{x}{\sqrt{h}} \right) b_\eta(\sqrt{h}\xi) \in 2^kqS_{2^{-\sigma}}(1),
\]
\[
\widetilde{\psi}(2^{-k}\sqrt{h}\xi) a' \left( \frac{x}{\sqrt{h}} \right) b_\eta(\sqrt{h}\xi) \in 2^kqS_{2^{-\sigma}}(1).
\]

Then \( \tilde{T}_{p,q}^k(x,\xi) = T_{p,q}^k \left( \frac{x}{\sqrt{h}}, \sqrt{h}\xi \right) \in 2^{k(p+q)}S_{2^{-\sigma},0}(1) \) and theorem 7.11 of [8] along with equality (1.2.28) imply that \( \text{Op}_{h}^k(T_{p,q}^k) : L^2 \rightarrow L^2 \) is bounded, uniformly in \( h \).

The last part of the statement can be proved following an analogous scheme, after having previously made an integration in \( dzd\eta \) (or in \( dyd\zeta \) if dealing with \( j_{p,0}^k \)).

**Proposition 1.2.29** (Continuity on \( L^p \)). Let \( 1 \leq p \leq +\infty, \gamma \in C_0^\infty(\mathbb{R}^2) \) be radial, \( \psi \in C_0^\infty(\mathbb{R}^2 \setminus \{0\}) \), \( a(x) \) be a smooth function, bounded together with all its derivatives. Let also \( \sigma > 0 \) be small, \( k \in K \) with \( K \) given by (1.2.23) and \( q \in \mathbb{Z} \). Then \( \text{Op}_h^k \left( \gamma \left( \frac{x}{h^{1/2-\sigma}} \right) \psi(2^{-k}\xi) a(x)b_\eta(\xi) \right) : L^p \rightarrow L^p \) is a bounded operator with
\[
\left\| \text{Op}_h^k \left( \gamma \left( \frac{x}{h^{1/2-\sigma}} \right) \psi(2^{-k}\xi) a(x)b_\eta(\xi) \right) \right\|_{L^p(L^p)} \lesssim 2^{kq}.
\]

**Proof.** In order to prove the result of the statement we need to show that kernel \( K^k(x,y) \) associated to \( \text{Op}_h^k \left( \gamma \left( \frac{x}{h^{1/2-\sigma}} \right) \psi(2^{-k}\xi) a(x)b_\eta(\xi) \right) \), i.e.
\[
K^k(x,y) := \frac{1}{(2\pi h)^{\frac{3}{2}}} \int e^{\frac{1}{h}(x-y)\cdot\xi} \gamma \left( \frac{x+y}{2} \cdot \xi - \frac{x}{h^{1/2-\sigma}} \right) \psi(2^{-k}\xi) a \left( \frac{x+y}{2} \right) b_\eta(\xi) d\xi,
\]
is such that
\[
\sup_x \int |K^k(x,y)| dy \lesssim 2^{kq}, \quad \sup_y \int |K^k(x,y)| dx \lesssim 2^{kq}.
\]
From the symmetry between variables \( x, y \), it will be enough to show that one of the two above inequalities is satisfied. To do that we study \( K^k \) separately in different spatial regions, distinguishing also between indices \( k \in K \) such that \( 2^k \leq h^{1/2-\sigma} \) and \( 2^k > h^{1/2-\sigma} \). We hence introduce three smooth cut-off functions \( \theta_s, \theta_b, \theta \), supported respectively for \( |x| \leq m \ll 1, |x| \geq M \gg 1, \)
Case I: Let us consider \( k \in K \) such that \( h \lesssim 2^k \leq h^{1/2-\sigma} \). According to the above decomposition we have that

\[
K^k(x,y) = K^k_s(x,y) + K^k_b(x,y) + K^k_1(x,y),
\]

with clear meaning of kernels \( K^k_s, K^k_b, K^k_1 \). Let us first prove that

\[
\sup_{x} \int |K^k_s(x,y)|dy + \sup_{x} \int |K^k_b(x,y)|dy \lesssim 2^{kq}. \tag{1.2.34}
\]

So making a change of coordinates \( \xi \mapsto 2^k\xi \) and some integration by parts we derive that

\[
|K^k(x,y)| \lesssim 2^{kq}(2^k h^{-1})^3 \left(2^k h^{-1}(x-y)\right)^{-3},
\]

for every \((x,y) \in \mathbb{R}^2 \times \mathbb{R}^2\). The same argument applies to \( K^k_b(x,y) \), hence taking the \( L^1 \) norm we obtain \((1.2.34)\).

As concerns kernel \( K^k_1(x,y) \), we deduce from \((1.2.26)\) the fact that \( \theta_1(x) \) is supported for \( |x| \sim 1 \), and that \( 2^k \lesssim h^{1/2-\sigma} \), the following inequality:

\[
\left| \partial_\xi^\beta A^k_s(\frac{x+y}{2},2^k\xi) \right| \lesssim 2^{k|\beta|} \left(2^k(2^k h^{-1})^3 \left(2^k h^{-1}(x-y)\right)^{-3}\right),
\]

for \((x,y) \in \mathbb{R}^2 \times \mathbb{R}^2\). The same argument applies to \( K^k_b(x,y) \), hence taking the \( L^1 \) norm we obtain \((1.2.34)\).

Performing a change of coordinates \( \xi \mapsto 2^k\xi \) and making some integration by parts one finds that

\[
|K^k_1(x,y)| \lesssim 2^{kq}(2^k h^{-1})^2 \left(2^k h^{-1}(x-y)\right)^{-3}, \quad \forall (x,y),
\]

and consequently that

\[
\sup_{x} \int |K^k(x,y)|dy \lesssim 2^{kq}.
\]

Summing up with \((1.2.34)\), this gives us that

\[
\text{Op}_{h}^{w}(A^k(x,\xi)) = \text{Op}_{h}^{w}(A^k_s(x,\xi)) + \text{Op}_{h}^{w}(A^k_b(x,\xi)) + \text{Op}_{h}^{w}(A^k_1(x,\xi))
\]

is a bounded operator on \( L^p \), for every \( 1 \leq p \leq +\infty \), with norm \( O(2^{kq}) \).
Case II: Let us now suppose that $k \in K$ is such that $h^{1/2-\sigma} < 2^k \leq h^{-\sigma}$. From (1.2.35) we have that $\tilde{A}_k^p(x, \xi) = A_k^p\left(\frac{x}{\sqrt{h}}, \sqrt{h}\xi\right)$ satisfies

$$\left|\partial_\xi^\beta \tilde{A}_k^p(x, \xi)\right| \lesssim \sum_{|\beta|_1 \leq |\beta|} h^{\frac{|\beta|}{2}} |\sqrt{h}\xi|^{-|\beta_1|} 2^{-k(|\beta|-|\beta_1|)+kq} \mathbb{1}_{|\xi| \sim 2^kh^{-1/2}},$$

for every $(x, \xi) \in \mathbb{R}^2 \times \mathbb{R}^2$, and hence

$$\left|\partial_\xi^\beta \tilde{A}_k^p(x, 2^kh^{-1/2}\xi)\right| \lesssim \sum_{|\beta|_1 \leq |\beta|} 2^{|\beta|} |2^k\xi|^{-|\beta_1|} 2^{-k(|\beta|-|\beta_1|)+kq} \mathbb{1}_{|\xi| \sim 2^kh^{-1/2}} \lesssim 2^{kq} \mathbb{1}_{|\xi| \sim 1}.$$

By making a change of coordinates $\xi \mapsto 2^k h^{-1/2} \xi$, some integrations by parts and using the above inequality, one can show that kernel $\tilde{K}_k^p(x, y)$ associated to $\text{Op}_k^p(A_k^p(x, \xi))$, i.e.

$$\tilde{K}_k^p(x, y) = \frac{1}{(2\pi h)^2} \int e^{\frac{i}{h}(x-y)\cdot \xi} \tilde{A}_k^p\left(\frac{x+y}{2}, \xi\right) d\xi,$$

is such that

$$|\tilde{K}_k^p(x, y)| \lesssim 2^{kq}(2^k h^{-\frac{3}{2}})^2 \left(2^k h^{-\frac{3}{2}} |x-y|\right)^{-3} \forall (x, y),$$

which implies that $\sup_x \int |\tilde{K}_k^p(x, y)| dy \lesssim 2^{kq}$. The same argument and result hold for $\tilde{K}_k^p(x, y)$ so $\text{Op}_k^p(A_k^p)$ and $\text{Op}_k^p(A_k^p)$ verify the statement.

The last thing to prove is that $\text{Op}_k^p(A_k^p(x, \xi)) \in \mathcal{L}(L^p)$ for every $1 \leq p \leq +\infty$. Let $K_k^p(x, y)$ be its associated kernel, i.e.

$$K_k^p(x, y) = \frac{1}{(2\pi h)^2} \int e^{\frac{i}{h}(x-y)\cdot \xi} \gamma\left(\frac{x+y}{2h^{1/2-\sigma}}\right) \psi(2^k\xi) a\left(\frac{x+y}{2}\right) b_q(\xi) d\xi,$$

and assume, without loss of generality, that $\gamma(x) = \gamma(|x|^2)$. Set

$$\frac{x+y}{2} = r[\cos \theta, \sin \theta],$$

with $m' \leq r \leq M'$ on the support of $\theta_1\left(\frac{x+y}{2}\right)$, and for fixed $r, \theta$ let

$$\xi = \rho[\cos \theta, \sin \theta] + r\Omega[-\sin \theta, \cos \theta].$$

We immediately notice that $\frac{\partial \xi}{\partial (\rho, \Omega)} = r \sim 1$ and that $|\xi|^2 = \rho^2 + r^2\Omega^2$. Moreover,

$$\left(\frac{x+y}{2}\right) |\xi| - |\xi|^2 = \left[r\sqrt{\rho^2 + r^2\Omega^2} - \rho\right]^2 + r^2\Omega^2.$$

If the support of $\gamma$ is of size $0 < \alpha \ll 1$ sufficiently small, from the above equality and the fact that $|\xi| \sim 2^k$ on the support of $\psi(2^k\xi)$, with $h^{1/2-\sigma} < 2^k \lesssim h^{-\sigma}$, we deduce that

$$r\Omega \leq \sqrt{\alpha}h^{1/2-\sigma} \quad \text{and} \quad |\rho| \sim |\xi| \sim 2^k \quad \text{and} \quad \frac{r\Omega}{|\rho|} \leq \sqrt{\alpha}.$$

Consequently

$$oh^{1-2\sigma} \geq \left[r\sqrt{\rho^2 + r^2\Omega^2} - \rho\right]^2 \gtrsim \rho^2 |r-1|^2.$$

The above left inequality implies that $\rho > 0$, inferring so the right one. Moreover

$$oh^{1-2\sigma} \geq \left[r\sqrt{\rho^2 + r^2\Omega^2} - \rho\right]^2 + r^2\Omega^2 = \rho^2 \left[(r-1) + r \left[\sqrt{1 + \frac{r^2\Omega^2}{\rho^2}} - 1\right]\right]^2 + r^2\Omega^2$$

$$= \rho^2 |r-1|^2 + r^2\Omega^2 \left[1 + a(r, \Omega, \rho)\right],$$
with \( a(r, \Omega, \rho) \) bounded such that, for any \( l, m, n \in \mathbb{N} \),
\[
|\partial_r^l \partial_\Omega^m \partial_\rho^n a(r, \Omega, \rho)| = O(\rho^{-(m+n)}).
\]

If
\[
\Gamma_h := \gamma \left( \frac{\rho^2 |r - 1|^2}{h^{1-2\sigma}} + \frac{r^2 \Omega^2}{h^{1-2\sigma}} [1 + a(r, \Omega, \rho)] \right) \psi(2^{-k} \sqrt{\rho^2 + r^2 \Omega^2} a(r, \theta) b_q(\rho),
\]
from all the observations made above along with the fact that \( h^{-1/2+\sigma} \lesssim \rho^{-1} \) we deduce that, for any \( m, n \in \mathbb{N} \),
\[
(1.2.39) \quad |\partial_\rho^n \Gamma_h| = O(2^{kq} \rho^{-m}) \quad \text{and} \quad |\partial_\Omega^n \Gamma_h| = O(2^{kq} \rho^{-n}).
\]

With the change of coordinates considered in (1.2.38), and setting \( w := x - y, \ e_\theta := [\cos \theta, \sin \theta] \), kernel \( K^h_1(x, y) \) transforms into
\[
\frac{1}{(2\pi h)^2} \int e^{\frac{r w \cdot e_\theta}{h}} e^{\frac{r \Omega \cdot e_\theta}{h}} \frac{\Gamma_h}{r} \, r \, d\rho \, d\Omega
\]
and is restricted to \( |\rho| \sim 2^k, \ |\Omega| \lesssim h^{1/2-\sigma} \), so by making some integrations by parts, using (1.2.39), and reminding that \( |r - 1| \ll 2^k h^{-1/2-\sigma} \ll 1 \) on the support of \( \Gamma_h \), we find that, for any \( N \in \mathbb{N} \),
\[
|K^h_1(x, y)| \lesssim h^{-\frac{\sigma}{4} - \sigma} 2^k \left( \frac{2^k}{h} w \cdot e_\theta \right)^{-N} \left( \frac{2^k}{h} x \cdot e_\theta \right)^{-N} 1_{||\frac{x+y}{2}|-1| \ll 1}.
\]

Now, as \( w = (x - y), \ e_\theta = \frac{x + y}{|x + y|}, \) and \( |x + y| = 2r \sim 1 \) on the support of \( \Gamma_h \), we have that
\[
|w \cdot e_\theta| \sim |x|^2 - |y|^2|, \ |w \cdot e_\theta| \sim |(x + y)(x + y)| \sim 2|x \cdot y|^2 = 2|x_1 y_2 - x_2 y_1|, \text{ and consequently}
\]
\[
|K^h_1(x, y)| \lesssim h^{-\frac{\sigma}{4} - \sigma} 2^{k(1+q)} \left( \frac{2^k}{h} |x|^2 - |y|^2| \right)^{-N} \left( \frac{2^k}{h} (x_1 y_2 - x_2 y_1) \right)^{-N} 1_{||\frac{x+y}{2}|-1| \ll 1}.
\]

Successively, taking the \( L^1(dy) \) norm of \( K^h_1(x, y) \) and using the above estimate we find that:

- if \( |x| \ll |y| \) or \( |x| \gg |x| \),
\[
\left( \frac{2^k}{h} |x|^2 - |y|^2| \right)^{-N} 1_{||\frac{x+y}{2}|-1| \ll 1} \lesssim h^{N(\frac{\sigma}{4} + \sigma)},
\]
as follows from the fact that \( h 2^{-k} < h^{1/2+\sigma} \). We obtain that
\[
\sup_x \int |K^h_1(x, y)| \, dy \lesssim h^{-\frac{\sigma}{4} - \sigma} 2^{k(1+q)} h^{N(\frac{\sigma}{4} + \sigma)} \lesssim 1
\]
by taking \( N \in \mathbb{N} \) sufficiently large (e.g. \( N > 3 \)) and \( \sigma > 0 \) small.

- if \( |x| \sim |y| \), we deduce that \( |x| \geq c > 0 \) from the fact that \( ||\frac{x+y}{2}|-1| \leq \sqrt{\alpha} h^{1/2-\sigma} 2^{-k} \) on the support of \( \Gamma_h \). Without loss of generality we can assume that \( x = \lambda e_1 \) (this always being possible by making a rotation) and \( |\lambda| \geq c > 0 \). If \( w := x + y \),
\[
|x|^2 - |y|^2 = w \cdot (x - y) = w \cdot (2x - w) = w \cdot (2\lambda e_1 - w) = 2\lambda w_1 - w_1^2 - w_2^2,
\]
and then
\[
\frac{|x|^2 - |y|^2}{h} = \frac{- (w_1 - \lambda)^2 - \lambda^2}{h} + \left( \frac{w_2}{\sqrt{h}} \right)^2
\]
29
while 
\[ x_1 y_2 - x_2 y_1 = \lambda w_2. \]
This implies that 
\[ |K^k_1(x, y)| \lesssim h^{-\frac{3}{2} - \sigma} 2^{k(1+\sigma)} \left( \frac{2^k}{h} \right)^N (w_1 - \lambda)^2 - \lambda^2 \right) - N \left( \frac{2^k}{h} \right)^N w_2 - N \right). \]

Since \( \int |K^k_1(x, y)|dy = \int |K^k_1(x, y)|dw, \) from the above estimate (with a fixed \( N \in \mathbb{N} \) sufficiently large) this integral is bounded by \( 2^{kq} \) when restricted to \( |x| \sim |y|. \) Indeed, when the integral is taken in a neighbourhood of \( w_1 = 0 \) or \( w_1 = 2\lambda, \) \( (w_1 - \lambda)^2 - \lambda^2 \) can be considered as the variable of integration, and by a change of coordinates along with the fact that \( 2^{-k} < h^{-1/2 + \sigma} \) one deduces that 
\[ \int_{U_0 \cup U_2\lambda} |K^k_1(x, y)| |dw| \lesssim h^{-\frac{3}{2} - \sigma} 2^{k(1+\sigma)} h^2 2^{-2k} \lesssim 2^{kq}, \]
where \( U_0 \) (resp. \( U_2\lambda \)) is a neighbourhood of \( w_1 = 0 \) (resp. \( w_1 = 2\lambda \)). Outside of \( U_0 \cup U_2\lambda, \)
\[ \left( \frac{2^k}{h} \right)^N (w_1 - \lambda)^2 - \lambda^2 \right) \lesssim (h2^{-k})^N (w_1)^{-N} \lesssim h^N (\frac{1}{\sigma}) (w_1)^{-N}, \]
so 
\[ \int_{(U_0 \cup U_2\lambda)^c} |K^k_1(x, y)| |dw| \lesssim h^{-\frac{3}{2} - \sigma} 2^{k(1+\sigma)} h^2 h^{-N/2} \lesssim 2^{kq}. \]
This finally proves that also \( \text{Op}_h^w(A^k_1(x, \xi)) \) is a bounded operator on \( L^p \) with norm \( O(2^{kq}). \)

Let us introduce the Euclidean rotation in the semi-classical setting
\[ (1.2.40) \quad \Omega_h := x_1 h D_2 - x_2 h D_1 = \text{Op}_h^w(x_1 \xi_2 - x_2 \xi_2). \]

**Proposition 1.2.30.** Under the same assumptions as in proposition \( 1.2.27 \) with \( \gamma \) replaced by \( \gamma_1, \) we have that for any \( w \in L^2(\mathbb{R}^2) \) such that \( \Omega_h w \in L^2_{\text{loc}}(\mathbb{R}^2) \)

\[ (1.2.41) \quad \left\| \text{Op}_h^w \left( \gamma_1 \left( \frac{|\xi| - \xi}{h^{1/2-\sigma}} \right) \psi(2^{-k} \xi) a(x) b_p(\xi) \right) w \right\|_{L^2} \lesssim 2^{k_p} h^{-\frac{3}{2} - \sigma} \left( ||w||_{L^2} + ||\theta_0 \Omega_h w||_{L^2} \right), \]

where \( \theta_0 \) is a smooth function supported in some annulus centred in the origin.

**Proof.** We prove the statement distinguishing between three spatial regions. For that, we introduce three cut-off functions: \( \theta_a(x) \) supported for \( |x| \leq m \ll 1; \) \( \theta_b(x) \) supported for \( |x| \geq M' \gg 1; \) \( \theta(x) \) supported for \( m' \leq |x| \leq M' \), for some \( 0 < m' \ll 1, M' \gg 1 \), such that \( \theta_a + \theta_b + \theta \equiv 1. \) We define respectively \( A^k_1(x, \xi) := \gamma_1 \left( \frac{|\xi| - \xi}{h^{1/2-\sigma}} \right) \psi(2^{-k} \xi) a(x) b_p(\xi) \theta_a(x), \)
\( A^k_1(x, \xi) := \gamma_1 \left( \frac{|\xi| - \xi}{h^{1/2-\sigma}} \right) \psi(2^{-k} \xi) a(x) b_p(\xi) \theta_b(x), \) and \( A^k(x, \xi) := \gamma_1 \left( \frac{|\xi| - \xi}{h^{1/2-\sigma}} \right) \psi(2^{-k} \xi) a(x) b_p(\xi) \theta(x), \)
so that 
\[ \gamma_1 \left( \frac{|\xi| - \xi}{h^{1/2-\sigma}} \right) \psi(2^{-k} \xi) a(x) b_p(\xi) = A^k_1(x, \xi) + A^k_1(x, \xi) + A^k(x, \xi). \]

The fact that \( \text{Op}_h^w(A^k_1), \text{Op}_h^w(A^k_2) \in L^2(\mathbb{R}^2; L^\infty) \) and their norm is a \( O(2^{k_p} h^{-1/2 - \sigma}) \) follows from lemmas \( 1.2.25 \) and \( 1.2.26 \). Indeed, when \( |x| \ll 1 \) (resp. \( |x| \gg 1 \)) we have that \( \left| \frac{|\xi| - \xi}{h^{1/2-\sigma}} \right| \gtrsim h^{-1/2 + \sigma} |\xi| \) (resp. \( \left| \frac{|\xi| - \xi}{h^{1/2-\sigma}} \right| \gtrsim h^{-1/2 + \sigma} |\xi| \)), so from lemma \( 1.2.26 \) we derive that 
\[ \left| \partial^\alpha \partial^\beta \left[ \gamma_1 \left( \frac{|\xi| - \xi}{h^{1/2-\sigma}} \right) \right] \right| \lesssim \sum_{j=0}^{|\beta|} h^{-\alpha + j} \left( \frac{|\xi| - \xi}{h^{1/2-\sigma}} \right)^{-1-|\alpha|-j} |\theta_0 \alpha + j - |\beta| (\xi)| \lesssim h^{\frac{1}{2} - \sigma} |\xi|^{1-|\beta|}. \]
Consequently, as $2^{-k}h \leq 1$, we deduce that $|\partial_x^\alpha \partial_\xi^\beta [A_s^k(x, h\xi)]| \lesssim 2^{kp}h^{-\frac{k}{2}}|\xi|^{-1}$ for any $\alpha, \beta \in \mathbb{N}^2$. Therefore
\[
\left\| \partial_y^\alpha \partial_\xi^\beta \left[ A_s^k \left( \frac{x+y}{2}, h\xi \right) \right] \right\|_{L^2(d\xi)} \lesssim 2^{kp}h^{-\frac{k}{2}-\sigma} \left( \int_{|\xi|^{-2k}h^{-1}} |\xi|^{-2} d\xi \right)^{\frac{1}{2}} \lesssim 2^{kp}h^{-\frac{k}{2}-\sigma}.
\]

The same holds for $A_s^k(x, \xi)$ so, integrating these estimates in inequality (1.2.21), we derive that
\[
\|\text{Op}_{\alpha}^w(A_s^k(x, \xi))w\|_{L^\infty} + \|\text{Op}_{\alpha}^w(A_s^k(x, \xi))w\|_{L^\infty} \leq C2^{kp}h^{-\frac{k}{2}}\|w\|_{L^2}.
\]

A different analysis is needed for $\text{Op}_{\alpha}^w(A_s^k(x, \xi))w$, since it is no longer true that there exists a positive constant $C$ such that $|x|\xi - \xi \geq C|\xi|$ on the support of $A_s^k(x, \xi)$. In this case we exploit the fact that $A_s^k(x, \xi)$ is supported in an annulus to perform a change of variables. If $\theta_0 \in C_0^\infty(\mathbb{R}^2 \setminus \{0\})$ is a cut-off function equal to 1 on the support of $\theta$ we have that, for any $N \in \mathbb{N}$, $A_s^k(x, \xi) = \theta_0(x)A_s^k(x, \xi) + r_N^k(x, \xi)$ by means of proposition 1.2.21 where
\[
r_N^k(x, \xi) = \left( \frac{h}{21} \right)^N \frac{N}{(\pi h)^4} \sum_{|\alpha|=N} \frac{(-1)^{|\alpha|}}{\alpha!} \int e^{\frac{2}{h}(y-z-y\xi)} \int_0^1 \partial_\xi^\alpha \theta_0(x + tz)(1-t)^{N-1} dt \\
\times (\partial_\xi^\alpha A_s^k)(x, \xi + \eta) dydzd\eta.
\]

If we take $N$ sufficiently large it turns out that the quantization of $r_N^k$ satisfies a better estimate than (1.2.41). Indeed, using lemma 1.2.26 and integrating in $dyd\zeta$, it can be rewritten as
\[
r_N^k(x, \xi) = \sum_{j \leq N} \frac{h^{N-j}(h^{-\frac{k}{2}-\sigma})}{(\pi h)^2} \int \int_0^1 \theta_0(x + tz)(1-t)^{N-1} dt \\
\times \gamma_{1+j} \left[ \frac{|x|\xi + \eta - (\xi + \eta)}{h^{1/2-\sigma}} \right] \psi(2^{-k}(\xi + \eta)) \theta_j(x) a(x) b_{p+j-N}(\xi + \eta) dzd\eta,
\]

for some new functions $\theta_0, \gamma_{1+j}, \psi, \theta_j, a, b_{p+j-N}$. As it is compactly supported in $x$, by lemma 1.2.25 there is a new cut-off function (that we still call $\theta$) such that
\[
|\text{Op}_{\alpha}^w(r_N^k(x, \xi))w| \lesssim \|w\|_{L^2} \int \left\| \theta \left( \frac{x+y}{2} \right) \right\|_{L^2} \int \left\| \partial_\xi^\alpha \left[ r_N^k \left( \frac{x+y}{2}, h\xi \right) \right] \right\|_{L^2(d\xi)} dy.
\]

One can check that the action of $\partial_\xi^\alpha$ on $r_N^k(x, h\xi)$ makes appear factors $(h^{-1/2+\sigma}h|\xi + \eta|)^i$, for $i \leq |\alpha|$, without changing the underlying structure of $r_N^k$, and these are bounded by $(h^{-1/2+\sigma}2^k)^i$ on the support of $\psi(2^{-k}(\xi + \eta))$. After a change of variables $\eta \mapsto h\eta$ in (1.2.42), we use that
\[
e^{2i\eta z} = \left( \frac{1-2i\eta \partial_x}{1+4\eta^2} \right)^3 \left( \frac{1-2iz \partial_z}{1+4z^2} \right)^3 e^{2i\eta z},
\]
integrate by parts, apply Young’s inequality for convolutions, and fix $N > 7$, in order to deduce the following chain of inequalities:
\[
\left\| \partial_\xi^\alpha r_N^k \left( \frac{x+y}{2}, h\xi \right) \right\|_{L^2(d\xi)} \lesssim \sum_{i \leq |\alpha|, j \leq N} h^{2N-2j(\frac{1}{2}+\sigma)}(h^{-\frac{1}{2}+\sigma}2^k)^{2i}2^{k(p+j-N)} \int d\xi \left| \langle z \rangle^{-3} |\eta|-3 |\psi(2^{-k}h(\xi + \eta))| dz d\eta \right|^2 \\
\lesssim \sum_{i \leq |\alpha|, j \leq N} h^{2N-2j(\frac{1}{2}+\sigma)}(h^{-\frac{1}{2}+\sigma}2^k)^{2i}2^{k(p+j-N)} \int |\psi(2^{-k}h\xi)|^2 d\xi \\
\lesssim \sum_{i \leq |\alpha|, j \leq N} h^{2N-2j(\frac{1}{2}+\sigma)}(h^{-\frac{1}{2}+\sigma}2^k)^{2i}2^{k(p+j-N)}(h^{-1}2^k)^2 \lesssim 2^{kp},
\]

31
and that \( \| \Omega^\mu_h (r_N^N) \|_{L(L^2;L^\infty)} \lesssim 2^{kp} \). We can then focus on the analysis of the \( L^\infty \) norm of \( \theta_0(x) \Omega^\mu_h (A^k(x,\xi)) w \). In polar coordinates \( x = \rho e^{i\alpha} \) operator \( \Omega_h \) reads as \( \Omega_\alpha \), so using the classical one-dimensional Sobolev injection with respect to variable \( \rho \), and successively returning back to coordinates \( x \), we deduce that

\[
|\theta_0(x) \Omega^\mu_h (A^k(x,\xi)) w | \lesssim h^{-\frac{1}{2}} \left[ \| \Omega^\mu_h (A^k) w \|_{L^2(\Omega)} + \| \Omega^\mu_h (\xi) \Omega^\mu_h (A^k) w \|_{L^2(\Omega)} \right] + \| \Omega_h \theta_0 \Omega^\mu_h (A^k) w \|_{L^2(\Omega)} + \| \Omega^\mu_h (\xi) \Omega_h \theta_0 \Omega^\mu_h (A^k) w \|_{L^2(\Omega)} \]
\[
\lesssim 2^{kp} h^{-\frac{1}{2} - \sigma} \| w \|_{L^2} + \| \theta_0 \Omega_h w \|_{L^2(\Omega)} .
\]

The latter of above inequalities is derived observing that the commutator between \( \Omega_h \) and \( \Omega^\mu_h (A^k) \) is a semi-classical pseudo-differential operator whose symbol is linear combination of terms of the form

\[
\gamma_1 \left( \frac{|x|}{h^{1/2 - \sigma}} \right) \psi (2^{-k} \xi) a(x) \theta(\xi) b_\rho(\xi),
\]

for some new \( \gamma_1, \psi, a, \theta, b_\rho \), and from the fact that operators \( \Omega^\mu_h (\xi) A^k (x,\xi) \) are bounded on \( L^2 \) (see proposition 1.2.27), with norm \( O(2^{kp}) \), \( O(2^{k(p+1)}) \) respectively, and that \( 2^k \leq h^{-\sigma} \).

\( \square \)

**Proposition 1.2.31.** Under the same hypothesis as proposition 1.2.28 \( \Omega^\mu_h (I^{k}_{p,q}(x,\xi)) \) and \( \Omega^\mu_h (J^{k}_{p,q}(x,\xi)) \) are bounded operators from \( L^\infty \) to \( L^2 \), with

\[
\left\| \Omega^\mu_h (I^{k}_{p,q}(x,\xi)) \right\|_{L(L^2;L^\infty)} + \left\| \Omega^\mu_h (J^{k}_{p,q}(x,\xi)) \right\|_{L(L^2;L^\infty)} \lesssim \sum_{i \leq 3} 2^{k(p+i)} (h^{-\frac{1}{2} + \sigma} 2^k)^{(h^{-1} 2^k)}
\]

The same result holds if \( q = 0 \) and \( \tilde{\psi}(2^{-k} \xi) b_\rho(\xi) \equiv 1 \).

**Proof.** As in proposition 1.2.28, we prove the statement only for \( \Omega^\mu_h (I^{k}_{p,q}) \), leaving to the reader to check that the result is true also for \( \Omega^\mu_h (J^{k}_{p,q}) \).

Let \( w \in L^2 \). After lemma 1.2.25 we should prove that \( \left\| \frac{\partial^\mu_\rho \partial^\beta_\xi}{\partial_y \partial_x} I^{k}_{p,q}(x,\xi) \right\|_{L^2(d\xi)} \) is estimated by the right hand side of (1.2.43), for any \( |\alpha|, |\beta| \leq 3 \). A change of variables \( \eta \rightarrow \rho \eta, \xi \rightarrow \xi \) allows us to write \( I^{k}_{p,q}(x,\xi) \) as

\[
\frac{1}{\pi^4} \int e^{2i(y \cdot z - y' \cdot \zeta)} \left[ \int_0^1 \left( \gamma \left( \frac{x + y}{2} \right) \right) \psi (2^{-k} \xi) a(x) b_p(h(\xi)) \right] e^{i(x + y + z \xi + \xi t)} \rho(t) dt d\rho d\eta d\zeta.
\]

We observe that, while on the one hand the action of \( \partial^\alpha_\eta \) on the upper integral makes appear a factor \( (h^{-\frac{1}{2} + \sigma} |h(\xi + t\zeta)|)^i \), with \( i \leq |\alpha| \), on the other hand that of \( \partial^\beta_\xi \) has basically no effect on the \( L^2 \) norm that we want to estimate as one can check using lemma 1.2.26 and the fact that \( 2^{-k} h \leq 1 \). With this in mind, we can reduce to the study of the \( L^2(d\xi) \) norm of an integral function as

\[
\sum_{i \leq 3} (h^{-\frac{1}{2} + \sigma} 2^k)^i \int e^{2i(y \cdot z - y' \cdot \zeta)} \left[ \int_0^1 \left( \gamma \left( \frac{x + y}{2} \right) \right) \psi (2^{-k} h(\xi)) a(x) b_p(h(\xi)) \right] e^{i(x + y + z \xi + \xi t)} \rho(t) dt d\rho d\eta d\zeta.
\]

32
for some new functions $\gamma, \psi, a, b, \tilde{\psi}, a', b_q$, with the same properties as their previous homonyms. We use that
\[
e^{2i(yz-y'z)} = \frac{(1 + 2i\eta \cdot \partial_y)}{(1 + 4|\eta|^2)} \frac{(1 - 2i\eta \cdot \partial_z)}{(1 + 4|\eta|^2)} \frac{(1 - 2i\zeta \cdot \partial_y)}{(1 + 4|\zeta|^2)} \frac{(1 + 2i\zeta \cdot \partial_y')}{(1 + 4|\zeta|^2)} e^{2i(yz-y'z)}
\]
and make some integration by parts to obtain the integrability in $dydzd\eta$, up to new factors $(h^{-\frac{3}{p}+\sigma}|h(\xi + t\zeta)|^j)^j, \ j \leq 3$, coming out from the derivation of the integrand with respect to $z$. Then, using that functions $h^j b_{p-j}(h(\xi + t\zeta))$ (resp. $h^j b_{q-j}(h(\xi + \eta))$), $j \leq 3$, appearing from the derivation of $b_p(h(\xi + t\zeta))$ with respect to $\zeta$ (resp. the derivation of $b_q(h(\xi + \eta))$ with respect to $\eta$), are such that $|h^j b_{p-j}(h(\xi + t\zeta))| \leq h^{2k(p-j)} \lesssim 2^{kp}$ on the support of $\psi(2^{-k}h(\xi + t\zeta))$ (resp. $|h^j b_{q-j}(h(\xi + \eta))| \leq 2^{kq}$ on the support of $\tilde{\psi}(2^{-k}h(\xi + \eta))$), and the fact that
\[
\left\| \int \langle \eta \rangle^{-3} |\tilde{\psi}(2^{-k}h(\xi + \eta))|d\eta \right\|_{L^2(d\eta)} \leq \left\| \tilde{\psi}(2^{-k}h\cdot) \right\|_{L^2} \lesssim h^{-1}2^k,
\]
we obtain the result of the statement.

The last part of the statement can be proved following an analogous scheme, after having previously made an integration in $dzd\eta$ (or in $d\eta d\zeta$ if dealing with $J_{p,q}^k$).

**Lemma 1.2.32.** Let $\sigma > 0$ be sufficiently small, $k \in K$ with $K$ given by (1.2.23) and $p, q \in \mathbb{N}$. Let also $\psi, \tilde{\psi} \in C^\infty_0(\mathbb{R}^2 \setminus \{0\})$, $a(x)$ be either a smooth compactly supported function or $a \equiv 1$, and $f \in C(\mathbb{R})$. For a fixed integer $N > 2(p + q) + 9$ we define
\[
(1.2.44) \quad r^{k}_{N,p}(x, \xi) := \frac{h^N}{(\pi h)^3} \sum_{|\alpha| = N} \int e^{\frac{2i}{\pi h}(yz-y'z)} \left[ \int_0^1 \partial_x^\alpha \left( \gamma_1 \left( \frac{z}{h^{1/2-\sigma}} \right) \psi(2^{-k}a(x)b_p(\xi)) \right)_{(x+z\tau, \xi+t\zeta)} \times f(t)dt \right] \partial_x^\alpha (b_q(\xi)\tilde{\psi}(2^{-k}\xi))_{(x+y, \xi+\eta)} dydzd\eta d\zeta,
\]
and
\[
(1.2.45) \quad r^{k}_{N,p}(x, \xi) := \frac{h^N}{(\pi h)^3} \sum_{|\alpha| + |\beta| = N} \int e^{\frac{2i}{\pi h}(yz-y'z)} \left[ \int_0^1 \partial_x^\alpha \partial_x^\beta \left( \gamma_1 \left( \frac{z}{h^{1/2-\sigma}} \right) \psi(2^{-k}a(x)b_p(\xi)) \right)_{(x+z\tau, \xi+t\zeta)} \times f(t)dt \right] \partial_x^\alpha \partial_x^\beta \left( x_n b_q(\xi)\tilde{\psi}(2^{-k}\xi) \right)_{(x+y, \xi+\eta)} dydzd\eta d\zeta.
\]

Then
\[
(1.2.46) \quad \|Op^w_k(r^{k}_{N,p})\|_{L^2(L^p)} + \|Op^w_p(r^{k}_{N,p})\|_{L^2(L^p)} + \|Op^w_p(r^{k}_{N,p})\|_{L^2(L^p)} \lesssim h^{p+q}.
\]

**Proof.** We remind definition (1.2.31) of integral $r^{k}_{p,q}(x, \xi)$ for general $k \in K, p, q \in \mathbb{Z}$. After an explicit development of the derivatives appearing in (1.2.44) we find that $r^{k}_{N,p}(x, \xi)$ may be written as
\[
\sum_{j \leq N} h^{N-j(\frac{1}{2}-\sigma)} I^{k}_{p+j,q-N}(x, \xi)
\]
where $\gamma$ is replaced with $\gamma_1$ and $a' \equiv 1$ in $I^{k}_{p+j,q-N}$. Propositions (1.2.28) and (1.2.31) combined with the fact that $h \leq 2^k \leq h^{-\sigma}$, imply respectively that
\[
\|Op^w_k(r^{k}_{N,p})\|_{L^2(L^p)} \lesssim \sum_{j \leq N} h^{N-j(\frac{1}{2}-\sigma)} 2^{k(p+j+q-N)} \lesssim \sum_{p+j+q \leq N} h^{N-j(\frac{1}{2}-\sigma)+p+j+q-N} + \sum_{p+j+q > N} h^{N-j(\frac{1}{2}-\sigma)-\sigma(p+j+q-N)} \lesssim h^{p+q}
\]

33
and

\[ \|Op_h^w(r_N,p)\|_{L^2(L^\infty)} \lesssim \sum_{i \leq 6,j \leq N} h^{N-i}(\frac{1}{2} - \sigma)2^{k(p+j+q-N)}(h^{\frac{1}{2} + \sigma}2^k)^i(h^{-1}2^k) \]

\[ \lesssim \sum_{i \leq 6,j \leq N} h^{N-1-(i+j)(\frac{1}{2} - \sigma) + p+i+j+q-N+1} + \sum_{i \leq 6,j \leq N} h^{N-1-(i+j)(\frac{1}{2} - \sigma) - \sigma(p+i+j+q-N+1)} \]

\[ \lesssim h^{p+q}, \]

as \( N > 2(p + q) + 9 \).

As regards (1.2.43), we first observe that index \( \alpha_2 \) is such that \( |\alpha_2| \leq 1 \) since \( x_n b_y(\xi) \tilde{\psi}(2^{-k} \xi) \) is linear in \( x_n \). An explicit development of derivatives in (1.2.45), combined with lemma 1.2.26, shows that \( \tilde{f}_{N,p}^w(x,\xi) \) splits into two contributions:

\[ J_0(x,\xi) = \frac{h^N}{(\pi h)^4} \sum_{i \leq N-1,j \leq 1} h^{-i}(\frac{1}{2} - \sigma) \int e^{\frac{i}{h}(\eta - y - \xi)} \]

\[ \times \int_0^1 \left( \frac{x[\xi] - \xi}{h^{1/2} - \sigma} \right) \psi(2^{-k} \xi) a(x)b_{p+i,j-1}(\xi) f(t) dt \]

\[ \times b_{q-N+1}(\xi + \eta) \tilde{\psi}(2^{-k}(\xi + \eta)) dydzd\eta d\zeta, \]

for some new functions \( a, \psi, \tilde{\psi} \) and clear meaning for \( \gamma_i, b_{p+i}, b_{q-N} \), coming out when \( |\alpha_2| = 0 \);

\[ J_1(x,\xi) = \sum_{i \leq N-1,j \leq 1} h^{N-i}(\frac{1}{2} - \sigma) \int e^{\frac{i}{h}(\eta - y - \xi)} \]

\[ \times \int_0^1 \left( \frac{x[\xi] - \xi}{h^{1/2} - \sigma} \right) \psi(2^{-k} \xi) a(x)b_{p+i,j-1}(\xi) f(t) dt \]

\[ \times b_{q-N+1}(\xi + \eta) \tilde{\psi}(2^{-k}(\xi + \eta)) dydzd\eta d\zeta, \]

for some new other \( a, \psi, \tilde{\psi} \), corresponding instead to \( |\alpha_2| = 1 \). One has that

\[ J_1(x,\xi) = \sum_{i \leq N-1,j \leq 1} h^{N-i}(\frac{1}{2} - \sigma) \int e^{\frac{i}{h}(\eta - y - \xi)} \]

\[ \times \int_0^1 \left( \frac{x[\xi] - \xi}{h^{1/2} - \sigma} \right) \psi(2^{-k} \xi) a(x)b_{p+i,j-1}(\xi) f(t) dt \]

\[ \times b_{q-N+1}(\xi + \eta) \tilde{\psi}(2^{-k}(\xi + \eta)) dydzd\eta d\zeta, \]

with \( \gamma \) replaced with \( \gamma_1 \) and \( \alpha' \equiv 1 \), so propositions 1.2.28 and 1.2.31 along with the fact that \( N > 2(p + q) + 9 \), imply

\[ \|Op_h^w(J_1(x,\xi))\|_{L^2(L^\infty)} \lesssim \sum_{i \leq N-1,j \leq 1} h^{N-i}(\frac{1}{2} - \sigma)2^{k(p+i+j+q-N)} \lesssim h^{p+q}, \]

\[ \|Op_h^w(J_1(x,\xi))\|_{L^2(L^\infty)} \lesssim \sum_{i \leq N-1,j \leq 1} h^{N-i}(\frac{1}{2} - \sigma)2^{k(p+i+j+q-N)}(h^{\frac{1}{2} + \sigma}2^k)^i(h^{-1}2^k) \lesssim h^{p+q}. \]

In order to derive the same estimates for \( J_0(x,\xi) \) we split the sum \( x_n + y_n \) and analyse separately the two out-coming integrals, that we denote \( J_{0,x}(x,\xi), J_{0,y}(x,\xi) \). In the latter one, we use that \( y_n e^{-2i\pi y \zeta} = -\frac{h}{2\pi} \partial_{\zeta_n} e^{-2i\pi y \zeta} \) and successively integrate by parts in \( d\zeta_n \) obtaining, with the help of lemma 1.2.26 that

\[ (1.2.47) \quad J_{0,y}(x,\xi) = \sum_{i \leq N,j \leq 1} h^{N+1-i}(\frac{1}{2} - \sigma) \int e^{\frac{i}{h}(\eta - y - \xi)} \]

\[ \times \int_0^1 \left( \frac{x[\xi] - \xi}{h^{1/2} - \sigma} \right) \psi(2^{-k} \xi) a(x)b_{p+i,j-1}(\xi) f(t) dt \]

\[ \times b_{q-N}(\xi - \eta) \tilde{\psi}(2^{-k}(\xi + \eta)) dydzd\eta d\zeta, \]

34
for some new functions \(a, \psi, \tilde{\psi}, f\). Again by propositions 1.2.28 and 1.2.31 and the fact that \(h \leq 2^k \leq h^{-\sigma}, N > 2(p + q) + 9\), we deduce that:

\[
\|\text{Op}_h^w(J_{0,y}(x, \xi))\|_{L^2} \lesssim \sum_{i \leq N,j \leq 1} h^{N+1-(i+j)\frac{\sigma}{2}}2^{k(p+i+j+q-N-1)}(h^{-\frac{\sigma}{2}}2^k)^j(h^{-1}2^k) \lesssim h^{p+q},
\]

by proposition 1.2.33. We introduce the following operator:

\[
\mathcal{M}_j := \frac{1}{h}\text{Op}_h^w(x_j|\xi| - \xi_j), \quad j = 1, 2
\]

and use the notation \(\|\mathcal{M}^\gamma w\| = \|\mathcal{M}_1^\gamma \mathcal{M}_2^\gamma w\|\) for any \(\gamma = (\gamma_1, \gamma_2) \in \mathbb{N}^2\). We have now all the ingredients to state and prove the following two results.

**Lemma 1.2.33.** Let \(\sigma, k, p, \psi, a\) be as in lemma 1.2.32 and \(\tilde{a}(x)\) such that

\[
(a \equiv 1) \Rightarrow (\tilde{a} \equiv 1),
\]

\((\text{compactly supported}) \Rightarrow (\tilde{a} \equiv 1)\) or (\(\tilde{a}\) compactly supported and \(\tilde{a}a \equiv a\)).

We have that

\[
\text{Op}_h^w(\gamma_1 \left(\frac{x|\xi| - \xi}{h^{1/2-\sigma}}\right)\psi(2^{-k}\xi)a(x)b_p(\xi)(x_n|\xi| - \xi_n)) = \text{Op}_h^w(\gamma_1 \left(\frac{x|\xi| - \xi}{h^{1/2-\sigma}}\right)\psi(2^{-k}\xi)a(x)b_p(\xi)\tilde{a}(x)h\mathcal{M}_n + \text{Op}_h^w(\gamma_1 \left(\frac{x|\xi| - \xi}{h^{1/2-\sigma}}\right)\psi(2^{-k}\xi)a(x)b_p(\xi)),
\]

for some new functions \(a, \psi, \tilde{\psi}, f\). Again by propositions 1.2.28 and 1.2.31 and the fact that \(h \leq 2^k \leq h^{-\sigma}, N > 2(p + q) + 9\), we deduce that:

\[
\|\text{Op}_h^w(J_{0,y}(x, \xi))\|_{L^2} \lesssim \sum_{i \leq N,j \leq 1} h^{N+1-(i+j)\frac{\sigma}{2}}2^{k(p+i+j+q-N-1)}(h^{-\frac{\sigma}{2}}2^k)^j(h^{-1}2^k) \lesssim h^{p+q},
\]

by proposition 1.2.33. We introduce the following operator:

\[
\mathcal{M}_j := \frac{1}{h}\text{Op}_h^w(x_j|\xi| - \xi_j), \quad j = 1, 2
\]

and use the notation \(\|\mathcal{M}^\gamma w\| = \|\mathcal{M}_1^\gamma \mathcal{M}_2^\gamma w\|\) for any \(\gamma = (\gamma_1, \gamma_2) \in \mathbb{N}^2\). We have now all the ingredients to state and prove the following two results.

**Lemma 1.2.33.** Let \(\sigma, k, p, \psi, a\) be as in lemma 1.2.32 and \(\tilde{a}(x)\) such that

\[
(a \equiv 1) \Rightarrow (\tilde{a} \equiv 1),
\]

\((\text{compactly supported}) \Rightarrow (\tilde{a} \equiv 1)\) or (\(\tilde{a}\) compactly supported and \(\tilde{a}a \equiv a\)).

We have that

\[
\text{Op}_h^w(\gamma_1 \left(\frac{x|\xi| - \xi}{h^{1/2-\sigma}}\right)\psi(2^{-k}\xi)a(x)b_p(\xi)(x_n|\xi| - \xi_n)) = \text{Op}_h^w(\gamma_1 \left(\frac{x|\xi| - \xi}{h^{1/2-\sigma}}\right)\psi(2^{-k}\xi)a(x)b_p(\xi)\tilde{a}(x)h\mathcal{M}_n + \text{Op}_h^w(\gamma_1 \left(\frac{x|\xi| - \xi}{h^{1/2-\sigma}}\right)\psi(2^{-k}\xi)a(x)b_p(\xi)),
\]
where

\begin{align}
(1.2.51a) \quad & \| \text{Op}_h^{\mu}(r_p^k(x, \xi))w \|_{L^2} \lesssim h^{1-\beta}\| w \|_{L^2}, \\
(1.2.51b) \quad & \| \text{Op}_h^{\mu}(r_p^k(x, \xi))w \|_{L^\infty} \lesssim h^{\frac{1}{2}-\beta}(\| w \|_{L^2} + \| \theta_0 \Omega_h w \|_{L^2}),
\end{align}

for some \( \theta \in C_0^\infty(\mathbb{R}^2 \setminus \{0\}) \) and a small \( \beta > 0, \beta \to 0 \) as \( \sigma \to 0 \). Moreover

\begin{align}
(1.2.52a) \quad & \| \text{Op}_h^{\mu}(\gamma_1 \left( x|\xi| - \xi \right) \psi(2^{-k}\xi)a(x)b_p(\xi)(x_n|\xi| - \xi_n))w \|_{L^2} \lesssim h^{1-\beta}(\| w \|_{L^2} + \| M_n w \|_{L^2}), \\
(1.2.52b) \quad & \| \text{Op}_h^{\mu}(\gamma_1 \left( x|\xi| - \xi \right) \psi(2^{-k}\xi)a(x)b_p(\xi)(x_n|\xi| - \xi_n))w \|_{L^\infty} \\
& \quad \lesssim h^{\frac{1}{2}-\beta} \sum_{\mu=0}^{1} \left( \| (\theta_0 \Omega_h)^{\mu} w \|_{L^2} + \| (\theta_0 \Omega_h)^{\mu} M_n w \|_{L^2} \right).
\end{align}

**Proof.** The proof of the statement is basically made of tedious calculations and the application of propositions \([1.2.27],[1.2.30]\) along with lemma \([1.2.32]\).

Let \( \tilde{\psi} \in C_0^\infty(\mathbb{R}^2 \setminus \{0\}) \) such that \( \tilde{\psi} \equiv 1 \) on the support of \( \psi \). From formulas \([1.2.18],[1.2.19]\) and the hypothesis of the statement we derive that for a fixed \( N \in \mathbb{N} \), and up to negligible multiplicative constants,

\begin{align}
(1.2.53) \quad & \left[ \gamma_1 \left( x|\xi| - \xi \right) \psi(2^{-k}\xi)a(x)b_p(\xi) \right] \left[ (x_n|\xi| - \xi_n)\tilde{a}(x)\tilde{\psi}(2^{-k}\xi) \right] \\
& = \gamma_1 \left( x|\xi| - \xi \right) \psi(2^{-k}\xi)a(x)b_p(\xi)(x_n|\xi| - \xi_n) \\
& + h \left[ \gamma_1 \left( x|\xi| - \xi \right) \psi(2^{-k}\xi)a(x)b_p(\xi), (x_n|\xi| - \xi_n) \right] \\
& + \sum_{2 \leq |\alpha| < N} h^{\alpha_0} \partial_x^{\alpha_1} \partial_\xi^{\alpha_2} \left[ \gamma_1 \left( x|\xi| - \xi \right) \psi(2^{-k}\xi)a(x)b_p(\xi) \right] \partial_x^{\alpha_2} \partial_\xi^{\alpha_1} [ (x_n|\xi| - \xi_n) ] + r_{N,p}(x, \xi),
\end{align}

with

\begin{align}
(1.2.54) \quad & r_{N,p}^k(x, \xi) = \frac{h^N}{(\pi h)^2} \sum_{|\alpha_2|+|\alpha_2|=N} \int_{|x|+|\xi|+\eta=|\alpha|} \left[ \int_0^1 dt \left[ \gamma_1 \left( x|\xi| - \xi \right) \psi(2^{-k}\xi)a(x)b_p(\xi) \right] [ (x_n|\xi| - \xi_n) ] \tilde{a}(x)\tilde{\psi}(2^{-k}\xi) \right] dydzd\eta d\zeta \\
& \quad \times (1-t)^{N-1} dt \partial_x^{\alpha_2} \partial_\xi^{\alpha_1} [ (x_n|\xi| - \xi_n) ] \tilde{a}(x)\tilde{\psi}(2^{-k}\xi) \right] [ (x_n|\xi| - \xi_n) ] \tilde{a}(x)\tilde{\psi}(2^{-k}\xi).
\end{align}

If \( \tilde{a} \equiv 1 \) above \( r_{N,p}^k \) can be decomposed into the sum of integrals of the form \([1.2.44],[1.2.45]\) with \( q = 1 \), so

\begin{align}
(1.2.55) \quad & \| \text{Op}_h^{\mu}(r_{N,p}^k) \|_{L^\infty} + \| \text{Op}_h^{\mu}(r_{N,p}^k) \|_{L^\infty} \lesssim h^{1+p}
\end{align}

if \( N \) is taken sufficiently large (e.g. \( N > 2p+11 \)). The same is true if functions \( a, \tilde{a} \) are compactly supported as follows by propositions \([1.2.28],[1.2.31]\) since from lemma \([1.2.26]\) and definition \([1.2.30]\) of \( r_{p,q}^k \) for general \( k \in K, p, q \in \mathbb{Z} \),

\begin{align}
(1.2.56) \quad & r_{N,p}^k(x, \xi) = \sum_{|\alpha_2|+|\alpha_2|=N} h^{N-(j)+\left(\frac{1}{2}-\sigma\right)} r_{p+i,j-|\alpha_2|,1-|\alpha_1|}^k(x, \xi).
\end{align}
An explicit computation of the Poisson bracket in (1.2.53) shows that it is equal to

\[(1.2.56) \quad h(\partial \gamma_1) \left( \frac{x|x| - x}{h^{1/2-\sigma}} \right) \left( \frac{x_1\xi_2 - x_2\xi_1}{h^{1/2-\sigma}} \right) \psi(2^{-k}\xi)a(x)b_p(\xi) + \sum' h\gamma_1 \left( \frac{x|x| - x}{h^{1/2-\sigma}} \right) \psi(2^{-k}\xi)a(x)b_p(\xi), \]

where \(\sum'\) is a concise notation to indicate a linear combination, and \(\psi, a, b_p\) are some new functions with the same features of their homonyms. After writing

\[(1.2.57) \quad (x_1\xi_2 - x_2\xi_1) = (x_1|x| - \xi_1)\xi_2|x|^{-1} - (x_2|x| - \xi_2)\xi_1|x|^{-1}, \]

we recognize that the quantization of (1.2.56) verifies estimates (1.2.51) thanks to propositions 1.2.26, 1.2.27, 1.2.30 and the fact that \(2^{kp} \leq h^{-\sigma p}.\)

Let us denote concisely by \(t^n_a\) the \(|\alpha|\)-order contributions in (1.2.53), for \(2 \leq |\alpha| < N\). As factor \(x_n|x| - \xi_n\) is affine in \(x_n\), the length of multi-index \(\alpha_2\) is less or equal than 1 and, using lemma 1.2.26 \(t^n_a\) appears to be the sum of two terms. The first one corresponds to \(|\alpha_2| = 0\) and has the form

\[\sum_{i\leq|\alpha|} h^{|\alpha|-i(i+1)(\frac{1}{2}-\sigma)} \gamma_{1+i} \left( \frac{x|x| - x}{h^{1/2-\sigma}} \right) \psi(2^{-k}\xi)a(x)b_{p+i+1-|\alpha|}(\xi)x_n^i, \]

for some new functions \(\psi, a\). Observe that \(\mu = 0\) if \(a \equiv 1\) because the derivation of \(\gamma_1 \left( \frac{x|x| - x}{h^{1/2-\sigma}} \right)\) \(|\alpha|\)-times with respect to \(x\) makes appear, inter alia, a factor \(|\xi| |\alpha|\) that allows us to rewrite \(\partial \gamma_1 (x_n|x| - \xi_n)\) from \((x_n|x| - \xi_n) + b_0(\xi)\), for some new \(b_0\), and \(\partial \gamma_1(\xi) z_n\) is of the form \(\gamma_{|\alpha_1|}(z)\). The second term, corresponding instead to \(|\alpha_2| = 1\), is given by

\[\sum_{i\leq|\alpha|-1, j\leq 1} h^{|\alpha|-i(i+j)(\frac{1}{2}-\sigma)} \gamma_{1+i+j} \left( \frac{x|x| - x}{h^{1/2-\sigma}} \right) \psi(2^{-k}\xi)a(x)b_{p+i+j+1-|\alpha|}(\xi), \]

for some new other functions \(\psi, a\). From propositions 1.2.27, 1.2.30 we then deduce that

\[(1.2.58a) \quad \|\text{Op}_h^w(t^k_n)w\|_{L^2} \lesssim (h^{\frac{|\alpha|}{2}-\beta} + h^{1+p})\|w\|_{L^2}, \]

\[(1.2.58b) \quad \|\text{Op}_h^c(t^k_n)w\|_{L^\infty} \lesssim (h^{\frac{|\alpha|}{2}-\beta} + h^{1+p})(\|w\|_{L^2} + \|\theta\Omega_h w\|_{L^2}), \]

which concludes that

\[\gamma_1 \left( \frac{x|x| - x}{h^{1/2-\sigma}} \right) \psi(2^{-k}\xi)a(x)b_p(\xi) \leq \gamma_1 \left( \frac{x|x| - x}{h^{1/2-\sigma}} \right) \psi(2^{-k}\xi)a(x)b_p(\xi)(x_n|x| - \xi_n) + r^k_p(x, \xi), \]

with \(r^k_p\) satisfying (1.2.51).

Finally, by symbolic calculus we have that, up to some multiplicative constants,

\[\text{Op}_h^w((x_n|x| - \xi_n)\tilde{a}(x)\tilde{\psi}(2^{-k}\xi)) = \tilde{a}(x)\text{Op}_h^w((x_n|x| - \xi_n)\tilde{\psi}(2^{-k}\xi)) + \text{Op}_h^w(r^k(x, \xi)) = \text{Op}_h^w(\tilde{\psi}(2^{-k}\xi))\tilde{a}(x)h\mathcal{M}_n + h\tilde{a}(x)\text{Op}_h^w((\partial \tilde{\psi})(2^{-k}\xi)(2^{-k}|\xi|)) + \text{Op}_h^w(\tilde{r}^k(x, \xi))h\mathcal{M}_n + \text{Op}_h^w(r^k(x, \xi)), \]

37
We saw in the proof of the previous lemma that the symbolic product
\[
\tilde{r}^k(x, \xi) = \frac{h}{(2\pi)^2} \int e^{\frac{ih}{2\pi} \eta} \, dzd\eta \, \partial_x \tilde{a}(x + t\xi) \frac{\partial}{\partial \eta} \left[ (x_n | \xi - \xi_n) \bar{\psi}(2^{-k}\xi) \right] \big|_{(x, \xi + \eta)},
\]
are such that \( \| Op_h^w(r^k_1) \|_{L^2} = O(h) \), \( \| Op_h^w(\tilde{r}^k_1) \|_{L^2} = O(1) \). An explicit computation shows also that \( \| \Omega_h \| \| Op_h^w(r^k_2) \|_{L^2} = O(h) \) and \( \| \Omega_h \| \| Op_h^w(\tilde{r}^k_2) \|_{L^2} = O(1) \). Therefore, since \( \bar{\psi} \equiv 1 \) on the support of \( \psi, \bar{a} \equiv 1 \) on the support of \( a \), one can use remark \[1.2.22\] together with propositions \[1.2.23\] \[1.2.31\] and also propositions \[1.2.27\] \[1.2.30\] to show that
\[
Op_h^w \left( \frac{x|\xi - \xi}{h^{1/2-\sigma}} \right) \psi(2^{-k}\xi) a(x) b_p(\xi) \right) + \frac{h}{(2\pi)^2} \int e^{\frac{ih}{2\pi} \eta} \, dzd\eta \, \partial_x \tilde{a}(x + t\xi) \frac{\partial}{\partial \eta} \left[ (x_n | \xi - \xi_n) \bar{\psi}(2^{-k}\xi) \right] = Op_h^w \left( \frac{x|\xi - \xi}{h^{1/2-\sigma}} \right) \psi(2^{-k}\xi) a(x) b_p(\xi),
\]
for a new \( Op_h^w(r^k_p(x, \xi)) \) satisfying \[1.2.51a\]. This concludes the proof of \[1.2.50\] and of the entire statement by applying propositions \[1.2.27\] \[1.2.30\] to the first operator in the upper right hand side.

**Lemma 1.2.34.** Let \( \sigma > 0 \) be small, \( k \in K \) with \( K \) given by \[1.2.23\] and \( p \in \mathbb{N} \). Let also \( \gamma \in C_0^\infty(\mathbb{R}^2) \) be equal to 1 in a neighbourhood of the origin, \( \psi \in C_0^\infty(\mathbb{R}^2 \setminus \{0\}) \), and \( a \in C_0^\infty(\mathbb{R}^2) \). For any function \( w \in L^2(\mathbb{R}^2) \) such that \( \mathcal{M}w \in L^2(\mathbb{R}^2) \), any \( m, n = 1, 2 \), we have that
\[
Op_h^w \left( \frac{(x|\xi - \xi)}{h^{1/2-\sigma}} \right) \psi(2^{-k}\xi) a(x) b_p(\xi) \right) + \frac{h}{(2\pi)^2} \int e^{\frac{ih}{2\pi} \eta} \, dzd\eta \, \partial_x \tilde{a}(x + t\xi) \frac{\partial}{\partial \eta} \left[ (x_n | \xi - \xi_n) \bar{\psi}(2^{-k}\xi) \right] \] = Op_h^w \left( \frac{(x|\xi - \xi)}{h^{1/2-\sigma}} \right) \psi(2^{-k}\xi) a(x) b_p(\xi) \right) [h\mathcal{M}_n w] + O_{L^2}(h^{2-\beta}(|w|_{L^2} + \|\mathcal{M}w\|_{L^2})),
\]
with \( \beta > 0 \) small, \( \beta \to 0 \) as \( \sigma \to 0 \).

**Proof.** Let \( \tilde{\gamma}(z) := \gamma(z)z_m \) and \( \tilde{\psi} \in C_0^\infty(\mathbb{R}^2 \setminus \{0\}) \) be identically equal to 1 on the support of \( \psi \). We saw in the proof of the previous lemma that the symbolic product
\[
\left[ \tilde{\gamma} \left( \frac{(x|\xi - \xi)}{h^{1/2-\sigma}} \right) \psi(2^{-k}\xi) a(x) b_p(\xi) \right] \tilde{\psi}(x_n | \xi - \xi_n)
\]
develops as in \[1.2.53\] \[1.2.54\], with \( \gamma_1 \) replaced with \( \tilde{\gamma} \) and \( \tilde{a} \equiv 1 \). From \[1.2.56\], the fact that
\[
\{x_m | \xi - \xi_m, x_n | \xi - \xi_n\} = \begin{cases} 0 & \text{if } m = n, \\ (-1)^{m+1}(x_1 \xi_2 - \xi_2 x_1) & \text{if } m \neq n, \end{cases}
\]
and that \( x_1 \xi_2 - \xi_2 x_1 = (x_1 | \xi - \xi_1) \xi_2 | \xi - \xi_2 \xi_1 |^{-1} - (x_2 | \xi - \xi_2) \xi_1 |^{-1} \), we derive that the first order term of the mentioned symbolic development is a linear combination of products of the form
\[
h^{\frac{1}{2}} \gamma \left( \frac{(x|\xi - \xi)}{h^{1/2-\sigma}} \right) \psi(2^{-k}\xi) a(x) b_p(\xi)(x_j | \xi - \xi_j),
\]
for some new functions \( \gamma, \psi, a, \) and its quantization acting on \( w \) is a remainder as in the statement after estimate \[1.2.52a\].
The second order term is given, up to some negligible multiplicative constants, by

\[
\begin{align*}
& h^{1+2\sigma} \sum_{|\alpha|=2} (\partial^\alpha \gamma) \left( \frac{x|\xi| - \xi}{h^{1/2-\sigma}} \right) \psi(2^{-k} \xi) a_1(x) b_{p+1}(\xi)(x_m|\xi| - \xi_m) \\
& + h^{\frac{3}{2}+\sigma} \sum_{|\alpha|=1} (\partial^\alpha \gamma) \left( \frac{x|\xi| - \xi}{h^{1/2-\sigma}} \right) \psi_2(2^{-k} \xi) a_2(x) b_{p+1}(\xi) \\
& + h^2 \sum_{\gamma} \gamma \left( \frac{x|\xi| - \xi}{h^{1/2-\sigma}} \right) \psi_3(2^{-k} \xi) a_3(x) b_{p+1}(\xi),
\end{align*}
\]

for some new smooth compactly supported \( \psi_2, \psi_3, a_1, a_2, a_3 \), and as the derivatives of \( \gamma \) vanish in a neighbourhood of the origin we can replace \( (\partial^\alpha \gamma)(z) \) with \( \sum_j \gamma_j(z) z_j, \gamma_j(z) := (\partial^\alpha \gamma)(z) z^j \), when \( |\alpha| = 1 \). The third order one is given by

\[
\begin{align*}
& h^{\frac{5}{2}+3\sigma} \sum_{|\alpha|=3} (\partial^\alpha \gamma) \left( \frac{x|\xi| - \xi}{h^{1/2-\sigma}} \right) \psi(2^{-k} \xi) a_1(x) b_{p+1}(\xi)(x_m|\xi| - \xi_m) \\
& + h^2 \sum_{\gamma} \gamma_1 \left( \frac{x|\xi| - \xi}{h^{1/2-\sigma}} \right) \psi_1(2^{-k} \xi) a_2(x) b_{p+1}(\xi),
\end{align*}
\]

for some other \( \psi_1, a_1, a_2 \) and a new \( \gamma_1 \in C_0^\infty(\mathbb{R}^2) \). Using estimate \([12.2.27]\) for the summations in \( \alpha \) and proposition \([12.2.27]\) for the remaining terms in the above expressions we obtain that the quantizations of the second and third order term are also \( O_{L^2}(h^{\frac{5}{2}-\beta}(\|w\|_{L^2} + \|\text{Op}w\|_{L^2})) \) when acting on \( w \), for a small \( \beta > 0, \beta \to 0 \).

In all the other \( |\alpha|-\)order terms, with \( 4 \leq |\alpha| \leq N - 1 \), and in integral remainder \( r_{N,p}^k \), we look at \( \gamma \left( \frac{x|\xi| - \xi}{h^{1/2-\sigma}} \right) \psi(2^{-k} \xi) a(x) b_p(\xi)(x_m|\xi| - \xi_m) \) as a symbol of the form

\[
\gamma \left( \frac{x|\xi| - \xi}{h^{1/2-\sigma}} \right) \psi(2^{-k} \xi) a(x) b_{p+1}(\xi)
\]

for a new \( a_1 \in C_0^\infty(\mathbb{R}^2) \). From \([12.2.58a]\) and \([12.2.55]\) when \( N > 11 \), we derive that the quantizations of these terms are also \( O_{L^2}(h^{\frac{5}{2}-\beta}(\|w\|_{L^2} + \|\text{Op}w\|_{L^2})) \) when acting on \( w \).

We finally obtain that

\[
\begin{align*}
\text{Op}_h^w \left( \gamma \left( \frac{x|\xi| - \xi}{h^{1/2-\sigma}} \right) \psi(2^{-k} \xi) a(x) b_p(\xi)(x_m|\xi| - \xi_m)(x_n|\xi| - \xi_n) \right) w \\
= \text{Op}_h^w \left( \gamma \left( \frac{x|\xi| - \xi}{h^{1/2-\sigma}} \right) \psi(2^{-k} \xi) a(x) b_p(\xi)(x_m|\xi| - \xi_m) \right) \text{Op}_h^w \left( ((x_n|\xi| - \xi_n) \tilde{\psi}(2^{-k} \xi)) \right) + O_{L^2}(h^{\frac{5}{2}-\beta}(\|w\|_{L^2} + \|\text{Op}w\|_{L^2})),
\end{align*}
\]

and the conclusion of the proof comes then from the fact that, by symbolic calculus,

\[
\text{Op}_h^w ((x_n|\xi| - \xi_n) \tilde{\psi}_1(2^{-k} \xi)) = h \text{Op}_h^w (\tilde{\psi}_1(2^{-k} \xi)) M_n - \frac{h}{2i} \text{Op}_h^w ((\partial \tilde{\psi}_1)(2^{-k} \xi) \cdot (2^{-k} \xi)),
\]

and by remark \([12.2.22]\) as all derivatives of \( \tilde{\psi} \) vanish on the support of \( \psi \).

The following lemma is introduced especially for the proof of lemma \([32.13]\). Even if quite similar to lemma \([12.23]\), we are going to see that the particular structure of symbolic product in the left hand side of \([12.259]\) allows for a remainder \( r_p^k \) satisfying enhanced estimate \([12.605]\) rather than \([12.511]\).

39
Lemma 1.2.35. Let us take $\gamma > 0$ sufficiently small, $k \in K$ and $p, q \in \mathbb{N}$. Let also $\gamma \in C_0^\infty(\mathbb{R}^2)$ such that $\gamma \equiv 1$ in a neighbourhood of the origin, $\psi, \tilde{\psi} \in C_0^\infty(\mathbb{R}^2 \setminus \{0\})$ such that $\psi \equiv 1$ on the support of $\tilde{\psi}$, $a(x)$ be a smooth compactly supported Then

\begin{align}
(1.2.60a) & \quad \left\| \text{Op}_h^w(r^k_p(x, \xi))w \right\|_{L^2} \lesssim h^{2/3}(\|w\|_{L^2} + \|Mw\|_{L^2}) + h^{1+p}\|w\|_{L^2}, \\
(1.2.60b) & \quad \left\| \text{Op}_h^w(r^k_{N,p}(x, \xi))w \right\|_{L^\infty} \lesssim h^{1-\beta} \sum_{\mu=0}^{1} \left( \|\theta_0\Omega_0^\mu w\|_{L^2} + \|\theta_0\Omega_0^\mu Mw\|_{L^2} \right),
\end{align}

for some $\theta \in C_0^\infty(\mathbb{R}^2 \setminus \{0\})$, and a small $\beta > 0$, $\beta \to 0$ as $\sigma \to 0$.

Proof. Using proposition 1.2.21 for a fixed $N \in \mathbb{N}$ and up to multiplicative constants independent of $h, k$, we have the following symbolic development:

\begin{align}
(1.2.61) & \quad \left[ (x_n|\xi| - \xi_n)\tilde{\psi}(2^{-k}\xi)a(x)b_p(\xi) \right] h \left[ \gamma \left( \frac{x|\xi| - \xi}{h^{1/2} - \sigma} \right) \right] \psi(2^{-k}\xi) \\
& \quad = \gamma \left( \frac{x|\xi| - \xi}{h^{1/2} - \sigma} \right) \psi(2^{-k}\xi)a(x)b_p(\xi)(x_n|\xi| - \xi_n) \\
& \quad + h \left\{ (x_n|\xi| - \xi_n)\tilde{\psi}(2^{-k}\xi)a(x)b_p(\xi), \gamma \left( \frac{x|\xi| - \xi}{h^{1/2} - \sigma} \right) \right\} \\
& \quad + \sum_{\alpha\equiv(\alpha_1, \alpha_2)}^{2\leq|\alpha|\leq N} h^{|\alpha|} \partial_x^{\alpha_1} \partial_\xi^{\alpha_2} \left[ (x_n|\xi| - \xi_n)\tilde{\psi}(2^{-k}\xi)a(x)b_p(\xi) \right] \partial_x^{\alpha_2} \partial_\xi^{\alpha_1} \left[ \gamma \left( \frac{x|\xi| - \xi}{h^{1/2} - \sigma} \right) \right] + r_{N,p}^k(x, \xi),
\end{align}

with

\[
\begin{align*}
\text{r}_{N,p}^k(x, \xi) &= \frac{h^{N}}{(\pi h)^4} \sum_{|\alpha_1| + |\alpha_2| = N} \int e^{i\frac{\langle y - y' \rangle}{h}} \int_0^1 \int_0^1 \partial_x^{\alpha_1} \partial_\xi^{\alpha_2} \left[ (x_n|\xi| - \xi_n)\tilde{\psi}(2^{-k}\xi)a(x)b_p(\xi) \right] |_{x = x_1 + tz, \xi = \xi_1 + t\zeta} \\
& \quad \times (1 - t)^{N-1} dt \partial_x^{\alpha_2} \partial_\xi^{\alpha_1} \left[ \gamma \left( \frac{x|\xi| - \xi}{h^{1/2} - \sigma} \right) \right] |_{x = x_1 + tz, \xi = \xi_1 + t\zeta} dt dz dp d\zeta.
\end{align*}
\]

For sake of simplicity, we denote by $t_1^k$ (resp. $t_2^k$, $|\alpha| = 2, \ldots, N - 1$) the Poisson brackets (resp. the $|\alpha|$-th contribution) in (1.2.61). An explicit computation of $t_1^k$, combined with the fact that $x_1|\xi_2| - x_2|\xi_1| = (x_1|\xi_1| - \xi_1)|\xi_2|^{-1} - (x_2|\xi_2| - \xi_2)|\xi_1|^{-1}$, shows that it is linear combination of terms of the form

\[
h(\partial_x) \left( \frac{x_j|\xi| - \xi_j}{h^{1/2} - \sigma} \right) \left( \frac{x_j|\xi| - \xi_j}{h^{1/2} - \sigma} \right) \tilde{\psi}(2^{-k}\xi)a(x)b_p(\xi),
\]

for $j \in \{1, 2\}$ and some new functions $\tilde{\psi}, a, b_p$, so by inequalities (1.2.52) we derive that

\begin{align}
(1.2.62a) & \quad \left\| \text{Op}_h^w(t_1^k)w \right\|_{L^2} \lesssim h^{3/2}(\|w\|_{L^2} + \|Mw\|_{L^2}),
\end{align}
The improvement of these estimates with respect to \((1.2.61)\) is attributable to the choice of \(\psi\) identically equal to 1 on the support of \(\tilde{\psi}\). All derivatives of \(\psi\) vanish against \(\tilde{\psi}\), so in the development of \(r_k^\alpha\) we avoid terms like

\[
\gamma \left( \frac{x_1|\xi|}{\xi_h^{2-\alpha}} \right) \tilde{\psi}(2^{-k}\xi) a(x) b_p(\xi) (\partial\psi)(2^{-k}\xi)(2^{-k}|\xi|),
\]

coming out from \(\{x_n|\xi| - \xi_n, \psi(2^{-k}\xi) a(x) b_p(\xi), \tilde{\psi}(2^{-k}\xi) a(x) b_p(\xi)\}\), that do not enjoy estimates like \((1.2.62)\).

Using formula \((1.2.23)\) and looking at \((x_n|\xi| - \xi_n)\tilde{\psi}(2^{-k}\xi) a(x) b_p(\xi)\) as a linear combination of terms \(\tilde{\psi}(2^{-k}\xi) a(x) b_{p+1}(\xi)\), for some new \(\tilde{\psi}, a, b_{p+1}\), we realize that, for any \(2 \leq |\alpha| < N\),

\[
\|\text{Op}_h^w(t^k_{\alpha})w\|_{L^2} \lesssim \sum_{|\alpha_1|+|\alpha_2|=|\alpha|} h_{|\alpha|-(j+|\alpha_2|)}(\frac{1}{2}-\sigma) \gamma_{j+|\alpha_2|}(\frac{x_1|\xi| - \xi}{\xi_h^{1/2-\sigma}}) \tilde{\psi}(2^{-k}\xi) a_j(x) b_{p+j+1-|\alpha_1|}(\xi),
\]

for some new other \(\tilde{\psi}, a_j\), with \(a_j\) compactly supported, and then that

\[
\|\text{Op}_h^w(t^k_{\alpha})w\|_{L^\infty} \lesssim \sum_{|\alpha_1|+|\alpha_2|=|\alpha|} h_{|\alpha|-(j+|\alpha_2|)}(\frac{1}{2}-\sigma) 2^{k(p+j+1-|\alpha_1|)} \|w\|_{L^2},
\]

after propositions \((1.2.27)\) \((1.2.30)\). For \(|\alpha| \geq 3\), the above estimates imply \(\|\text{Op}_h^w(t^k_{\alpha})\|_{L^2} \lesssim h^{\frac{1}{2}-\beta}\) and \(\|\text{Op}_h^w(t^k_{\alpha})w\|_{L^\infty} \lesssim h^{1-\beta} \sum_{\mu=0}^1 \|\theta_0\Omega_h^\mu w\|_{L^2} + \|\theta_0\Omega_h^\mu Mw\|_{L^2}\). For \(|\alpha| = 2\), we exploit the fact that functions \(\gamma_{j+|\alpha_2|}\) vanish in a neighbourhood of the origin, as they come from \(\gamma\)'s derivatives, and define \(\gamma_{j+|\alpha_2|}(z) := \gamma_{j+|\alpha_2|}(z) z_i|z|^{-2}, i = 1, 2\), so that

\[
t^k_{\alpha} = \sum_{|\alpha_1|+|\alpha_2|=|\alpha|} h_{|\alpha|-(j+|\alpha_2|)}(\frac{1}{2}-\sigma) \gamma_{j+|\alpha_2|}(\frac{x_1|\xi| - \xi}{\xi_h^{1/2-\sigma}}) \tilde{\psi}(2^{-k}\xi) a_j(x) b_{p+j+1-|\alpha_1|}(\xi),
\]

to which we can then apply lemma \((1.2.33)\). After inequalities \((1.2.52)\), \(\text{Op}_h^w(t^k_{|\alpha|})\) with \(|\alpha| = 2\) also satisfies \((1.2.62)\).

Finally, reminding definition \((1.2.31)\) of \(J^k_{p,q}(x, \xi)\) for general \(k \in K, p, q \in \mathbb{Z}\), and developing derivatives in \(r^k_{N,p}\) using lemma \((1.2.26)\) we observe that

\[
r^k_{N,p} = \sum_{|\alpha_1|+|\alpha_2|=|\alpha|} h^{N-\left(|\alpha_2|+j\right)}(\frac{1}{2}-\sigma) J^k_{p+1-|\alpha_2|,|\alpha_2|+j-|\alpha_1|}(x, \xi),
\]

hence propositions \((1.2.28)\) and \((1.2.31)\) give that

\[
\|\text{Op}_h^w(r^k_{N,p})\|_{L^2} \lesssim \sum_{|\alpha_1|+|\alpha_2|=N} h^{N-\left(|\alpha_2|+j\right)}(\frac{1}{2}-\sigma) 2^{k(p+1+j-|\alpha_1|)} \lesssim h^{1+p},
\]

\[
\|\text{Op}_h^w(r^k_{N,p})\|_{L^2;L^\infty} \lesssim \sum_{|\alpha_1|+|\alpha_2|=N} h^{N-\left(|\alpha_2|+j\right)}(\frac{1}{2}-\sigma) 2^{k(p+1+j-|\alpha_1|)}(h^{-\frac{1}{2}+\sigma} 2^k)^{i}(h^{-1} 2^k) \lesssim h^{1+p},
\]
if $N$ is chosen sufficiently large (e.g. $N > 10 + 2p$). We should also highlight the fact that, at the difference of (1.2.60b), (1.2.60a) does not improve (1.2.51a): if we get a $h^{\frac{2}{p} - \beta}$ factor in front of the first term in the right hand side, the second term $h^{1 + p}\|w\|_{L^2}$ is just a $O(h^{1 - \beta})$ in the case $p = 0$, coming from $|\alpha_1| = N$, $j = |\alpha_2| = 0$, $p = 0$ above.

\[ \Box \]

### 1.2.4 Operators for the Klein-Gordon solution: some estimates

This subsection is mostly devoted to the introduction of some symbols and operators, along with their properties, that we will often use in the paper when dealing with the Klein-Gordon component of the solution to starting system (1.1.1). From now on we will use the notation $p(\xi) := \sqrt{1 + |\xi|^2}$ (thus, $p'(\xi)$ denotes the gradient of $p(\xi)$, $p''(\xi) = (\partial_{ij}^2 p(\xi))_{ij}$ the $2 \times 2$ Hessian matrix of $p(\xi)$).

Proposition 1.2.36 is a general result about continuity on spaces $H^s_h(\mathbb{R}^2)$ of operators with symbols of order $r \in \mathbb{R}$ and generalises theorem 7.11 in [3]. Proposition 1.2.37 is a result of continuity from $L^2$ to $H^\rho,\infty_h$ of a particular class of operators that will act on the Klein-Gordon component. In the spirit of [11] for the Schrödinger equation, it allows to pass from uniform norms to the $L^2$ norm losing only a power $h^{\frac{1}{2} - \beta}$ for a small $\beta > 0$ instead of a $h^{-1}$ as for the semi-classical Sobolev injection. Proposition 1.2.39 is, instead, a result of uniform $L^p - L^p$ continuity of such operators, for every $1 \leq p \leq +\infty$.

**Proposition 1.2.36 (Continuity on $H^s_h$).** Let $s \in \mathbb{R}$. Let $a \in S_{\delta,\sigma}(\{\xi\}^r)$, $r \in \mathbb{R}$, $\delta \in [0, \frac{1}{2}]$, $\sigma \geq 0$. Then $\text{Op}_h^w(a)$ is uniformly bounded : $H^s_h(\mathbb{R}^2) \to H^{s-r}_h(\mathbb{R}^2)$ and there exists a positive constant $C$ independent of $h$ such that

$$\|\text{Op}_h^w(a)\|_{L(H^s_h;H^{s-r}_h)} \leq C, \quad \forall h \in [0,1].$$

**Proposition 1.2.37 (Continuity from $L^2$ to $H^\rho,\infty_h$).** Let $\rho \in \mathbb{N}$. Let $a \in S_{\delta,\sigma}(\{\frac{x - p'(\xi)}{\sqrt{h}}\}^{-1})$, $\delta \in [0, \frac{1}{2}]$, $\sigma > 0$. Then $\text{Op}_h^w(a)$ is bounded : $L^2(\mathbb{R}^2) \to H^\rho,\infty_h(\mathbb{R}^2)$ and there exists a positive constant $C$ independent of $h$ such that

$$\|\text{Op}_h^w(a)\|_{L(L^2;H^\rho,\infty_h)} \leq CH^{-\frac{1}{2} - \beta}, \quad \forall h \in [0,1],$$

where $\beta > 0$ depends linearly on $\sigma$.

**Proof.** We first remark that, after definition 1.2.18 (i) of the $H^\rho,\infty_h$ norm,

$$\|\text{Op}_h^w(a)w\|_{H^\rho,\infty_h} = \|hD_x^\rho \text{Op}_h^w(a)w\|_{L^\infty},$$

and that, by symbolic calculus of lemma 1.2.24, $\langle \xi \rangle^{\rho}\hat{a}(x,\xi)$ belongs to $S_{\delta,\sigma}(\{\xi\}^{\rho}(\frac{x - p'(\xi)}{\sqrt{h}})^{-1}) \subset h^{-\rho}\hat{S}_{\delta,\sigma}(\{\frac{x - p'(\xi)}{\sqrt{h}}\}^{-1})$. This means that estimating the $H^\rho,\infty_h$ norm of an operator whose symbol is rapidly decaying in $|h^{\rho}\xi|$ corresponds actually to estimate the $L^\infty$ norm of an operator associated to another symbol (namely, $\hat{a}(x,\xi) = \langle \xi \rangle^{\rho}\hat{a}(x,\xi)$) which is still in the same class as $a$, up to a small loss $h^{-\rho\sigma}$.

From definition 1.2.17 (i) of $\text{Op}_h^w(a)w$, and using a change of coordinates $y \mapsto \sqrt{h}y$, $\xi \mapsto \sqrt{h}\xi$, integration by part, Cauchy-Schwarz inequality, and Young’s inequality for convolutions, we
derive what follows:

\begin{equation}
\begin{aligned}
|O_{\mathcal{H}}^n(a)w| &= \\
&= \left| \frac{1}{(2\pi)^2} \int \int e^{i\left(\frac{x}{\sqrt{h}} - y\right) \cdot \xi} a\left(\frac{x + \sqrt{h}y}{2}, \sqrt{h}\xi\right) w(\sqrt{h}y) \, dy \, d\xi \right| \\
&= \left| \frac{1}{(2\pi)^4} \int \int e^{i\left(\frac{x}{\sqrt{h}} - y\right) \cdot \xi + iy} a\left(\frac{x + \sqrt{h}y}{2}, \sqrt{h}\xi\right) \, dy \, d\xi \right| \\
&= \left| \frac{1}{(2\pi)^4} \int \delta\left(\frac{\eta}{\sqrt{h}}\right) \int \int \left(1 - i\left(\frac{x}{\sqrt{h}} - y\right) \cdot \partial_\xi \right) \left(1 + i(\xi - \eta) \cdot \partial_y\right)^3 e^{i\left(\frac{x}{\sqrt{h}} - y\right) \cdot \xi + iy} \\
&\quad \times a\left(\frac{x + \sqrt{h}y}{2}, \sqrt{h}\xi\right) \, dy \, d\xi \, d\eta \right|
\end{aligned}
\end{equation}

where \( N > 0 \) will be properly chosen later. We draw attention to two facts: in the third equality in (1.2.63) we use that

\[ \left(1 - i\left(\frac{x}{\sqrt{h}} - y\right) \cdot \partial_\xi \right) \left(1 + i(\xi - \eta) \cdot \partial_y\right)^3 e^{i\left(\frac{x}{\sqrt{h}} - y\right) \cdot \xi + iy} = e^{i\left(\frac{x}{\sqrt{h}} - y\right) \cdot \xi + iy} \]

so, integrating by part, derivatives \( \partial_y, \partial_\xi \) fall on \( \left(\frac{x}{\sqrt{h}} - y\right)^{-1}, (\xi - \eta)^{-1} \) (giving rise to more decreasing factors) and/or on \( a\left(\frac{x + \sqrt{h}y}{2}, \sqrt{h}\xi\right) \); symbol \( a \) belongs to \( S_{\delta,\sigma}(1) \) with \( \delta \leq \frac{1}{2} \), but the loss of \( h^{-\sigma} \) is offset by the factor \( \sqrt{h} \) coming from the derivation of \( a\left(\frac{x + \sqrt{h}y}{2}, \sqrt{h}\xi\right) \) with respect to \( y \) and \( \xi \).

In order to estimate \( \|\langle h^\sigma \sqrt{h}\xi\rangle^{-N} \langle \frac{x + \sqrt{h}y}{2} - p'(\sqrt{h}\xi) \rangle^{-1} \|_{L^2_\xi} \) we first introduce a smooth cut-off function \( \chi\left(\frac{x + \sqrt{h}y}{2}\right) \), with \( \chi \) supported in some ball \( B_C(0) \), to distinguish between the case when \( \frac{x + \sqrt{h}y}{2} \) is bounded from the one where \( \frac{x + \sqrt{h}y}{2} \to +\infty \). In the latter situation, say for \( \left|\frac{x + \sqrt{h}y}{2}\right| > 2 \), we have \( \langle \frac{x + \sqrt{h}y}{2} - p'(\sqrt{h}\xi) \rangle^{-1} \lesssim \sqrt{h} \) and

\[ \left\| (1 - \chi)\left(\frac{x + \sqrt{h}y}{2}\right) \right\| \left\| \langle h^\sigma \sqrt{h}\xi\rangle^{-N} \langle \frac{x + \sqrt{h}y}{2} - p'(\sqrt{h}\xi) \rangle^{-1} \right\|_{L^2_\xi} \lesssim h^{-\sigma}. \]

On the other hand, when \( \frac{x + \sqrt{h}y}{2} \) is bounded we consider a Littlewood-Paley decomposition and
write
\[(1.2.64)\]
\[
\left\| (h^\sigma \sqrt{h} \xi)^{-N} \left( \frac{x + \sqrt{N} y}{2 \sqrt{h}} \right)^{-1} \right\|_{L^2(\xi)}^2 = h^{-1} \sum_{k \geq 0} \int \left( h^\sigma \xi^{-2N} \left( \frac{x + \sqrt{N} y}{2 \sqrt{h}} \right)^{-2} \right) \varphi_k(\xi) d\xi
\]
where
\[
I_0 = \int \left( h^\sigma \xi^{-2N} \left( \frac{x + \sqrt{N} y}{2 \sqrt{h}} \right)^{-2} \right) \varphi_0(\xi) d\xi
\]
and
\[
I_k = \int \left( h^\sigma \xi^{-2N} \left( \frac{x + \sqrt{N} y}{2 \sqrt{h}} \right)^{-2} \right) \varphi(2^{-k} \xi) d\xi
\]
\[
\leq 2^{-k} \int \left( h^\sigma \xi^{-2N} \left( \frac{x + \sqrt{N} y}{2 \sqrt{h}} \right)^{-2} \right) \varphi(\xi) d\xi.
\]
For a fixed \(k_0\) and any \(k \leq k_0\), \(|\det(p''(2^k \xi))| \geq C > 0\) on the support of \(\varphi\). For \(k \geq k_0\), function \(\xi \rightarrow g_k(\xi) = 2^{3k} \left( \frac{x + \sqrt{N} y}{2 \sqrt{h}} \right) - 2^{3k} p'(2^k \xi)\) is such that \(|\det(g_k(\xi))| = \frac{2^{3k}}{(1 + |2^k \xi|^2)^{\sigma}}\) and \(|\det(g_k(\xi))| \sim 1\) on the support of \(\varphi\). We may thus split the \(d\xi\) integral in a finite number (independent of \(k\)) of integrals, computed on compact domains, on which \(\xi \mapsto g_k(\xi)\) is a change of variables with Jacobian of size 1. We are then reduced to estimate
\[
2^{-N+2k} h^{-2\sigma N} \int_{|z| \leq C \left( \frac{x + \sqrt{N} y}{2 \sqrt{h}} \right)^{-1}} dz,
\]
where \(C\) is a positive constant and \(\xi_0\) is in \(supp \varphi\). Since we assumed that \(\frac{x + \sqrt{N} y}{2 \sqrt{h}}\) is bounded, \(|g_k(\xi_0)| = O(2^{3k})\) and we get
\[
I_k \lesssim 2^{-N+2k} h^{-2\sigma N} \int_{|z| \leq 2^{3k} \left( \frac{x + \sqrt{N} y}{2 \sqrt{h}} \right)^{-1}} dz
\]
\[
\lesssim 2^{-N+8k} h^{-2\sigma N} h \int_{|z| \leq h^{-1/2}} (z)^{-2} dz
\]
\[
\lesssim 2^{-N+8k} h^{-2\sigma N + 1} \log(h^{-1}).
\]
Taking the sum of all \(I_k\) for \(k \geq 0\) we then deduce that
\[
\left\| (h^\sigma \sqrt{h} \xi)^{-N} \left( \frac{x + \sqrt{N} y}{2 \sqrt{h}} \right)^{-1} \right\|_{L^2(\xi)} \lesssim h^{-\sigma N - \delta} \left( \sum_{k \geq 0} 2^{-N+8k} \right)^{\frac{1}{2}} \lesssim h^{-\sigma N - \delta},
\]
for \(\delta > 0\) as small as we want, if we choose \(N > 0\) such that \(-2N + 8 < 0\) (e.g. \(N = 5\)). Finally
\[
\| Op^\sigma_h(a) \|_{L^2(H^{-\infty}_h)} = O(h^{-\frac{1}{2} - \beta}),
\]
where \(\beta(\sigma) = (N + \rho) \sigma + \delta\).

The following lemma is as simple as useful and will be largely recalled from subsection 3.2.1 on. It is also useful to introduce now the following manifold
\[(1.2.66)\]
\[
\Lambda_{kg} := \{ (x, \xi) \in \mathbb{R}^2 \times \mathbb{R}^2 : x - p'(\xi) = 0 \}
\]
which appears to be the graph of function \(\xi = -d\phi(x)\), with \(\phi(x) = \sqrt{1 - |x|^2}\) (see picture 3.1).
Lemma 1.2.38. Let $\gamma, \chi \in C_0^\infty(\mathbb{R}^2)$ be equal to 1 in a neighbourhood of the origin and with sufficiently small support, and $\sigma > 0$ be small. There exists a family of smooth functions $\theta_h(x)$, real valued, equal to 1 for $|x| \leq 1 - ch^{2\sigma}$ and supported for $|x| \leq 1 - c_1 h^{2\sigma}$, for some $0 < c_1 < c$, with $\|\partial^\alpha \theta_h\|_{L^\infty} = O(h^{-2\alpha\sigma})$ and $(h\partial_h)^k \theta_h$ bounded for every $k \in \mathbb{N}$, such that

$$
\tag{1.2.67}
\gamma \left( \frac{x - p(\xi)}{\sqrt{h}} \right) \chi(h^\sigma \xi) = \theta_h(x) \gamma \left( \frac{x - p(\xi)}{\sqrt{h}} \right) \chi(h^\sigma \xi).
$$

Proof. Straightforward after observing that function $\gamma \left( \frac{x - p(\xi)}{\sqrt{h}} \right) \chi(h^\sigma \xi)$ is localized around manifold $\Lambda_{kg}$, meaning that its support is included in $\{(x, \xi) \mid |\xi| \leq h^{-\sigma}, |x| \leq 1 - ch^{2\sigma}\}$, for a small $c > 0$.

Proposition 1.2.39 (Continuity from $L^p$ to $L^p$). Let $\gamma, \chi \in C_0^\infty(\mathbb{R}^2)$ be equal to 1 in a neighbourhood of the origin and with sufficiently small support, $\Sigma(\xi) = (\xi)^\rho$ with $\rho \in \mathbb{N}$, and $\sigma > 0$. Then $Op_h^w(\gamma \left( \frac{x - p(\xi)}{\sqrt{h}} \right) \chi(h^\sigma \xi) \Sigma(\xi)) : L^p \rightarrow L^p$ is bounded and its $L(L^p)$ norm is estimated by $h^{-\sigma \rho - \beta}$, for a small $\beta > 0$, $\beta \rightarrow 0$ as $\sigma \rightarrow 0$, for every $1 \leq p \leq +\infty$.

Proof. From lemma 1.2.38 and the fact that $\gamma \left( \frac{x - p(\xi)}{\sqrt{h}} \right) \chi(h^\sigma \xi)$ is supported in a neighbourhood of $\Lambda_{kg}$ introduced above, we can find a new smooth cut-off function $\gamma_1$, suitably supported, so that

$$
\text{Op}_h^w \left( \left( \frac{x - p(\xi)}{\sqrt{h}} \right) \chi(\sigma \chi_1 \Sigma(\xi)) \right) = \text{Op}_h^w \left( \left( \frac{x - p(\xi)}{\sqrt{h}} \right) \chi(h^\sigma \xi) \Sigma(\xi) \gamma_1 \left( \frac{\xi + d\phi(x)}{h^{1/2 - \beta}} \right) \theta_h(x) \right)
$$

where $\beta > 0$ is a small constant, $\beta \rightarrow 0$ as $\sigma \rightarrow 0$, that takes into account the degeneracy of the equivalence between the two equations of $\Lambda_{kg}$ when approaching the boundary of $supp \theta_h$.

Denoting $\gamma \left( \frac{x - p(\xi)}{\sqrt{h}} \right) \chi(h^\sigma \xi) \Sigma(\xi)$ concisely by $A(x, \xi)$ and looking at the kernel associated to the above operator

$$
K(x, y) := \frac{1}{(2\pi h)^2} \int e^{i \xi(x - y) \cdot \xi} A \left( \frac{x + y}{2}, \xi \right) \gamma_1 \left( \frac{\xi + d\phi(x + y)}{h^{1/2 - \beta}} \right) \theta_h \left( \frac{x + y}{2} \right) d\xi
$$

we observe that, since

$$
\left( \frac{x}{\sqrt{h}} \right)^\alpha \phi^{(x - y) \cdot \xi} = \left( \frac{1}{\sqrt{i}} \right)^{\left| \alpha \right|} \partial_{\xi}^{\left| \alpha \right|} \phi^{(x - y) \cdot \xi}
$$

and $h^{\left| \alpha \right| / 2} \partial_{x} A \left( \frac{x + y}{2}, \xi \right)$ is bounded by $h^{-\sigma \rho}$ for any $\alpha \in \mathbb{N}^2$, by making some integration by parts

$$
\left| K(x, y) \right| \lesssim h^{-2 - \sigma \rho} \int_{|\xi| \leq h^{1/2 - \beta}} d\xi \lesssim h^{-1 - \sigma \rho - 2\beta}, \quad \forall (x, y) \in \mathbb{R}^2 \times \mathbb{R}^2.
$$

This means in particular that

$$
|K(x, y)| \lesssim h^{-1 - \sigma \rho - 2\beta} \left( \frac{x}{\sqrt{h}} \right)^{-3}, \quad |K(x, y)| \lesssim h^{-1 - \sigma \rho - 2\beta} \left( \frac{y}{\sqrt{h}} \right)^{-3}, \quad \forall (x, y)
$$

implying that

$$
\sup_x \int |K(x, y)| dy \lesssim h^{-\sigma \rho - 2\beta}, \quad \sup_y \int |K(x, y)| dx \lesssim h^{-\sigma \rho - 2\beta}.
$$

The operator associated to $K(x, y)$ is hence bounded on $L^p$ with norm $O(h^{-\sigma \rho - 2\beta})$, for every $1 \leq p \leq +\infty$. 

\[\square\]
The following lemma shows that we have nice upper bounds for operators whose symbol is supported for large frequencies \(|\xi| \geq h^{-\sigma}\), \(\sigma > 0\), when acting on functions \(w\) that belong to \(H^s_h\), for some large \(s\). We state it in space dimension 2 but it is clear that it holds true in general space dimension \(d \geq 1\). This result is useful when we want to reduce to symbols rapidly decaying in \(|h^s\xi|\), for example in the intention of using proposition 1.2.37 or when we want to pass from a symbol of a certain positive order to another one of order zero, up to small losses of order \(O(h^{-\beta})\), \(\beta > 0\) depending linearly on \(\sigma\). We can always split a symbol using that \(1 = \chi(h^s\xi) + (1 - \chi)(h^s\xi)\), for a smooth \(\chi\) equal to 1 close to the origin, and consider as remainders all contributions coming from the latter.

**Lemma 1.2.40.** Let \(s' \geq 0\) and \(\chi \in C^\infty_0(\mathbb{R}^2)\), \(\chi \equiv 1\) in a neighbourhood of zero. Then

\[
\|\text{Op}_h^w((1 - \chi)(h^s\xi))w\|_{H^s_h} \leq C h^{\sigma(s-s')}\|w\|_{H^s_h}, \quad \forall s > s'.
\]

**Proof.** The result is a simple consequence of the fact that \((1 - \chi)(h^s\xi)\) is supported for \(|\xi| \gtrsim h^{-\sigma}\), because

\[
\|\text{Op}_h^w((1 - \chi)(h^s\xi))w\|_{H^s_h}^2 = \int (1 + |h\xi|^2)^s|(1 - \chi)(h^s h\xi)|^2|\hat{w}(\xi)|^2\,d\xi
\]

\[
= \int (1 + |h\xi|^2)^s(1 + |h\xi|^2)^{s'-s}|(1 - \chi)(h^s h\xi)|^2|\hat{w}(\xi)|^2\,d\xi
\]

\[
\leq C h^{2\sigma(s-s')}\|w\|_{H^s_h}^2,
\]

where the last inequality follows from an integration on \(|h\xi| \gtrsim h^{-\sigma}\) and from the fact that \(s' - s < 0\), \((1 + |h\xi|^2)^{s'-s} \leq C h^{-2\sigma(s'-s)}\).

We introduce the following operator:

\[
\mathcal{L}_j := \frac{1}{h} \text{Op}_h^w(x - p'_j(\xi)), \quad j = 1, 2,
\]

and use the notation \(\|\mathcal{L}^\gamma w\| = \|\mathcal{L}^{\gamma_1} \mathcal{L}^{\gamma_2} w\|\) for any \(\gamma = (\gamma_1, \gamma_2) \in \mathbb{N}^2\).

**Lemma 1.2.41.** Let \(\gamma \in C^\infty_0(\mathbb{R}^2)\) be equal to 1 in a neighbourhood of the origin, \(c(x, \xi) \in S_{\delta, \sigma}(1)\) with \(\delta \in [0, \frac{1}{2}]\) and \(\sigma > 0\). Then \(\gamma \left(\frac{x-p'(\xi)}{\sqrt{h}}\right)c(x, \xi)\) belongs to \(S_{\frac{1}{2}, \sigma}(1)\left(\frac{x-p'(\xi)}{\sqrt{h}}\right)^{-N}\), for all \(N \geq 0\).

**Proof.** Straightforward.

**Lemma 1.2.42.** Let \(n \in \mathbb{N}\) and \(\gamma_n(z)\) be a smooth function such that \(|\partial^\alpha \gamma_n(z)| \lesssim |z|^{-|\alpha|-n}\) for all \(\alpha \in \mathbb{N}^2\). Let also \(c(x, \xi) \in S_{\delta, \sigma}(1)\), with \(\delta \in [0, \frac{1}{2}]\), \(\sigma > 0\), be supported for \(|\xi| \lesssim h^{-\sigma}\). Up to some multiplicative constants independent of \(h\), we have the following equality:

\[
\text{(1.2.69)} \quad \left[ c(x, \xi) \gamma_n \left( \frac{x - p'(\xi)}{\sqrt{h}} \right) \right] z_j(x - p'_j(\xi)) = c(x, \xi) \gamma_n \left( \frac{x - p'(\xi)}{\sqrt{h}} \right) (x - p'_j(\xi))
\]

\[
+ h \gamma_n \left( \frac{x - p'(\xi)}{\sqrt{h}} \right) \left[ (\partial_{\xi_j} c) + (\partial_x c) \cdot (\partial_{\xi_j} p'_j) \right] + h \sum_{|\alpha|=2} (\partial^\alpha \gamma_n) \left( \frac{x - p'(\xi)}{\sqrt{h}} \right) c(x, \xi) (\partial_{\xi_j} p'_j)(\xi) + r(x, \xi),
\]

with \(r \in h^{3/2-\delta} S_{\frac{1}{2}, \sigma} \left( \frac{x-p'(\xi)}{\sqrt{h}} \right)^{-n}\), and if \(\chi \in C^\infty_0(\mathbb{R}^2)\) is such that \(\chi(h^s\xi) \equiv 1\) on the support of \(c(x, \xi)\),

\[
\text{(1.2.70a)} \quad \left\| \text{Op}_h^w \left( c(x, \xi) \gamma_n \left( \frac{x - p'(\xi)}{\sqrt{h}} \right) \right) (x - p'_j(\xi)) \right\|_{L^2} \lesssim \sum_{|\gamma|=0} h^{1-\beta} \|\text{Op}_h^w(\chi(h^s\xi))\mathcal{L}^\gamma w\|_{L^2},
\]

46
In order to prove the last part of the statement (estimates (1.2.71)) we use equality (1.2.69) with

Moreover, if $n \in \mathbb{N}^*$ and $\partial^\alpha \gamma_n$ vanishes in a neighbourhood of the origin whenever $|\alpha| \geq 1$, we also have that

(1.2.71)

$$
\sum_{0 \leq |\alpha| \leq 2} h^{2-\beta} \| \mathcal{O}_h^\alpha (\chi (h^\sigma \xi)) \mathcal{L} \gamma \mathcal{V} \|_{L^2},
$$

Proof. As $c(x, \xi) \gamma_n \left( \frac{x-p'(\xi)}{\sqrt{h}} \right) \in S_{\frac{1}{2}, \sigma} \left( \left( \frac{x-p'(\xi)}{\sqrt{h}} \right)^{-n} \right)$ and $\partial^\alpha_x (x_j - p_j'(\xi)) \in S_{0,0}(1)$ for any $|\alpha| \geq 1$, equality (1.2.69) follows from the last part of lemma 1.2.24 and symbolic development (1.2.18) until order 2, after having observed that

(1.2.72)

$$
\{ c(x, \xi) \gamma_n \left( \frac{x-p'(\xi)}{\sqrt{h}} \right), x_j - p_j'(\xi) \} = \gamma_n \left( \frac{x-p'(\xi)}{\sqrt{h}} \right) [(\partial_j \xi c) + (\partial_j c) \cdot (\partial_k p_j)],
$$

and that, up to some multiplicative negligible,

$$
h^2 \sum_{|\alpha|=2} \partial^\alpha_x \left[ c(x, \xi) \gamma_n \left( \frac{x-p'(\xi)}{\sqrt{h}} \right) (\partial^\alpha \partial^\beta) (\xi) \right] = h \sum_{|\alpha|=2} (\partial^\alpha \gamma_n) \left( \frac{x-p'(\xi)}{\sqrt{h}} \right) c(x, \xi) (\partial^\alpha \partial^\beta) (\xi)
$$

$$
+ h^{2} \sum_{|\alpha|=2} \left( \partial^\alpha \gamma_n \right) \left( \frac{x-p'(\xi)}{\sqrt{h}} \right) (\partial^\alpha \partial^\beta) (x, \xi) (\partial^\alpha \partial^\beta) (\xi) + h^2 \sum_{|\alpha|=2} \gamma_n \left( \frac{x-p'(\xi)}{\sqrt{h}} \right) \left( \partial^\alpha \partial^\beta \right) (x, \xi) (\partial^\alpha \partial^\beta) (\xi).
$$

If $\chi$ is a cut-off function as in the statement, its derivatives vanish on the support of $c(x, \xi)$, and from remark 1.2.22

(1.2.73)

$$
c(x, \xi) \gamma_n \left( \frac{x-p'(\xi)}{\sqrt{h}} \right) = \left[ c(x, \xi) \gamma_n \left( \frac{x-p'(\xi)}{\sqrt{h}} \right) \right] \chi (h^\sigma \xi) + \beta_{\infty}(x, \xi)
$$

with $\beta_{\infty} \in h^N S_{\frac{1}{2}, \sigma} \left( \left( \frac{x-p'(\xi)}{\sqrt{h}} \right)^{-n} \right)$, $N \in \mathbb{N}$ as large as we want. Estimates (1.2.70) follow then as a straight consequence of (1.2.69), definition 1.2.68 of $\mathcal{L}_j$, proposition 1.2.36 and semi-classical Sobolev’s injection 1.2.15 (resp. proposition 1.2.37) when $n = 0$ (resp. $n > 0$).

In order to prove the last part of the statement (estimates (1.2.71)) we use equality (1.2.69) with $\gamma_n$ replaced by $\tilde{\gamma}_{n-1}(z) = \gamma_n(z) z_1$, where $|\partial^\alpha \tilde{\gamma}_{n-1}(z)| \lesssim \langle z \rangle^{-|\alpha|-n-1}$, which gives that

$$
c(x, \xi) \gamma_n \left( \frac{x-p'(\xi)}{\sqrt{h}} \right) (x_i - p_i'(\xi)) (x_j - p_j'(\xi)) = \left[ c(x, \xi) \gamma_n \left( \frac{x-p'(\xi)}{\sqrt{h}} \right) (x_i - p_i'(\xi)) \right] \chi (x_j - p_j'(\xi))
$$

$$
- h \gamma_n \left( \frac{x-p'(\xi)}{\sqrt{h}} \right) (x_i - p_i'(\xi)) \left[ (\partial_j \xi c) + (\partial_j c) \cdot (\partial_k p_j) \right]
$$

$$
- h^2 \sum_{|\alpha|=2} (\partial^\alpha \gamma_{n-1}) \left( \frac{x-p'(\xi)}{\sqrt{h}} \right) c(x, \xi) (\partial^\alpha \partial^\beta) (\xi) - \sqrt{hr}(x, \xi),
$$

47
with \( r \in h^{\frac{1}{2} - \delta} S_{\|.,\|}(\frac{x - p'(\xi)}{\sqrt{h}})^{-1} \). As \( \partial^\alpha \tilde{\gamma}_{n-1} \) vanishes in a neighbourhood of the origin for \( |\alpha| = 2 \) by the hypothesis made on \( \gamma_n \), we can rewrite it as \( \sum_{l=1}^2 \gamma_l^i(z)z_l \), where \( \tilde{\gamma}_{n+2}^l(z) := (\partial^\alpha \tilde{\gamma}_{n-1})(z)z_l |z|^{-2} \) is such that \( |\partial^\beta \tilde{\gamma}_{n+2}^l(z)| \lesssim \langle z \rangle^{-|\beta|-1} \). Then, using again equality (1.2.69) for all products different from \( r(x, \xi) \) in the above right hand side (with \( c \) replaced with \( h^\delta((\partial_x c) - (\partial_x p'_j)) \) in the second addend, and \( \gamma_n \) and \( c \) replaced with \( \tilde{\gamma}_{n+2}^l \) and \( c(\partial_x p'_j) \) respectively in the third one, \( l = 1, 2 \) we find that

\[
c(x, \xi) \gamma_n \left( \frac{x - p'(\xi)}{\sqrt{h}} \right) (x_i - p'_i(\xi))(x_j - p'_j(\xi)) =
\]

\[
[c(x, \xi) \gamma_n \left( \frac{x - p'(\xi)}{\sqrt{h}} \right)] \partial_x \|x_i - p'_i(\xi)\| \partial_x \|x_j - p'_j(\xi)\| + hr(x, \xi)\gamma_n(x_i - p'_i(\xi)) - \sqrt{hr}(x, \xi),
\]

for a new \( r_1 \in \eta h^{-\delta} S_{\|.,\|}(\frac{x - p'(\xi)}{\sqrt{h}})^{-\eta} \). Estimates (1.2.71) are then obtained using (1.2.73) and propositions 1.2.30 and 1.2.37.

We will also need the following result, which is detailed in lemma 1.2.6 in [7] for the one-dimensional case.

**Lemma 1.2.43.** Let \( \gamma \in C_0^\infty(\mathbb{R}^2) \), and \( \phi(x) = \sqrt{1 - |x|^2} \). If the support of \( \gamma \) is sufficiently small,

\[
(1.2.74a) \quad (x_k - p'_k(\xi)) \gamma(\langle \xi \rangle^2(x - p'(\xi))) = \sum_{l=1}^2 e_k^l(x, \xi)(x_l + d_l \phi(\xi)),
\]

\[
(1.2.74b) \quad (\xi_k + d_k \phi(x)) \gamma(\langle \xi \rangle^2(x - p'(\xi))) = \sum_{l=1}^2 \bar{e}_k^l(x, \xi)(x_l - p'_l(\xi)),
\]

for any \( k = 1, 2 \), where functions \( e_k^l(x, \xi), \bar{e}_k^l(x, \xi) \) are such that, for any \( \alpha, \beta \in \mathbb{N}^2 \),

\[
(1.2.75a) \quad |\partial_x^\alpha \partial_\xi^\beta e_k^l(x, \xi)| \lesssim_{\alpha \beta} \langle \xi \rangle^{-3+2|\alpha||\beta|},
\]

\[
(1.2.75b) \quad |\partial_x^\alpha \partial_\xi^\beta \bar{e}_k^l(x, \xi)| \lesssim_{\alpha \beta} \langle \xi \rangle^{3+2|\alpha||\beta|},
\]

for any \( k, l = 1, 2 \).
Chapter 2

Energy Estimates

The aim of this chapter is to write an energy inequality for $E_n(t; u_\pm, v_\pm)$ and $E_3^k(t; u_\pm, v_\pm)$ respectively, which allows us to propagate the a-priori energy estimates made in theorem 1.1.2 i.e. to pass from (1.1.11) to (1.1.12c), (1.1.12d). Such an inequality is in general derived by computing and estimating the derivative in time of the energy, i.e. of the $L^2$ norm to the square of $u_\pm^I, v_\pm^I$. As this computation makes use of the system of equations satisfied by $(u_\pm^I, v_\pm^I)$ (see subsection 2.1.2), two main difficulties arise due to the quasi-linear nature of the starting problem and the very slow decay in time (1.1.11a) of the wave solution.

On the one hand, among all quadratic terms appearing in the right hand side of (2.1.2) we find the quasi-linear ones $Q_0^w(v_\pm, D_1 v_\pm^I)$ and $Q_{kg}^w(v_\pm, D_1 u_\pm^I)$, whose $L^2$ norm is bounded by $||v_\pm(t, \cdot)||_{H^1, \infty}(||u_\pm^I(t, \cdot)||_{H^1} + ||v_\pm^I(t, \cdot)||_{H^1})$, as usual for this kind of terms. This means that they are at the wrong energy level, in the sense that they cannot be controlled in $L^2$ by $E_n(t; u_\pm, v_\pm)$ or $E_3^k(t; u_\pm, v_\pm)$. This causes a "loss of derivatives" in the energy inequality if we roughly estimate

$$
\frac{1}{2} \partial_t \left( ||u_\pm^I(t, \cdot)||_{L^2}^2 + ||v_\pm^I(t, \cdot)||_{L^2}^2 \right) = -3 \left[ \langle Q_0^w(v_\pm, D_1 v_\pm^I), u_\pm^I \rangle + \langle Q_{kg}^w(v_\pm, D_1 u_\pm^I), v_\pm^I \rangle + \ldots \right]
$$

using the Cauchy-Schwarz inequality. This issue is however only technical. In fact, by writing system (2.1.2) in a vectorial fashion and para-linearising it in order to stress out the very troublesome terms (see subsection 2.1.1) we are able to symmetrize it, i.e. to derive an equivalent system in which the quasi-linear contribution is represented by a self-adjoint operator of order 1 (see subsection 2.1.3) proposition 2.1.5. As this operator is self-adjoint it essentially disappears in the energy inequality, replaced with an operator of order 0 whose action on $u_\pm^I, v_\pm^I$ is bounded in $L^2$ by $E_n(t; u_\pm, v_\pm)$ or $E_3^k(t; u_\pm, v_\pm)$, depending on the multi-index $I$ we are dealing with.

On the other hand, the $L^2$ norm of some semi-linear contributions to the right hand side of (2.1.2) decays very slowly in time. It is the case, for instance, of $Q_{kg}^w(v_\pm^I, D_1 u_\pm)$, whose $L^2$ norm is bounded by $||u_\pm(t, \cdot)||_{H^2, \infty}(||v_\pm(t, \cdot)||_{L^2})$ and only has the slow decay (1.1.11a) of the wave component $u_\pm$. Since we want to prove that

$$
\partial_t E_n(t; u_\pm, v_\pm) = O(\varepsilon t^{-\frac{3}{2}} E_n(t; u_\pm, v_\pm)^{\frac{1}{2}}), \quad \partial_t E_3^k(t; u_\pm, v_\pm) = O(\varepsilon t^{-1+\frac{3}{2}} E_3^k(t; u_\pm, v_\pm)^{\frac{1}{2}})
$$

we need to get rid of such terms by means of normal forms (see section 3.1). Because of the quasi-linear nature of our problem, some of them will be eliminated by an adapted quasi-linear normal form argument (see subsection 2.2.1), while the remaining ones can be treated with an usual semi-linear one (see subsection 2.2.2). At that point we will be able to prove proposition 2.2.13 and to derive estimates (1.1.12c), (1.1.12d).
2.1 Paralinearization and Symmetrization

As anticipated above, the first step towards the derivation of the right energy inequality is to handle the quasi-linear terms appearing in the right hand side of \((2.1.2)\) in order to avoid any loss of derivatives. We realize that the very quasi-linear contribution to our system appears in equation \((2.1.20)\) through a para-differential operator whose symbol is a real non symmetric matrix. As we need this operator to be self-adjoint (up to an operator of order 0), we symmetrize equation \((2.1.20)\) by defining a new function \(W^I\) in terms of \(W^I\), that will be solution to a new equation in which the symbol of the quasi-linear contribution is a real symmetric matrix (see subsection \(2.1.3)\). Also, we set aside subsection \(2.1.2)\) to the estimate of the \(L^2\) norms of the non-linear terms in the right hand side of \((2.1.20)\).

2.1.1 Paralinearization

Let us remind definitions \((1.1.10)\) and \((1.1.18)\). Since admissible vector fields considered in \(Z = \{ \Omega, Z_j, \partial_j, j = 1, 2\}\) exactly commute with the linear part of system \((1.1.1)\), we deduce from remark \(1.1.5)\) and \((1.1.17)\) that, for any multi-index \(I\), \((\Gamma^I u, \Gamma^I v)\) is solution to

\[
\begin{align*}
(\partial^2_t - \Delta_x) \Gamma^I u &= \sum_{(I, I_1), (I_2) \in \mathbb{I}(I)} Q_0(\Gamma^I v, \partial_1 \Gamma^I v) + \sum_{(I, I_1), (I_2) \in \mathbb{I}(I)} c_{I_1, I_2} Q_0(\Gamma^I v, \partial_2 \Gamma^I v), \\
(\partial^2_t - \Delta_x + 1) \Gamma^I v &= \sum_{(I, I_1), (I_2) \in \mathbb{I}(I)} Q_0(\Gamma^I v, \partial_1 \Gamma^I u) + \sum_{(I, I_1), (I_2) \in \mathbb{I}(I)} c_{I_1, I_2} Q_0(\Gamma^I v, \partial_2 \Gamma^I u),
\end{align*}
\]

with coefficients \(c_{I_1, I_2} \in \{-1, 0, 1\}\) such that \(c_{I_1, I_2} = 1\) for \(|I_1| + |I_2| = |I|\), in which case the derivative \(\partial\) acting on \(\Gamma^I v\) (resp. on \(\Gamma^I u\)) is equal to \(\partial_1\), and \(\partial\) representing one of the partial derivatives \(\partial_1, \partial_a, a \in \{0, 1, 2\}\). Let us remind that, if \(\Gamma^I\) contains at least \(k (\leq |I|)\) space derivatives, above summations are taken over indices \(I_1, I_2\) such that \(k \leq |I_1| + |I_2| \leq |I|\). Hence, introducing from \((1.1.3)\), \((1.1.5)\),

\[
\begin{align*}
Q^w_0(v_+^- D_a v_-) &= \frac{i}{4} \left[(v_+ v_- D_a v_+ v_-) - \frac{D_x}{D_x} (v_+ v_-) \cdot \frac{D_x D_a}{D_x} (v_+ v_-)\right], \\
Q^{kg}_0(v_+^- D_a u_-) &= \frac{i}{4} \left[(v_+ v_-) D_a (u_+ u_-) - \frac{D_x}{D_x} (v_+ v_-) \cdot \frac{D_x D_a}{D_x} (u_+ u_-)\right],
\end{align*}
\]

for any \(a = 0, 1, 2\), we deduce that \((u^I_+, u^I_-, u^I_+, v^I_+\) is solution to

\[
\begin{align*}
(D_t - |D_x|) u^I_+(t, x) &= \sum_{(I, I_1), (I_2) \in \mathbb{I}(I)} Q^w_0(v^I_+, D_t v^I_+) + \sum_{(I, I_1), (I_2) \in \mathbb{I}(I)} c_{I_1, I_2} Q^w_0(v^I_+, D_t v^I_+), \\
(D_t - |D_x|) v^I_+(t, x) &= \sum_{(I, I_1), (I_2) \in \mathbb{I}(I)} Q^{kg}_0(v^I_+, D_t u^I_+) + \sum_{(I, I_1), (I_2) \in \mathbb{I}(I)} c_{I_1, I_2} Q^{kg}_0(v^I_+, D_t u^I_+) \\
(D_t + |D_x|) u^I_-(t, x) &= \sum_{(I, I_1), (I_2) \in \mathbb{I}(I)} Q^w_0(v^I_-, D_t v^I_-) + \sum_{(I, I_1), (I_2) \in \mathbb{I}(I)} c_{I_1, I_2} Q^w_0(v^I_-, D_t v^I_-) \\
(D_t + |D_x|) v^I_-(t, x) &= \sum_{(I, I_1), (I_2) \in \mathbb{I}(I)} Q^{kg}_0(v^I_-, D_t u^I_-) + \sum_{(I, I_1), (I_2) \in \mathbb{I}(I)} c_{I_1, I_2} Q^{kg}_0(v^I_-, D_t u^I_-)
\end{align*}
\]

The quasi-linear structure of the above system can be emphasized by using \((1.2.7)\) and decomposing \(Q^w_0(v^I_+, D_t v^I_+), Q^{kg}_0(v^I_+, D_t u^I_+)\) as follows:

\[
(2.1.3)\quad Q^w_0(v^I_+, D_t v^I_+) = (QL)_1 + (SL)_1, \quad Q^{kg}_0(v^I_+, D_t u^I_+) = (QL)_2 + (SL)_2,
\]
with

\((QL)_1 := \frac{i}{4} \left[ O_{\eta}^{B} ((v_+ + v_-)\eta_1)(v_+^l + v_-^l) - O_{\eta}^{B} \left( \frac{D_x}{(D_x)} (v_+ - v_-) \cdot \frac{\eta_1}{\eta} \right) (v_+^l - v_-^l) \right] ,

\((SL)_1 := \frac{i}{4} \left[ O_{\eta}^{B} (D_1(v_+^l + v_-^l))(v_+ + v_-) - O_{\eta}^{B} \left( \frac{D_x}{(D_x)} (v_+^l - v_-^l) \cdot \frac{\eta_1}{\eta_1} \right) (v_+ + v_-) \right.

\left. + O_{\eta}^{B} \left( (v_+ + v_-)\eta_1 \right) \right] (v_+^l + v_-^l) \right) - O_{\eta}^{B} \left( \frac{D_x}{(D_x)} (v_+ - v_-) \cdot \frac{\eta_1}{\eta} \right) (v_+ - v_-)

\),

\((QL)_2 := \frac{i}{4} \left[ O_{\eta}^{B} ((v_+ + v_-)\eta_1)(u_+^l + u_-^l) - O_{\eta}^{B} \left( \frac{D_x}{(D_x)} (v_+ - v_-) \cdot \frac{\eta_1}{\eta} \right) (u_+^l - u_-^l) \right]

\((SL)_2 := \frac{i}{4} \left[ O_{\eta}^{B} (D_1(u_+^l + u_-^l))(v_+ + v_-) - O_{\eta}^{B} \left( \frac{D_x}{(D_x)} (u_+^l - u_-^l) \cdot \frac{\eta_1}{\eta_1} \right) (v_+ + v_-) \right.

\left. + O_{\eta}^{B} \left( (v_+ + v_-)\eta_1 \right) \right] (u_+^l + u_-^l) \right) - O_{\eta}^{B} \left( \frac{D_x}{(D_x)} (v_+ - v_-) \cdot \frac{\eta_1}{\eta} \right) (u_+^l - u_-^l) \right] ,

where the Bony quantization \(O_{\eta}^{B} \) (resp. \(O_{\eta}^{B} \)) has been defined in \(1.2.8\) (resp. in \(1.2.9\)). We do a similar decomposition also for the semi-linear contribution \(Q_{0,0}^{k\delta}(v_{\pm}^l, D_1 u_{\pm})\), for this term will thereafter be the object of the two normal forms mentioned at the beginning of this section:

\((2.1.4)\)

\(Q_{0,0}^{k\delta}(v_{\pm}^l, D_1 u_{\pm}) = \frac{i}{4} \left[ O_{\eta}^{B} ((v_+^l + v_-^l)\eta_1)(u_+ + u_-) - O_{\eta}^{B} \left( \frac{D_x}{(D_x)} (v_+^l - v_-^l) \cdot \frac{\eta_1}{\eta} \right) (u_+ - u_-) \right]

\left. + \frac{i}{4} \left[ O_{\eta}^{B} (D_1(u_+ + u_-))(v_+^l + v_-^l) - O_{\eta}^{B} \left( \frac{D_x}{(D_x)} (u_+ - u_-) \cdot \eta_1 \eta_1 \right) (v_+^l - v_-^l) \right]

\left. + \frac{i}{4} \left[ O_{\eta}^{B} ((v_+^l + v_-^l)\eta_1)(u_+ + u_-) - O_{\eta}^{B} \left( \frac{D_x}{(D_x)} (v_+ - v_-) \cdot \eta \eta_1 \right) (u_+^l + u_-^l) \right] \right] \right]

In order to handle system \((2.1.2)\) in the most efficient way we proceed to write it in a vectorial fashion. To this purpose, we introduce the following matrices:

\((2.1.5)\)

\[ A(\eta) = \begin{bmatrix} |\eta| & 0 & 0 & 0 \\ 0 & \langle \eta \rangle & 0 & 0 \\ 0 & 0 & -|\eta| & 0 \\ 0 & 0 & 0 & -(\eta) \end{bmatrix}, \quad A'(V; \eta) := \begin{bmatrix} 0 & a_k \eta_1 & 0 & b_k \eta_1 \\ a_0 \eta_1 & 0 & b_0 \eta_1 & 0 \\ a_k \eta_1 & 0 & b_k \eta_1 & 0 \\ a_0 \eta_1 & 0 & b_0 \eta_1 & 0 \end{bmatrix}, \]

\((2.1.6)\)

\[ A''(V'; \eta) := \begin{bmatrix} 0 & 0 & 0 & 0 \\ a_0 \eta_1 & 0 & b_0 \eta_1 & 0 \\ 0 & 0 & 0 & 0 \\ a_0 \eta_1 & 0 & b_0 \eta_1 & 0 \end{bmatrix}, \]

\((2.1.7)\)

\[ C'(W'; \eta) := \begin{bmatrix} 0 & c_0^l & 0 & d_0^l \\ c_0^l & 0 & f_0^l & 0 \\ 0 & c_0^l & 0 & d_0^l \\ 0 & c_0^l & 0 & f_0^l \end{bmatrix}, \quad C''(U; \eta) := \begin{bmatrix} 0 & 0 & 0 & 0 \\ 0 & e_0 & 0 & f_0 \\ 0 & 0 & 0 & 0 \\ 0 & e_0 & 0 & f_0 \end{bmatrix} \]

where

\[ a_k = a_k(v_{\pm}; \eta) := \frac{i}{4} \left[ (v_+ + v_-) \frac{D_x}{(D_x)} (v_+ - v_-) \cdot \frac{\eta_1}{\eta} \right], \]

\[ b_k = b_k(v_{\pm}; \eta) := \frac{i}{4} \left[ (v_+ + v_-) + \frac{D_x}{(D_x)} (v_+ - v_-) \cdot \frac{\eta_1}{\eta} \right], \]

\[ a_0 = a_0(v_{\pm}; \eta) := \frac{i}{4} \left[ (v_+ + v_-) - \frac{D_x}{(D_x)} (v_+ - v_-) \cdot \frac{\eta_1}{\eta} \right], \]

\[ b_0 = b_0(v_{\pm}; \eta) := \frac{i}{4} \left[ (v_+ + v_-) + \frac{D_x}{(D_x)} (v_+ - v_-) \cdot \frac{\eta_1}{\eta} \right] \]
\begin{equation}
\begin{aligned}
\left\{ \begin{align*}
  c_0 &= c_0(v_±; \eta) := \frac{1}{4} \left[ D_1(v_+ + v_-) - \frac{D_2 D_1}{D_2} (v_+ - v_-) \cdot \frac{\eta}{\eta_0} \right] \\
  d_0 &= d_0(v_±; \eta) := \frac{1}{4} \left[ D_1(v_+ + v_-) + \frac{D_2 D_1}{D_2} (v_+ - v_-) \cdot \frac{\eta}{\eta_0} \right] \\
  e_0 &= e_0(u_±; \eta) := \frac{1}{4} \left[ D_1(u_+ + u_-) - \frac{D_2 D_1}{D_2} (u_+ - u_-) \cdot \frac{\eta}{\eta_0} \right] \\
  f_0 &= f_0(u_±; \eta) := \frac{1}{4} \left[ D_1(u_+ + u_-) + \frac{D_2 D_1}{D_2} (u_+ - u_-) \cdot \frac{\eta}{\eta_0} \right]
\end{align*} \right.
\end{aligned}
\tag{2.1.9}
\end{equation}

\begin{equation}
\begin{aligned}
  a^i_0 &= a_0(v^i_±; \eta), \quad b^i_0 = b_0(v^i_±; \eta), \quad c^i_0 = c_0(v^i_±; \eta), \quad d^i_0 = d_0(v^i_±; \eta), \\
  e^i_0 &= e_0(u^i_±; \eta), \quad f^i_0(u^i_±; \eta),
\end{aligned}
\tag{2.1.10}
\end{equation}

vectors \( W, U, V \):

\begin{equation}
\begin{aligned}
  W := \begin{bmatrix} u_+ \\ v_+ \\ u_- \\ v_- \end{bmatrix}, \quad V := \begin{bmatrix} 0 \\ u_+ \\ 0 \\ u_- \end{bmatrix}, \quad U := \begin{bmatrix} 0 \\ 0 \\ u_+ \\ 0 \end{bmatrix},
\end{aligned}
\tag{2.1.11}
\end{equation}

along with \( W^I \) (resp. \( V^I, U^I \)) defined from \( W \) (resp. \( V, U \)) by replacing \( u_±, v_± \) with \( u^I_±, v^I_± \); and finally

\begin{equation}
Q^I_0(V, W) = \begin{bmatrix}
\sum_{(i_1, i_2) \in \Pi(I)} c_{i_1, i_2} Q^w_{i_1}(v^i_±, D v^i_±) & \sum_{|i_1|, |i_2| < |I|} c_{i_1, i_2} Q^{kg}_{i_1}(v^i_±, D v^i_±) \\
\sum_{(i_1, i_2) \in \Pi(I)} c_{i_1, i_2} Q^w_{i_2}(v^i_±, D v^i_±) & \sum_{|i_1|, |i_2| < |I|} c_{i_1, i_2} Q^{kg}_{i_2}(v^i_±, D v^i_±)
\end{bmatrix}
\tag{2.1.12}
\end{equation}

The quantization \( Op^B \) (resp. \( Op^B_R \)) of a matrix \( A = (a_{ij})_{1 \leq i,j \leq n} \) is meant as a matrix of operators \( Op^B(A) = (Op^B(a_{ij}))_{1 \leq i,j \leq n} \) (resp. \( Op^B_R(A) = (Op^B_R(a_{ij}))_{1 \leq i,j \leq n} \)), and for a vector \( Y = [y_1, \ldots, y_n] \),

\[ Op^B(A) Y^\dagger = \begin{bmatrix}
\sum_{j=1}^n Op^B(a_{1j}) y_j \\
\vdots \\
\sum_{j=1}^n Op^B(a_{nj}) y_j
\end{bmatrix}, \]

\( Y^\dagger \) being the transpose of \( Y \). We also remind that

\[ \|A\|_{L^2} = \left( \sum_{i,j} |a_{ij}|^2 \right)^{\frac{1}{2}}, \quad \|A\|_{L^\infty} = \sup_{ij} |a_{ij}|. \]

With notations introduced above, system (2.1.12) writes in the following compact fashion which has the merit to well highlight, among all non-linear terms, the very quasi-linear contributions \((QL)_1, (QL)_2\), represented below by \( Op^B(A'(V; \eta)) W^I \):

\begin{equation}
D_t W^I = A(D) W^I + Op^B(A'(V; \eta)) W^I + Op^B(C'(W^I; \eta)) V + Op^B_R(A'(V; \eta)) W^I \\
+ Op^B(A''(V^I; \eta)) U + Op^B(C''(U; \eta)) V^I + Op^B_R(A''(V^I; \eta)) U + Q^I_0(V, W).
\tag{2.1.13}
\end{equation}
The energies defined in (1.1.9) take the form

\[(2.1.14a) \quad E_n(t; u_\pm, v_\pm) = \sum_{|\alpha| \leq n} \|D_{\alpha}^n W(t, \cdot)\|_{L^2}, \quad \forall n \in \mathbb{N}, n \geq 3,\]

\[(2.1.14b) \quad E^k_{A_3}(t; u_\pm, v_\pm) = \sum_{|\alpha|+|I| \leq k} \|D_{\alpha}^n W^I(t, \cdot)\|_{L^2}, \quad \forall 0 \leq k \leq 2,\]

and we can refer to them, respectively, as \(E_n(t; W), E^k_{A_3}(t; W)\). We also notice that, since

\[(2.1.15a) \quad [\Gamma, D_t \pm |D_x|] = \begin{cases} 0 & \text{if } \Gamma \in \{\Omega, \partial_j, j = 1, 2\}, \\ \pm \frac{D_m}{|D_x|}(D_t \pm |D_x|) & \text{if } \Gamma = Z_m, m = 1, 2, \end{cases}\]

\[(2.1.15b) \quad [\Gamma, D_t \pm \langle D_x \rangle] = \begin{cases} 0 & \text{if } \Gamma \in \{\Omega, \partial_j, j = 1, 2\}, \\ \pm \frac{D_m}{\langle D_x \rangle}(D_t \pm \langle D_x \rangle) & \text{if } \Gamma = Z_m, m = 1, 2, \end{cases}\]

and operators \(D_m|D_x|^{-1}, D_m\langle D_x \rangle^{-1}\) are continuous on \(L^2\) for \(m = 1, 2\), there exists a constant \(C > 0\) such that

\[(2.1.16) \quad C^{-1} \sum_{I \in \mathcal{J}_3} \|\Gamma^I W(t, \cdot)\|_{L^2}^2 \leq E^k_{A_3}(t; W) \leq C \sum_{I \in \mathcal{J}_3} \|\Gamma^I W(t, \cdot)\|_{L^2}^2,\]

where, for any integer \(0 \leq k \leq 2\),

\[(2.1.17) \quad \mathcal{J}_3 := \{ |I| \leq 3 : \Gamma^I = D_{\alpha}^n \Gamma^J \text{ with } |\alpha| + |J| = |I|, |J| \leq 3 - k \} .\]

For convenience, we also introduce the following set:

\[(2.1.18) \quad \mathcal{J}_n := \{ |I| \leq n : \Gamma^I = D_{\alpha}^n \text{ with } |\alpha| = |I| \}, \quad n \in \mathbb{N}, n \geq 3.\]

Matrices \(A(\eta), A'(V; \eta), A''(V; \eta)\) are of order 1 and \(A'(V; \eta), A''(V; \eta)\) are singular at \(\eta = 0\) (i.e. some of their elements are singular at \(\eta = 0\)), while \(C'(W^I; \eta), C''(U; \eta)\) are of order 0. Since we will need to do some symbolic calculus on \(A'(V; \eta)\), we need to isolate the mentioned singularity. We hence define

\[(2.1.19) \quad A'_1(V; \eta) := \begin{pmatrix} 0 & a_0 \eta_1 & 0 & b_0 \eta_1 \\ 0 & a_0 \eta_1 & 0 & b_0 \eta_1 \\ a_0 \eta_1 & 0 & b_0 \eta_1 \\ 0 & a_0 \eta_1 & 0 & b_0 \eta_1 \end{pmatrix}, \quad A''_{-1}(V; \eta) := \begin{pmatrix} 0 & (a_k - a_0) \eta_1 & 0 & (b_k - b_0) \eta_1 \\ (a_k - a_0) \eta_1 & 0 & 0 & 0 \\ 0 & 0 & 0 & 0 \\ 0 & 0 & 0 & 0 \end{pmatrix},\]

\(A'_1(V; \eta)\) being a matrix of order 1, \(A''_{-1}(V; \eta)\) of order \(-1\), both singular at \(\eta = 0\), and write \(A'_1(V; \eta) = A'_1(V; \eta)(1 - \chi)(\eta) + A'_1(V; \eta)\chi(\eta)\), where \(\chi \in C_0^\infty(\mathbb{R}^2)\) is equal to 1 in the unit ball. Equation \((2.1.13)\) can be the rewritten as follows

\[(2.1.20) \quad D_t W^I = A(D) W^I + Op^B(A'_1(V; \eta)(1 - \chi)(\eta))W^I + Op^B(A'_1(V; \eta)\chi(\eta))W^I + Op^B(A'_1(V; \eta))W^I + Op^B(A'(V^I; \eta))U + Op^B(C'(U; \eta))V + Op^B(C''(U; \eta))V^I + Op^B(A''_{-1}(V^I; \eta))U + Op^B(A''(V^I; \eta))U + Q^I_0(W, V),\]

and the symbol \(A'_1(V; \eta)(1 - \chi)(\eta)\) associated to the quasi-linear contribution is no longer singular at \(\eta = 0\). We observe that this matrix is real since \(i(v_+ + v_-) = 2\partial_t v, i \frac{D_m}{|D_x|}(v_+ - v_-) = 2\partial_x v\) and \(v\) is a real solution, but it is not symmetric and such a lack of symmetry could lead to a loss of derivatives when writing an energy inequality for \(W^I\). The issue is however only technical, in the sense that \(A_1(V; \eta)(1 - \chi)(\eta)\) can be replaced with a real, symmetric matrix, as explained in subsection 2.1.3 (see proposition 2.1.3). Before proving such result, we need to derive some \(L^2\) estimates for the semi-linear terms in the right hand side of \((2.1.20)\).
2.1.2 Estimates of quadratic terms

In this subsection we recover some estimates for the $L^2$ norm of the non-linear terms in the right hand side of equation (2.1.20).

Lemma 2.1.1. Let $I$ be a fixed multi-index and $\chi \in C_0^\infty(\mathbb{R}^2)$ equal to 1 in a neighbourhood of the origin. The following estimates hold:

(2.1.21a) $\| [Op^B(A'_1(V; \eta)\chi(\eta)) + Op^B(A'_{-1}(V; \eta))] W^I(t, \cdot) \|_{L^2} \lesssim \|V(t, \cdot)\|_{H^{1, \infty}} \|W^I(t, \cdot)\|_{L^2}$;

(2.1.21b) $\|Op^B(C'(W^I; \eta)) V(t, \cdot)\|_{L^2} \lesssim \|V(t, \cdot)\|_{H^{6, \infty}} \|W^I(t, \cdot)\|_{L^2}$;

(2.1.21c) $\|Op_{R}^B(A'(V; \eta)) W^I(t, \cdot)\|_{L^2} \lesssim \|V(t, \cdot)\|_{H^{7, \infty}} \|W^I(t, \cdot)\|_{L^2}$;

(2.1.21d) $\|Op^B(A''(V^I; \eta)) U(t, \cdot)\|_{L^2} + \|Op^B(A''(V^I; \eta)) U(t, \cdot)\|_{L^2} \lesssim (\|R_1 U(t, \cdot)\|_{H^{2, \infty}} + \|U(t, \cdot)\|_{H^{6, \infty}}) \|W^I(t, \cdot)\|_{L^2}$;

(2.1.21e) $\|Op^B(C''(U; \eta)) V^I(t, \cdot)\|_{L^2} \lesssim (\|R_1 U(t, \cdot)\|_{H^{2, \infty}} + \|U(t, \cdot)\|_{H^{6, \infty}}) \|W^I(t, \cdot)\|_{L^2}$;

Proof. • Inequality (2.1.21a) follows applying proposition [1.2.7] to $Op^B(A'_{-1}(V; \eta)(1 - \chi(\eta)) W^I$ whose symbol $A'_{-1}(V; \eta)(1 - \chi(\eta))$ is of order $-1$ and has $M_0^{-1}$ seminorm bounded from above by $\|V(t, \cdot)\|_{H^{1, \infty}}$, after definitions (2.1.2), (2.1.8) and (2.1.9).

• Since from definition (2.1.7) of matrix $C'(W^I; \eta)$

$$\|Op^B(C'(W^I; \eta)) V\|_{L^2} \lesssim \|Op^B(D_1(v^I_+ + v^I_-)) v^\pm\|_{L^2} + \|Op^B(D_1(v^I_+ - v^I_-) \cdot \eta_{\langle \eta \rangle}) v^\pm\|_{L^2}$$

we reduce to prove inequality (2.1.21b) for $Op^B(D_1(v^I_+ - v^I_-) \cdot \eta_{\langle \eta \rangle}) v^\pm$, the same argument being applicable to all other $L^2$ norms appearing in the above right hand side. Using equality (2.1.6), and considering a new admissible cut-off function $\chi_1$ identically equal to 1 on the support of $\chi$, we first derive that

$$Op^B\left(D_1 \chi_1(\frac{x - \eta_{\langle \eta \rangle}}{|\langle \eta \rangle|}) \frac{\eta_{\langle \eta \rangle}}{|\langle \eta \rangle|} (v^I_+ + v^I_-)\right) D_1 \chi_1(\frac{x - \eta_{\langle \eta \rangle}}{|\langle \eta \rangle|}) dx_d^+ d\eta_d = \frac{1}{(2\pi)^2} \int \chi_1(\frac{x - \eta_{\langle \eta \rangle}}{|\langle \eta \rangle|}) \left(\frac{D_1(\langle \eta \rangle)}{|\langle \eta \rangle|} D_1(\langle \eta \rangle) \right) (v^I_+ + v^I_-) \cdot D_1 v^+ \eta_{\langle \eta \rangle} dx_d^+ d\eta_d$$

Successively, by decomposition (1.2.4) and the fact that $R(u, v)$ is symmetric in $(u, v)$, we have that

$$Op^B\left(D_1 \chi_1(\frac{x - \eta_{\langle \eta \rangle}}{|\langle \eta \rangle|}) \frac{\eta_{\langle \eta \rangle}}{|\langle \eta \rangle|} (v^I_+ + v^I_-)\right) D_1 v^+ = \chi_1(\frac{D_1 x}{\langle \eta \rangle}) \left(\frac{D_1(\langle \eta \rangle)}{|\langle \eta \rangle|} D_1(\langle \eta \rangle) \right) (v^I_+ + v^I_-) \cdot D_1 v^+$$

$$\left[Op^B(D_1 v^+ + Op^B(D_1 v^+)) \right] \left[\chi_1(\frac{D_1 x}{\langle \eta \rangle}) \left(\frac{D_1(\langle \eta \rangle)}{|\langle \eta \rangle|} D_1(\langle \eta \rangle) \right) (v^I_+ + v^I_-)\right]$$
so propositions \([1.2.7, 1.2.8](ii)\), and the fact that \(\chi\left(\frac{D_x}{\langle \eta \rangle}\right)\frac{D_t}{\langle \eta \rangle} \frac{D_x}{\langle \eta \rangle}\) is an operator uniformly bounded on \(L^2\), imply that

\[
\left\| \text{Op}^B_\eta \left( \frac{D_x}{\langle D_x \rangle} (v^I_+ + v^I_-) \cdot \frac{\eta}{\langle \eta \rangle} \right) v_+ \right\|_{L^2} \lesssim \|V(t, \cdot)\|_{H^{6, \infty}} \|V^I(t, \cdot)\|_{L^2}.
\]

- By definition \((1.1.3)\) of \(A'(V; \eta)\),

\[
\left\| \text{Op}^B_{R, \eta}(A'(V; \eta))W^I(t, \cdot) \right\|_{L^2} \lesssim \left\| \text{Op}^B_R(v_+ + v_-) v_+^I \right\|_{L^2} + \left\| \text{Op}^B_R\left( \frac{D_x}{\langle D_x \rangle} (v_+ - v_-) \cdot \frac{\eta}{\langle \eta \rangle} \right) v_+^I \right\|_{L^2} + \left\| \text{Op}^B_R(v_+ + v_-) u_+^I \right\|_{L^2} + \left\| \text{Op}^B_R\left( \frac{D_x}{\langle D_x \rangle} (v_+ - v_-) \cdot \frac{\eta}{\langle \eta \rangle} \right) u_+^I \right\|_{L^2}.
\]

Let us only show that inequality \((2.1.21)\) holds for \(\text{Op}^B\left( \frac{D_x}{\langle D_x \rangle} (v_+ - v_-) \cdot \frac{\eta}{\langle \eta \rangle} \right) u_+^I\). For a smooth cut-off function \(\phi\) equal to 1 in the unit ball we write

\[
\text{Op}^B_R\left( \frac{D_x}{\langle D_x \rangle} (v_+ - v_-) \cdot \frac{\eta}{\langle \eta \rangle} \right) u_+^I = \text{Op}^B_R\left( \frac{D_x}{\langle D_x \rangle} (v_+ - v_-) \cdot \frac{\eta}{\langle \eta \rangle} \phi(\eta) \right) u_+^I + \text{Op}^B_R\left( \frac{D_x}{\langle D_x \rangle} (v_+ - v_-) \cdot \frac{\eta}{\langle \eta \rangle} (1 - \phi)(\eta) \right) u_+^I,
\]

where by proposition \((1.2.8)\) (i)

\[
\left\| \text{Op}^B_R\left( \frac{D_x}{\langle D_x \rangle} (v_+ - v_-) \cdot \frac{\eta}{\langle \eta \rangle} \phi(\eta) \right) u_+^I \right\|_{L^2} \lesssim \left\| \frac{D_x}{\langle D_x \rangle} (v_+ - v_-)(t, \cdot) \right\|_{L^\infty} \left\| u_+^I(t, \cdot) \right\|_{L^2} \lesssim \|V(t, \cdot)\|_{H^{6, \infty}} \|W^I(t, \cdot)\|_{L^2}.
\]

On the other hand

\[
\text{Op}^B_R\left( \frac{D_x}{\langle D_x \rangle} (v_+ - v_-) \cdot \frac{\eta}{\langle \eta \rangle} (1 - \phi)(\eta) \right) u_+^I = \int e^{ix \xi} m(\xi, \eta) \left[ (D_x)^7 \hat{\nu}_+(\hat{v}_+ - \hat{v}_-)(\xi - \eta) \right] \hat{u}_+^I(\eta) d\xi d\eta,
\]

where

\[
m(\xi, \eta) := \frac{1}{(2\pi)^2} \left( 1 - \chi \left( \frac{\xi - \eta}{\langle \eta \rangle} \right) - \chi \left( \frac{\eta}{\langle \xi - \eta \rangle} \right) \right) (1 - \phi)(\eta) \frac{\xi - \eta}{\langle \xi - \eta \rangle^3} \cdot \frac{\eta}{\langle \eta \rangle}
\]

and frequencies \(\xi - \eta\) and \(\eta\) are either bounded or equivalent on the support of \(m(\xi, \eta)\). Therefore \(m(\xi, \eta)\) satisfies the hypothesis of lemma \((1.4.1)\) \((i)\) \(|D^\alpha \partial_\eta^\beta m(\xi, \eta)| \lesssim |\xi|^{-3} |\eta|^{-3}\) for any \(\alpha, \beta \in \mathbb{N}^2\), and by inequality \((1.4.8)\)

\[
\left\| \text{Op}^B_R\left( \frac{D_x}{\langle D_x \rangle} (v_+ - v_-) \cdot \frac{\eta}{\langle \eta \rangle} (1 - \phi)(\eta) \right) u_+^I \right\|_{L^2} \lesssim \|V(t, \cdot)\|_{H^{6, \infty}} \|W^I(t, \cdot)\|_{L^2}.
\]

- From definition \((2.1.10)\) of \(A'(V; \eta)\),

\[
\left\| \text{Op}^B\left( A'(V; \eta) \right) U(t, \cdot) \right\|_{L^2} \lesssim \left\| \text{Op}^B\left( (v^I_+ + v^I_-) \eta_+ \right) u_\pm \right\|_{L^2} + \left\| \text{Op}^B\left( \frac{D_x}{\langle D_x \rangle} (v^I_+ - v^I_-) \cdot \frac{\eta}{\langle \eta \rangle} \right) u_\pm \right\|_{L^2},
\]

(the same inequality holds evidently when \(\text{Op}^B\) is replaced by \(\text{Op}^B_{R, \eta}\)). As done for previous cases, we reduce to show \((2.1.21)\) for \(\text{Op}^B\left( \frac{D_x}{\langle D_x \rangle} (v^I_+ - v^I_-) \cdot \frac{\eta}{\langle \eta \rangle} \right) u_+\) (resp. for \(\text{Op}^B\) replaced with \(\text{Op}^B_{R, \eta}\)).

Using decomposition \((1.2.7)\) and the fact that \(R(u, v)\) is symmetric in \((u, v)\) we find that

\[
\text{Op}^B\left( \frac{D_x}{\langle D_x \rangle} (v^I_+ - v^I_-) \cdot \frac{\eta}{\langle \eta \rangle} \right) u_+ = \frac{D_x}{\langle D_x \rangle} (v^I_+ - v^I_-) \cdot \frac{D_x D_1}{\langle D_x \rangle} u_+ - \text{Op}^B\left( \frac{D_x D_1}{\langle D_x \rangle} \eta \langle \eta \rangle \right) (v^I_+ - v^I_-) - \text{Op}^B_R\left( \frac{D_x D_1}{\langle D_x \rangle} \eta \langle \eta \rangle \right) (v^I_+ - v^I_-),
\]

55
so a direct application of propositions 1.2.7 and 1.2.8 (ii) gives that the \(L^2\) norm of the above right hand sides is bounded by \(\left\| \frac{D_x D_1}{\|D_x\|} u_+ \right\|_{H^4} \| V^I(t, \cdot) \|_{L^2}, \) and hence by \(\| R_1 U(t, \cdot) \|_{H^6} \| V^I(t, \cdot) \|_{L^2}, \) which gives inequality (2.1.21a).

- From definition (2.1.7) of matrix \(C^n(U; \eta),\)

\[
\|O^B(C^n(U; \eta))V^I\|_{L^2} \lesssim \|O^B(D_1(u_+ + u_-))(v^I_+ + v^I_-)\|_{L^2} + \left\| O^B \left( \frac{D_x D_1}{\|D_x\|} u_+ - u_- \right) \cdot \frac{\eta}{\|\eta\|} \right\|_{L^2}.
\]

so estimate (2.1.21a) follows immediately from proposition 1.2.7.

Lemmata 2.1.2 and 2.1.3 below are introduced with the aim of deriving an estimate of the \(L^2\) norm of vector \(Q^0_0 (V, W)\) defined in (2.1.12) (see corollary 2.1.4). We remind that the summations defining \(Q^0_0 (V, W)\) come from the action of the family \(I^0\) of admissible vector fields on the quadratic non-linearities \(Q_0(v, \partial_t v)\) and \(Q_0(v, \partial_t u)\) in (1.1.11) (or, in terms of \(u_\pm, v_\pm\), on \(Q^\eta_0 (v_\pm, D_1 u_\pm)\) and \(Q^k_0 (v_\pm, D_1 u_\pm)\)). According to remark 1.1.10 if \(I \in J^n\) and \(I^0\) is a product of spatial derivatives only the action of \(I^0\) on \(Q^\eta_0 (v_\pm, D_1 v_\pm)\) (resp. on \(Q^k_0 (v_\pm, D_1 u_\pm)\) "distributes" entirely on its factors, meaning that

\[
\Gamma^0 Q^\eta_0 (v_\pm, D_1 v_\pm) = \sum_{\{(I_1, I_2) \in \mathcal{I}(I)\}} Q^\eta_0 (v^I_\pm, D_1 v^I_\pm),
\]

(the same for \(\Gamma^0 Q^k_0 (v_\pm, D_1 u_\pm)\), and all coefficients \(c_{I_1, I_2}\) in the right hand side of (2.1.12) are equal to 0. On the contrary, if \(I \in J^n_k\) for \(0 \leq k \leq 2\) and \(I^0\) contains some Klainerman vector fields \(\Omega, Z_m, m = 1, 2,\) the commutation between \(I^0\) and the null structure gives rise to new quadratic contributions in which the derivative \(D_1\) is eventually replaced with \(D_2, D_t\). As already seen in (1.1.17), in this case we have

\[
\Gamma^0 Q^\eta_0 (v_\pm, D_1 v_\pm) = \sum_{\{(I_1, I_2) \in \mathcal{I}(I)\}} Q^\eta_0 (v^I_\pm, D_1 v^I_\pm) + \sum_{\{(I_1, I_2) \in \mathcal{I}(I)\}} c_{I_1, I_2} Q^\eta_0 (v^I_\pm, D_2 v^I_\pm),
\]

with some of the coefficients \(c_{I_1, I_2}\) being equal to 1 or \(-1\), and \(D \in \{D_1, D_2, D_t\}\) depending on the addend we are considering (similarly for \(\Gamma^0 Q^k_0 (v_\pm, D_1 u_\pm)\)). For our scopes, there will be no difference between the case \(D = D_1\) and \(D = D_2,\) the two associated quadratic contributions enjoying the same \(L^2\) and \(L^\infty\) estimates. When \(D = D_t\). we should make use of the equation satisfied by \(v^I_\pm\) (resp. by \(u^I_\pm\)) in system (2.1.2) to replace \(Q^\eta_0 (v^I_\pm, D_1 v^I_\pm)\) (resp. \(Q^k_0 (v^I_\pm, D_1 u^I_\pm)\)) with

\[
Q^\eta_0 (v^I_\pm, (D_x) v^I_\pm) + Q^\eta_0 (v^I_\pm, \Gamma^I_2 Q^k_0 (v_\pm, D_1 u_\pm)),
\]

resp. with \(Q^k_0 (v^I_\pm, |D_x| u^I_\pm) + Q^k_0 \left( v^I_\pm, \Gamma^I_2 Q^k_0 (v_\pm, D_1 v_\pm) \right) \),

where the left hand side quadratic terms are given by

\[
\sum_{\{(I_1, I_2) \in \mathcal{I}(I)\}} Q^\eta_0 (v^I_\pm, (D_x) v^I_\pm) = (v^I_+ + v^I_-)(D_x)(v^I_+ - v^I_-) - \frac{D_x}{|D_x|} (v^I_+ - v^I_-) \cdot D_x (v^I_+ + v^I_-),
\]

(resp. \(Q^k_0 (v^I_\pm, |D_x| u^I_\pm) = (v^I_+ + v^I_-)|D_x|(u^I_+ - u^I_-) - \frac{D_x}{|D_x|} (v^I_+ - v^I_-) \cdot D_x (u^I_+ + u^I_-)\) ,

56
while the right hand side ones in (2.1.23) are cubic. On the Fourier side, these new quadratic contributions write as
\[
\sum_{j_1,j_2 \in \{\pm, +\}} \int j_2 \left(1 - j_1 j_2 \frac{\xi - \eta}{(\xi - \eta) \cdot \frac{\eta}{|\eta|}}\right) |\eta| \hat{v}_{j_1}^1(\xi - \eta) \hat{v}_{j_2}^2(\eta) d\xi d\eta,
\]
and have basically the same nature of the starting ones, as
\[
\sum_{j_1,j_2 \in \{\pm, +\}} \int j_2 \left(1 - j_1 j_2 \frac{\xi - \eta}{(\xi - \eta) \cdot \frac{\eta}{|\eta|}}\right) |\eta| \hat{v}_{j_1}^1(\xi - \eta) \hat{u}_{j_2}^2(\eta) d\xi d\eta,
\]
resp. \[
\sum_{j_1,j_2 \in \{\pm, +\}} \int j_2 \left(1 - j_1 j_2 \frac{\xi - \eta}{(\xi - \eta) \cdot \frac{\eta}{|\eta|}}\right) |\eta| \hat{v}_{j_1}^1(\xi - \eta) \hat{u}_{j_2}^2(\eta) d\xi d\eta,
\]
resp. \[
\sum_{j_1,j_2 \in \{\pm, +\}} \int j_2 \left(1 - j_1 j_2 \frac{\xi - \eta}{(\xi - \eta) \cdot \frac{\eta}{|\eta|}}\right) |\eta| \hat{v}_{j_1}^1(\xi - \eta) \hat{u}_{j_2}^2(\eta) d\xi d\eta.
\]
For this reason, as long as we can neglect the cubic terms in (2.1.23), we will not pay attention to the value of \( D \in \{D_1, D_2, D_3\} \) in the second sum in the right hand side of (2.1.22). Lemma 2.1.3 is meant to show that the mentioned cubic terms are, indeed, remainders.

Before proving lemmas 2.1.2, 2.1.3, we need to introduce a new set of indices. According to the order established in \( \mathbb{Z} \) at the beginning of section 1.1 (see (1.1.7)), we define
\[
(I) := \{I = (i_1, i_2) : i_1, i_2 = 1, 2, 3\}
\]
as the set of indices \( I \) such that \( \Gamma^I \) is the product of two Klainerman vector fields only, together with
\[
\psi^k := \{I \in \mathbb{Z}^3 : \exists (I_1, I_2) \in 3(I) \text{ with } I_1 \in \mathcal{K}\},
\]
which is evidently empty when \( k = 2 \). We also warn the reader that, in inequality (2.1.30) with \( k = 2 \), \( E_3^2(t; W) \) stands for \( E_3(t; W) \), this double notation allowing us to combine in one line all cases \( k = 0, 1, 2 \).

Lemma 2.1.2. (i) Let \( n \in \mathbb{N}, n \geq 3 \) and \( I \in \mathbb{J}_n \). Then
\[
\sum_{|I_2| < n} \left\| Q_0^w(v_{1 \pm}^1, D_x v_{1 \pm}^2) \right\|_{L^2} + \sum_{|I_1| \leq \frac{3}{2}, |I_2| < n} \left\| Q_0^k(v_{1 \pm}^1, D_x u_{1 \pm}^2) \right\|_{L^2} \lesssim \left\| W(t, \cdot) \right\|_{H^{\frac{3}{2}+\infty}} E_n(t; W)^{\frac{1}{2}},
\]
\[
\sum_{|I_1| > \frac{3}{2}} \left\| Q_0^{k \pm}(v_{1 \pm}^1, D_x u_{1 \pm}^2) \right\|_{L^2} \lesssim \left( \left\| U(t, \cdot) \right\|_{H^{\frac{3}{2}+\infty}} + \left\| R_1 U(t, \cdot) \right\|_{H^{\frac{3}{2}+2, \infty}} \right) E_n(t; W)^{\frac{1}{2}}.
\]

(ii) Let \( 0 \leq k \leq 2 \) and \( I \in \mathbb{J}_2^3 \). There exists a constant \( C > 0 \) such that, if we assume \( a \)-priori estimates (1.1.1a, 1.1.1b) satisfied and \( 0 < \varepsilon_0 < (2A + B)^{-1} \) small, for any \( \chi \in C_0^\infty(\mathbb{R}^2) \) equal to 1 in a neighbourhood of the origin and \( \sigma > 0 \) small we have
\[
\sum_{|I_1, I_2| \in (I)} Q_0^w(v_{1 \pm}^1, D_x v_{1 \pm}^2) = \mathfrak{R}_2^k(t, x),
\]
\[
\sum_{|I_1, I_2| \in (I)} Q_0^{k \pm}(v_{1 \pm}^1, D_x u_{1 \pm}^2) = \delta_{\psi^k} \sum_{|I_1, I_2| \in (I)} Q_0^{k \pm}(v_{1 \pm}^1, \chi(t^{-\sigma} D_x) D_x u_{1 \pm}^2) + \mathfrak{R}_2^k(t, x),
\]
where $\delta_{\eta_k} = 1$ if $I \in \mathcal{V}^k$, 0 otherwise, and

\begin{equation}
(2.1.30) \quad \|\mathcal{N}^k_1(t, \cdot)\|_{L^2} \leq C(A + B)\varepsilon t^{-\frac{3}{2}} E^k_3(t, W) + CB\varepsilon^{-\frac{1}{2}},
\end{equation}

with $\beta > 0$ small, $\beta \to 0$ as $\sigma \to 0$, for all $t \in [1, T]$. The same result holds with $D_x v^1 I \pm$ (resp. $D_x u^1 I \pm$) replaced with $<\Gamma _\sigma (t, \cdot)>, v^1 I \pm >$ (resp. $|D_x u^1 I \pm >$).

**Proof.** (i) The proof of follows straightly from (2.1.1) with $a = 1, 2$, by bounding the $L^2$ norm of each product with the $L^\infty$ norm of the factor indexed in $J \in \{I_1, I_2\}$ such that $|J| \leq \left[ \frac{t}{2} \right]$, times the $L^2$ norm of the remaining one.

(ii) Let $I \in \mathcal{J}^3$. One immediately sees that:

\begin{equation}
(2.1.31) \quad \sum_{(J, 0) \in \mathcal{J}(I)} \|Q^w_0(v^1 I \pm , D_x v^1 I \pm )\|_{L^2} + \sum_{(J, 0) \in \mathcal{J}(I)} \left( \|Q^w_0(v^1 I \pm , D_x v^1 I \pm )\|_{L^2} + \|Q^{kw}_0(v^1 I \pm , D_x u^1 I \pm )\|_{L^2} \right) \lesssim \|V(t, \cdot)\|_{H^{2, \infty}} E^k_3(t, W) \frac{1}{2};
\end{equation}

if $(I_1, I_2) \in \mathcal{J}(I)$ is such that $|I_2| < 3$ and either $\Gamma^{I_1}$ or $\Gamma^{I_2}$ is a product of spatial derivatives only

\begin{equation}
(2.1.32) \quad \|Q^w_0(v^1 I \pm , D_x v^1 I \pm )\|_{L^2} \lesssim \|V(t, \cdot)\|_{H^{4, \infty}} E^k_3(t, W) \frac{1}{2};
\end{equation}

if $(I_1, I_2) \in \mathcal{J}(I)$ is such that $|I_2| < 3$ and $\Gamma^{I_1}$ is a product of spatial derivatives only

\begin{equation}
(2.1.33) \quad \|Q^{kw}_0(v^1 I \pm , D_x u^1 I \pm )\|_{L^2} \lesssim \|V(t, \cdot)\|_{H^{3, \infty}} E^k_3(t, W) \frac{1}{2}.
\end{equation}

Hence, the remaining quadratic contributions to be estimated are those corresponding to indices $(I_1, I_2) \in \mathcal{J}(I)$, with $|I_2| > 3$, such that: both $\Gamma^{I_1}$ and $\Gamma^{I_2}$ contain at least one Klainerman vector field, in the left hand side of (2.1.29a); $\Gamma^{I_1}$ contains one or two Klainerman vector fields, in the left hand side of (2.1.29b).

The idea to estimate the $L^2$ norm of the $Q^w_0(v^1 I \pm , D_x v^1 I \pm )$, for indices $I_1, I_2$ just mentioned above, is to decompose the Klein-Gordon component carrying exactly one Klainerman vector field in frequencies, by means of a truncation $\chi(t - \sigma D_x)$ for some smooth cut-off function $\chi$ and $\sigma > 0$ small. Basically, the $L^\infty$ norm of the contribution truncated for large frequencies $|\xi| \gtrsim t^\sigma$ can be bounded by making appear a power of $t$ as negative as we want, while that of the remaining one, localized for $|\xi| \lesssim t^\sigma$, enjoys the sharp Klein-Gordon decay $t^{-1}$ as proved in lemma B.3.4 in appendix B. The same argument can be applied to $Q^{kw}_0(v^1 I \pm , D_x u^1 I \pm )$ with $I_1$ such that $\Gamma^{I_1}$ contains exactly one Klainerman vector field. Then, by lemma B.3.2.3 in appendix B with $L = L^2$ we find that, for some $\chi \in C_0^\infty(\mathbb{R}^2)$, the following: if $\Gamma^{I_1}$ contains exactly one Klainerman vector field,

\[ \|Q^w_0(v^1 I \pm , D_x v^1 I \pm ) (t, \cdot)\|_{L^2} \lesssim \|\chi(t - \sigma D_x) v^1 I \pm (t, \cdot)\|_{H^{1, \infty}} \|v^1 I \pm (t, \cdot)\|_{H^1} \]

\[ \quad + t^{-N(s)} \left( \|v^1 I \pm (t, \cdot)\|_{H^r} + \|D_t v^1 I \pm (t, \cdot)\|_{H^r} \right) \left( \sum_{|\mu|=0} \|x^\mu v^1 I \pm (t, \cdot)\|_{H^1} + \|D_t v^1 I \pm (t, \cdot)\|_{H^1} \right) \]

and

\[ \|Q^{kw}_0(v^1 I \pm , D_x u^1 I \pm ) (t, \cdot)\|_{L^2} \lesssim \|\chi(t - \sigma D_x) v^1 I \pm (t, \cdot)\|_{H^{1, \infty}} \|u^1 I \pm (t, \cdot)\|_{H^1} \]

\[ \quad + t^{-N(s)} \left( \|v^1 I \pm (t, \cdot)\|_{H^r} + \|D_t v^1 I \pm (t, \cdot)\|_{H^r} \right) \left( \sum_{|\mu|=0} \|x^\mu D_x u^1 I \pm (t, \cdot)\|_{L^2} + \|u^1 I \pm (t, \cdot)\|_{H^1} \right) ; \]

58
if $\Gamma^{I_2}$ contains exactly one Klainerman vector field,

$$
\left\| Q_0^w(v_{I_+}^{I_+}, D_x v_{I_+}^{I_+})(t, \cdot) \right\|_{L^2} \lesssim \left\| \chi(t^{-\sigma} D_x) v_{I_+}^{I_+}(t, \cdot) \right\|_{H^{2, \infty}} \left\| v_{I_+}^{I_+}(t, \cdot) \right\|_{L^2} \\
+ t^{-N(s)} \left( \left\| v_{I_+}^{I_+}(t, \cdot) \right\|_{H^s} + \| D_x v_{I_+}^{I_+}(t, \cdot) \|_{H^s} \right) \left( \sum_{|j|=0}^{1} \| x^j v_{I_+}^{I_+}(t, \cdot) \|_{L^2} + t \| v_{I_+}^{I_+}(t, \cdot) \|_{L^2} \right),
$$

where, in all above inequalities, $N(s) \geq 3$ if $s > 0$ is large enough. From inequalities (B.1.5a), (B.1.6a), estimates (B.1.17), lemma B.4.14 and the bootstrap assumptions (1.1.11), together with the fact $\delta, \delta_j \ll 1$ are small, for $j = 0, 1, 2$, we derive that there is a positive constant $C$ such that, for multi-indices $I_1, I_2$ considered in above inequalities,

$$
\left\| Q_0^w(v_{I_+}^{I_+}, D_x v_{I_+}^{I_+})(t, \cdot) \right\|_{L^2} + \left\| Q_0^{k^*}(v_{I_+}^{I_+}, Du_{I_+}^{I_+})(t, \cdot) \right\|_{L^2} \leq CB \varepsilon t^{-1} E_{\delta}^{1/2}(t; W)^{1/2} + CB \varepsilon t^{-\frac{5}{4}}.
$$

The remaining quadratic terms are $Q_0^{k^*}(v_{I_+}^{I_+}, D_x u_{I_+}^{I_+})$ with $I_1 \in \mathcal{K}$ (and hence $|I_2| \leq 1$) if $\mathcal{V}^k$ is non empty. Applying lemma B.2.4 with $L = L^2$, $w = u$ and the same $s$ as before, and making use of estimates (1.1.11), (B.1.17), together with inequality (B.1.5a), we see that

$$
\left\| Q_0^{k^*}(v_{I_+}^{I_+}, D_x v_{I_+}^{I_+})(t, \cdot) \right\|_{L^2} \lesssim \left\| Q_0^{k^*}(v_{I_+}^{I_+}, \chi(t^{-\sigma} D_x) D_x u_{I_+}^{I_+})(t, \cdot) \right\|_{L^2} \\
+ t^{-3} \left( \sum_{|j|=0}^{1} \| x^j v_{I_+}^{I_+}(t, \cdot) \|_{L^2} + t \| v_{I_+}^{I_+}(t, \cdot) \|_{L^2} \right) \left( \| u_{I_+}(t, \cdot) \|_{H^s} + \| D_x u_{I_+}(t, \cdot) \|_{H^s} \right) \\
\lesssim \left\| Q_0^{k^*}(v_{I_+}^{I_+}, \chi(t^{-\sigma} D_x) D_x u_{I_+}^{I_+})(t, \cdot) \right\|_{L^2} + CB \varepsilon t^{-\frac{5}{4}},
$$

which hence concludes the proof of (iii). We should highlight the fact that the quadratic contribution in the above left hand side is treated differently from the previous ones, because we do not have a sharp decay $O(t^{-1})$ for $v_{I_+}^{I_+}$ when $I_1 \in \mathcal{K}$ (neither when truncated for moderate frequencies), but only a control in $O(t^{-1+\beta'})$, for some small $\beta' > 0$ (see lemma B.3.2). Moreover, the decay enjoyed by the uniform norm of $\chi(t^{-\sigma} D_x) D_x u_{I_+}^{I_+}$, appearing in the quadratic term in the above right hand side, is very weak (only $t^{-1/2+\beta'}$, see lemma B.2.10). Such terms, that contribute to the energy and decay slowly in time, will be successively eliminated by a normal form argument (see subsection 2.2.2).

**Lemma 2.1.3.** Let $0 \leq k \leq 2$ and $I \in \mathcal{I}^k_3$. For any $\chi \in C_0^\infty(\mathbb{R}^2)$ equal to 1 in a neighbourhood of the origin and $\sigma > 0$ small

$$
(2.1.34a) \sum_{(I_1, I_2) \in \mathcal{I}(I)} \frac{Q_0^w(v_{I_+}^{I_1}, D_x v_{I_+}^{I_2})(t, x)}{|I_1|+|I_2| \leq 2} = \mathcal{R}_3^k(t, x),
$$

$$
(2.1.34b) \sum_{(I_1, I_2) \in \mathcal{I}(I)} \frac{Q_0^{k^*}(v_{I_+}^{I_1}, D_x u_{I_+}^{I_2})(t, x)}{|I_1|+|I_2| \leq 2} = \delta_{\mathcal{V}^k} \sum_{(J_0) \in \mathcal{I}(I)} \frac{Q_0^{k^*}(v_{I_+}^{I_1}, \chi(t^{-\sigma} D_x) D_x u_{I_+}^{I_2})(t, x)}{J_0 \in \mathcal{K}},
$$

with $\delta_{\mathcal{V}^k} = 1$ if $I \in \mathcal{V}^k$, 0 otherwise, and $\mathcal{R}_3^k(t, x)$ satisfying (2.1.30).

**Proof.** Using the equation satisfied by $v_{I_+}^{I_2}$ and $u_{I_+}^{I_2}$ respectively in system (2.1.2) with $I = I_2$ we
see that

\[
(2.1.35a) \quad \sum_{(I_1, I_2) \in \mathcal{I}(I)} Q_0^w(v_{I_1}^1, D_x v_{I_2}^2) = \sum_{(I_1, I_2) \in \mathcal{I}(I)} Q_0^w(v_{I_1}^1, (D_x) v_{I_2}^2) \\
+ \sum_{(I_1, I_2) \in \mathcal{I}(I)} \sum_{|I_1| + |I_2| \leq 2} c_{I_1, I_2} Q_0^w \left( v_{I_1}^1, Q_0^{k_2} (v_{I_2}^1, D u_{I_2}^2) \right),
\]

\[
(2.1.35b) \quad \sum_{(I_1, I_2) \in \mathcal{I}(I)} Q_0^{k_2} (v_{I_1}^1, D_x v_{I_2}^2) = \sum_{(I_1, I_2) \in \mathcal{I}(I)} Q_0^{k_2} (v_{I_1}^1, |D_x| u_{I_2}^2) \\
+ \sum_{(I_1, I_2) \in \mathcal{I}(I)} \sum_{|I_1| + |I_2| \leq 2} c_{I_1, I_2} Q_0^{k_2} \left( v_{I_1}^1, Q_0^w (v_{I_2}^1, D v_{I_2}^2) \right),
\]

with coefficients \( c_{I_1, I_2} \in \{-1, 0, -1\} \) such that \( c_{I_1, I_2} = 1 \) whenever \(|I_1| + |I_2| = |I_2|\), and \( Q_0^w \left( v_{I_1}^1, (D_x) v_{I_2}^2 \right) \) (in which case \( D = D_1 \)), \( Q_0^{k_2} (v_{I_1}^1, |D_x| u_{I_2}^2) \) given explicitly by \((2.1.34a)\). After lemma \((2.1.2) \text{ (ii)} \) we know that

\[
\sum_{(I_1, I_2) \in \mathcal{I}(I)} \left[ Q_0^w (v_{I_1}^1, (D_x) v_{I_2}^2) + Q_0^{k_2} (v_{I_1}^1, |D_x| u_{I_2}^2) \right] = \sum_{(J_0) \in \mathcal{I}(I)} \sum_{J \in \mathcal{N}} Q_0^{k_2} (v_{I_2}^1, |D_x| u_{I_2}^2) + R_3^k(t, x),
\]

with \( R_3^k \) verifying \((2.1.30)\). The only thing to prove is that the cubic terms in the right hand side of \((2.1.35)\) are remainders \( R_3^k \). We focus on those in the right hand side of \((2.1.35a)\) as the same argument applies to the ones in \((2.1.35b)\).

First, let us consider cubic terms corresponding to indices \( I_1, I_2 \) such that \(|I_1| = 2 \) and \(|I_2| = 0\). In this case we evidently have that \(|J_1| = |J_2| = 0\), and by \((B.1.10)\) with \( s = 1 \) and \( \theta \ll 1 \) small, together with a-priori estimate \((1.1.11)\),

\[
\left\| Q_0^w \left( v_{I_1}^1, Q_0^{k_2} (v_{I_2}^1, D u_{I_2}^2) \right) \right\|_{L^2} \lesssim \left\| v_{I_1}^1 (t, \cdot) \right\|_{L^2} \left\| Q_0^{k_2} (v_{I_2}^1, D u_{I_2}^2) \right\|_{H^1} \lesssim C B e^{t^{-\frac{1}{2} + \beta'}},
\]

for some \( \beta' > 0 \) small as long as \( \sigma, \delta_0 \) are small.

Let us now consider indices \( I_1, I_2 \) such that \( \Gamma^{I_1} \in \Omega, Z_m, m = 1, 2 \). As we also require that \((I_1, I_2) \notin \mathcal{I}(I) \) with \(|I_2| \leq 2\), we have in this case that \(|I_2| \leq 1 \) and consequently, for each \((J_1, J_2) \in \mathcal{I}(I_2)\), either \(|J_1| = 0\) or \(|J_2| = 0\). Using lemma \((B.2.2)\) in appendix \(B\) with \( L = L^2 \) and \( w = v \), we derive that for any \( \chi \in C_0^\infty (\mathbb{R}^2) \) as in the statement and \( \sigma > 0 \) small

\[
\sum_{(J_1, J_2) \in \mathcal{I}(I_2)} \left\| Q_0^w \left( v_{I_1}^1, Q_0^{k_2} (v_{I_2}^1, D u_{I_2}^2) \right) \right\|_{L^2} \lesssim \sum_{(J_1, J_2) \in \mathcal{I}(I_2)} \left\| \chi (t^{-\sigma} D_x) v_{I_2}^1 \right\|_{L^\infty} \left\| Q_0^{k_2} (v_{I_2}^1, D u_{I_2}^2) (t, \cdot) \right\|_{L^2} \\
+ \sum_{(J_1, J_2) \in \mathcal{I}(I_2)} t^{-N(s)} \left( \| v_{I_2}^1 (t, \cdot) \|_{H^s} + \| D_x v_{I_2}^1 (t, \cdot) \|_{H^s} \right) \\
\times \left( \sum_{|\mu| = 0}^1 \left\| x^\mu Q_0^{k_2} (v_{I_2}^1, D u_{I_2}^2) (t, \cdot) \right\|_{L^2} + t \left\| Q_0^{k_2} (v_{I_2}^1, D u_{I_2}^2) (t, \cdot) \right\|_{L^2} \right),
\]
with \(N(s) \geq 3\) is \(s > 0\) is sufficiently large. Here

\[
\sum_{(J_1, J_2) \in \mathcal{J}(I_2)} \left\| xQ_0^{kg}(v_{\pm}^{J_1}, Du_{\pm}^{J_2})(t, \cdot) \right\|_{L^2} \\
\lesssim \sum_{|J| \leq 1} \left[ \left\| x \left( \frac{D_x}{D_x^2} \right) \mu v_{\pm}(t, \cdot) \right\|_{L^\infty} \left( \left\| u_{\pm}^{\mu}(t, \cdot) \right\|_{H^1} + \left\| D_t u_{\pm}^{\mu}(t, \cdot) \right\|_{L^2} \right) \\
+ \left\| x v_{\pm}^{\mu}(t, \cdot) \right\|_{L^2} \left( \left\| R^\mu u_{\pm}(t, \cdot) \right\|_{H^2, \infty} + \left\| D_t R^\mu u_{\pm}(t, \cdot) \right\|_{H^1, \infty} \right) \right] \leq C(A + B)Bz^2 t^{-\frac{1}{2} + \frac{\delta}{2}}
\]

and

\[
\sum_{(J_1, J_2) \in \mathcal{J}(I_2)} \left\| Q_0^{kg}(v_{\pm}^{J_1}, Du_{\pm}^{J_2})(t, \cdot) \right\|_{L^2} \\
\lesssim \sum_{|J| \leq 1} \left[ \left\| v_{\pm}^{\mu}(t, \cdot) \right\|_{L^2} \left( \sum_{|\mu| = 0} \left\| R^\mu u_{\pm}(t, \cdot) \right\|_{H^2, \infty} + \left\| D_t R^\mu u_{\pm}(t, \cdot) \right\|_{H^1, \infty} \right) \\
+ \left\| v_{\pm}(t, \cdot) \right\|_{H^1, \infty} \left( \left\| u_{\pm}^{\mu}(t, \cdot) \right\|_{H^1} + \left\| D_t u_{\pm}^{\mu}(t, \cdot) \right\|_{L^2} \right) \right] \leq C(A + B)Bz^2 t^{-\frac{1}{2} + \frac{\delta}{2}}
\]

by \((\text{B.1.5a}), (\text{B.1.5b}), (\text{B.1.6c}), (\text{B.1.7})\) and estimates \((\text{1.1.11}), (\text{B.1.10}), (\text{B.1.17})\), so together with lemma \((\text{B.1.14})\) and \((\text{B.1.6a})\), these inequalities give

\[
\sum_{(J_1, J_2) \in \mathcal{J}(I_2)} \left\| Q_0^{w}(v_{\pm}^{J_1}, Q_0^{kg}(v_{\pm}^{J_1}, Du_{\pm}^{J_2}))(t, \cdot) \right\|_{L^2} \leq CBz t^{-\frac{1}{2} + \beta'},
\]

for some new \(\beta' > 0\) small, \(\beta' \to 0\) as \(\sigma, \delta_0 \to 0\).

Finally, for indices \(I_1, I_2\) such that \(I^\mu \in \{D_x^\alpha, |\alpha| \leq 1\}\)

\[
(2.1.37) \quad \sum_{(J_1, J_2) \in \mathcal{J}(I_2)} \left\| Q_0^{w}(v_{\pm}^{J_1}, Q_0^{kg}(v_{\pm}^{J_1}, Du_{\pm}^{J_2}))(t, \cdot) \right\|_{L^2} \lesssim \sum_{(J_1, J_2) \in \mathcal{J}(I_2)} \left\| v_{\pm}(t, \cdot) \right\|_{H^2, \infty} \left\| Q_0^{kg}(v_{\pm}^{J_1}, Du_{\pm}^{J_2}) \right\|_{L^2}.
\]

For \((J_1, J_2) \in \mathcal{J}(I_2)\) such that \(|J_1| + |J_2| = |I_2|\) we have by lemma \(2.1.2\) (ii) and a-priori estimates \((\text{1.1.11})\) that

\[
\left\| Q_0^{kg}(v_{\pm}^{J_1}, Du_{\pm}^{J_2}) \right\|_{L^2} \lesssim \|X_3(t, \cdot)\|_{L^2} + \sum_{J \in \chi} \left\| Q_0^{kg}(v_{\pm}^{J_1}, D_1 \chi(t) D_x u_{\pm}) \right\|_{L^2} \\
\lesssim \|X_3(t, \cdot)\|_{L^2} + t^\beta \sum_{|\mu| = 0} \left\| R^\mu u_{\pm}(t, \cdot) \right\|_{L^\infty} \|E_3(t; W)\|^{\frac{1}{2}} \\
\leq CBz t^{-\frac{1}{2} + \beta + \frac{\delta}{2}},
\]

with \(\beta > 0\) small, \(\beta \to 0\) as \(\sigma \to 0\), while for \((J_1, J_2) \in \mathcal{J}(I_2)\) such that \(|J_1| + |J_2| < |I_2|\) (hence \(< 2\)) an estimate such as \((2.1.36)\) holds. These estimates, together with \((\text{1.1.11})\), imply that the right hand side of \((2.1.37)\) is bounded by \(CABz^2 t^{-\frac{1}{2} + \beta'}\), for a new small \(\beta' > 0\), \(\beta' \to 0\) as \(\sigma, \delta_0 \to 0\), and that concludes the proof of the statement. \(\square\)

**Corollary 2.1.4.** Let \(Q_0^d(V, W)\) be the vector defined in \((2.1.12)\). There exists a constant \(C > 0\) such that, if we assume that a-priori estimates \((\text{1.1.11})\) are satisfied in interval \([1, T]\), for some fixed \(T > 1\), with \(\varepsilon_0 < (2A + B)^{-1}\) small:

(i) if \(I \in \mathcal{I}_n\) with \(n \geq 3\):

\[
(2.1.38) \quad \left\| Q_0^d(V, W) \right\|_{L^2} \leq CAz t^{-\frac{1}{2} + \frac{\delta}{2}};
\]
(ii) if $I \in J^k_3$, with $0 \leq k \leq 2$,

\[ (2.1.39) \quad \|Q_0'(V, W)\|_{L^2} \leq C(A + B)\varepsilon t^{-\frac{1}{2} + \frac{k}{4}}. \]

**Proof.** (i) Inequality (2.1.38) is straightforward after definition (2.1.12) (all coefficients $c_{I_1, I_2}$ are equal to 0 when $I \in J^n_3$, lemma 2.1.2 (i), and a-priori estimates (1.1.11a), (1.1.11b).

(ii) If $I \in J^k_3$ for a fixed $0 \leq k \leq 2$ we have by definition (2.1.12) and lemmas 2.1.2, 2.1.3 that

\[ (2.1.40) \quad \sum_{(I_1, I_2) \in \mathcal{I}(I)} Q_0^w(v^1_{\pm}, D_x v^2_{\pm}) + \sum_{(I_1, I_2) \in \mathcal{I}(I)} Q_0^w(v^1_{\pm}, D_t v^2_{\pm}) = \mathcal{R}^k_3(t, x), \]

with $\mathcal{R}^k_3(t, x)$ satisfying (2.1.30). Moreover, for some smooth $\chi \in C_0^\infty(\mathbb{R}^2)$, equal to 1 in a neighbourhood of the origin and $\sigma > 0$ small,

\[ (2.1.41) \quad \sum_{(I_1, I_2) \in \mathcal{I}(I)} Q_0^k(\chi^1_{\pm}, D_x u^2_{\pm}) = \delta_{\mathcal{K}} \sum_{(I_1, I_2) \in \mathcal{I}(I)} Q_0^k(\chi^1_{\pm}, t^{-\sigma} D_x u^2_{\pm}) + \mathcal{R}^k_3(t, x), \]

with sets $\mathcal{K}, \mathcal{V}^k$ given, respectively, by (2.1.20), (2.1.20), $\delta_{\mathcal{K}} = 1$ if $I \in \mathcal{V}^k$, 0 otherwise (remind that $\mathcal{V}^2$ is empty). Observe that, if $k = 0, 1$, $I \in J^k_3$ and $(I_1, I_2) \in \mathcal{I}(I)$ with $I_1 \in \mathcal{K}$, two situations may occur: if $\Gamma I_2 \in \{D^{\alpha} x, |\alpha| \leq 1\}$ then product $\Gamma I_1$ contains exactly the same number of Klainerman vector fields as in $\Gamma I$ and $V I_1$ would be at the same energy level as $V I$ (i.e. its $L^2$ norm being controlled by $E_3^k(t; W)^{1/2}$). In this case, from a-priori estimates (1.1.11a)

\[ (2.1.42) \quad \|v^1_{\pm}(t, \cdot)\|_{L^2} \left(\|\chi(t^{-\sigma} D_x) u^2_{\pm}(t, \cdot)\|_{H^{\sigma, \infty}} + \|\chi(t^{-\sigma} D_x) R u^2_{\pm}(t, \cdot)\|_{H^{\sigma, \infty}}\right) \leq A\varepsilon t^{-\frac{1}{2}} E_3^k(t; W)^\frac{1}{2}. \]

If instead $I_2$ is such that $\Gamma I_2 \in \{\Omega, Z_m, m = 1, 2\}$ is a Klainerman vector field, we automatically have that $\Gamma I$ is a product of three Klainerman vector fields and that $V I_1$ is at an energy level strictly lower than $V I$ (i.e. its $L^2$ norm is controlled by $E_3^k(t; W)^{1/2}$ whereas that of $V I$ is bounded by $E_3^0(t; W)^{1/2}$). From lemma 3.2.10 we deduce that

\[ (2.1.43) \quad \|v^1_{\pm}(t, \cdot)\|_{L^2} \left(\|\chi(t^{-\sigma} D_x) u^2_{\pm}(t, \cdot)\|_{H^{\sigma, \infty}} + \|\chi(t^{-\sigma} D_x) R u^2_{\pm}(t, \cdot)\|_{H^{\sigma, \infty}}\right) \leq C(A + B)\varepsilon t^{-\frac{1}{2} + \beta + \frac{k}{2}} E_3^k(t; W)^\frac{1}{2}; \]

for a small $\beta > 0$, $\beta \to 0$ as $\sigma \to 0$. Summing up (2.1.40) to (2.1.43) and using (2.1.30) we obtain that there is a positive constant $C$ such that

\[ (2.1.44) \quad \|Q_0'(V, W)\|_{L^2} \leq \delta_k C(A + B)\varepsilon t^{-\frac{1}{2}} \left[ E_3^k(t; W)^\frac{1}{2} + \delta_0 \varepsilon^{\frac{1}{4}} E_3^1(t; W)^\frac{1}{2} \right] + CB\varepsilon t^{-\frac{3}{2}}, \]

with $\delta_k = 1$ for $k = 0, 1$, equal to 0 when $k = 2$, and $\delta_0 = 1$ only when $k = 0$, 0 otherwise. Finally, taking $\sigma > 0$ small so that $\beta + \delta_1/2 \ll \delta_0/2$ and using a-priori estimates (1.1.11d) we deduce estimate (2.1.39) from (2.1.44).
2.1.3 Symmetrization

**Proposition 2.1.5.** As long as $H^{1,\infty}$ norm of $V(t,\cdot)$ is sufficiently small, there exists a real matrix $P(V;\eta)$ of order 0 and a real symmetric matrix $A_1(V;\eta)$ of order 1, vanishing at order 1 at $V = 0$, such that

\[(2.1.45) \quad W_s^I := Op^B(P(V;\eta))W^I\]

is solution to

\[(2.1.46) \quad D_tW_s^I = A(D)W_s^I + Op^B(\tilde{A}_1(V;\eta))W_s^I + Op^B(A''(V^I;\eta))U + Op^B(C''(U;\eta))W^I + Op^B(A''(V^I;\eta))U + Q_0^s(V,W) + \mathcal{R}(U,V),\]

where $\mathcal{R}(U,V)$ satisfies, for any $\theta \in [0,1]$,

\[(2.1.47) \quad \|\mathcal{R}(U,V)(t,\cdot)\|_{L^2} \lesssim \left[\|V(t,\cdot)\|_{H^{1,\infty}} + \|V(t,\cdot)\|_{H^{1,\infty}}^{1-\theta} \|V(t,\cdot)\|_{H^{2,\infty}}^{\theta} \right] \|U(t,\cdot)\|_{H^{2,\infty}} + \|R_1U(t,\cdot)\|_{H^{2,\infty}} + \|V(t,\cdot)\|_{H^{1,\infty}} \|U(t,\cdot)\|_{H^{1,\infty}} \|W^I(t,\cdot)\|_{L^2} + \|V(t,\cdot)\|_{H^{1,\infty}} \|W^I(t,\cdot)\|_{L^2} + \|V(t,\cdot)\|_{H^{1,\infty}} \|Q_0^s(V,W)\|_{L^2}.
\]

Moreover, for any $n, r \in \mathbb{N}$,

\[(2.1.48) \quad M_0^n(P(V;\eta) - I_4; n) \lesssim \|V(t,\cdot)\|_{H^{1+r,\infty}}, \quad M_1^n(\tilde{A}_1(V;\eta); n) \lesssim \|V(t,\cdot)\|_{H^{1+r,\infty}},
\]

and as long as the $H^{2,\infty}$ norm of $V(t,\cdot)$ is small there is a constant $C > 0$ such that

\[(2.1.50) \quad C^{-1}\|W^I(t,\cdot)\|_{L^2} \leq \|W_s^I(t,\cdot)\|_{L^2} \leq C\|W^I(t,\cdot)\|_{L^2}.
\]

In order to prove proposition 2.1.5, we first need to introduce the following lemma.

**Lemma 2.1.6.** Let $\alpha, \beta \in \mathbb{R}$, $L \in M_2(\mathbb{R})$ and $M_0, N(\alpha, \beta) \in M_4(\mathbb{R})$ given by

\[
L = \begin{bmatrix} 0 & 1 \\ 1 & 0 \end{bmatrix}, \quad M_0 = \begin{bmatrix} I_2 & 0 \\ 0 & -I_2 \end{bmatrix}, \quad N(\alpha, \beta) = \begin{bmatrix} \alpha L & \beta L \\ \alpha L & \beta L \end{bmatrix} = \begin{bmatrix} 0 & 0 & 0 & \beta \\ 0 & \alpha & 0 & 0 \\ 0 & 0 & \alpha & 0 \\ \alpha & 0 & 0 & 0 \end{bmatrix}.
\]

There exist a small $\delta > 0$ and a smooth function defined on open ball $B_\delta(0)$ of radius $\delta$,

\[(\alpha, \beta) \in B_\delta(0) \rightarrow P(\alpha, \beta) \in Sym_4(\mathbb{R}),
\]

with values in the space of real, symmetric, $4 \times 4$ matrices $Sym_4(\mathbb{R})$, such that $P(0,0) = I_4$, $P(\alpha, \beta) = I_4 + O(|\alpha| + |\beta|)$ and $P(\alpha, \beta)^{-1}(M_0 + N(\alpha, \beta))P(\alpha, \beta)$ is symmetric for any $(\alpha, \beta) \in B_\delta(0)$. Furthermore $P^{-1}(\alpha, \beta) = I_4 + O(|\alpha| + |\beta|)$.

**Proof.** Let $F$ be the vector space of $2 \times 2$ matrices $B(\alpha, \beta) = \alpha I_2 + \beta L$ and $F$ be the set of $4 \times 4$ matrices of the form

\[
\begin{bmatrix}
F_{11} & F_{12} \\
F_{21} & F_{22}
\end{bmatrix}
\]

63
with $F_{ij} \in \mathcal{E}$. We look for a matrix $P$ of the form

\begin{equation}
(2.1.51) \quad P(B) = (I_2 - B^2)^{-\frac{1}{2}} \begin{bmatrix} I_2 & -B \\ -B & I_2 \end{bmatrix}
\end{equation}

with $B \in \mathcal{E}$ close to zero (so that in particular $(I_2 - B^2)^{1/2}$ is well defined). We remark that matrix $P(B)^{-1}$ has the form

\begin{equation}
P(B)^{-1} = (I_2 - B^2)^{-\frac{1}{2}} \begin{bmatrix} I_2 & B \\ B & I_2 \end{bmatrix}
\end{equation}

and that $P(0) = P^{-1}(0) = I_4$. We consider $\Phi : \mathbb{R}^2 \times \mathcal{E} \to \mathcal{F}$ defined by $\Phi(\alpha, \beta, B) := P(B)^{-1}[M_0 + N(\alpha, \beta)]P(B) = (\Phi_{ij}(\alpha, \beta, B))_{1 \leq i, j \leq 2}$, where $\Phi_{ij} \in \mathcal{E}$ as $\mathcal{E}$ is a commutative sub-algebra of $M_2(\mathbb{R})$. We also define $\Psi(\alpha, \beta, B) := \Phi_{12}(\alpha, \beta, B) - \Phi_{21}(\alpha, \beta, B)$ with $\Phi_{21}$ denoting the transpose of $\Phi_{21}$. We have that $\Psi(0, 0, 0) = 0$ and

\begin{equation}
D_B\Phi(0, 0, 0) \cdot B = \begin{bmatrix} 0 & B \\ B & 0 \end{bmatrix} M_0 - M_0 \begin{bmatrix} 0 & B \\ B & 0 \end{bmatrix} = 2 \begin{bmatrix} 0 & -B \\ B & 0 \end{bmatrix}
\end{equation}

from which follows that $D_B \Psi(0, 0, 0) \cdot B = -4B$, i.e. $D_B \Psi(0, 0, 0) = -4I$. Therefore, there exist a small $\delta > 0$ and a smooth function $(\alpha, \beta) \in B_0(0) \to B(\alpha, \beta) \in \mathcal{E}$ such that $B(0, 0) = 0$ (which implies $P(B(0, 0)) = I_4$), and $\Psi(\alpha, \beta, B(\alpha, \beta)) = 0$ for all $(\alpha, \beta) \in B_0(0)$. This is equivalent to say that $\Phi(\alpha, \beta, B(\alpha, \beta))$ is symmetric and moreover $P(B(\alpha, \beta))$, $P(B(\alpha, \beta))^{-1} = I_4 + O(|\alpha| + |\beta|)$. Defining $P(\alpha, \beta) := P(B(\alpha, \beta))$ concludes the proof of the statement.

**Proof of proposition 2.1.5.** With notations introduced in lemma 2.1.6 and in (2.1.3), (2.1.9), $A(\eta) = \langle \eta \rangle M_0 + S(\eta)$ and $A(\nu) = (1 - \chi)(\eta) = \langle \eta \rangle N(\alpha, \beta)$, with

\begin{equation}
S(\eta) = \begin{bmatrix} |\eta| - \langle \eta \rangle & 0 & 0 & 0 \\ 0 & 0 & 0 & 0 \\ 0 & 0 & -(|\eta| - \langle \eta \rangle) & 0 \\ 0 & 0 & 0 & 0 \end{bmatrix}
\end{equation}

whose elements are $O(|\eta|^{-1}), |\eta| \to +\infty$, and $\alpha = a_0(\nu) (1 - \chi)(\eta), \beta = b_0(\nu) (1 - \chi)(\eta)$, $a_0, b_0$ defined in (2.1.3). Since $\sup_{\eta} (|\alpha| + |\beta|) \lesssim \|V(t, \cdot)\|_{H^{1, \infty}}$, by lemma 2.1.6 we have that, as long as $\|V(t, \cdot)\|_{H^{1, \infty}}$ is sufficiently small, there exists a real symmetric matrix $P(V; \eta)$ of the form (2.1.51) such that $P(V; \eta)^{-1}[M_0 + N(\alpha, \beta)]P(V; \eta)$ is real and symmetric. Moreover $P = I_4 + Q(V; \eta)$ and $P^{-1} = I_4 + Q'(V; \eta)$, where $Q(V; \eta), Q'(V; \eta)$ are matrices depending smoothly on $\alpha, \beta$ (which are symbols of order $0$), null at order $1$ at $V = 0$, verifying for any $\nu, \eta \in \mathbb{N}$

\begin{equation}
M^0_\nu (Q(V; \eta); n) + M^1_\nu (Q'(V; \eta); n) \lesssim \|V(t, \cdot)\|_{H^{1+\nu, \infty}}.
\end{equation}

We define the following matrix of order $1$

\begin{equation}
\tilde{A}_1(V; \eta) := P(V; \eta)^{-1}[\langle \eta \rangle (M_0 + N(\alpha, \beta))]P(V; \eta) - \langle \eta \rangle M_0
\end{equation}

and $W^I_\nu := Op^B(P^{-1}(V; \eta))W^I$. From the fact that $\tilde{A}_1(V; \eta)$ also writes as

\begin{equation}
\langle \eta \rangle [Q'(V; \eta)M_0 + P^{-1}(V; \eta)M_0Q(V; \eta) + P^{-1}(V; \eta)N(\alpha, \beta)P(V; \eta)]
\end{equation}

we see that it vanishes at order $1$ at $V = 0$ and is such that $M^1_\nu(\tilde{A}_1(V; \eta); n) \lesssim \|V(t, \cdot)\|_{H^{1+\nu, \infty}}$. Moreover, from proposition 1.2.9 (ii) with $r = 1$ it follows that

\begin{equation}
(2.1.52) \quad I = Op^B(P(V; \eta))Op^B(P^{-1}(V; \eta)) + T_{-1}(V),
\end{equation}

64
where operator $T_{-1}(V)$ is of order less or equal than $-1$ whose $L(L^2)$ norm is a $O(\|V(t,\cdot)\|_{H^2,\infty})$. Therefore $W^I = Op^B(P(V;\eta))W_s^I + T_{-1}(V)W^I$ and from proposition 1.2.7, the $L^2$ norms of $W^I, W_s^I$ are equivalent as long as the $H^{2,\infty}$ norm of $V$ is small. Using equation (2.1.20) we find that:

$$D_t W_s^I = Op^B(P^{-1}(V;\eta))Op^B(A(\eta) + A_1'(V;\eta)(1 - \chi(\eta))W^I$$

$$+ Op^B(P^{-1}(V;\eta))\left[Op^B(A_1'(V;\eta)\chi(\eta)) + Op^B(A_1'(V;\eta))\right]W^I$$

$$+ Op^B(P^{-1}(V;\eta))\left[Op^B(C'(W^I;\eta)\right] + Op^B(\mathcal{A}'(V;\eta))W^I$$

$$+ Op^B(P^{-1}(V;\eta))\left[Op^B(A''(V;\eta))U + Op^B(C''(U;\eta))V + Op^B(A''(V;\eta))U\right]$$

$$+ Op^B(P^{-1}(V;\eta))Q_0^I(V,W) + Op^B(D_t P^{-1}(V;\eta))W^I$$

where

$$Op^B(P^{-1}(V;\eta))Op^B(A(\eta) + A_1'(V;\eta)(1 - \chi(\eta))W^I$$

$$= Op^B(P^{-1}(V;\eta))\left[\left(\eta(M_0 + N(\alpha,\beta)) \right) W^I + Op^B(S(\eta))W^I + Op^B(Q'(V;\eta))Op^B(S(\eta))W^I$$

$$= Op^B(P^{-1}(V;\eta))\left[\left(\eta(M_0 + N(\alpha,\beta)) \right) T_{-1}(V)W^I + Op^B(S(\eta))W^I$$

$$+ Op^B(S(\eta))Op^B(Q(V;\eta))W^I + Op^B(S(\eta))T_{-1}(V)W^I + Op^B(Q'(V;\eta))Op^B(S(\eta))W^I$$

$$= Op^B(A(\eta) + A_1'(V;\eta))W^I + \tilde{T}_0(V)W^I_1 + \tilde{T}'_0(V)W^I$$

with $\tilde{T}_0(V), \tilde{T}'_0(V)$ operators of order 0 and $L(L^2)$ norm $O(\|V(t,\cdot)\|_{H^2,\infty})$. Last equality follows indeed from the fact that, by proposition 1.2.9 (ii) with $r = 1$ and proposition 1.2.4

$$Op^B(P^{-1}(V;\eta))Op^B(\left[\eta(M_0 + N(\alpha,\beta)) \right) P(V;\eta)) + \tilde{T}_0(V)$$

and $Op^B(S(\eta))Op^B(Q(V;\eta)), Op^B(Q'(V;\eta))Op^B(S(\eta))$ are operator of order 0, too (the former of the form $\tilde{T}_0(V)$, the latter of the form $\tilde{T}_0(V)$), while $Op^B(S(\eta))T_{-1}(V)$ is of order $-1$ (and can be included in $T_0(V)$). The equivalence between the $L^2$ norms of $W_s^I$ and $W^I$ implies that $\tilde{T}_0(V)W^I_1 + \tilde{T}'_0(V)W^I$ in (2.1.54) is a remainder $\mathcal{R}(U,V)$.

All operators appearing in the second and third line of (2.1.53) are also remainders $\mathcal{R}(U,V)$ because, from proposition 1.2.7, the fact that $M_0^B(P^{-1}(V;\eta); 2) = O(1)$ and lemma 2.1.7 their $L^2$ norm is bounded by $\|V(t,\cdot)\|_{H^2,\infty}\|W^I(t,\cdot)\|_{L^2}$ Lastly term in (2.1.53) also contributes to $\mathcal{R}(U,V)$ for matrix $D_t P^{-1}(V;\eta)$ is of order 0, its $M_0^B(\eta, 2)$ seminorm is bounded by $\|D_t V(t,\cdot)\|_{H^1,\infty}$ and for any $\eta \in [0, 1]$

$$\|D_t V(t,\cdot)\|_{H^1,\infty} \lesssim \|V(t,\cdot)\|_{H^2,\infty} + \|V(t,\cdot)\|^{1-\theta}_{H^{2,\infty}} \|V(t,\cdot)\|^\theta_{H^2,\infty} + \|R^\ell U(t,\cdot)\|^\theta_{H^2,\infty}$$

$$+ \|V(t,\cdot)\|_{L^\infty} \left(\|R^\ell U(t,\cdot)\|^{1-\theta}_{H^{2,\infty}} + \|R^\ell U(t,\cdot)\|^\theta_{H^2,\infty} \right)$$

as follows from (3.1.6b) with $s = 1$. Finally, in remaining contributions in (2.1.53) we replace $Op^B(P^{-1}(V;\eta))$ with $I + Op^B(Q'(V;\eta))$ and observe that the terms on which $Op^B(Q'(V;\eta))$ acts are remainders $\mathcal{R}(U,V)$ after proposition 1.2.7 the fact that $M_0^B(Q'(V;\eta); 2) = O(\|V(t,\cdot)\|_{H^1,\infty}$ and lemma 2.1.1. Interchanging the notation of $P(V;\eta)$ and $P^{-1}(V;\eta)$, we obtain the result of the statement.
2.2 Normal forms and energy estimates

Before going further in writing an energy inequality for \( W^I \) we should make few remarks. As we previously anticipated, the \( L^2 \) norm of some of the semi-linear terms appearing in equation (2.2.4) have a very slow decay in time. On the one hand, it is the case of \( \text{Op}^B(A''(V^I; \eta))U \), \( \text{Op}^B(C''(U; \eta))V^I \) and \( \text{Op}^R_B(A''(V; \eta))U \), whose \( L^2 \) norms are estimated in (2.1.21d), (2.1.21e) in terms of the uniform norms of \( U, R_1U \). On the other hand, also some of the contributions to \( Q^I_0(V, W) \) are only a \( O_{L^2}(t^{-\frac{1}{2}+\beta}) \), for some small \( \beta' > 0 \), after corollary 2.1.4. Nevertheless, we are going to see that \( \text{Op}^B(A''(V^I; \eta))U \), \( \text{Op}^R_B(A''(V; \eta))U \) and the mentioned contributions to \( Q^I_0(V, W) \) can be easily eliminated by performing a semi-linear normal form argument in the energy inequality (see subsection 2.2.2). Such an argument is however not well adapted to handle \( \text{Op}^B(C''(U; \eta))V^I \), for it leads to a loss of derivatives linked to the quasi-linear nature of the problem, i.e. to the fact that matrix \( \tilde{A}_1(V; \eta) \) in the right hand side of (2.1.46) is of order 1. This latter contribution should instead be eliminated through a suitable normal form applied directly on equation (2.1.46), which is the object of the subsection 2.2.1.

2.2.1 A first normal forms transformation and the energy inequality

First of all, we replace \( \text{Op}^B(C''(U; \eta))V^I \) in equation (2.1.46) with \( \text{Op}^B(C''(U; \eta))V^I \), having defined \( V^I_s := \text{Op}^B(P^{-1}(V; \eta))V^I \), and remind that from (2.1.48) with \( r = 0 \) and (2.1.52) the \( L^2 \) norm of \( V^I \) and \( V^I_s \) are equivalent as long as the \( H^{2, \infty} \) norm of \( V(t, \cdot) \) is small (assumption compatible with (1.1.1b) if \( \rho \geq 2 \)). We will rather deal with

\[
(D_t - A(D))W_s^I = \text{Op}^B(\tilde{A}_1(V; \eta))W_s^I + \text{Op}^B(A''(V^I; \eta))U + \text{Op}^B(C''(U; \eta))V_s^I \\
+ \text{Op}^R_B(A''(V^I; \eta))U + Q^I_0(V, W) + \mathcal{R}(U, V),
\]

for a new \( \mathcal{R}(U, V) \) satisfying (2.1.47) and show how to get rid of \( \text{Op}^B(C''(U; \eta))V^I_s \) in the above right hand side. More precisely, we are going to prove the following result:

**Proposition 2.2.1.** Let \( N \in \mathbb{N}^* \). There exist three matrices \( E_d^0(U; \eta), E_d^{-1}(U; \eta), E_{nd}(U; \eta) \) linear in \( (u_+, u_-) \), with \( E_d^0(U; \eta) \) real diagonal of order 0 and \( E_d^{-1}(U; \eta), E_{nd}(U; \eta) \) of order \(-1\), and, as long as \( \|R_1U(t, \cdot)\|_{H^{2, \infty}} \) is small, a real diagonal matrix \( E_d^0(U; \eta) \) of order 0 such that, if

\[
\tilde{W}_s^I := \text{Op}^B(I_4 + E(U; \eta))W_s^I,
\]

with \( E(U; \eta) := E_d^0(U; \eta) + E_d^{-1}(U; \eta) + E_{nd}(U; \eta) \),

then

\[
(D_t - A(D))\tilde{W}_s^I = \text{Op}^B(I_4 + E_d^0(U; \eta))\tilde{A}_1(V; \eta)(I_4 + E_d^0(U; \eta)) \tilde{W}_s^I \\
+ \text{Op}^B(A''(V^I; \eta))U + \text{Op}^R_B(A''(V^I; \eta))U + Q^I_0(V, W) + T_{-N}(U)W_s^I + \mathcal{R}(U, V).
\]

In the above right hand side \( T_{-N}(U) = (\sigma_{ij}(U, D_x))_{ij} \) is a pseudo-differential operator of order less or equal than \(-N\), with

\[
\|T_{-N}(U)\|_{\xi(\mathcal{H}_{-N}; \mathcal{H}^s)} \lesssim \|R_1U(t, \cdot)\|_{H^{N+2, \infty}} + \|U(t, \cdot)\|_{H^{N+6, \infty}},
\]

for any \( s \in \mathbb{R} \) and such that

\[
\pi_{\pm} \xi(\sigma_{ij}(U, \eta))(\xi) = \begin{cases} \sigma_{ij}^+(\xi, \eta)\hat{u}_+(\xi) + \sigma_{ij}^-(\xi, \eta)\hat{u}_-(\xi), & i, j \in \{2, 4\}, \\ 0, & \text{otherwise}, \end{cases}
\]

66
with $\sigma^j_\ell(\xi, \eta)$ supported for $|\xi| \leq \varepsilon(\eta)$ for a small $\varepsilon > 0$, and for any $\alpha, \beta \in \mathbb{N}^2$

$$|\partial^\alpha_x \partial^\beta_\eta \sigma^j_\ell(\xi, \eta)| \lesssim_{\alpha, \beta} |\xi|^{N+1-|\alpha|} |\eta|^{-|\beta|}, \quad i, j \in \{2, 4\}.$$ 

(2.2.5b)

Also, $R(U, V)$ is a remainder satisfying, for any $\theta \in [0, 1[$

$$\|R(U, V)(t, \cdot)\|_{L^2} \leq (1 + \|U(t, \cdot)\|_{H^5, \infty})\|R(U, V)\|_{L^2} + (\|R_1 U(t, \cdot)\|_{H^1, \infty} + \|U(t, \cdot)\|_{H^5, \infty}) \left[\|Q_1^0(V, W)\|_{L^2} + \|V(t, \cdot)\|^2_{H^5, \infty}\|V(t, \cdot)\|_{H^7}\|W^I(t, \cdot)\|_{L^2}, \right]$$

(2.2.6)

with $R(U, V)$ verifying (2.1.4).

For any $n, r \in \mathbb{N}$, any $\chi \in C_b^\infty(\mathbb{R}^2)$ equal to 1 close to the origin and supported in open ball $B_r(0)$, with $\varepsilon > 0$ sufficiently small, we have that

$$M_r^0 \left( E_d^0 \left( \chi \left( \frac{D_x}{\langle \eta \rangle} \right) U; \eta \right) ; n \right) \lesssim \|R_1 U(t, \cdot)\|_{H^1 + r, \infty},$$

(2.2.7a)

$$M_r^{-1} \left( E_d^{-1} \left( \chi \left( \frac{D_x}{\langle \eta \rangle} \right) U; \eta \right) ; n \right) \lesssim \|U(t, \cdot)\|_{H^5 + r, \infty},$$

(2.2.7b)

$$M_r^{-1} \left( E_{nd} \left( \chi \left( \frac{D_x}{\langle \eta \rangle} \right) U; \eta \right) ; n \right) \lesssim \|U(t, \cdot)\|_{H^5 + r, \infty};$$

(2.2.7c)

and

$$M_r^0 \left( E_d^0 \left( \chi \left( \frac{D_x}{\langle \eta \rangle} \right) U; \eta \right) ; n \right) \lesssim \|R_1 U(t, \cdot)\|_{H^1 + r, \infty}.$$ 

(2.2.8)

Finally, as long as $\|R_1 U(t, \cdot)\|_{H^2, \infty} + \|U(t, \cdot)\|_{H^5, \infty}$ is small, there is a constant $C > 0$ such that

$$C^{-1}\|W^I(t, \cdot)\|_{L^2} \leq \|\tilde{W}^I(t, \cdot)\|_{L^2} \leq C\|W^I(t, \cdot)\|_{L^2}.\quad (2.2.9)$$

Remark 2.2.2. From propositions (2.1.3) and (2.2.1) it follows that, as long as $\|R_1 U(t, \cdot)\|_{H^2, \infty}$, $\|U(t, \cdot)\|_{H^5, \infty}$ and $\|V(t, \cdot)\|_{H^{2, \infty}}$ are small, there is a constant $C > 0$ such that

$$C^{-1}\|W^I(t, \cdot)\|_{L^2} \leq \|\tilde{W}^I(t, \cdot)\|_{L^2} \leq C\|W^I(t, \cdot)\|_{L^2}.\quad (2.2.10)$$

This implies that, if

$$\tilde{E}_n(t; W) := \sum_{|\alpha| \leq n} \|Op^B(I_4 + E(U; \eta))Op^B(P(V; \eta))D^\alpha_2 W(t, \cdot)\|_{L^2}, \quad \forall n \in \mathbb{N}, n \geq 3,$$

(2.2.11a)

$$\tilde{E}^k_3(t; W) := \sum_{|\alpha| + |l| \leq 3} \|Op^B(I_4 + E(U; \eta))Op^B(P(V; \eta))D^\alpha_2 W^I(t, \cdot)\|_{L^2}, \forall 0 \leq k \leq 2,$$

(2.2.11b)

there exists a constant $C_1 > 0$ such that

$$C_1^{-1} E_n(t; W) \leq \tilde{E}_n(t; W) \leq C_1 E_n(t; W), \quad \forall n \geq 3,$$

(2.2.12a)

$$C_1^{-1} E^k_3(t; W) \leq \tilde{E}^k_3(t; W) \leq C_1 E^k_3(t; W), \quad \forall 0 \leq k \leq 2.$$
In order to get rid of $Op^B(C''_d(U;\eta))V_s^I$ in (2.2.14), we introduce matrices

\[
C''_d(U;\eta) = \begin{pmatrix}
0 & 0 & 0 & 0 \\
0 & e_0 & 0 & 0 \\
0 & 0 & 0 & 0 \\
0 & 0 & f_0 & 0 \\
0 & 0 & 0 & 0 \\
\end{pmatrix}, \quad C''_{nd}(U;\eta) = \begin{pmatrix}
0 & 0 & 0 & 0 \\
0 & 0 & 0 & f_0 \\
0 & 0 & 0 & 0 \\
0 & 0 & 0 & 0 \\
0 & 0 & 0 & 0 \\
\end{pmatrix}
\]

so that

\[
C''_d(U;\eta) = C''_d(U;\eta) + C''_{nd}(U;\eta),
\]

and proceed to eliminate $Op^B(C''_d(U;\eta))V_s^I$ and $Op^B(C''_{nd}(U;\eta))V_s^I$ separately.

**Lemma 2.2.3.** Let $N \in \mathbb{N}^*$. There exists a diagonal matrix $E_d(U;\eta)$ of order 0, linear in $(u_+, u_-)$, such that

\[
(2.2.14) \quad Op^B(C''_d(U;\eta))V_s^I + Op^B(D_1E_d(U;\eta))W_s^I - [A(D), Op^B(E_d(U;\eta))]W_s^I = T_{-N}(U)W_s^I + \mathcal{R}'(V,V),
\]

where $\mathcal{R}'(V,V)$ satisfies, for any $\theta \in [0,1]$,

\[
(2.2.15) \quad \|\mathcal{R}'(V,V)(t,\cdot)\|_{L^2} \lesssim \|V(t,\cdot)\|_{H^{s-\infty}} \|V(t,\cdot)\|_{H^s}^\theta \|V(t,\cdot)\|_{L^2},
\]

and $T_{-N}(U)$ is a pseudo-differential operator of order less or equal than $-N$ such that, for any $s \in \mathbb{R}$,

\[
(2.2.16) \quad \|T_{-N}(U)\|_{L^2(H^{s-N};H^s)} \lesssim \|R_1(U(t,\cdot))\|_{H^{s-N+2}} + \|U(t,\cdot)\|_{H^{2N-6}},
\]

whose symbol $\sigma(U,\eta) = (\sigma_{ij}(U,\eta))_{1 \leq i,j \leq 4}$ is such that

\[
\mathcal{F}_{x \rightarrow \xi} \left( \sigma_{ij}(U,\eta) \right)(\xi) = \begin{cases} \sigma_{ii}^+(\xi,\eta)\hat{u}_+^-(\xi) + \sigma_{ii}^-(\xi,\eta)\hat{u}_-^+(\xi), & i = j \in \{2,4\}, \\ 0, & \text{otherwise}, \end{cases}
\]

with $\sigma_{ii}^\pm(\xi,\eta)$ supported for $|\xi| \leq \varepsilon(\eta)$ for a small $\varepsilon > 0$, and verifying, for any $\alpha, \beta \in \mathbb{N}^2$,

\[
|\partial_\xi^\alpha \partial_\eta^\beta \sigma_{ii}^\pm(\xi,\eta)| \lesssim_{\alpha,\beta} |\xi|^{\alpha-1} |\eta|^{-2-N} |\eta|^{-\beta}, \quad \text{for } i = 2,4.
\]

Moreover, if $\chi \in C_0^\infty(\mathbb{R}^2)$ is equal to 1 close to the origin and has a sufficiently small support,

\[
E_d \left( \chi \left( \frac{D_x}{\langle \eta \rangle} \right) U;\eta \right) = E_d^0 \left( \chi \left( \frac{D_x}{\langle \eta \rangle} \right) U;\eta \right) + E_d^{-1} \left( \chi \left( \frac{D_x}{\langle \eta \rangle} \right) U;\eta \right),
\]

the former matrix in the above right hand side being real of order 0 and satisfying (2.2.7b), the latter being of order $-1$ and verifying (2.2.7d).

**Proof.** Because of the diagonal structure of $A(\eta)$ and $C''_d(U;\eta)$ we look for a matrix $E_d = (e_{ij})_{i,j \leq 4}$ satisfying (2.2.14) such that $e_{ij} = 0$ for all $i,j$ but $i = j \in \{2,4\}$, and we also require symbols $e_{22}, e_{44}$ to be of order 0 and linear in $(u_+, u_-)$. If we remind that matrix $A(\eta)$ in (2.1.5) is of order 1 and make the ansatz that $E_d$ is of order 0, then by symbolic calculus of proposition 1.2.9 we have that

\[
(2.2.19) \quad -[A(D), Op^B(E_d(U;\eta))] = - \sum_{|\alpha|=1} \frac{1}{\alpha!} Op^B \left( \partial_\eta^\alpha A(\eta) D_x^\alpha E_d(U;\eta) \right) + T_{-N}(U)
\]
with \( T_{-N}(U) \) pseudo-differential operator of order less or equal than \(-N\) such that, for any \( s \in \mathbb{R}, \) 

\[
\|T_{-N}(U)\|_{L^2(H^{-N};H^s)} \leq M_{N+1}(A(\eta); N + 3)M_0^0(E_d(U; \eta); 2) + M_0^1(A(\eta); N + 3)M_{N+1}(E_d(U; \eta); 2)
\]

and whose symbol \( \sigma(U, \eta) = (\sigma_{ij}(U, \eta))_{ij} \) is such that \( \sigma_{ij}(U, \eta) = 0 \) for all \( i, j \) but \( i = j \in \{2, 4\} \). 

Therefore, for any fixed \( \chi \in C_0^\infty(\mathbb{R}^2) \) equal to 1 in \( B_{\varepsilon_1}(0) \) and supported in \( B_{\varepsilon_2}(0) \), for some \( 0 < \varepsilon_1 < \varepsilon_2 \leq 1 \), we look for \( E_d(U; \eta) \) such that 

\[
\chi \left( \frac{D_x}{(\eta)} \right) \left[ C_d^0(U; \eta) + D_tE_d(U; \eta) - \sum_{|\alpha|=1}^N \frac{1}{\alpha!} \partial^\alpha_\eta A(\eta) D^\alpha_d E_d(U; \eta) \right] = 0.
\]

Since \( E_d(U; \eta) \) is required to be linear in \((u_+, u_-)\), we should write it rather as \( E_d(u_+, u_-; \eta) \) to then realize that, as \( u_+ \) (resp. \( u_- \)) is solution to the first (resp. to the third) equation in (2.2.12) with \(|I| = 0\), 

\[
D_tE_d(u_+, u_-; \eta) = E_d(|D_x| u_+, -|D_x| u_-; \eta) + E_d(Q_0^0(v_\pm, D_1 v_\pm), Q_0^0(v_\pm, D_1 v_\pm); \eta),
\]

\[
D_x^\alpha E_d(u_+, u_-; \eta) = E_d((D_x^\alpha u_+, D_x^\alpha u_-; \eta), \quad \forall \alpha \in \mathbb{N}^3.
\]

If we temporarily neglecting contribution \( E_d(Q_0^0(v_\pm, D_1 v_\pm), Q_0^0(v_\pm, D_1 v_\pm); \eta) \), we are lead to solve the following equation

\[
\chi \left( \frac{D_x}{(\eta)} \right) \left[ C_d^0(U; \eta) + E_d(|D_x| u_+, -|D_x| u_-; \eta) - \sum_{|\alpha|=1}^N \frac{1}{\alpha!} \partial^\alpha_\eta A(\eta) E_d(D_x^\alpha u_+, D_x^\alpha u_-; \eta) \right] = 0,
\]

which is equivalent to system

\[
\begin{cases}
\varepsilon_{22} \left( \chi \left( \frac{D_x}{(\eta)} \right) \left( [D_x] + \sum_{|\alpha|=1}^N \frac{1}{\alpha!} \partial^\alpha_\eta (\eta) D_x^\alpha \right) u_+ + \chi \left( \frac{D_x}{(\eta)} \right) \left( [D_x] + \sum_{|\alpha|=1}^N \frac{1}{\alpha!} \partial^\alpha_\eta (\eta) D_x^\alpha \right) u_-; \eta \right) \\
\varepsilon_{44} \left( \chi \left( \frac{D_x}{(\eta)} \right) \left( [D_x] + \sum_{|\alpha|=1}^N \frac{1}{\alpha!} \partial^\alpha_\eta (\eta) D_x^\alpha \right) u_+ + \chi \left( \frac{D_x}{(\eta)} \right) \left( [D_x] + \sum_{|\alpha|=1}^N \frac{1}{\alpha!} \partial^\alpha_\eta (\eta) D_x^\alpha \right) u_-; \eta \right)
\end{cases}
\]

with \( \varepsilon_0, \varepsilon_0 \) defined in (2.1.9). Then, if we look for \( e_{ii} \) of the form

\[
e_{ii}(u_+, u_-; \eta) = \int e^{i\xi \cdot \xi} \alpha_{ii}(\xi, \eta) \hat{\varphi}_+(\xi) d\xi + \int e^{i\xi \cdot \xi} \beta_{ii}(\xi, \eta) \hat{\varphi}_-(\xi) d\xi,
\]

this system implies, inter alia, that

\[
\int e^{i\xi \cdot \xi} \chi \left( \frac{\xi}{(\eta)} \right) \left( |\xi| + \sum_{|\alpha|=1}^N \frac{1}{\alpha!} \partial^\alpha_\eta (\eta) \xi^\alpha \right) \alpha_{22}(\xi, \eta) \hat{\varphi}_+(\xi) d\xi =
\]

\[
- \frac{i}{4} \int e^{i\xi \cdot \xi} \chi \left( \frac{\xi}{(\eta)} \right) \left( 1 - \frac{\eta}{(\eta)} \cdot \frac{\xi}{|\xi|} \right) \xi_1 \hat{\varphi}_+(\xi) d\xi.
\]

As

\[
\left( 1 + \sum_{|\alpha|=1}^N \frac{1}{\alpha!} \partial^\alpha_\eta (\eta) \xi^\alpha \right) = 1 + \sum_{k=1}^N \frac{1}{k!} (\xi \cdot \nabla_\eta)^k (\eta)
\]

69
and
\[(\partial_{\eta} \xi_1 + \partial_{\eta} \xi_2)^k(\eta) = \frac{|\xi|^k}{\langle \eta \rangle^{k-1}} \left(1 - \frac{\eta}{\langle \eta \rangle} \cdot \frac{\xi}{|\xi|}\right)^2 b_k(\xi, \eta), \quad 2 \leq k \leq N,\]
with \(b_k(\xi, \eta)\) polynomial of degree \(k - 2\) in \(\frac{\eta}{\langle \eta \rangle} \cdot \frac{\xi}{|\xi|}\), we derive that
\[(2.2.22) \quad \left(1 \mp \sum_{\alpha=1}^{N} \frac{1}{\alpha!} \partial^\alpha_\eta \left(\langle \eta \rangle^{\frac{\xi}{|\xi|}}\right)\right) = \left(1 \mp \frac{\eta}{\langle \eta \rangle} \cdot \frac{\xi}{|\xi|}\right) \left(1 \mp b_\pm(\xi, \eta)\right)
\]
with
\[(2.2.23) \quad b_\pm(\xi, \eta) := \sum_{k=2}^{N} \frac{1}{k!} |\xi|^{k-1} \langle \eta \rangle^{-(k-1)} \left(1 \mp \frac{\eta}{\langle \eta \rangle} \cdot \frac{\xi}{|\xi|}\right) b_k(\xi, \eta), \quad |\partial^\mu_\xi \partial^\nu_\eta b_\pm(\xi, \eta)| \lesssim_{\mu, \nu} |\xi|^{1-|\mu|} |\eta|^{-1-|\nu|}, \quad \forall \mu, \nu \in \mathbb{N}^2,
\]
and we can then choose \(\alpha_{22}(\xi, \eta)\) in (2.2.21) such that, when \(|\xi| \leq \varepsilon_2(\eta)\),
\[(2.2.24) \quad \alpha_{22}(\xi, \eta) = -\frac{i}{4} (1 - b_+(\xi, \eta))^{-1} \frac{\xi_1}{|\xi|}.
\]
Similarly, we choose multipliers \(\beta_{22}, \alpha_{44}, \beta_{44}\) such that, as long as \(|\xi| \leq \varepsilon_2(\eta)\),
\[\begin{align*}
\beta_{22}(\xi, \eta) &= \frac{i}{4} (1 + b_-(\xi, \eta))^{-1} \frac{\xi_1}{|\xi|}, \\
\alpha_{44}(\xi, \eta) &= -\frac{i}{4} (1 + b_-(\xi, \eta))^{-1} \frac{\xi_1}{|\xi|}, \\
\beta_{44}(\xi, \eta) &= \frac{i}{4} (1 - b_+(\xi, \eta))^{-1} \frac{\xi_1}{|\xi|},
\end{align*}
\]
These multipliers are all well defined for \(|\xi| \leq \varepsilon_2(\eta)\) as \(b_\pm(\xi, \eta) = O(|\xi|^{-1})\). Moreover, using that \((1 \pm b_\pm(\xi, \eta))^{-1} = 1 \mp b_\pm(\xi, \eta) + O(|\xi|^2 |\eta|^{-2})\) as long as \(|\xi| \leq \varepsilon_2(\eta)\), we have that
\[\begin{align*}
\alpha_{22}(\xi, \eta) &= -\frac{i}{4} \frac{\xi_1}{|\xi|} + \alpha^{-1}_{22}(\xi, \eta), \\
\beta_{22}(\xi, \eta) &= \frac{i}{4} \frac{\xi_1}{|\xi|} + \beta^{-1}_{22}(\xi, \eta), \\
\alpha_{44}(\xi, \eta) &= -\frac{i}{4} \frac{\xi_1}{|\xi|} + \alpha^{-1}_{44}(\xi, \eta), \\
\beta_{44}(\xi, \eta) &= \frac{i}{4} \frac{\xi_1}{|\xi|} + \beta^{-1}_{44}(\xi, \eta),
\end{align*}
\]
with \(|\partial^\mu_\xi \partial^\nu_\eta \alpha^{-1}_{ii}| + |\partial^\mu_\xi \partial^\nu_\eta \beta^{-1}_{ii}| \lesssim_{\mu, \nu} |\xi|^{1-|\mu|} |\eta|^{-1-|\nu|}\) for any \(\mu, \nu \in \mathbb{N}^2\). Injecting the above \(\alpha_{ii}, \beta_{ii}, i \in \{2, 4\}\), in (2.2.21) we find that
\[\begin{align*}
e_{22} \left(\chi \left(\frac{D_x}{\langle \eta \rangle}\right) u_+, \chi \left(\frac{D_x}{\langle \eta \rangle}\right) u_- ; \eta \right) &= -\frac{i}{4} R_{13}(u_+ - u_-) + e^{-1}_{22} \left(\chi \left(\frac{D_x}{\langle \eta \rangle}\right) u_+, \chi \left(\frac{D_x}{\langle \eta \rangle}\right) u_- ; \eta\right), \\
e_{44} \left(\chi \left(\frac{D_x}{\langle \eta \rangle}\right) u_+, \chi \left(\frac{D_x}{\langle \eta \rangle}\right) u_- ; \eta \right) &= -\frac{i}{4} R_{13}(u_+ - u_-) + e^{-1}_{44} \left(\chi \left(\frac{D_x}{\langle \eta \rangle}\right) u_+, \chi \left(\frac{D_x}{\langle \eta \rangle}\right) u_- ; \eta\right),
\end{align*}\]
where, for \(i \in \{2, 4\}\),
\[\begin{align*}
e^{-1}_{ii} \left(\chi \left(\frac{D_x}{\langle \eta \rangle}\right) u_+, \chi \left(\frac{D_x}{\langle \eta \rangle}\right) u_- ; \eta \right) = \int e^{ix\xi} \chi \left(\frac{\xi}{\langle \eta \rangle}\right) \alpha^{-1}_{ii}(\xi, \eta) \hat{u}_+(\xi) d\xi + \int e^{ix\xi} \chi \left(\frac{\xi}{\langle \eta \rangle}\right) \beta^{-1}_{ii}(\xi, \eta) \hat{u}_-(\xi) d\xi.
\end{align*}\]
After lemma [A.1](i) and above estimates for $\alpha_{ii}^{-1}, \beta_{ii}^{-1}$, kernels

$$K_i^\dagger(x, \eta) := \int e^{ix \cdot \xi} \left( \frac{\xi}{(\eta)} \right) \alpha_{ii}^{-1}(\xi, \eta) \langle \xi \rangle^{-4} d\xi,$$

are such that, for any $\beta \in \mathbb{N}^2$, $|\partial_y^\beta K_i^\dagger(x, \eta)| \lesssim |x|^{-1} (x)^{-2} \langle \eta \rangle^{-1-|\beta|}$ for every $(x, \eta)$. This implies that

$$\left| \partial_y^\beta \alpha_{ii}^{-1} \left( \frac{D_x}{(\eta)} \right) u_+, \chi \left( \frac{D_x}{(\eta)} \right) u_-; \eta \right| \leq \left| \int \partial_y^\beta K_i^\dagger(x-y, \eta) \langle D_x \rangle^4 u_+ (y) dy \right| + \left| \int \partial_y^\beta K_i^\dagger(x-y, \eta) \langle D_x \rangle^4 u_- (y) dy \right| \lesssim \|U(t, \cdot)\|_{H^{s+1, \infty}} \langle \eta \rangle^{-1-|\beta|}$$

and $e_{ii}^{-1}$ is a symbol of order $-1$, for $i = 2, 4$. Moreover, using definition (2.2.23) and the fact that space $W^{r, \infty}$ injects in $H^{r+1, \infty}$, one can check that for any $r, n \in \mathbb{N}$,

$$M_r^{-1} \left( e_{ii}^{-1} \left( \chi \left( \frac{D_x}{(\eta)} \right) u_+, \chi \left( \frac{D_x}{(\eta)} \right) u_-; \eta \right); n \right) \lesssim \|U(t, \cdot)\|_{H^{s+r, \infty}}$$

and therefore that

$$M_r^0 \left( e_{ii} \left( \chi \left( \frac{D_x}{(\eta)} \right) u_+, \chi \left( \frac{D_x}{(\eta)} \right) u_-; \eta \right); n \right) \lesssim \|R_1 U(t, \cdot)\|_{H^{1+r, \infty}} + \|U(t, \cdot)\|_{H^{s+r, \infty}}.$$

Defining

$$E_0^d(U; \eta) = \begin{bmatrix} 0 & 0 & 0 & 0 & 0 & 0 \\ 0 & -\frac{2}{7} R_1(u_+ - u_-) & 0 & 0 & 0 & 0 \\ 0 & 0 & 0 & 0 & 0 & 0 \\ 0 & 0 & 0 & 0 & -\frac{2}{7} R_1(u_+ - u_-) & 0 \\ 0 & 0 & 0 & 0 & 0 & 0 \end{bmatrix}, \quad E_d^{-1}(U; \eta) = \begin{bmatrix} 0 & 0 & 0 & 0 & 0 \\ 0 & e_{ii}^{-1} & 0 & 0 & 0 \\ 0 & 0 & 0 & 0 & 0 \\ 0 & 0 & 0 & e_{ii}^{-1} & 0 \end{bmatrix},$$

decomposition (2.2.19) and estimate (2.2.23), (2.2.7) hold. Consequently, as

$$E_d(Q_0^w(v_\pm, D_1 v_\pm), Q_0^w(v_\pm, D_1 v_\pm); \eta) = E_d^{-1}(Q_0^w(v_\pm, D_1 v_\pm), Q_0^w(v_\pm, D_1 v_\pm); \eta)$$

for any $n \in \mathbb{N}$ and $\theta \in [0, 1]$, we derive from (3.1.34) with $s = 4$ that

$$M_0^0 \left( E_d(Q_0^w(v_\pm, D_1 v_\pm), Q_0^w(v_\pm, D_1 v_\pm); \eta); n \right) \lesssim \|Q_0^w(v_\pm, D_1 v_\pm)\|_{H^{4, \infty}}$$

$$\lesssim \|V(t, \cdot)\|_{H^{5, \infty}}^2 \|V(t, \cdot)\|_{H^{17}}^2,$$

and hence that the quantization of $E_d(Q_0^w(v_\pm, D_1 v_\pm), Q_0^w(v_\pm, D_1 v_\pm); \eta)$ acting on $V_s^I$ verifies (2.2.17) after proposition [1.2.7]. Also, (2.2.10) is deduced from (2.2.20) while properties (2.2.17) are obtained using essentially (1.2.12).

**Lemma 2.2.4.** Let $N \in \mathbb{N}^*$. There exists a purely imaginary matrix $E_{nd}(U; \eta)$, linear in $(u_+, u_-)$ and of order $-1$, satisfying estimate (2.2.71), such that

$$(2.2.25) \quad Op^B(C''_{nd}(U; \eta)) V_s^I + Op^B(D_1 E_{nd}(U; \eta)) W_s^I - [A(D), Op^B(E_{nd}(U; \eta))] W_s^I = T_{-N}(U) W_s^I + \mathcal{R}(V, V),$$

where $\mathcal{R}(V, V)$ is a remainder satisfying (2.2.13) and $T_{-N}(U)$ is a pseudo-differential operator of order less or equal than $-N$ such that, for any $s \in \mathbb{R}$,

$$(2.2.26) \quad \|T_{-N}(U)\|_{L(H^{s-N, H^s})} \lesssim \|U(t, \cdot)\|_{H^{N+6, \infty}}.$$
Moreover, its symbol $\sigma(U, \eta) = (\sigma_{ij}(U, \eta))_{1 \leq i, j \leq 4}$ is such that

$$
\sigma_{ij}^+(\xi, \eta)\hat{u}_+ + \sigma_{ij}^-(\xi, \eta)\hat{u}_- = 0,
$$

where $\sigma_{ij}^\pm$ supported for $|\xi| \leq \varepsilon(\eta)$ for a small $\varepsilon > 0$, and verifying, for any $\alpha, \beta \in \mathbb{N}^2$,

$$
|\partial_\eta^{\alpha} \partial_\xi^{\beta} \sigma_{ij}^\pm(\xi, \eta)| \lesssim_{\alpha, \beta} |\xi|^{N+2-|\alpha|} |\eta|^{-N-1-|\beta|},
$$

for $(i, j) \in \{(2, 4), (4, 2)\}$.

**Proof.** Because of the structure of $C''_{nd}(U, \eta)$, we seek for a matrix $E_{nd}(U, \eta)$ satisfying (2.2.23), of the form $E_{nd}(U, \eta) = (e_{ij})_{1 \leq i, j \leq 4}$ with $e_{ij} = 0$ for all $i, j$, except $(i, j) \in \{(2, 4), (4, 2)\}$. If we make the ansatz that $E_{nd}(U, \eta)$ is linear in $(u_+, u_-)$, of order $-1$, and remind that $A(\eta)$ in (2.1.5) is of order $1$, from symbolic calculus of proposition 1.2.9 we have that

$$
-[A(D), Op^B(E_{nd}(U, \eta))] = Op^B(A(\eta)E_{nd}(U, \eta) - E_{nd}(U, \eta)A(\eta))
$$

$$
- \sum_{|\alpha| = 1}^N \frac{1}{\alpha!} Op^B(\partial_\eta^{\alpha} A(\eta) \cdot D_x^\alpha E_{nd}(U, \eta)) + T_{-N}(U),
$$

where $T_{-N}(U)$ is a pseudo-differential operator of order less or equal than $-N$, such that, for any $s \in \mathbb{R}$,

$$
\|T_{-N}(U)\|_{\mathcal{L}(H^{s-N}, H^s)} \lesssim M_{N+1}^N(A(\eta); N + 3)M_0^{-1}(E_{nd}(U, \eta); 2) + M_0^N(A(\eta); N + 3)M_{N+1}^{-1}(E_{nd}(U, \eta); 2),
$$

and whose symbol $\sigma(U, \eta) = (\sigma_{ij}(U, \eta))_{ij}$ is such that $\sigma_{ij} = 0$ for all $i, j$ but $(i, j) \in \{(2, 4), (4, 2)\}$. Hence, for any fixed $\chi \in \mathbb{R}^2$ equal to $1$ in $B_{\varepsilon_1}(0)$ and supported in $B_{\varepsilon_2}(0)$, for some $0 < \varepsilon_1 < \varepsilon_2 < 1$, we look for $E_{nd}(U, \eta)$ such that

$$
\chi \left( \frac{D_x}{\langle \eta \rangle} \right) \left[ C''_{nd}(U, \eta) + D_1 E_{nd}(U, \eta) - A(\eta)E_{nd}(U, \eta) + E_{nd}(U, \eta)A(\eta) \right]
$$

$$
- \sum_{|\alpha| = 1}^N \frac{1}{\alpha!} \partial_\eta^{\alpha} A(\eta) \cdot D_x^\alpha E_{nd}(U, \eta) \right] = 0.
$$

Furthermore, as $E_{nd}(U, \eta) = E_{nd}(u_+, u_-)$ is linear in $(u_+, u_-)$ and $u_+$ (resp. $u_-$) is solution to the first (resp. the third) equation in (2.1.2) with $|I| = 0$, we have that

$$
D_1 E_{nd}(u_+, u_-; \eta) = E_{nd}(D_x u_+, -D_x u_-; \eta) + E_{nd}(Q_0^w(v_+, D_1 v_+), Q_0^w(v_+, D_1 v_+); \eta),
$$

$$
D_2^\alpha E_{nd}(u_+, u_-; \eta) = E_{nd}(D_x^\alpha u_+, D_x^\alpha u_-; \eta), \quad \forall \alpha \in \mathbb{N}^2
$$

while

$$
-A(\eta)E_{nd}(U, \eta) + E_{nd}(U, \eta)A(\eta) = \begin{bmatrix}
0 & 0 & 0 & 0 \\
0 & 0 & 0 & -2\langle \eta \rangle \epsilon_{24} \\
0 & 0 & 0 & 0 \\
0 & 2\langle \eta \rangle \epsilon_{42} & 0 & 0
\end{bmatrix}.
$$

Then we rather search for symbols $\epsilon_{24}$ and $\epsilon_{42}$ such that

$$
\chi \left( \frac{D_x}{\langle \eta \rangle} \right) \epsilon_{24} \left( D_x - \sum_{|\alpha| = 1}^N \frac{1}{\alpha!} \partial_\eta^{\alpha} \langle \eta \rangle D_x^\alpha - 2\langle \eta \rangle \right) u_+, -\left( D_x + \sum_{|\alpha| = 1}^N \frac{1}{\alpha!} \partial_\eta^{\alpha} \langle \eta \rangle D_x^\alpha + 2\langle \eta \rangle \right) u_-; \eta
$$

$$
= -\chi \left( \frac{D_x}{\langle \eta \rangle} \right) \epsilon_0,
$$

and

$$
\chi \left( \frac{D_x}{\langle \eta \rangle} \right) \epsilon_{42} \left( D_x + \sum_{|\alpha| = 1}^N \frac{1}{\alpha!} \partial_\eta^{\alpha} \langle \eta \rangle D_x^\alpha + 2\langle \eta \rangle \right) u_+, -\left( D_x - \sum_{|\alpha| = 1}^N \frac{1}{\alpha!} \partial_\eta^{\alpha} \langle \eta \rangle D_x^\alpha - 2\langle \eta \rangle \right) u_-; \eta
$$

$$
= -\chi \left( \frac{D_x}{\langle \eta \rangle} \right) \epsilon_0,
$$

72
with \(e_0, f_0\) given by (2.1.9), neglecting contribution \(E_{nd}(Q^w_{0}(v_\pm, D_1 v\pm), Q^w_{0}(v_\pm, D_1 v\pm); \eta)\) whose quantization acting on \(W^I_s\) gives rise to a remainder \(\mathfrak{N}(V, V)\), as we will see at the end of the proof. We look for \(e_{ij}\) of the form

\[
e_{ij}(u_+, u_-; \eta) = \int e^{ix\xi} \alpha_{ij}(\xi, \eta) \tilde{u}_+(\xi) d\xi + \int e^{ix\xi} \beta_{ij}(\xi, \eta) \tilde{u}_-(\xi) d\xi,
\]

for \((i, j) \in \{(2, 4), (4, 2)\}\), and reminding (2.2.22), (2.2.23) we choose the above multipliers such that, as long as \(|\xi| \leq \varepsilon_2(\eta),\)

\[
\alpha_{24}(\xi, \eta) = -\frac{i}{4} \left( 1 + \frac{\eta}{\xi} \right) \left( \frac{1 - \eta}{\xi} \right) \left( 1 - b_+(\xi, \eta) \right) - \frac{2(\eta^2)}{\xi^2} - 1 \frac{\xi_1}{\xi},
\]

\[
\beta_{24}(\xi, \eta) = -\frac{i}{4} \left( 1 - \frac{\eta}{\xi} \right) \left( 1 + \frac{\eta}{\xi} \right) \left( 1 + b_-(\xi, \eta) \right) + \frac{2(\eta^2)}{\xi^2} - 1 \frac{\xi_1}{\xi},
\]

\[
\alpha_{42}(\xi, \eta) = \beta_{24}, \quad \beta_{42}(\xi, \eta) = \alpha_{24}(\xi, \eta).
\]

One can check that, on the support of \(\chi(\frac{\xi}{\eta})\) and for any \(\mu, \nu \in \mathbb{N}, |\partial^{\mu}_\xi \partial^{\nu}_\eta \alpha_{ij}| + |\partial^{\mu}_\xi \partial^{\nu}_\eta \beta_{ij}| \lesssim |\mu, \nu| |\xi|^{-|\mu|} |\eta|^{-|\nu|},\) and then that,

\[
K^{ij}_+(x, \eta) := \int e^{ix\eta} \chi(\frac{\xi}{\eta}) \alpha_{ij}(\xi, \eta) |\xi|^{-4} d\xi, \quad K^{ij}_-(x, \eta) := \int e^{ix\eta} \chi(\frac{\xi}{\eta}) \beta_{ij}(\xi, \eta) |\xi|^{-4} d\xi,
\]

for \((i, j) \in \{(2, 4), (4, 2)\}, |\partial^{\alpha}_\xi K^{ij}_+(x, \eta)| \lesssim |x|^{-2} (|\eta|^{-1} - |\beta|),\) for any \(\beta \in \mathbb{N}^2\) and \((x, \eta) \in \mathbb{R}^2 \times \mathbb{R}^2,\) as a consequence of lemma (A.1). Therefore

\[
\left| \frac{\partial^{\alpha}_\xi e_{ij}}{D_\xi} \left( \frac{D_\xi}{\eta} \right) u_+, \chi \left( \frac{D_\xi}{\eta} \right) u_-; \eta \right| \leq \left| \int \frac{\partial^{\alpha}_\xi K^{ij}_+(x, \eta)}{D_\xi} |\xi|^4 u_+ |(y) dy | \right| + \left| \int \frac{\partial^{\alpha}_\xi K^{ij}_-(x, \eta)}{D_\xi} |\xi|^4 u_- |(y) dy | \right| \lesssim \|U(t, \cdot)\|_{H^{r+1} \infty} \|\eta|^{-1} - |\beta|,
\]

which implies that \(e_{24}, e_{42}\) are symbols of order \(-1\). Also, for \((i, j) \in \{(2, 4), (4, 2)\}\) and any \(n, r \in \mathbb{N},\) one can prove that

\[
M^{-1}_r \left( e_{ij} \left( \chi \left( \frac{D_\xi}{\eta} \right) u_+, \chi \left( \frac{D_\xi}{\eta} \right) u_-; \eta \right) ; n \right) \lesssim \|U(t, \cdot)\|_{H^{r+1} \infty}^2 \|\eta|^{-1} - |\beta|,
\]

using definition (1.2.3) and the fact that space \(W^{r, \infty}\) injects in \(H^{r+1}\) for any \(r \in \mathbb{N}.\) Estimate (2.2.20) follows from (2.2.28) and symbol \(\sigma(U; \eta)\) associated to \(T^{-\infty}_{-N}(U)\) satisfies (2.2.27), as one can check using (1.2.12) and the estimates derived above for \(\alpha_{ij}, \beta_{ij}.\) Finally, from (3.1.34) with \(s = 4\) we deduce that, for any \(\theta \in [0, 1],\)

\[
M^{-1}_0 (E_{nd}(Q^w_{0}(v_\pm, D_1 v\pm), Q^w_{0}(v_\pm, D_1 v\pm); \eta); n) \lesssim \|V(t, \cdot)\|_{H^{r+1} \infty} \|U(t, \cdot)\|_{H^5}^2,
\]

and the quantization of \(E_{nd}(Q^w_{0}(v_\pm, D_1 v\pm), Q^w_{0}(v_\pm, D_1 v\pm); \eta)\) acting on \(W^I_s\) is a remainder verifying (2.2.15) by proposition (1.2.7).

Proof of Proposition (2.2.1) Lemmas (2.2.3) and (2.2.4) show that there exist two matrices \(E_d(U; \eta)\) and \(E_{nd}(U, \eta),\) linear in \((u_+, u_-),\) satisfying equations (2.2.14) and (2.2.25) respectively. After definition (2.2.2) of \(\tilde{W}^I_s\) and equalities (2.2.11), (2.2.16) and (2.2.25) we deduce that

\[
(D_t - A(D)) \tilde{W}^I_s = Op^B(\tilde{A}_1(V; \eta)) W^I_s + Op^B(A''(V''; \eta)) U + Op^B(A''(V''; \eta)) U + Op^B(A''(V''; \eta)) U + Op^B(C''(U; \eta)) V^I_s + Op^B(A''(V''; \eta)) U + Q^0_0(V, W) + \mathfrak{N}(U, V) + Op^B(E(U; \eta)) \left[ Op^B(\tilde{A}_1(V; \eta)) W^I_s + Op^B(A''(V''; \eta)) U + \mathfrak{N}'(V, V) \right] + T^{-N}(U) W^I_s + \mathfrak{N}'(V, V)
\]

73
where \( \mathfrak{R}(U, V) \) satisfies (2.1.47), \( \mathfrak{R}'(V, V) \) satisfies (2.2.13), and \( T_{-N}(U) \) is a pseudo-differential operator of order less or equal than \(-N\) verifying (2.2.3), (2.2.4). Contribution

\[
Op^B(E(U; \eta)) \left[ Op^B(A''(V^I; \eta))U + Op^B(C''(U; \eta))V_s^I + Op^B(A''(V^I; \eta))U + Q_0'(V, W) + \mathfrak{R}(U, V) \right]
\]

is a remainder of the form \( \mathfrak{R}(U, V) \) satisfying estimate (2.2.6) as a consequence of proposition 1.2.7, estimates (2.2.7) with \( r = 0 \), lemma 1.2.11 and the fact that the \( L^2 \) norms of \( V_s^I \) and \( V^I \) are equivalent as long as \( \|V(t, \cdot)\|_{H^{2, \infty}} \) is small.

According to the definition of \( E(U; \eta) \) and decomposition (2.2.18)

\[
Op^B(E(U; \eta))Op^B(\tilde{A}_1(V; \eta)) = Op^B(E_d^0(U; \eta))Op^B(\tilde{A}_1(V; \eta)) + Op^B(E_d^{-1}(U; \eta) + E_{nd}(U; \eta))Op^B(\tilde{A}_1(V; \eta)).
\]

Proposition 1.2.11 and estimates (2.1.39), (2.2.15), (2.2.7a) with \( r = 0 \), imply that the latter addend in the above right hand side is a bounded operator on \( L^2 \) whose \( L(L^2) \) norm is estimated by \( \|U(t, \cdot)\|_{H^{\infty, \infty}} \). The former one writes instead as \( Op^B(E_d^0(U; \eta) \tilde{A}_1(V; \eta)) + T_0(U, V) \), for an operator \( T_0(U, V) \) of order less or equal than 0 and \( L(L^2) \) norm controlled by \( \|R_1 U(t, \cdot)\|_{H^{2, \infty}} \|V(t, \cdot)\|_{H^{2, \infty}} \), as follows from corollary 1.2.11 and estimates (2.1.49), (2.2.7a) with \( r = 1 \). Hence,

\[
Op^B(E(U; \eta))Op^B(\tilde{A}_1(V; \eta))W_s^I = Op^B(E_d^0(U; \eta) \tilde{A}_1(V; \eta))W_s^I + \mathfrak{R}(U, V),
\]

for a new \( \mathfrak{R}'(U, V) \) satisfying (2.2.6).

After (2.2.7a) matrix \( I_4 + E_d^0(U; \eta) \) is invertible as long as \( \|R_1 U(t, \cdot)\|_{H^{1, \infty}} \) is small and \( F_d^0(U; \eta) := [I_4 + E_d^0(U; \eta)]^{-1} - I_4 \) is such that, for any \( n, r \in \mathbb{N} \),

\[
M_r^0 \left( F_d^0 \left( \chi \left( \frac{D_x}{\eta} \right) U; \eta \right); n \right) \lesssim \|R_1 U(t, \cdot)\|_{H^{1+r, \infty}}.
\]

Moreover, \( F_d^0(U; \eta) \) is a real diagonal matrix of order 0, and by corollary 1.2.11 with \( r = 1 \)

\[
Op^B(I_4 + F_d^0(U; \eta))Op^B(I_4 + E_d^0(U; \eta)) = I_d + T_{-1}(U),
\]

with \( T_{-1}(U) \) of order less or equal than 0 and \( L(H^{s-1}; H^s) \) norm bounded by \( \|R_1 U(t, \cdot)\|_{H^{2, \infty}} \), for any \( s \in \mathbb{R} \). This implies that

\[
Op^B(I_4 + F_d^0(U; \eta))W_s^I = W_s^I + \tilde{T}_{-1}(U)W_s^I, \quad \tilde{T}_{-1}(U) = T_{-1}(U) + Op^B(E_d^{-1}(U; \eta) + E_{nd}(U; \eta))
\]

with \( \tilde{T}_{-1}(U) \) of order less or equal than \(-1\) and

\[
\|\tilde{T}_{-1}(U)\|_{L(H^{s-1}; H^s)} \lesssim \|R_1 U(t, \cdot)\|_{H^{2, \infty}} + \|U(t, \cdot)\|_{H^{5, \infty}}
\]

for any \( s \in \mathbb{R} \). Hence, as long as this quantity is small, there exists a positive constant \( C \) such that (2.2.9) holds. Also,

\[
Op^B(I_4 + E_d^0(U; \eta))Op^B(\tilde{A}_1(V; \eta))W_s^I = Op^B(I_4 + E_d^0(U; \eta))Op^B(\tilde{A}_1(V; \eta))Op^B(I_4 + F_d^0(U; \eta))W_s^I - Op^B(I_4 + E_d^0(U; \eta))Op^B(\tilde{A}_1(V; \eta))\tilde{T}_{-1}(U)W_s^I.
\]
where from proposition $1.2.7$, $(2.1.49)$, $(2.2.30)$ and $(2.1.30)$ the $L^2$ norm of the latter term in the above right hand side is estimated by

\[(2.2.31) \quad \| V(t, \cdot) \|_{H^1, \infty} (\| R_1 U(t, \cdot) \|_{H^2, \infty} + \| U(t, \cdot) \|_{H^3, \infty}) \| W^I(t, \cdot) \|_{L^2}. \]

On the other hand, by corollary $1.2.11$ with $(2.2.31)$

\[\text{term in the above right hand side is estimated by} \]

\[\text{in-time semi-linear contribution} \ W \]

\[\text{op} \]

\[\text{in proposition 2.2.1 in previous subsection we showed that one can get rid of the slow-decaying-} \]

\[\text{2.2.2 A second normal forms transformation.} \]

In proposition $2.2.1$ in previous subsection we showed that one can get rid of the slow-decaying-in-time semi-linear contribution $Op^B(C''(U; \eta))V_I^I$ in $(2.1.40)$ by introducing a new function $\tilde{W}_s^I$, defined in $(2.2.2)$ in terms of $W_s^I$ and solution to equation $(2.2.3)$. That naturally led us to the introduction of new energies $\tilde{E}_n(t; W)$, for $n \in \mathbb{N}, n \geq 3$, and $\tilde{E}_k^5(t; W)$, for $k \in \mathbb{N}, 0 \leq k \leq 2$, (see $(2.2.11a)$) which are respectively equivalent to starting $E_n(t; W)$ and $E_k^5(t; W)$ whenever some uniform norms of $U, V$ are sufficiently small. However, these new energies do not allow us yet to recover enhanced estimates $(1.1.12c)$ and $(1.1.12d)$ as it is not true that

\[(2.2.32) \quad \left\| \partial_t \tilde{E}_n(t; W) \right\| = O \left( \varepsilon t^{-1+\frac{1}{2}} E_n(t; W)^{\frac{3}{2}} \right), \quad \left\| \partial_t \tilde{E}_k^5(t; W) \right\| = O \left( \varepsilon t^{-1+\frac{1}{2}} E_k^5(t; W)^{\frac{1}{2}} \right). \]

This is do to the fact that we still have to deal with semi-linear slow-decaying contributions $Op^B(A''(V^I; \eta))U$, $Op^B_R(A''(V^I; \eta))U$, $Q_0^5(V, W)$ to the right hand side of $(2.2.3)$, together with the new $T_N(U)W^I$ whose $L^2$ norm is also a $O(t^{-\frac{1}{2}} \| W^I(t, \cdot) \|_{L^2})$ after $(2.2.4)$ and $(1.1.11a)$. The aim of the current subsection is hence to perform a new normal form argument to replace the mentioned terms with more decaying ones. This is actually done at the energy level, meaning that we are going to add some suitable cubic perturbations to $\tilde{E}_n(t; W)$ and $\tilde{E}_k^5(t; W)$ so that the new energies so defined satisfy estimates as in $(2.2.32)$. Let us first focus on the slow decaying terms that appear when computing

\[\partial_t \tilde{E}_n(t; W) = \sum_{I \in \mathcal{J}_n} \left\langle \partial_t \tilde{W}_s^I, \tilde{W}_s^I \right\rangle \]

for any integer $n \geq 3$. Using equation $(2.2.3)$ and rewriting $\tilde{W}_s^I$ in terms of $W^I$ we find, on the one hand, the contribution

\[(2.2.33) \quad \sum_{I \in \mathcal{J}_n} \mathcal{H} \left[ \langle Op^B(A''(V^I; \eta))U + Op^B_R(A''(V^I; \eta))U, W^I \rangle + \langle T_N(U)W^I, W^I \rangle \right], \]

which is a $O(\varepsilon t^{-1/2} E_n(t; W))$ after Cauchy-Schwarz inequality, lemma $2.1.1$ and a-priori estimates $(1.1.11)$. But we also have

\[(2.2.34) \quad \sum_{I \in \mathcal{J}_n} \sum_{(I_1, I_2) \in \mathcal{J}(I)} \mathcal{H} \left[ \langle Q_0^5 (v^I_\pm; D_I v^I_\pm), v^I_+ + v^I_- \rangle \right] \]

75
which enjoys the same decay as the previous one, can be immediately seen using again Cauchy-Schwarz inequality along with (2.1.28) and (1.1.11a). From definition (2.1.6) of matrix $A''(V^I; \eta)$, Plancherel’s formula, (1.2.6) and the fact that Schr{"o}dinger inequality along with (2.1.28) and (1.1.11a). From definition (2.1.6) of matrix $A''(V^I; \eta)$, Plancherel’s formula, (1.2.6) and the fact that $\eta = -\eta$.

\[
\langle Op^B(A''(V^I; \eta))U, W^I \rangle = \langle Op^B(a_0(v^I_{+}; \eta))u_+ + Op^B(b_0(v^I_{-}; \eta))v_+, v^I_{+} \rangle \\
= -\frac{i}{4(2\pi)^2} \int \chi \left( \frac{\xi - \eta}{\langle \eta \rangle} \right) \left[ (v^I_{+} + v^I_{-})(\xi - \eta)(u_+ + u_-)(\eta) - \frac{\xi - \eta}{\langle \xi - \eta \rangle} \cdot \frac{\eta}{\langle \eta \rangle} (v^I_{+} - v^I_{-})(\xi - \eta) \times (u_+ - u_-)(\eta) \right] \eta_1 (v^I_{+} + v^I_{-})(-\xi) d\xi d\eta,
\]

with $\chi$ denoting a smooth function equal to 1 in $B_{\varepsilon_1}(0)$ and supported in $B_{\varepsilon_2}(0)$, for some $0 < \varepsilon_1 < \varepsilon_2 \ll 1$. Hence

\[
-3 \left[ \langle Op^B(A''(V^I; \eta))U, W^I \rangle \right] = \sum_{j_k \in \{+, -\}} C^I_{j_1,j_2,j_3}
\]

with

\[
C^I_{j_1,j_2,j_3} = \frac{1}{4(2\pi)^2} \int \chi \left( \frac{\xi - \eta}{\langle \eta \rangle} \right) \left( 1 - j_1 j_2 j_3 \frac{\xi - \eta}{\langle \xi - \eta \rangle} \cdot \frac{\eta}{\langle \eta \rangle} \right) \eta_1 v^I_{j_1}(\xi - \eta) \hat{u}_{j_2}(\eta) \hat{v}^I_{j_3}(-\xi) d\xi d\eta.
\]

for any $j_1, j_2, j_3 \in \{+, -\}$. Analogously, from equality (1.2.8)

\[
-3 \left[ \langle Op^B(A''(V^I; \eta))U, W^I \rangle \right] = \sum_{j_k \in \{+, -\}} C^{I,R}_{j_1,j_2,j_3}
\]

with

\[
C^{I,R}_{j_1,j_2,j_3} = \frac{1}{4(2\pi)^2} \int \left[ 1 - \chi \left( \frac{\xi - \eta}{\langle \eta \rangle} \right) - \chi \left( \frac{\eta}{\langle \xi - \eta \rangle} \right) \right] \left( 1 - j_1 j_2 j_3 \frac{\xi - \eta}{\langle \xi - \eta \rangle} \cdot \frac{\eta}{\langle \eta \rangle} \right) \eta_1 \hat{v}^I_{j_1}(\xi - \eta) \hat{u}_{j_2}(\eta) \hat{v}^I_{j_3}(-\xi) d\xi d\eta.
\]

After proposition 2.2.1 $T_{-N}(U) = (\sigma_{ij}(U, D_x))_{ij}$ with symbols $\sigma_{ij}(U, \eta)$ satisfying (2.2.2). Introducing $\rho : \{+, -\} \rightarrow \{2, 4\}$ such that $\rho(+) = 2, \rho(-) = 4$ and using the convention that $-j_k \in \{+, -\} \setminus \{j_k\}$, we have that

\[
\langle T_{-N}(U)W^I, W^I \rangle = \sum_{i,j \in \{+, -\}} \langle \sigma_{\rho(i),\rho(j)}(U, D_x)v^I_j, v^I_i \rangle
\]

\[
= \frac{1}{(2\pi)^2} \sum_{j_k \in \{+, -\}} \int \sigma^{j_2}_{\rho(j_1),\rho(j_1)}(\eta, \xi - \eta) \hat{v}^I_{j_1}(\xi - \eta) \hat{u}_{j_2}(\eta) \hat{v}^I_{j_3}(-\xi) d\xi d\eta,
\]

where multipliers $\sigma^{j_2}_{\rho(j_3),\rho(j_1)}(\eta, \xi - \eta)$ are supported for $|\eta| \leq \varepsilon |\xi - \eta|$ and such that, for any $\alpha, \beta \in \mathbb{N}^2$,

\[
\left| \partial^\alpha \hat{v}^I_{\rho(j_3),\rho(j_1)}(\eta, \xi - \eta) \right| \lesssim_{\alpha,\beta} |\eta|^{N+1-|\beta|} |\xi - \eta|^{-N-|\alpha|},
\]

for any $(\xi, \eta) \in \mathbb{R}^2 \times \mathbb{R}^2$, any $j_1, j_2, j_3 \in \{+, -\}$. Moreover, by (2.1.1) we have that

\[
-3 \left[ \langle Q^k_0(v^I_{+}, D_1 u^I_{+}), v^I_+ + v^I_- \rangle \right] = \sum_{j_k \in \{+, -\}} C^I_{j_1,j_2,j_3}
\]

76
with

\[ C_{l_1,l_2}^{I_1,I_2}(j_1,j_2,j_3) := \frac{1}{4(2\pi)^2} \int \left( 1 - j_1j_2\frac{\xi - \eta}{(\xi - \eta) \cdot \eta} \right) \eta_1 \cdot \hat{v}_{j_1}^I(\xi - \eta) \tilde{u}_{j_2}^I(\eta) \tilde{v}_{j_3}^I(\xi) d\xi d\eta. \]

The above equalities lead us to introduce the following multipliers

\[ B_{l_1,l_2}^{I_1,I_2}(j_1,j_2,j_3)(\xi, \eta) := \frac{1}{j_1(\xi - \eta) + j_2|\eta| + j_3|\xi|} \left( 1 - j_1j_2\frac{\xi - \eta}{(\xi - \eta) \cdot \eta} \right) \eta_k, \quad k = 1, 2 \]

and

\[ \tilde{\sigma}_{l_1,l_2}^N(j_1,j_2,j_3)(\xi, \eta) := \frac{\sigma_{l_1,j_1}^j(\eta, \xi - \eta)}{j_1(\xi - \eta) + j_2|\eta| - j_3|\xi|}, \]

together with the following integrals

\[ D_{l_1,l_2}^{I_1,I_2}(j_1,j_2,j_3) := \frac{i}{4(2\pi)^2} \int \chi \left( \frac{\xi - \eta}{(\eta)} \right) B_{l_1,l_2}^{I_1,I_2}(j_1,j_2,j_3)(\xi, \eta) \hat{v}_{j_1}^I(\xi - \eta) \tilde{u}_{j_2}^I(\eta) \tilde{v}_{j_3}^I(\xi) d\xi d\eta, \]

\[ D_{l_1,l_2}^{I_1,R}(j_1,j_2,j_3) := \frac{i}{4(2\pi)^2} \int \left[ 1 - \chi \left( \frac{\xi - \eta}{(\eta)} \right) - \chi \left( \frac{\eta}{(\xi - \eta)} \right) \right] B_{l_1,l_2}^{I_1,I_2}(j_1,j_2,j_3)(\xi, \eta) \times \hat{v}_{j_1}^I(\xi - \eta) \tilde{u}_{j_2}^I(\eta) \tilde{v}_{j_3}^I(\xi) d\xi d\eta, \]

\[ D_{l_1,l_2}^{I_1,T-N}(j_1,j_2,j_3) := \text{Re} \left[ \frac{1}{(2\pi)^2} \int \tilde{\sigma}_{l_1,j_1}^N(j_1,j_2,j_3)(\xi, \eta) \hat{v}_{j_1}^I(\xi - \eta) \tilde{u}_{j_2}^I(\eta) \tilde{v}_{j_3}^I(\xi) d\xi d\eta \right] \]

and

\[ D_{l_1,l_2}^{I_1,T-N}(j_1,j_2,j_3) := \frac{i}{4(2\pi)^2} \int B_{l_1,l_2}^{I_1,I_2}(j_1,j_2,j_3)(\xi, \eta) \hat{v}_{j_1}^I(\xi - \eta) \tilde{u}_{j_2}^I(\eta) \tilde{v}_{j_3}^I(\xi) d\xi d\eta \]

for any triplet \((j_1, j_2, j_3) \in \{+,-\}^3\). We warn the reader that definitions (2.2.41) and (2.2.42) are given here for any general multi-indices \( I, I_1, I_2 \).

**Definition 2.2.5.** For every integer \( n \geq 3 \) we define the second modified energy \( \tilde{E}_n^k(t; W) \) as

\[ \tilde{E}_n^k(t; W) := \tilde{E}_n(t; W) + \sum_{\begin{subarray}{c} I \in \Omega_n \\ j_i \in \{+,-\} \end{subarray}} \left( D_{l_1,l_2}^{I_1,I_2}(j_1,j_2,j_3) \right) + \sum_{\begin{subarray}{c} I \in \Omega_n \\ j_i \in \{+,-\} \end{subarray}} \sum_{\begin{subarray}{c} (I_1,I_2) \in \Omega(I) \\ |I_1| < |I_2| < |I| \end{subarray}} D_{l_1,l_2}^{I_1,T-N}(j_1,j_2,j_3). \]

Let us now analyse the time derivative of \( \tilde{E}_n^k(t; W) \) for integers \( 0 \leq k \leq 2 \). As in the previous case, from equation (2.2.33) we see appear the same contribution as in (2.2.33), but with the sum over \( \Omega_n \) replaced with that on \( \Omega_3^k \). We also find

\[ \sum_{I \in \Omega_3^k} \mathcal{E}[(Q^I_0(V, W), W^I)] \]

which is an \( O(\varepsilon t^{-1+\delta_k}/2 E_{n}^k(t; W)^{1/2}) \) from Cauchy-Schwarz inequality and estimate (2.1.59). To be more precise, the slow decay in time of the above scalar product is due to some particular
quadratic term appearing in $Q^k(V,W)$. In fact, according to definition \((2.1.12)\) and to \((2.1.29a), (2.1.30), (2.1.34a), (1.1.11d)\), for any $I \in 2\mathbb{N}_0$

\[
\sum_{(I_1, I_2) \in 3(I)} \left| \langle Q^w_0 (v_{l_1}^{I_1}, D_x v_{l_2}^{I_2}), u'_+ + u'_l \rangle \right| + \sum_{(I_1, I_2) \in 3(I)} \left| \langle Q^w_0 (v_{l_1}^{I_1}, D_t v_{l_2}^{I_2}), u'_+ + u'_l \rangle \right| \\
\lesssim ||\mathfrak{N}^k_3(t, \cdot)||_{L^2} ||U^I (t, \cdot)||_{L^2} \leq C(A + B) t^{-1 + \frac{\delta}{2}} E_3^k(t; W)^{\frac{1}{2}}.
\]

Also, after \((2.1.29b)\) and \((2.1.34b)\) we have that for all $I \notin \mathcal{V}^k$, with $\mathcal{V}^k$ defined in \((2.2.20)\),

\[
\sum_{(I_1, I_2) \in 3(I)} \left| \langle Q^k_0 (v_{l_1}^{I_1}, D_x u_{l_2}^{I_2}), v'_+ + v'_l \rangle \right| + \sum_{(I_1, I_2) \in 3(I)} \left| \langle Q^k_0 (v_{l_1}^{I_1}, D_t u_{l_2}^{I_2}), v'_+ + v'_l \rangle \right| \\
\lesssim ||\mathfrak{N}^k_3(t, \cdot)||_{L^2} ||V^I (t, \cdot)||_{L^2} \leq C(A + B) t^{-1 + \frac{\delta}{2}} E_3^k(t; W)^{\frac{1}{2}}.
\]

Observe that the decay rate $O(t^{-1 + \delta_k/2})$ in the right hand side of the two above inequalities is the slowest one that allows us to propagate a-priori estimate \((1.1.11d)\) and it gives us back exactly the slow growth in time $t^{\delta_k/2}$ enjoyed by $E_3^k(t; W)^{1/2}$, for $0 \leq k \leq 2$. On the other hand, for $I \in \mathcal{V}^k$ with $k = 0, 1$, we have that, for some smooth cut-off function $\chi$ and some $\sigma > 0$ small,

\[
\sum_{(I_1, I_2) \in 3(I)} c_{I_1, I_2} Q^k_0 (v_{l_1}^{I_1}, D_x u_{l_2}^{I_2}) = \sum_{(I_1, I_2) \in 3(I)} c_{I_1, I_2} Q^k_0 (v_{l_1}^{I_1}, \chi(t^{-\sigma} D_x) D_x u_{l_2}^{I_2}) + \mathfrak{N}^k_3(t, x),
\]

\[
\sum_{(I_1, I_2) \in 3(I)} c_{I_1, I_2} Q^k_0 (v_{l_1}^{I_1}, D_t u_{l_2}^{I_2}) = \sum_{J \in \mathcal{K}} c_{J, 0} Q^k_0 (v_{l_1}^{J}, \chi(t^{-\sigma} D_x) D_x |u_{l_2}^J|) + \mathfrak{N}^k_3(t, x).
\]

The $L^2$ norms of the summations in the above right hand sides are bounded by

\[
\sum_{|J| \leq 1} \left( \|\chi(t^{-\sigma} D_x) u_{l_2}^J(t, \cdot)\|_{H^2 \infty} + \|\chi(t^{-\sigma} D_x) R u_{l_2}^J(t, \cdot)\|_{H^2 \infty} \right) E_3^k(t; W)^{\frac{1}{2}}
\]

and hence by $\varepsilon t^{-1/2} E_3^k(t; W)^{1/2}$ as follows by sharp estimate \((B.2.57)\) derived in appendix \[B\]. Therefore, the very contribution to \((2.2.47)\) that has to be eliminated from $\partial_t \mathfrak{N}^k_3(t; W)$ appears only for $k = 0, 1$ and is

\[
\sum_{I \in \mathcal{V}^k} \sum_{(I_1, I_2) \in 3(I)} c_{I_1, I_2} \Im \left[ \langle Q^k_0 (v_{l_1}^{I_1}, \chi(t^{-\sigma} D_x) D_x u_{l_2}^{I_2}), v'_+ + v'_l \rangle \right] - \sum_{(I_1, I_2) \in 3(I)} \sum_{J \in \mathcal{K}} c_{J, 0} \Im \left[ \langle Q^k_0 (v_{l_1}^{J}, \chi(t^{-\sigma} D_x) D_x |u_{l_2}^J|), v'_+ + v'_l \rangle \right].
\]

As

\[
- \Im \left[ \langle Q^k_0 (v_{l_1}^{J}, \chi(t^{-\sigma} D_x) D_t u_{l_2}^{I_2}), v'_+ + v'_l \rangle \right] = \sum_{j \in \{+, -\}} F_{l_1, l_2, l}^{I_1, I_2, l} (j_1, j_2, j_3), \quad l = 1, 2
\]

\[
- \Im \left[ \langle Q^k_0 (v_{l_1}^{J}, \chi(t^{-\sigma} D_x) D_x u_{l_2}^{I_2}), v'_+ + v'_l \rangle \right] \quad \sum_{j \in \{+, -\}} F_{l_1, l_2, l}^{I_1, I_2, l} (j_1, j_2, j_3),
\]

78
with
\( (2.2.52) \quad F_{(j_1,j_2,j_3)}^{l_1,l_2,l_3} = \frac{1}{4(2\pi)^2} \int \left( 1 - j_1 j_2 \frac{\xi - \eta}{|\eta|} \cdot \frac{\eta}{|\eta|} \right) \eta_i \xi_j \eta_k \chi(t^\sigma D_x) u_{j_1}^l(\eta) \bar{u}_{j_2}^l(\eta) \bar{v}_{j_3}^l(\xi) d\xi d\eta \),
for any \( j_i \in \{+, -\}, \ l = 1, 2, 3, \) and \( \eta_3 = j_2|\eta| \), we introduce a new multiplier
\( (2.2.53) \quad B_{(j_1,j_2,j_3)}^3(\xi, \eta) := \frac{j_2}{j_1(\xi - \eta) + j_2|\eta| + j_3|\xi|} \left( 1 - j_1 j_2 \frac{\xi - \eta}{|\eta|} \cdot \frac{\eta}{|\eta|} \right) |\eta| \)
together with integrals
\( (2.2.54) \quad G_{(j_1,j_2,j_3)}^{l_1,l_2,l_3} = \frac{i}{4(2\pi)^2} \int B_{(j_1,j_2,j_3)}^l(\xi, \eta) \bar{v}_{j_1}^l(\xi - \eta) \chi(t^\sigma D_x) u_{j_2}^l(\eta) \bar{v}_{j_3}^l(\xi) d\xi d\eta \)
for any \( l = 1, 2, 3, \ (j_1,j_2,j_3) \in \{+, -\}^3 \), with multipliers \( B_{(j_1,j_2,j_3)}^l \) given by \( (2.2.32) \) when \( l = 1, 2, \) and by \( (2.2.53) \) when \( l = 3 \). We warn the reader that in what follows we will sometimes refer to multipliers \( B_{(j_1,j_2,j_3)}^l \) (resp. integrals \( F_{(j_1,j_2,j_3)}^{l_1,l_2,l_3} \) and \( G_{(j_1,j_2,j_3)}^{l_1,l_2,l_3} \)) simply as \( B_{(j_1,j_2,j_3)} \) (resp. \( F_{(j_1,j_2,j_3)} \) and \( G_{(j_1,j_2,j_3)} \)) forgetting about superscript \( l \). This choice reveals to be convenient when we do not need to distinguish between \( l = 1, 2, 3 \).

**Definition 2.2.6.** For every integer \( 0 \leq k \leq 2 \) we define the second modified energy \( \widetilde{E}_3^k(t; W) \) as
\( (2.2.55) \quad \widetilde{E}_3^k(t; W) := \widetilde{E}_3^k(t; W) + \sum_{I \in \mathcal{J}_3^k} \left( D_{(j_1,j_2,j_3)}^{l_1,l_2,l_3} + D_{(j_1,j_2,j_3)}^{l_1,l_2,l_3} + D_{(j_1,j_2,j_3)}^{l_1,l_2,l_3} \right) \) 
\[ + \delta_{k<2} \sum_{I \in \mathcal{J}_3^k} \sum_{j_i \in \{+,-\}} c_{I,j_1,j_2} G_{(j_1,j_2,j_3)}^{l_1,l_2,l_3}, \]
with \( \delta_{k<2} = 1 \) if \( k = 0, 1 \), 0 otherwise, and coefficients \( c_{I,j_1,j_2} \in \{-1, 0, 1\} \).

In view of the lemmas to follow it is useful to remind that, after system \( (2.1.2) \), for any multi-index \( J \) vector \( (\hat{u}_+, \hat{v}_+, \hat{u}_-, \hat{v}_-) \) is solution to
\( (2.2.56) \quad \left\{ \begin{array}{l}
(D_t - |\xi|) \hat{u}_+^I(t, \xi) = \sum_{|I_1|+|I_2|=|I|} Q_0^w(v_{I_1}^l, D_t v_{I_2}^l) + \sum_{|I_1|+|I_2|<|I|} c_{I_1,I_2} Q_0^k(v_{I_1}^l, D_t v_{I_2}^l) \\
(D_t - |\xi|) \hat{v}_+^I(t, \xi) = \sum_{|I_1|+|I_2|=|I|} Q_0^w(v_{I_1}^l, D_t v_{I_2}^l) + \sum_{|I_1|+|I_2|<|I|} c_{I_1,I_2} Q_0^k(v_{I_1}^l, D_t v_{I_2}^l) \\
(D_t - |\xi|) \hat{u}_-^I(t, x) = \sum_{|I_1|+|I_2|=|I|} Q_0^w(v_{I_1}^l, D_t v_{I_2}^l) + \sum_{|I_1|+|I_2|<|I|} c_{I_1,I_2} Q_0^k(v_{I_1}^l, D_t v_{I_2}^l) \\
(D_t - |\xi|) \hat{v}_-^I(t, x) = \sum_{|I_1|+|I_2|=|I|} Q_0^w(v_{I_1}^l, D_t v_{I_2}^l) + \sum_{|I_1|+|I_2|<|I|} c_{I_1,I_2} Q_0^k(v_{I_1}^l, D_t v_{I_2}^l)
\end{array} \right. \)
with coefficients \( c_{I_1,I_2} \in \{-1, 0, 1\} \) and indices \( I_1, I_2 \) in above right hand side such that \( (I_1, I_2) \in \mathcal{J}(I) \). In lemmas \( 2.2.9 \) and \( 2.2.10 \) we will check that, with definitions \( 2.2.5 \) \( 2.2.6 \) the slow decaying contributions highlighted in \( (2.2.33) \) are replaced in \( \partial_t \widetilde{E}_3^k(t; W) \) by some new quartic terms. These latter ones are obtained from integrals \( (2.2.44) \) by replacing each factor \( \hat{v}_{j_1}^l, \hat{u}_{j_2}^l, \bar{v}_{j_3}^l \) at a time with the non-linearity appearing in the equation that factor satisfies in \( (2.2.56) \). Lemma \( 2.2.11 \) (resp. lemma \( 2.2.12 \) shows that the same is for troublesome contributions \( (2.2.34) \) in \( \partial_t \widetilde{E}_3^k(t; W) \) (resp. for \( (2.2.30) \) in \( \partial_t \widetilde{E}_3^{k,1}(t; W) \)). We are also going to see that, if \( N \in \mathbb{N}^* \) is chosen sufficiently large (e.g. \( N = 18 \)), all these quartic terms suitably decay in time, and that modified energies \( \widetilde{E}_3^k(t; W), \widetilde{E}_3^{k,1}(t; W) \) are equivalent, respectively, to \( E_n(t; W), E_n^3(t; W) \). We point out the fact that the normal form’s step performed in previous section was necessary to avoid here some problematic quartic contributions coming from quasi-linear terms in \( (2.2.56) \) and that could lead to some loss of derivatives. Before proving the mentioned lemmas, we need to introduce two preliminary results, that will be useful in the proof of lemmas \( 2.2.9 \) \( 2.2.11 \).
Lemma 2.2.7. For any \(j_i \in \{+,-\}, \ i = 1,2,3\), let \(B_{(j_1,j_2,j_3)}^k(\xi,\eta)\) be the multiplier defined in (2.2.42) when \(k = 1,2\) and in (2.2.53) when \(k = 3\), and \(\psi_1, \psi_2, \psi_3\) be three smooth cut-off functions such that \(\psi_1(x)\) is supported for \(|x| \leq c\), \(\psi_2(x)\) is supported for \(c' \leq |x| \leq C'\), \(\psi_3(x)\) is supported for \(|x| \geq C\), for some \(0 < c, c' < 1\), \(C, C' \gg 1\), and \(\psi_1 + \psi_2 + \psi_3 \equiv 1\). Let also \(\delta_k\) be equal to 1 for \(k = 1,2\), 0 for \(k = 3\).

(i) For any \(j_1, \ldots, j_5 \in \{+,-\}, \ i = 1,2\), and any \(u_1, u_2, u_3, u_4\) such that \(u_1 \in H^{4,\infty}(\mathbb{R}^2)\), \(u_2, u_4 \in L^2(\mathbb{R}^2)\), \(u_3 \in H^{11,\infty}(\mathbb{R}^2)\) and \(\delta_k R_k u_3 \in H^{7,\infty}(\mathbb{R}^2)\),

\[
\int \psi_1\left(\frac{\xi - \eta}{(\eta)}\right) B_{(j_1,j_2,j_3)}^k(\xi,\eta) \left(1 - j_4j_5 \frac{\xi - \eta - \zeta}{(\xi - \eta - \zeta)} \cdot \frac{\zeta}{|\zeta|}\right) \zeta \hat{u}_1(\xi - \eta - \zeta) \hat{u}_2(\zeta) \hat{u}_3(\eta) \hat{u}_4(\xi - \zeta) d\xi d\eta d\zeta \lesssim \|u_1\|_{H^{4,\infty}} \|u_2\|_{L^2} (\|u_3\|_{H^{11,\infty}} + \delta_k \|R_k u_3\|_{H^{7,\infty}}) \|u_4\|_{L^2};
\]

(ii) For any \(j_1, \ldots, j_5 \in \{+,-\}, \ i = 1,2\), and any \(u_1, u_2, u_3, u_4\) such that \(u_1 \in H^{7,\infty}(\mathbb{R}^2)\), \(u_2 \in H^1(\mathbb{R}^2)\), \(u_4 \in L^2(\mathbb{R}^2)\), \(u_3 \in H^{4,\infty}(\mathbb{R}^2)\) and \(\delta_k R_k u_3 \in L^\infty(\mathbb{R}^2)\),

\[
\int \psi_1\left(\frac{\xi - \eta}{(\eta)}\right) B_{(j_1,j_2,j_3)}^k(\xi,\eta) \left(1 - j_4j_5 \frac{\xi - \eta - \zeta}{(\xi - \eta - \zeta)} \cdot \frac{\zeta}{|\zeta|}\right) \zeta \hat{u}_1(\xi - \eta - \zeta) \hat{u}_2(\zeta) \hat{u}_3(\eta) \hat{u}_4(\xi - \zeta) d\xi d\eta d\zeta \lesssim \|u_1\|_{H^{7,\infty}} \|u_2\|_{H^1} (\|u_3\|_{H^{4,\infty}} + \delta_k \|R_k u_3\|_{L^\infty}) \|u_4\|_{L^2}.
\]

Proof. Let \(k = 1,2\). We are going to refer to \(B_{(j_1,j_2,j_3)}^k\) (resp. \(\eta_k\) and \(R_k\)) simply as \(B_{(j_1,j_2,j_3)}\) (resp. \(\eta\) and \(R\)) and rather use a superscript to define a decomposition of this multiplier (see 2.2.60).

Let us observe that, as

\[
B_{(j_1,j_2,j_3)}(\xi,\eta) = \frac{j_1(\xi - \eta) + j_2|\eta| - j_3(\xi)}{2j_1j_2(\xi - \eta)|\eta|} \eta,
\]

we can write

\[
B_{(j_1,j_2,j_3)}(\xi,\eta) = B_{(j_1,j_2,j_3)}^0(\xi,\eta) \frac{\eta}{|\eta|} + B_{(j_1,j_2,j_3)}^1(\xi,\eta) \eta^4,
\]

where for any smooth cut-off function \(\phi\), equal to 1 in a neighbourhood of the origin,

\[
B_{(j_1,j_2,j_3)}^0(\xi,\eta) := \frac{j_1(\xi - \eta) + j_2|\eta| - j_3(\xi)}{2j_1j_2(\xi - \eta)} \phi(\eta),
\]

\[
B_{(j_1,j_2,j_3)}^1(\xi,\eta) := \frac{j_1(\xi - \eta) + j_2|\eta| - j_3(\xi)}{2j_1j_2(\xi - \eta)|\eta|} \eta(\eta - 4(1 - \phi)(\eta)).
\]

According to decomposition (2.2.59) we have that, for any \(i = 1,2,3\),

\[
\int \psi_i\left(\frac{\xi - \eta}{(\eta)}\right) B_{(j_1,j_2,j_3)}^k(\xi,\eta) \left(1 - j_4j_5 \frac{\xi - \eta - \zeta}{(\xi - \eta - \zeta)} \cdot \frac{\zeta}{|\zeta|}\right) \zeta \hat{u}_1(\xi - \eta - \zeta) \hat{u}_2(\zeta) \hat{u}_3(\eta) \hat{u}_4(\xi - \zeta) d\xi d\eta d\zeta = \int \psi_i\left(\frac{\xi - \eta}{(\eta)}\right) B_{(j_1,j_2,j_3)}^0(\xi,\eta) \left(1 - j_4j_5 \frac{\xi - \eta - \zeta}{(\xi - \eta - \zeta)} \cdot \frac{\zeta}{|\zeta|}\right) \zeta \hat{u}_1(\xi - \eta - \zeta) \hat{u}_2(\zeta) \hat{u}_3(\eta) \hat{u}_4(\xi - \zeta) d\xi d\eta d\zeta
\]

\[
+ \int \psi_i\left(\frac{\xi - \eta}{(\eta)}\right) B_{(j_1,j_2,j_3)}^1(\xi,\eta) \left(1 - j_4j_5 \frac{\xi - \eta - \zeta}{(\xi - \eta - \zeta)} \cdot \frac{\zeta}{|\zeta|}\right) \zeta \hat{u}_1(\xi - \eta - \zeta) \hat{u}_2(\zeta) (\partial_{\xi} + \partial_{\eta})^2 \hat{u}_4(\xi - \zeta) d\xi d\eta d\zeta
\]

\[
=: I_0^i + I_1^i.
\]
(i) The first thing we observe concerning integral $I_i^k$ for $k = 0, 1$, $i = 1, 2$, is that $|\xi - \eta|, |\xi| \lesssim \langle \eta \rangle$ on the support of $\psi_i \left( \frac{\xi}{\langle \eta \rangle} \right)$ and that $|\zeta| \leq |\xi - \eta - \zeta| \langle \eta \rangle$. Therefore, introducing the following multipliers

$$B_{(j_1,\ldots,j_5)}^{i,k}(\xi,\eta,\zeta) := \psi_i \left( \frac{\xi - \eta}{\langle \eta \rangle} \right) B_{(j_1,\ldots,j_5)}^{k}(\xi,\eta) \left( 1 - j_4 j_5 \frac{\xi - \eta - \zeta}{\langle \xi - \eta - \zeta \rangle} \right) \frac{\zeta}{|\zeta|} \zeta_1 \langle \eta \rangle^{-7} (\xi - \eta - \zeta)^{-4},$$

for any $j_1,\ldots,j_5 \in \{+,-\}$, $k = 0, 1$, $i = 1, 2$, a straight computation shows that, for any $\alpha,\beta,\gamma \in \mathbb{N}^2$,

$$\left| \partial_\xi^\alpha \partial_\eta^\beta B_{(j_1,\ldots,j_5)}^{i,k}(\xi,\eta,\zeta) \right| \lesssim \langle \zeta \rangle^{-3} |\alpha,\beta| (\xi,\eta),$$

(2.2.62)

$$\left| \partial_\xi^\alpha \partial_\eta^\beta \partial_\zeta^\gamma B_{(j_1,\ldots,j_5)}^{i,k}(\xi,\eta,\zeta) \right| \lesssim (|\zeta| \langle \zeta \rangle^{-1})^{1-|\gamma|} \langle \zeta \rangle^{-3} |\alpha,\beta| (\xi,\eta), |\gamma| \geq 1,$$

with

$$|g_{\alpha,0}(\xi,\eta)| \lesssim \alpha \langle \eta \rangle^{-3} \langle \zeta \rangle^{-3},$$

(2.2.63)

$$|g_{\alpha,\beta}(\xi,\eta)| \lesssim |\alpha,\beta| (|\eta| \langle \eta \rangle^{-1})^{1-|\beta|} \langle \eta \rangle^{-3} \langle \zeta \rangle^{-3}, \quad |\beta| \geq 1.$$ If

$$K_{(j_1,\ldots,j_5)}^{i,k}(x,y,z) := \int e^{ix\cdot \xi + iy\cdot \eta + iz\cdot \zeta} B_{(j_1,\ldots,j_5)}^{i,k}(\xi,\eta,\zeta) d\xi d\eta d\zeta,$$

by lemma A.1 (i) we first find that, for any $\alpha, \beta \in \mathbb{N}^2$,

$$\left| \partial_\xi^\alpha \partial_\eta^\beta \int e^{iz\cdot \zeta} B_{(j_1,\ldots,j_5)}^{i,k}(\xi,\eta,\zeta) d\zeta \right| \lesssim |z|^{-1} \langle z \rangle^{-2} |\alpha,\beta| (\xi,\eta)$$

and successively that

$$\left| \partial_\xi^\alpha \int e^{iy\cdot \eta + iz\cdot \zeta} B_{(j_1,\ldots,j_5)}^{i,k}(\xi,\eta,\zeta) d\eta d\zeta \right| \lesssim |y|^{-1} \langle y \rangle^{-2} |z|^{-1} \langle z \rangle^{-2} \langle \xi \rangle^{-3},$$

for every $\xi \in \mathbb{R}^2$, $(y,z) \in \mathbb{R}^2 \times \mathbb{R}^2$. Corollary A.2 (i) hence implies that

$$|K_{(j_1,\ldots,j_5)}^{i,k}(x,y,z)| \lesssim \langle x \rangle^{-3} \langle y \rangle^{-1} \langle z \rangle^{-2} |x|^{-1} \langle z \rangle^{-2}, \quad \forall (x,y,z) \in (\mathbb{R}^2)^3.$$ As for $i = 1, 2$

$$I_i^0 = \int B_{(j_1,\ldots,j_5)}^{i,0}(\xi,\eta,\zeta) \langle D_x \rangle^4 u_4(\xi - \eta - \zeta) \hat{u}_2(\zeta) \langle D_x \rangle^7 R u_3(\eta) \hat{u}_4(-\xi) d\xi d\eta d\zeta,$$

$$= \int K_{(j_1,\ldots,j_5)}^{i,0}(t-x,x-z,y) \langle D_x \rangle^4 u_1(x) u_2(y) \langle D_x \rangle^7 R u_3(z) u_4(t) dx dy dz dt,$$

$$I_i^1 = \int B_{(j_1,\ldots,j_5)}^{i,1}(\xi,\eta,\zeta) \langle D_x \rangle^4 u_1(\xi - \eta - \zeta) \hat{u}_2(\zeta) \langle D_x \rangle^{11} u_3(\eta) \hat{u}_4(-\xi) d\xi d\eta d\zeta,$$

$$= \int K_{(j_1,\ldots,j_5)}^{i,1}(t-x,x-z,y) \langle D_x \rangle^4 u_1(x) u_2(y) \langle D_x \rangle^{11} u_3(z) u_4(t) dx dy dz dt,$$

inequality (2.2.57) follows by the fact that, for any $\tilde{u}_1,\ldots,\tilde{u}_4 \in L^2 \cap L^\infty$, any $f,g,h \in L^1$, integrals such as

$$\int f(t-x)g(x-z)h(x-y)\tilde{u}_1(x)\langle \tilde{u}_2(y) \rangle \langle \tilde{u}_3(z) \rangle \langle \tilde{u}_4(t) \rangle dx dy dz dt$$

(2.2.64)

can be bounded from above by the product of the $L^2$ norm of any two functions $\tilde{u}_k$ times the $L^\infty$ norm of the remaining ones.
(ii) For a cut-off function $\phi$ as the one introduced at the beginning of the proof we decompose integral $I_{3}^{k}$, $k = 0, 1$, distinguishing between $|\zeta| \lesssim 1$ and $|\zeta| \gtrsim 1$. On the one hand, for any $j_{1}, \ldots, j_{5}, k = 0, 1$, we consider

$$B_{3,\ldots,j_{5}}^{3,k}(\xi, \eta, \zeta) := \psi_{3}(\frac{\xi - \eta}{\langle \eta \rangle}) \phi(\zeta)B_{(j_{1}, j_{2}, j_{3})}^{k}(\xi, \eta) \left(1 - j_{4}j_{5}\frac{\xi - \eta - \zeta}{(\xi - \eta - \zeta)} \cdot \frac{\zeta}{|\zeta|}\right) \zeta_{1}(\xi - \eta - \zeta)^{-3}$$

and observe that, since $|\xi| \leq (\xi - \eta - \zeta)$ on the support of $\psi_{3}(\frac{\xi - \eta}{\langle \eta \rangle}) \phi(\zeta)$, the above multiplier satisfies estimates (2.2.62), (2.2.63). From the same argument as before this implies that

$$2.2.65 \quad J_{3}^{0} := \left|\int B_{3,\ldots,j_{5}}^{3,0}(\xi, \eta, \zeta)(D_{x})^{-3}u_{1}(\xi - \eta - \zeta)\hat{u}_{2}(\zeta)\overline{R_{3}(\eta)}\hat{u}_{4}(\xi - \eta)d\xi d\eta d\zeta\right| \lesssim \|u_{1}\|_{H^{3,\infty}}\|u_{2}\|_{L^{2}}\|R_{3}\|_{L^{\infty}}\|u_{4}\|_{L^{2}}$$

together with

$$2.2.66 \quad J_{3}^{1} := \left|\int B_{3,\ldots,j_{5}}^{3,1}(\xi, \eta, \zeta)(D_{x})^{-3}u_{1}(\xi - \eta - \zeta)\hat{u}_{2}(\zeta)\overline{D_{x}^{4}R_{3}(\eta)}\hat{u}_{4}(\xi - \eta)d\xi d\eta d\zeta\right| \lesssim \|u_{1}\|_{H^{3,\infty}}\|u_{2}\|_{L^{2}}\|R_{3}\|_{H^{4,\infty}}\|u_{4}\|_{L^{2}}.$$
for $i = 1, 3$. Finally, on the support of $\psi_3(\frac{\xi - \eta}{\langle \eta \rangle})(1 - \phi)(\xi)\psi_2(\frac{\xi - \eta}{\xi - \eta})$ we have that $|\xi| \sim |\xi - \eta| \sim |\zeta|$ and $|\xi - \eta - \zeta| \lesssim |\xi|$. Replacing $\zeta$ with $\xi - \zeta$ by a change of coordinates we find that, for any $\alpha, \beta, \gamma \in \mathbb{N}^2$,

$$
(2.2.70) \quad \left| \xi^\alpha \eta^\beta \zeta^\gamma \tilde{B}^{3,2,k}_{j_1,\ldots,j_3}(\xi, \eta, \Xi - \zeta) \right| \lesssim_{\alpha, \gamma} (\langle \eta \rangle^{-3} (\xi)^{-|\alpha|},
\left| \eta^\beta \zeta^\gamma \tilde{B}^{3,2,k}_{j_1,\ldots,j_3}(\xi, \eta, \Xi - \zeta) \right| \lesssim (\langle \eta \rangle^{-1} |\langle \gamma \rangle|^{-1} (\xi)^{-|\beta|}, |\beta| \geq 1.
$$

If we introduce a Littlewood-Paley decomposition such that

$$
\tilde{B}^{3,2,k}_{j_1,\ldots,j_3}(\xi, \eta, \Xi - \zeta) = \sum_{l \geq 1} \tilde{B}^{3,2,k}_{j_1,\ldots,j_3}(\xi, \eta, \Xi - \zeta) (2^{-l} \xi),
$$

one can check, using lemma $[\alpha, \beta, \gamma]$ $(i)$ to obtain the decay in $y$, making a change of coordinates $\xi \mapsto 2^l \xi$, some integration by parts, and using inequalities (2.2.70), that

$$
K^{k,l}_{j_1,\ldots,j_3}(x, y, z) := \int e^{ix\xi + iy\eta + iz\zeta} \tilde{B}^{3,2,k}_{j_1,\ldots,j_3}(\xi, \eta, \Xi - \zeta) (2^{-l} \xi) d\xi d\eta d\zeta
$$

is such that

$$
(2.2.71) \quad |K^{k,l}_{j_1,\ldots,j_3}(x, y, z)| \lesssim 2^{2l} (2^l x)^{-3} |y|^{-1} |y|^{-2} |z|^{-3}, \quad \forall (x, y, z) \in (\mathbb{R}^3).
$$

Moreover, since $|\xi| \sim |\xi - \zeta|$ on the support of $\tilde{B}^{3,2,k}_{j_1,\ldots,j_3}(\xi, \eta, \zeta)$ there are two other suitably supported cut-off functions $\varphi_1, \varphi_2$ such that $\varphi(2^{-l} \xi) = \varphi(2^{-l} \xi) \varphi_1(2^{-l} \xi) \varphi_2(2^{-l} (\xi - \zeta))$, for any $l \geq 1$. If $\Delta^l_3 w := \varphi_j (2^{-l} D_x) w$, we finally obtain that

$$
J^{2,0}_3 := \int \tilde{B}^{3,2,0}_{j_1,\ldots,j_3}(\xi, \eta, \zeta) u_1(\xi - \eta - \zeta) (D_x u_2)(\zeta) \tilde{R}_3(\eta) u_4(-\xi) d\xi d\eta d\zeta
= \int \tilde{B}^{3,2,0}_{j_1,\ldots,j_3}(\xi, \eta, \zeta) u_1(\zeta - \eta) (D_x u_2)(\zeta) \tilde{R}_3(\eta) u_4(-\xi) d\xi d\eta d\zeta
= \sum_{l \geq 1} \int K^{0,l}_{j_1,\ldots,j_3}(t - y, x - z, y - x) u_1(x) \Delta^l_1(D_x u_2)(y) [\tilde{R}_3(z)] \Delta^l_2 u_4(t) dx dy dz dt,
$$

and by (2.2.71) together with Cauchy-Schwarz inequality we derive that

$$
(2.2.72) \quad |J^{2,0}_3| \lesssim ||u_1||_{L^\infty} ||u_1 u_3||_{L^\infty} \sum_{l \geq 1} ||\Delta^l_1(D_x u_2)||_{L^2} ||\Delta^l_2 u_4||_{L^2} \lesssim ||u_1||_{L^\infty} ||u_2||_{H^1} ||R_1 u_3||_{L^\infty} ||u_4||_{L^2}.
$$

In a similar way we obtain that

$$
J^{2,1}_3 := \int \tilde{B}^{3,2,1}_{j_1,\ldots,j_3}(\xi, \eta, \zeta)(\xi - \zeta) u_1(\xi - \zeta) (D_x u_2)(\xi - \zeta) \tilde{R}_3(\eta) u_4(-\xi) d\xi d\eta d\zeta
$$

satisfies

$$
(2.2.73) \quad |J^{2,1}_3| \lesssim ||u_1||_{L^\infty} ||u_2||_{H^1} ||u_3||_{H^{4,\infty}} ||u_4||_{L^2}.
$$

The result of statement $(ii)$ follows then from inequalities (2.2.65), (2.2.66), (2.2.68), (2.2.69), (2.2.72), (2.2.73), after having recognized that

$$
\int \psi_3(\frac{\xi - \eta}{\langle \eta \rangle}) B_{j_1, j_2, j_3}(\xi, \eta) \left(1 - j_3 j_5 \xi - \zeta\frac{\xi - \eta - \zeta}{\xi - \eta - \zeta} \cdot \frac{\zeta}{|\zeta|} \right) \xi_1 u_1(\xi - \zeta) u_2(\zeta) \tilde{u}_3(\eta) u_4(-\xi) d\xi d\eta d\zeta
= \sum_{k=0}^1 J^{k,1}_3 + \sum_{k=0}^3 \sum_{i=1}^3 \tilde{J}^{k,i}_3.
$$
In conclusion, the same proof of above applies to multiplier $B^3_{(j_1,j_2,j_3)}$ introduced in (2.2.53), which can be decomposed as

$$j_2 B^0_{(j_1,j_2,j_3)}(\xi, \eta) + \tilde{B}^1_{(j_1,j_2,j_3)}(\xi, \eta) \eta^4$$

with the same $B^0_{(j_1,j_2,j_3)}$ as in (2.2.60) and

$$\tilde{B}^1_{(j_1,j_2,j_3)}(\xi, \eta) := \frac{j_1 (\xi - \eta) + j_2 |\eta| - j_3 (\xi)}{2j_1 (\xi - \eta)} (\eta^{-1} - 1)(\phi)(\eta).$$

The lack of factor $\eta_1 |\eta|^{-1}$ against $B^0_{(j_1,j_2,j_3)}$, in comparison to decomposition (2.2.59), is the reason why inequality (2.2.57) (resp. (2.2.58)) holds with $\|u_3\|_{H^{11,\infty}} + \|R u_3\|_{H^{7,\infty}}$ (resp. $\|u_3\|_{H^{1,\infty}} + \|R u_3\|_{L^\infty}$) replaced with $\|u_3\|_{H^{11,\infty}}$ (resp. with $\|u_3\|_{H^{1,\infty}}$).

**Lemma 2.2.8.** Under the same assumptions as in lemma 2.2.7 we have that:

(i) for any $j_1, \ldots, j_5 \in \{+,-\}$, $i = 1, 2$, and any $u_1, u_2, u_3, u_4$ such that $u_1 \in H^{4,\infty}(\mathbb{R}^2)$, $u_2, u_4 \in L^2(\mathbb{R}^2)$, $u_3 \in H^{11,\infty}(\mathbb{R}^2)$ and $\delta_k R_k u_3 \in H^{7,\infty}(\mathbb{R}^2)$,

\[
(2.2.74) \quad \left| \int \psi_1 \left( \frac{\xi - \eta}{\eta} \right) B^k_{(j_1,j_2,j_3)}(\xi, \eta) \right| \left( 1 + j_4 j_5 \frac{\xi + \zeta}{\xi + \zeta} \right) \frac{\zeta}{|\zeta|} \frac{\tilde{u}_1(\xi - \zeta) \tilde{u}_2(\zeta) \tilde{u}_3(\eta) \tilde{u}_4(\xi - \eta)}{\tilde{C}_4(\xi - \zeta)} d\xi d\eta d\zeta \leq \|u_1\|_{H^{4,\infty}} \|u_2\|_{L^2} \left( \|u_3\|_{H^{11,\infty}} + \delta_k \|R_k u_3\|_{H^{7,\infty}} \right) \|u_4\|_{L^2};
\]

(ii) for any $j_1, \ldots, j_5 \in \{+,-\}$, and any $u_1, u_2, u_3, u_4$ such that $u_1 \in H^{7,\infty}(\mathbb{R}^2)$, $u_2 \in L^2(\mathbb{R}^2)$, $u_3 \in H^{4,\infty}(\mathbb{R}^2)$ and $\delta_k R_k u_3 \in L^\infty(\mathbb{R}^2)$,

\[
(2.2.75) \quad \left| \int \psi_3 \left( \frac{\xi - \eta}{\eta} \right) B^k_{(j_1,j_2,j_3)}(\xi, \eta) \right| \left( 1 + j_4 j_5 \frac{\xi + \zeta}{\xi + \zeta} \right) \frac{\zeta}{|\zeta|} \frac{\tilde{u}_1(\xi - \zeta) \tilde{u}_2(\zeta) \tilde{u}_3(\eta) \tilde{u}_4(\xi - \eta)}{\tilde{C}_4(\xi - \zeta)} d\xi d\eta d\zeta \leq \|u_1\|_{H^{7,\infty}} \|u_2\|_{L^2} \left( \|u_3\|_{H^{4,\infty}} + \delta_k \|R_k u_3\|_{L^\infty} \right) \|u_4\|_{H^1}.
\]

**Proof.** The proof of the statement is analogous to that of lemma 2.2.7 after a change of coordinates $-\xi \mapsto \xi - \eta$. In (2.2.73) we take the $H^1$ norm on $u_4$ instead of $u_2$, as done in (2.2.58), by replacing multiplier $\tilde{B}^3_{(j_1,j_2,j_3)}$ in (2.2.67) with

$$\psi_3 \left( \frac{\xi - \eta}{\eta} \right) (1 - \phi)(\zeta) \psi_2 \left( \frac{\xi}{\xi - \eta} \right) B^k_{(j_1,j_2,j_3)}(\xi, \eta) \left( 1 - j_4 j_5 \frac{\xi - \eta - \zeta}{\xi - \eta - \zeta} \frac{\zeta}{|\zeta|} \right) \tilde{C}_4(\xi - \zeta) \zeta^4.$$
Proof. Using definitions (2.2.36), (2.2.44a), (2.2.42) with \( k = 1 \), and system (2.2.56), we find that

\[
-4(2\pi)^2 \left[ \partial_t D_1^{(j_1,j_2,j_3)} + C_{(j_1,j_2,j_3)} \right] = \int \chi \left( \frac{x - \eta}{(\eta)} \right) B_{(j_1,j_2,j_3)}(\xi, \eta) \left[ \sum_{(j_1,j_2) \in \mathbb{I}(I)} c_{j_1,j_2} Q_0^{k_0}(v_{\pm}, D_1 U_{\pm}^j) \right] (\xi - \eta) \tilde{u}_{j_3}(\eta) \tilde{v}_{j_3}^j(-\xi) d\xi d\eta
\]

\[
+ \int \chi \left( \frac{x - \eta}{(\eta)} \right) B_{(j_1,j_2,j_3)}(\xi, \eta) \tilde{u}_{j_1}^i (\xi - \eta) Q_0^{k_0}(v_{\pm}, D_1 v_{\pm})(\eta) \tilde{v}_{j_3}^j(-\xi) d\xi d\eta
\]

\[
+ \int \chi \left( \frac{x - \eta}{(\eta)} \right) B_{(j_1,j_2,j_3)}(\xi, \eta) \tilde{u}_{j_1}^i (\xi - \eta) \tilde{u}_{j_2}(\eta) \left[ \sum_{(j_1,j_2) \in \mathbb{I}(I)} c_{j_1,j_2} Q_0^{k_0}(v_{\pm}, D_1 U_{\pm}^j) \right] (-\xi) d\xi d\eta
\]

\[= \text{S}_1 + \text{S}_2 + \text{S}_3, \]

where coefficients \( c_{i_1,i_2} \in \{-1,0,1\} \) are such that \( c_{i_1,i_2} = 1 \) when \( |I_1| + |I_2| = |I| \) (in which case \( D = D_I \) and \( \chi \in C_0^\infty(\mathbb{R}^2) \) is equal to 1 close to the origin and has a sufficiently small support. All integrals in the above right hand side are quartic terms for they involve the quadratic nonlinearities of (2.2.36).

The fact that \( \text{S}_2 \) is a remainder \( \mathcal{Q}_{\text{quart}}^I \) satisfying (2.2.77) follows by inequalities (A.17), (B.1.3d) with \( s = 7 \), and the fact that

\[
(2.2.79) \quad \| R_1 Q_0^{k_0}(v_{\pm}, D_1 v_{\pm}) \|_{H^7,\infty} \lesssim \| V(t, \cdot) \|_{H^{10,\infty}}^{2-(2-\theta)\theta} \| V(t, \cdot) \|_{H^{12,\infty}}^{2-\theta},
\]

for any \( \theta \in [0,1] \). The above inequality is justified by the fact that, for any function \( w \in W^{1,\infty} \cap H^1, \rho \in \mathbb{N} \) and any \( \theta \in [0,1] \), setting \( p = \frac{2}{\theta} \in [2,\infty] \),

\[
(2.2.80) \quad \| \langle D_x \rangle^{\rho} R_1 w \|_{L^\infty} \lesssim \| \langle D_x \rangle^{\rho} R_1 w \|_{W^{1,p}} \lesssim \| \langle D_x \rangle^{\rho} w \|_{W^{1,\rho}} \lesssim \| \langle D_x \rangle^{\rho} w \|_{H^{1,\rho}}^{1-\theta} \| V(t, \cdot) \|_{H^{12,\rho}}^{\theta},
\]

as a consequence of Morrey’s inequality, continuity of \( R_1 : L^p \to L^P \) for \( p < +\infty \), interpolation inequality, and the injection of \( W^{1,\rho} \) into \( H^{2,\rho} \). This implies that

\[
(2.2.81) \quad \| R_1 Q_0^{k_0}(v_{\pm}, D_1 v_{\pm}) \|_{H^{p,\infty}} \lesssim \| Q_0^{k_0}(v_{\pm}, D_1 v_{\pm}) \|_{H^{p,\infty}}^{1-\theta} \| Q_0^{k_0}(v_{\pm}, D_1 v_{\pm}) \|_{H^{p+1,\infty}}^{\theta},
\]

for any \( \rho \in \mathbb{N} \) and gives (2.2.79) when \( \rho = 7 \) after inequalities (B.1.3e) with \( s = 8 \), (B.1.3d) with \( s = 9 \). Therefore, for any \( \theta \in [0,1] \),

\[
|S_2| \lesssim \left( \| V(t, \cdot) \|_{H^{8,\infty}}^{2-\theta} \| V(t, \cdot) \|_{H^{10}} + \| V(t, \cdot) \|_{H^{10,\infty}}^{2-(2-\theta)\theta} \| V(t, \cdot) \|_{H^{12,\rho}}^{2-\theta} \| V(t, \cdot) \|_{H^{12,\rho}} \right) \| V(t, \cdot) \|_{L^2}^{2},
\]

so choosing \( \theta \ll 1 \) small (e.g. \( \theta \ll 1/8 \)) and keeping in mind estimates (1.1.11b), (1.1.11c) we deduce that \( S_2 \) is controlled by the first term in the right hand side of (2.2.77).

Inequality (A.17) allows also to estimate all integrals in summations \( S_1, S_3 \) corresponding to indices \( (I_1, I_2) \in \mathbb{I}(I) \) with \( |I_2| < |I| \), and to bound them with the latter term in the right hand side of (2.2.77). This is not the case for integrals with \( I_2 = I \) involving quasi-linear term \( Q_0^{k_0}(v_{\pm}, D_1 u_{\pm}^j) \), because a straight application of that inequality would give a bound at the wrong energy level \( n + 1 \), as \( \| Q_0^{k_0}(v_{\pm}, D_1 U_{\pm}^j) \|_{L^2} \lesssim \| V(t, \cdot) \|_{H^{1,\infty}} \| D_1 U^j(t, \cdot) \|_{L^2} \). Instead, since

\[
(2.2.82) \quad \frac{Q_0^{k_0}(v_{\pm}, D_1 u_{\pm}^j)}{\xi} = \frac{i}{4} \sum_{j_4,j_5 \in \{+,,-\}} \int \left( 1 - j_4 j_5 \frac{\xi - \zeta}{(\xi - \zeta)} \cdot \frac{\zeta}{|\zeta|} \right) \zeta j_4 j_5 \frac{\xi - \zeta}{(\xi - \zeta)} \tilde{\eta}_j^j(\zeta - \zeta) \tilde{v}_{j_3}^j(\zeta) d\zeta,
\]

85
we can rather write those integrals as the sum over \(j_k \in \{+, -, \}, k = 1, \ldots, 4\), of the following:

\[
\begin{align*}
(2.2.83a) & \quad \int \left( \frac{\xi - \eta}{(\eta)} \right) B_{(j_1, j_2, j_3)}^1(\xi, \eta) \left( 1 - j_4 j_5 \frac{\xi - \eta - \xi}{(\xi - \eta - \xi)} \right) \sum_{j_1} \hat{u}_{j_1}(\xi - \eta - \xi) \hat{u}_{j_2}(\eta) \hat{u}_{j_3}(-\xi) d\xi d\eta d\zeta, \\
(2.2.83b) & \quad \int \left( \frac{\xi - \eta}{(\eta)} \right) B_{(j_1, j_2, j_3)}^2(\xi, \eta) \left( 1 + j_4 j_5 \frac{\xi + \xi}{\xi + \xi} \right) \sum_{j_1} \hat{u}_{j_1}(\xi - \eta) \hat{u}_{j_2}(\eta) \hat{u}_{j_3}(-\xi - \zeta) d\xi d\eta d\zeta,
\end{align*}
\]

and estimate them by using inequalities (2.2.57) and (2.2.74) respectively. We hence obtain that

\[
(2.2.83a) \lesssim \langle 2N + \pi \rangle_{I,T} \sum_{(I, J) \in \mathcal{E}(I)} \left| Q_0^{k_8} \left( v_{j_1}^{I_1}, Dv_{j_2}^{I_2} \right) \right|_{L^2} \left( \left| U(t, \cdot) \right|_{H^{1/2}, \infty} + \left| R_1 U(t, \cdot) \right|_{H^{1, \infty}} \right) \left| V(t, \cdot) \right|_{L^2},
\]

and, since the same argument applies to \(\partial_t D_{(j_1, j_2, j_3)}^{I,R}\), this also concludes the proof of the statement.

\(\square\)

Lemma 2.2.10 (Analysis of quartic terms. II). For any general multi-index \(I\), any \(j_k \in \{+, -\}, k = 1, 2, 3\), let \(D_{(j_1, j_2, j_3)}^{I, T-N}\) be defined as in (2.2.70). Then

\[
(2.2.84) \quad \partial_t D_{(j_1, j_2, j_3)}^{I, T-N} = \mathfrak{S} \left[ \langle T-N(U)W^I, W^I \rangle \right] + \mathfrak{D}_{quart}^{I,N}
\]

and if \(N \geq 18\), \(\mathfrak{D}_{quart}^{I,N}\) satisfies

\[
(2.2.85) \quad \left| \mathfrak{D}_{quart}^{I,N} \right| \lesssim \left\| V(t, \cdot) \right\|_{H^{4, \infty}}^2 \left\| V(t, \cdot) \right\|_{H^{11/2, \infty}} \left\| V^I(t, \cdot) \right\|_{L^2}^2 + \sum_{|I_1| < |I|} \left\| Q_0^{k_8} \left( v_{j_1}^{I_1}, Dv_{j_2}^{I_2} \right) \right\|_{L^2} \left\| U(t, \cdot) \right\|_{H^{N+3, \infty}} \left\| V^I(t, \cdot) \right\|_{L^2}.
\]

Proof. For any triplet \((j_1, j_2, j_3)\), we compute the time derivative of \(D^{I, T-N}\) by making use of system (2.2.50). Recalling (2.2.39) and (2.2.43), we find that

\[
(2.2.86) \quad \partial_t \left[ \sum_{j_k \in \{+,-\}} D_{(j_1, j_2, j_3)}^{I, T-N} \right] - \mathfrak{S} \left[ \langle T-N(U)W^I, W^I \rangle \right] =
\]

\[
= \mathfrak{R} \left[ \frac{1}{(2\pi)^2} \int \hat{\sigma}_{(j_1, j_2, j_3)}^N(\xi, \eta) \sum_{(I_1, I_2) \in \mathcal{E}(I)} c_{I_1, I_2} Q_0^{k_8} \left( v_{j_1}^{I_1}, Dv_{j_2}^{I_2} \right) \cdot \hat{u}_{j_2}(\eta) \hat{u}_{j_3}(-\xi) d\xi d\eta \right] + \frac{1}{(2\pi)^2} \int \hat{\sigma}_{(j_1, j_2, j_3)}^N(\xi, \eta) \hat{u}_{j_1}(\xi - \eta) Q_0^{k_8} \left( v_{j_1}^{I_1}, Dv_{j_2}^{I_2}(\eta) \right) \hat{u}_{j_3}(-\xi) d\xi d\eta
\]

\[
+ \frac{1}{(2\pi)^2} \int \hat{\sigma}_{(j_1, j_2, j_3)}^N(\xi, \eta) \hat{u}_{j_1}(\xi - \eta) \hat{u}_{j_2}(\eta) \sum_{(I_1, I_2) \in \mathcal{E}(I)} c_{I_1, I_2} Q_0^{k_8} \left( v_{j_1}^{I_1}, Dv_{j_2}^{I_2}(\eta) \right) d\xi d\eta
\]

\[
= \mathfrak{S}_{1}^{T-N} + \mathfrak{S}_{2}^{T-N} + \mathfrak{S}_{3}^{T-N},
\]

with coefficients \(c_{I_1, I_2} \in \{-1, 0, 1\}\) such that \(c_{I_1, I_2} = 1\) whenever \(|I_1| + |I_2| = |I|\) (in which case \(D = D_1\)). After lemma A.6 and inequality (B.1.3d) with \(s = N + 3\) we deduce that, if \(N \geq 15\), for any \(\theta \in [0, 1]\)

\[
\left\| \mathfrak{S}_{2}^{T-N} \right\| \lesssim \left\| V(t, \cdot) \right\|_{H^{4, \infty}}^{2-\theta} \left\| V(t, \cdot) \right\|_{H^{11/2, \infty}}^\theta \left\| V^I(t, \cdot) \right\|_{L^2}.
\]
Choosing $\theta \ll 1$ small (e.g. $\theta \leq 1/8$) we then obtain that $S_{T-N}^{T-N}$ is a remainder $D_{\text{quart}}^{I,N}$ satisfying (2.2.83). Also, the same lemma implies that each contribution in $S_{T-N}^{T-N}$, $S_{3}^{T-N}$ corresponding to $(I, I_2) \in \mathcal{I}(I)$ with $|I_2| < |I|$ is bounded by
\[
\left\| Q_{*}^{k*}(v_{j}^{1}, Du_{j}^{2}) \right\| \cdot \left\| U(t, \cdot) \right\|_{L^{2}} \cdot \left\| V^{I}(t, \cdot) \right\|_{L^{2}}.
\]

Reminding instead (2.2.82), we find that the remaining contribution to $S_{T-N}^{T-N}$, corresponding to $I_2 = I$, is equal to the sum over $j_1, \ldots, j_5 \in \{+,-\}$ of the (imaginary part) of the following integrals:
\[
(2.2.87) \quad \int \tilde{\sigma}_{(j_1,j_2,j_3)}^{N}(\xi, \eta) \left(1 - j_4 j_5 \frac{\xi - \eta - \zeta}{(\xi - \eta - \zeta)} \cdot \frac{\zeta}{|\zeta|} \right) \zeta_1 \tilde{v}_{j_4}(\xi - \eta - \zeta) \tilde{u}_{j_5}^{I}(\zeta) \tilde{v}_{j_3}(\zeta) \tilde{u}_{j_3}(\zeta) d\xi d\eta d\zeta.
\]

Analogously, the contribution corresponding to $I_2 = I$ in $S_{3}^{T-N}$ is the sum over $j_k \in \{+,-\}, k = 1, \ldots, 5$ of
\[
(2.2.88) \quad \int \tilde{\sigma}_{(j_1,j_2,j_3)}^{N}(\xi, \eta) \left(1 + j_4 j_5 \frac{\xi + \zeta}{(\xi + \zeta)} \cdot \frac{\zeta}{|\zeta|} \right) \zeta_1 \tilde{v}_{j_1}^{I}(\xi - \eta - \zeta) \tilde{u}_{j_5}(\zeta) \tilde{v}_{j_4}(\zeta) \tilde{u}_{j_3}(\zeta) d\xi d\eta d\zeta.
\]

Since $\tilde{\sigma}_{(j_1,j_2,j_3)}^{N}(\xi, \eta)$ satisfies (A.23) and is supported for $|\eta| \leq \epsilon|\xi - \eta|$, for a small $0 < \epsilon \ll 1$, we rewrite above integrals, respectively, as
\[
(2.2.89) \quad \int \tilde{\sigma}_{(j_1,j_2,j_3)}^{N}(\xi, \eta) \langle \eta \rangle^{-N-3} \left(1 - j_4 j_5 \frac{\xi - \eta - \zeta}{(\xi - \eta - \zeta)} \cdot \frac{\zeta}{|\zeta|} \right) \zeta_1 \langle \xi - \eta - \zeta \rangle^{-4} \times \langle D_{x} \rangle^{3} \tilde{v}_{j_4}(\xi - \eta - \zeta) \tilde{u}_{j_5}^{I}(\zeta) \tilde{v}_{j_3}(\zeta) \tilde{u}_{j_3}(\zeta) d\xi d\eta d\zeta,
\]
and
\[
(2.2.90) \quad \int \tilde{\sigma}_{(j_1,j_2,j_3)}^{N}(\xi, \eta) \langle \eta \rangle^{-N-7} \left(1 + j_4 j_5 \frac{\xi + \zeta}{(\xi + \zeta)} \cdot \frac{\zeta}{|\zeta|} \right) \zeta_1 \langle \xi + \zeta \rangle^{-4} \times \tilde{v}_{j_1}^{I}(\xi - \eta) \langle D_{x} \rangle^{N+7} \tilde{v}_{j_4}(\xi - \eta) \tilde{u}_{j_5}(\zeta) \tilde{u}_{j_3}(\zeta) d\xi d\eta d\zeta.
\]

With such a choice, the new multipliers, that we denote concisely by $\tilde{\sigma}_{(j_1,\ldots,j_5)}^{N,k}(\xi, \eta, \zeta), k = 0, 1$, verify, for any $\alpha, \beta, \gamma \in \mathbb{N}^2$,
\[
\left| \partial_{\xi}^{\alpha} \partial_{\eta}^{\beta} \partial_{\zeta}^{\gamma} \tilde{\sigma}_{(j_1,\ldots,j_5)}^{N,k}(\xi, \eta, \zeta) \right| \lesssim \langle \zeta \rangle^{-3} |g_{\alpha,\beta}^{N}(\xi)|,
\]
\[
\left| \partial_{\xi}^{1+k} \partial_{\eta}^{\beta} \partial_{\zeta}^{\gamma} \tilde{\sigma}_{(j_1,\ldots,j_5)}^{N,k}(\xi, \eta, \zeta) \right| \lesssim \langle \zeta \rangle^{-1} |\xi|^{-1} |\eta|^{-3} |g_{\alpha,\beta}^{N}(\xi)|, \quad |\gamma| \geq 1,
\]
with $g_{\alpha,\beta}^{N}(\xi, \eta)$ supported for $|\eta| \leq \epsilon|\xi - \eta|$ and such that
\[
|g_{\alpha,\beta}^{N}(\xi, \eta)| \lesssim \langle \eta \rangle^{-6-N+|\alpha|+2|\beta|} |\eta|^{-3} |\eta|^{-N-3}, \quad \forall (\xi, \eta) \in \mathbb{R}^2 \times \mathbb{R}^2.
\]

If $N \in \mathbb{N}^*$ is sufficiently large (e.g. $N \geq 18$), the above estimate implies that, for any $\alpha, \beta \in \mathbb{N}^2$ of length less or equal to 3,
\[
|g_{\alpha,\beta}^{N}(\xi, \eta)| \lesssim \langle \eta \rangle^{-3} |\zeta|^{-3},
\]
so by lemma (A.11) (i) together with corollary (A.22) (i) we obtain that, for any $k = 0, 1$,
\[
K_{(j_1,\ldots,j_5)}^{N,k}(x, y, z) := \int e^{ix \cdot \xi + iy \cdot \eta + iz \cdot \zeta} \tilde{\sigma}_{(j_1,\ldots,j_5)}^{N,k}(\xi, \eta, \zeta) d\xi d\eta d\zeta
\]
is such that

\[(2.2.91)\quad |K^{N,k}_{(j_1,...,j_n)}(x, y, z)| \lesssim (x)^{-3}|y|^{-1}(y)^{-1}|z|^{-2}, \quad \forall (x, y, z) \in (\mathbb{R}^3)^3.
\]

By (2.2.88), integrals (2.2.89), (2.2.90) are respectively equal to

\[
\begin{align*}
\int K^{N,0}_{(j_1,...,j_n)}(t - x, x - y, x - y)[(D_x)^4v_{j_1}(x)](D_x)^4v_{j_2}(y)[(D_x)^{N+7}u_{j_3}](z)\partial_y v_{j_3}(t)dx dy dz dt
\end{align*}
\]

and

\[
\int K^{N,1}_{(j_1,...,j_n)}(z, x - y, z - t)v_{j_1}(x)[(D_x)^{N+7}u_{j_2}](y)[(D_x)^4v_{j_3}](z)u_{j_3}(t)dx dy dz dt.
\]

Using (2.2.91) and the fact that integrals such as (2.2.61) can be bounded above by the product of the $L^2$ norm of any two functions $\tilde{u}_k$ times the $L^\infty$ norm of the remaining ones, they are estimated by

\[
\|V(t, \cdot)\|_{H^2, \infty} \|U(t, \cdot)\|_{H^{N+7}, \infty} \|W(t, \cdot)\|_{L^2},
\]

which concludes the proof of the statement.

\[\square\]

**Lemma 2.2.11** (Analysis of quartic terms. III). Let $n \in \mathbb{N}$, $n \geq 3$, $I \in \mathcal{J}$ and $(I_1, I_2) \in \mathcal{J}(I)$ be such that $|I_1| < |I|$. Let also $C_{(j_1,j_2,j_3)}^{I_1,I_2}$, $D_{(j_1,j_2,j_3)}^{I_1,I_2}$ be the integrals defined, respectively, in (2.2.41), (2.2.45), for any $j_k \in \{+, -, \}, k = 1, 2, 3$. Then

\[(2.2.92)\quad \partial_t D_{(j_1,j_2,j_3)}^{I_1,I_2} = -C_{(j_1,j_2,j_3)}^{I_1,I_2} + \mathcal{D}_{\text{quart}}^{I_1,I_2},
\]

where $\mathcal{D}_{\text{quart}}^{I_1,I_2}$ satisfies

\[(2.2.93)\quad |\mathcal{D}_{\text{quart}}^{I_1,I_2}(t)| \lesssim \left[\left(\|W(t, \cdot)\|_{H^2} + \|W(t, \cdot)\|_{H^{N+7}}\right)^2 + \|V(t, \cdot)\|_{H^2} + \|V(t, \cdot)\|_{H^{N+7}}\right] E_n(t; W).
\]

**Proof.** We compute the time derivative of $D_{(j_1,j_2,j_3)}^{I_1,I_2}$ by making use of system (2.2.50). We remind that, after remark 1.1.5 and definition 1.1.15, if $\Gamma^I$ is a product of spatial derivatives then all couples of indices $(I_1, I_2)$ belonging to $\mathcal{J}(I)$ are such that $|I_1| + |I_2| = |I|$ and $\Gamma^{I_1,\Gamma^{I_2}}$ are also products of spatial derivatives. Therefore, all coefficients $c_{I_1,I_2}$ appearing in the right hand side of (2.2.50) are equal to 0. By definitions (2.2.42) with $k = 1$, (2.2.41), (2.2.45), we find that

\[
-4(2\pi)^2 \left[\partial_t D_{(j_1,j_2,j_3)}^{I_1,I_2} + C_{(j_1,j_2,j_3)}^{I_1,I_2}\right] =
\]

\[
\begin{align*}
\int B_{(j_1,j_2,j_3)}^{I_1,I_2}(\xi, \eta) \left[\sum_{(J_1,J_2) \in \mathcal{J}(I_1)} Q_{0}^{k_1}(\nu_{j_1}^{J_1}, D_{1}^{J_1} u_{j_2}^{J_2})(\xi - \eta)\hat{u}_{j_2}^J(\eta)\hat{v}_j^J(\xi)\hat{\eta}^J \right. \\
+ \int B_{(j_1,j_2,j_3)}^{I_1,I_2}(\xi, \eta) \hat{v}_j^{J_1}(\xi - \eta) \left[\sum_{(J_1,J_2) \in \mathcal{J}(I_2)} Q_{0}^{k_2}(\nu_{j_1}^{J_1}, D_{1}^{J_1} v_{j_2}^{J_2})(\eta)\hat{v}_j^J(\xi)\hat{\eta}^J \right. \\
+ \int B_{(j_1,j_2,j_3)}^{I_1,I_2}(\xi, \eta) \hat{v}_j^{J_1}(\xi - \eta)\hat{\nu}_{j_2}^{J_2}(\eta) \left[\sum_{(J_1,J_2) \in \mathcal{J}(I_3)} Q_{0}^{k_3}(\nu_{j_1}^{J_1}, D_{1}^{J_1} \nu_{j_2}^{J_2})(\xi)\hat{\nu}_{j_2}^J(\xi)\hat{\eta}^J \right. \\
= S_{1_1}^{I_1,I_2} + S_{2_1}^{I_1,I_2} + S_{3_1}^{I_1,I_2}.
\end{align*}
\]

88
Since $|J_1| + |J_2| = |I_1| < |I|$ is in $S_{t_1}^{I_1, I_2}$, we can estimate all its contributions using inequality (A.17). Using lemma 2.1.2 (i), the fact that $|J_2| \leq \frac{|I|}{2}$ by the hypothesis and, hence, that
\[
\|u_{t_1}^{l_j}(t, \cdot)\|_{H^{s_1, \infty}} + \|R_1 u_{t_2}^{l_j}(t, \cdot)\|_{H^{s_1, \infty}} \lesssim \|U(t, \cdot)\|_{H^{|l_j|+s_1, \infty}},
\]
we deduce that
\[
|S_{t_1}^{I_1, I_2}| \lesssim \left( \|W(t, \cdot)\|_{H^{|l_j|+2, \infty}} + \|R_1 U(t, \cdot)\|_{H^{|l_j|+2, \infty}} \right) \|U(t, \cdot)\|_{H^{|l_j|+s_1, \infty}} E_n(t; W),
\]
and above estimate holds also for all integrals in $S_{t_2}^{I_1, I_2}$ corresponding to $|J_2| < |I|$. The same inequality (A.17), combined with (2.2.81) applied to $Q_0^w(v_{t_1}^{l_j}, D_1 v_{t_2}^{l_j})$ and with corollary A.3 in appendix A, gives that, for any $\theta \in ]0, 1[$,
\[
|S_{t_2}^{I_1, I_2}| \lesssim \sum_{|J_1|+|J_2|=|I|} \left[ \|Q_0^w(v_{t_1}^{l_j}, D_1 v_{t_2}^{l_j})\|_{H^{s_1, \infty}} + \|Q_0^w(v_{t_1}^{l_j}, D_1 v_{t_2}^{l_j})\|_{H^{s_1, \infty}} \right] \|U(t, \cdot)\|_{H^{|l_j|+s_1, \infty}} E_n(t; W).
\]
Finally, the last remaining integral in $S_{t_2}^{I_1, I_2}$, corresponding to indices $J_1 = 0, J_2 = I,$ can be written using (2.2.52) as
\[
\sum_{j_1, j_2 \in \{+, -\}} \int B_{(j_1, j_2, j_3)}^1 \xi, \eta \left( 1 + j_1 j_3 \frac{\xi + \zeta}{|\xi + \zeta|} \cdot \zeta \right) \xi_1 \p_{j_1} \xi (\xi - \eta) \p_{j_2} \eta (-\xi - \zeta) \p_{j_3} (\zeta) d\xi d\eta d\zeta,
\]
and is estimated, after lemma 2.2.3 and the fact that $|I_1| < |I|$, by
\[
\|V(t, \cdot)\|_{H^{s_1, \infty}} \left( \|U(t, \cdot)\|_{H^{|l_j|+2, \infty}} + \|R_1 U(t, \cdot)\|_{H^{|l_j|+2, \infty}} \right) E_n(t; W).
\]
This gives that
\[
|S_{t_2}^{I_1, I_2}| \lesssim \left( \|W(t, \cdot)\|_{H^{|l_j|+2, \infty}} + \|R_1 U(t, \cdot)\|_{H^{|l_j|+2, \infty}} \right)^2 E_n(t; W)
\]
and concludes the proof of the statement. \hfill $\square$

**Lemma 2.2.12** (Analysis of quartic terms. IV). Let $k = 0, 1$, $\mathcal{K}, \mathcal{V}_k$ be the sets introduced in (2.1.25), (2.1.26), respectively, $I \in \mathcal{V}_k$ and $(I_1, I_2) \in \mathcal{J}(I)$ be such that $I_1 \in \mathcal{K}$, $|I_2| \leq 1$.

Let also $F_{I_1, I_2}^{l_j, l_j, l_j}$, $G_{I_1, I_2}^{l_j, l_j, l_j}$ be the integrals defined in (2.2.52), (2.2.54), for any $l = 1, 2, 3$, $j_i \in \{+, -\}$, $i = 1, 2, 3$. For any $l = 1, 2, 3$, any triplet $(j_1, j_2, j_3)$, we have that
\[
(2.2.95) \quad \partial_t G_{I_1, I_2}^{l_j, l_j, l_j} = -F_{I_1, I_2}^{l_j, l_j, l_j} + \Theta_{quart}^{l_j, l_j, l_j},
\]
and there is a constant $C > 0$ such that, if a-priori estimates (1.1.11) are satisfied in interval $[1, T]$ for a fixed $T > 1$, with $\varepsilon_0 < (2A + B)^{-1}$ small,
\[
(2.2.96) \quad \|\Theta_{quart}^{l_j, l_j, l_j}(t)\| \leq C(A + B)^2 \varepsilon_t^{2} t^{-1+\frac{4}{5}} \left[ E_3^k(t; W)^{\frac{1}{2}} + \delta_0 t^{\frac{1}{2}} + \frac{2}{5} E_3(t; W)^{\frac{1}{2}} + t^{-\frac{1}{2}-\frac{4}{5}} \right],
\]
for every $t \in [1, T]$, with $\delta_0 = 1$ if $I \in \mathcal{K}$, $0$ otherwise, and $\beta > 0$ as small as we want.
Proof. First of all, it is useful to remind that from (2.1.42), (2.1.43) and a-priori estimate (1.1.11), for any \( k = 0, 1, I \in \mathcal{J}^{k}_3, \{I_1, I_2\} \in \mathcal{J}(I)\) such that \( I_1 \in \mathcal{K}, |I_2| \leq 1,\) and \( \sigma > 0 \) sufficiently small (2.2.97)
\[
\left\| V^{I_1}(t, \cdot) \right\|_{L^2} \left( \left\| \chi(t^{-\sigma}D_x)U^{I_2}(t, \cdot) \right\|_{H^p} + \left\| \chi(t^{-\sigma}D_x)RU^{I_2}(t, \cdot) \right\|_{H^p} \right) \leq C(A + B)B \varepsilon^{2} t^{-\frac{1}{2} + \frac{1}{2k}},
\]
for every \( t \in [1, T].\)

For any fixed \( \{j_1, j_2, j_3\}, \) any \( l = 1, 2, 3,\) we compute \( \partial_t G^{I_1, I_2, l}_{(j_1, j_2, j_3)}\) along with its compact form (2.2.66)
\[
\left\{ \frac{D_l + (D_x)}{u^{I_1}} \right\} v^{I_1}_{l, j_3} = \Gamma^{l} Q_{0}^{\alpha}(v^{I_1}_{l, j_3}, D_l v^{I_1}_{l, j_3}),
\]
and using that \( [D_{l_1}, \chi(t^{-\sigma}D_x)] = t^{-1} \chi{I_1}(t^{-\sigma}D_x) \) with \( \chi_{I_1}(\xi) := i\sigma(\partial_{\xi})(\xi) \cdot \xi.\) We find that
\[
-4(2\pi)^2 \left[ \frac{\partial_{l} G^{I_1, I_2, l}_{(j_1, j_2, j_3)}}{F^{I_1, I_2, l}_{(j_1, j_2, j_3)}} + F^{I_1, I_2, l}_{(j_1, j_2, j_3)} \right] = B_{l_1, l_2, l_3}^{I_1, I_2, l}(\xi, \eta) \left[ \Gamma^{l} Q_{0}^{\alpha}(v^{I_1}_{l_1, j_3}, D_l v^{I_1}_{l_1, j_3})\right] \left( \chi(t^{-\sigma}D_x) u^{I_1}_{l_2, j_3}(\xi - \eta) \right) \left[ \frac{\partial_{l_3} G^{I_1, I_2, l}_{(j_1, j_2, j_3)}}{F^{I_1, I_2, l}_{(j_1, j_2, j_3)}} + F^{I_1, I_2, l}_{(j_1, j_2, j_3)} \right) =: S^{I_1, I_2, l}_l + S^{I_1, I_2, l}_l + S^{I_1, I_2, l}_l,
\]
with \( B^{I_1, I_2, l}_{(j_1, j_2, j_3)} \) given by (2.2.82) when \( l = 1, 2, \) or (2.2.83) when \( l = 3.\)

Applying (A.17) to \( S^{I_1, I_2, l}_l,\) using (2.2.80) with \( w = \Gamma^{l} Q_{0}^{\alpha}(v^{I_1}_{l_1, j_3}, D_l v^{I_1}_{l_1, j_3}) \) and \( \rho = 7,\) together with the fact that operators \( \chi(t^{-\sigma}D_x), \chi_{I_1}(t^{-\sigma}D_x)\) are bounded from \( L^\infty \) to \( H^{p, \infty} \) for any \( \rho \geq 0 \) with norm \( O(t^{\rho})\), and from \( L^2 \) to \( H^s \) for any \( s \geq 0 \) with norm \( O(t^{\rho})\), we deduce that, for any \( \theta \in (0, 1],\)
\[
(2.2.98) \quad |S^{I_1, I_2, l}_l| \lesssim t^{\beta} \left\| V^{I_1}(t, \cdot) \right\|_{L^2} \left\| V^{I_2}(t, \cdot) \right\|_{L^2} \times \left\| \Gamma^{l} Q_{0}^{\alpha}(v^{I_1}_{l_1, j_3}, D_l v^{I_1}_{l_1, j_3}) \right\|_{L^\infty} + \delta_t \left\| \Gamma^{l} Q_{0}^{\alpha}(v^{I_1}_{l_1, j_3}, D_l v^{I_1}_{l_1, j_3}) \right\|_{L^2} \left\| \Gamma^{l} Q_{0}^{\alpha}(v^{I_1}_{l_1, j_3}, D_l v^{I_1}_{l_1, j_3}) \right\|_{L^2}^{\theta}
\]
\[
+ t^{-1} \left( \left\| \chi_{I_1}(t^{-\sigma}D_x) u^{I_2}_{l_1, j_3}(t, \cdot) \right\|_{L^\infty} + \left\| \chi_{I_1}(t^{-\sigma}D_x)RU^{l_1, l_2}(t, \cdot) \right\|_{L^\infty} \right),
\]
for some \( \beta > 0 \) small, \( \beta \to 0 \) as \( \sigma \to 0,\) and with \( \delta_t = 1 \) if \( l = 1, 2, \) 0 otherwise. When \( |I_2| = 0 \) the above right hand side can be estimated using (B.1.3a), (B.1.3b) and a-priori estimates (1.1.11). When \( |I_2| \geq 1 \) we derive from (1.1.15) that
\[
\Gamma^{l} Q_{0}^{\alpha}(v^{I_1}_{l_1, j_3}, D_l v^{I_1}_{l_1, j_3}) = Q_{0}^{\alpha}(v^{I_1}_{l_1, j_3}, D_l v^{I_1}_{l_1, j_3}) + \frac{Q_{0}^{\alpha}(v^{I_1}_{l_1, j_3}, D_l v^{I_1}_{l_1, j_3})}{G^{\alpha}(v^{I_1}_{l_1, j_3}, D_l v^{I_1}_{l_1, j_3})} = G^{\alpha}(v^{I_1}_{l_1, j_3}, D_l v^{I_1}_{l_1, j_3})
\]
with \( G^{\alpha}(v^{I_1}_{l_1, j_3}, D_l v^{I_1}_{l_1, j_3}) = G^{\alpha}(v, \partial v) \) given by (1.1.16). Using lemma (B.2.1) in appendix (B) with \( L = L^\infty \) to estimate the \( L^\infty \) norm of the first two quadratic terms in the above right hand side, we find that, for some new \( \chi \in C^\infty_0(\mathbb{R}^2) \) and \( \sigma > 0 \) small, there is a constant \( C > 0 \) such that
\[
\left\| \Gamma^{l} Q_{0}^{\alpha}(v^{I_1}_{l_1, j_3}, D_l v^{I_1}_{l_1, j_3}) \right\|_{L^\infty} \lesssim \left( \left\| \chi(t^{-\sigma}D_x) v^{I_2}_{l_1, j_3}(t, \cdot) \right\|_{H^{2, \infty}} \left\| v^{I_2}_{l_1, j_3}(t, \cdot) \right\|_{H^{2, \infty}}
\]
\[
+ t^{-N(\sigma)} \left( \left\| v^{I_2}_{l_1, j_3}(t, \cdot) \right\|_{H^{2, \infty}} + \left\| D_l v^{I_2}_{l_1, j_3}(t, \cdot) \right\|_{H^{2, \infty}} \right) \left( \sum_{|\mu| = 0}^{1} \left\| \chi^{\mu} v^{I_2}_{l_1, j_3}(t, \cdot) \right\|_{H^{2, \infty}} + \left\| v^{I_2}_{l_1, j_3}(t, \cdot) \right\|_{H^{2, \infty}} \right)
\]
\[
+ \left\| v^{I_2}_{l_1, j_3}(t, \cdot) \right\|_{H^{1, \infty}} \left( \left\| v^{I_2}_{l_1, j_3}(t, \cdot) \right\|_{H^{2, \infty}} + \left\| D_l v^{I_2}_{l_1, j_3}(t, \cdot) \right\|_{H^{1, \infty}} \right)
\]
\[
\leq CAB \varepsilon^{2} t^{-2},
\]
90.
where last inequality is obtained by picking \( s > 0 \) sufficiently large so that \( N(s) \geq 4 \) and using (B.1.6a), (B.1.6b), (B.1.10a), lemma \( \text{B.3.14} \) together with a-priori estimates. Also, by (B.1.6a) with \( s = 0 \) and a-priori estimates

\[
\|\Gamma^I_2 Q_0^v(v_{\pm}, D_1 v_{\pm})\|_{L^2} \leq \|V(t, \cdot)\|_{H^{\infty}} (\|V^{I_2}(t, \cdot)\|_{H^1} + \|D_1 V(t, \cdot)\|_{L^2}) \leq CAB\varepsilon^{2}t^{-1+\frac{\delta}{2}}.
\]

Therefore, using lemma \( \text{B.2.10} \) and taking \( \theta, \sigma > 0 \) sufficiently small we deduce from (2.2.98) and the above estimates that, for any \( l = 1, 2, 3 \) and a new \( C > 0 \),

(2.2.99)

\[
|S_{l}^{I_1, I_2,l}| \leq CAB\varepsilon^{2}t^{-1+\frac{\delta}{2}}E^k_3(t; W)^{\frac{1}{2}}.
\]

We make use of inequality (A.17) to estimate \( S_{l}^{I_1, I_2,l} \), too. From (1.1.17) we have that

\[
\Gamma^I_1 Q_0^{kg}(v_{\pm}, D_1 u_{\pm}) = Q_0^{kg}(v_{\pm}^l, D_1 u_{\pm}) + \sum_{(J_1, J_2) \in \mathcal{G}(I)} c_{J_1, J_2} Q_0^{kg}(v_{\pm}^l, D_1 u_{\pm})
\]

with \( c_{J_1, J_2} \in \{-1, 0, 1\} \), and then from (2.1.29b), (2.1.34b, c) and the fact that \( I_1 \in \mathcal{K} \),

\[
\Gamma^I_1 Q_0^{kg}(v_{\pm}, D_1 u_{\pm}) = Q_0^{kg}(v_{\pm}^l, \chi(t^{-\sigma} D_x) D_1 u_{\pm}) + \mathfrak{G}_3^k(t, x),
\]

with \( \mathfrak{G}_3^k \) satisfying (2.1.30) and

\[
\|Q_0^{kg}(v_{\pm}^l, \chi(t^{-\sigma} D_x) D_1 u_{\pm})\|_{L^2} \leq (\|U(t, \cdot)\|_{H^{\infty}} + \|RU(t, \cdot)\|_{H^{\infty}}) \|V^{I_1}(t, \cdot)\|_{L^2}.
\]

So from (2.1.30), (2.2.97), lemma \( \text{B.2.10} \) and priori estimates (1.1.11) and

(2.2.100)

\[
|S_{l}^{I_1, I_2,l}| \leq \left[ (\|U(t, \cdot)\|_{H^{\infty}} + \|RU(t, \cdot)\|_{H^{\infty}}) \|V^{I_1}(t, \cdot)\|_{L^2} + \|\mathfrak{G}_3^k(t, \cdot)\|_{L^2} \right]
\]

\[
\times (\|\chi(t^{-\sigma} D_x) U^{I_2}(t, \cdot)\|_{H^{\infty}} + \|\chi(t^{-\sigma} D_x) RU^{I_2}(t, \cdot)\|_{H^{\infty}}) \|V^{I}(t, \cdot)\|_{L^2}
\]

\[
\leq CAB\varepsilon^{2}t^{-1+\frac{\delta}{2}}E^k_3(t; W)^{\frac{1}{2}}.
\]

Let us now consider all the addends in \( S_{l}^{I_1, I_2,l} \) with \( |J_2| < |I| \), which by inequality (A.17) are bounded by

\[
\|V^{I_1}(t, \cdot)\|_{L^2} \left( \sum_{|\mu|=0} \|\chi(t^{-\sigma} D_x) R^\mu U^{I_2}(t, \cdot)\|_{H^{\infty}} \right) \sum_{(J_1, J_2) \in \mathcal{G}(I)} \|c_{J_1, J_2} Q_0^{kg}(v_{\pm}^l, D_1 u_{\pm})\|_{L^2}.
\]

As the latter above factor is bounded by the \( L^2 \) norm of \( Q_0^I(V, W) \) (see definition (2.1.12)), inequalities (2.1.43) and (2.2.97) imply that those integrals are remainders \( \theta_{I_1, I_2}^{1, 2} \) satisfying (2.2.96). Finally, the last contribution to \( S_{l}^{I_1, I_2,l} \), corresponding to \( |J_1| = 0, J_2 = I \), for which \( D = D_1 \), can be rewritten using (2.2.82) as the sum over \( j_4, j_5 \in \{+, -\} \) of

\[
\int B_{(j_1, j_2, j_3)}^{1}(\xi, \eta) \left( 1 + j_4j_3 \frac{\xi - \zeta}{|\xi + \zeta|} \right) \zeta_1 \hat{v}_4(-\xi - \zeta) \hat{v}_j^f(\xi) \chi(t^{-\sigma} D_x) u_{j_2}^{I_2}(\eta) \hat{v}_{j_1}(\xi - \eta) \hat{v}_d \xi d\eta.
\]

By means of lemma \( \text{B.2.8} \) it is bounded by

\[
\|V(t, \cdot)\|_{H^{\infty}} \left( \sum_{|\mu|=0} \|\chi(t^{-\sigma} D_x) D_1 R^\mu U^{I_2}(t, \cdot)\|_{H^{11, \infty}} \right) \|V^{I_1}(t, \cdot)\|_{H^1} \|V^{I}(t, \cdot)\|_{L^2}
\]

for every \( t \in [1, T] \), and hence by \( CA(A + B)\varepsilon^{2}t^{-1+\frac{\delta}{2}+\beta'}E^k_3(t; W) \), with \( \beta' > 0 \) small as long as \( \sigma, \delta_0 \) are small, as follows by a-priori estimate (1.1.11b) and lemma \( \text{B.2.10} \) \( \square \)
2.2.3 Propagation of the energy estimate

**Proposition 2.2.13** (Propagation of the energy estimate). Let us fix $K_2 > 0$. There exist two integers $n \gg \rho \gg 1$ sufficiently large, two constants $A, B > 1$ sufficiently large, $\varepsilon_0 \in \{0, (2A + B)^{-1}\}$ sufficiently small, and some $0 < \delta \ll \delta_2 \ll \delta_1 \ll \delta_0 < 1$ small such that, for any $0 < \varepsilon < \varepsilon_0$, if $(u, v)$ is solution to (1.1.1)–(1.1.2) in some interval $[1, T]$ for a fixed $T > 1$, and $u_\pm, v_\pm$ defined in (1.1.3) satisfy a-priori estimates (1.1.11) for every $t \in [1, T]$, then they also verify (1.1.12d), (1.1.12e) on the same interval $[1, T]$.

**Proof.** For any integer $k, n \in \mathbb{N}$, with $n \geq 3$ and $0 \leq k \leq 2$, let $\tilde{E}_n(t; W), \tilde{E}_n^k(t; W)$ be the first modified energies introduced in (2.2.11) and (2.2.12) respectively. Let also $D^I_{(j_1,j_2,j_3)}$, $D^R_{(j_1,j_2,j_3)}$, $D^{T-N}_{(j_1,j_2,j_3)}$, $E_n^{(1)}, E_n^{(2)}$ be the second modified energies, introduced in (2.2.101a) and (2.2.102), respectively. Let also $D^1_{(j_1,j_2,j_3)}$, $D^2_{(j_1,j_2,j_3)}$, $D^3_{(j_1,j_2,j_3)}$, $A_{(j_1,j_2,j_3)}$, $G_{(j_1,j_2,j_3)}$ be the integrals defined in (2.2.13), (2.2.14), and (2.2.15), respectively. Fix $N = 18$. The first thing we observe is that, as long as estimates (1.1.11) and (1.1.12) are satisfied and $\rho \in \mathbb{N}$ is sufficiently large (e.g. $\rho \geq \max\{\frac{11}{2}, 8, 21\}$), there is a constant $C > 0$ such that for every $t \in [1, T]$

\[
\begin{align*}
(2.2.101a) & \quad C^{-1}E_n(t; W) \leq \tilde{E}_n^1(t; W) \leq CE_n(t; W), \\
(2.2.101b) & \quad C^{-1}E_n^k(t; W) \leq \tilde{E}_n^k(t; W) \leq CE_n^k(t; W).
\end{align*}
\]

Above equivalences follow from (2.2.12), a-priori estimates (1.1.11a), (1.1.11b), the fact that for a general multi-index $I$ ($I \in \mathcal{J}_n$ or $I \in \mathcal{J}_n$ for $0 \leq k \leq 2$)

\[
\sum_{j_1 \in \{+, -\}} |D^I_{(j_1,j_2,j_3)} + D^R_{(j_1,j_2,j_3)}| \lesssim (\|U(t, \cdot)\|_{H^{7,\infty}} + \|R_1 U(t, \cdot)\|_{H^{7,\infty}})\|V^I(t, \cdot)\|_{L^2}^2
\]

by inequality (A.17),

\[
\sum_{j_2 \in \{+, -\}} |D^{I,T-N}_{(j_1,j_2,j_3)}| \lesssim \|U(t, \cdot)\|_{H^{21,\infty}}\|W^I(t, \cdot)\|_{L^2}^2
\]

by inequality (A.24), and:

- as concerns especially (2.2.101a), from the fact that for any $I \in \mathcal{J}_n$, any $(I_1, I_2) \in \mathcal{J}(I)$ with $|I_1| < |I_2| < |I|$, by (A.17)

\[
\sum_{j_1 \in \{+, -\}} |D^{I_1,I_2}_{(j_1,j_2,j_3)}| \lesssim (\|U^{I_2}(t, \cdot)\|_{H^{7,\infty}} + \|R_1 U^{I_2}(t, \cdot)\|_{H^{7,\infty}})\|V^{I_1}(t, \cdot)\|_{L^2}\|V^I(t, \cdot)\|_{L^2}^2
\]

\[
\lesssim \left(\|U(t, \cdot)\|_{H^{21+8,\infty}} + \|R_1 U(t, \cdot)\|_{H^{21+8,\infty}}\right) E_n(t; W);
\]

- as concerns especially (2.2.101b), the fact that for any $I \in \mathcal{V}^k$ (see definition (2.1.26)), any $(I_1, I_2) \in \mathcal{J}(I)$ with $I_1 \in \mathcal{K}$ (see (2.1.26)) and $|I_2| \leq 1$, and any $l = 1, 2, 3$, by (A.17) and (2.2.97)

\[
(2.2.102) \quad \sum_{j_1 \in \{+, -\}} |G^{I_1,I_2,l}_{(j_1,j_2,j_3)}| \lesssim \sum_{|\mu| = 0}^1 \|\chi(t^{-\sigma}D_x)\rho^\mu U^{I_2}(t, \cdot)\|_{H^{7,\infty}}\|V^{I_1}(t, \cdot)\|_{L^2}\|V^I(t, \cdot)\|_{L^2}^2
\]

\[
\leq C(A + B)B\varepsilon t^{-\frac{1}{2} + \frac{A}{B}}E_3^{(1)}(t; W)^{\frac{1}{2}}.
\]

92
Let us now consider a general multi-index $I$. From equation (2.2.3) we deduce the following equality:

$$
\frac{1}{2} \partial_t \| \mathring{W}_s^I(t, \cdot) \|_{L^2}^2 = -3 \left[ \langle D_t \mathring{W}_s^I, \mathring{W}_s^I \rangle + \langle \mathcal{O}_U^0(U; \eta) \mathring{A}_1(V; \eta) (I_4 + F_d^0(U; \eta)) \mathring{W}_s^I, \mathring{W}_s^I \rangle \right. \\
\left. + \langle \mathcal{O}_U^0(A''(V^I); \eta) U + \mathcal{O}_U^0(A''(V^I); \eta) U, \mathring{W}_s^I \rangle + \langle Q_0^0(V, W), \mathring{W}_s^I \rangle + \langle \mathcal{O}_U(U, V), \mathring{W}_s^I \rangle \right]
$$

(2.2.103)

and immediately notice that $\Im[\langle A(D) \mathring{W}_s^I, \mathring{W}_s^I \rangle] = 0$ because of the fact that $A(\eta)$, introduced in (2.1.5), is real diagonal matrix and its quantization is a self-adjoint operator.

Matrix $(I_4 + E_d^0(U; \eta)) \mathcal{A}_1(V; \eta)(I_4 + F_d^0(U; \eta))$ is real, symmetric, of order 1, with semi-norm

$$
M_1^1 \left( (I_4 + E_d^0(U; \eta)) \mathcal{A}_1(V; \eta)(I_4 + F_d^0(U; \eta)), 3 \right) \lesssim (1 + \| R_1 U(t, \cdot) \|_{H^2, \infty})^2 \| V(t, \cdot) \|_{H^2, \infty}
$$

as follows by estimate (2.2.7b) on $E_d^0$, (2.2.8) of $F_d^0$, and (2.1.49) on $\mathcal{A}_1(V; \eta)$. Corollary 1.2.13 and a-priori estimates (1.1.1a), (1.1.1b) imply then that the second term in the right hand side of (2.2.103) reduces to $\langle T_0(U, V) \mathring{W}_s^I, \mathring{W}_s^I \rangle$, with $T_0(U, V)$ operator of order less or equal than 0 such that

$$
\| T_0(U, V) \|_{\mathfrak{L}(L^2)} \lesssim M_1^1 \left( (I_4 + E_d^0(U; \eta)) \mathcal{A}_1(V; \eta)(I_4 + F_d^0(U; \eta)), 3 \right) \lesssim C A \varepsilon t^{-1},
$$

so after Cauchy-Schwarz inequality and equivalence (2.2.10) it is a remainder $R(t)$ satisfying, for every $t \in [1, T]

$$
|R(t)| \leq C A \varepsilon t^{-1} \| W^I(t, \cdot) \|_{L^2}^2.
$$

(2.2.104)

Observe that, by the definition of $\mathring{W}_s^I$ in (2.2.24) and of $W_s^I$ in (2.1.49), we have that

$$
\left\| \mathring{W}_s^I - W^I(t, \cdot) \right\|_{L^2} \leq \| \mathcal{O}_U^0(P(V; \eta) - I_4) W^I \|_{L^2} + \| \mathcal{O}_U^0(E(U; \eta)) W^I \|_{L^2} \lesssim (\| U(t, \cdot) \|_{H^1, \infty} + \| U(t, \cdot) \|_{H^{5, \infty}} + \| R_1 U(t, \cdot) \|_{H^{1, \infty}}) \| W^I(t, \cdot) \|_{L^2},
$$

the latter inequality following from proposition 1.2.7 estimate (2.1.48), the fact that $E(U; \eta)$ verifies, after (2.2.7) and for any admissible cut-off function $\chi$, $M_0^0 \left( E\left( \chi \left( \frac{D\chi}{\langle \eta \rangle} \right) U; \eta \right); n \right) \lesssim \| U(t, \cdot) \|_{H^{5, \infty}} + \| R_1 U(t, \cdot) \|_{H^{1, \infty}},$

and equivalence (2.1.50). Therefore, third and fifth brackets in the right hand side of (2.2.103) can be replaced with

$$
\langle \mathcal{O}_U^0(A''(V^I); \eta) U + \mathcal{O}_U^0(A''(V^I); \eta) U, W^I \rangle + \langle T_{-18}(U) W^I, W^I \rangle
$$

up to some new remainders $R(t)$, satisfying (2.2.104) after Cauchy-Schwarz inequality, estimates (2.1.21a), (2.2.4), (2.2.105) and (1.1.1a), (1.1.1b).

Summing up, equality (2.2.103) reduces to:

$$
\frac{1}{2} \partial_t \| \mathring{W}_s^I(t, \cdot) \|_{L^2} = -3 \left[ \langle \mathcal{O}_U^0(A''(V^I); \eta) U + \mathcal{O}_U^0(A''(V^I); \eta) U, W^I \rangle + \langle Q_0^0(V, W), \mathring{W}_s^I \rangle + \langle \mathcal{O}_U(U, V), \mathring{W}_s^I \rangle \right] + R(t).
$$

(2.2.106)
In order to analyse the behaviour of the second and fourth brackets in above right hand side we need, at this point, to distinguishing between indices $I \in j_n$ and $I \in I_3^k$.

**Propagation of a-priori estimate (1.11c):** Let us suppose that $I \in j_n$. Using (2.2.105) and estimate (2.1.38) we find that

\[ (2.2.107) \quad \langle Q_0^I(V,W), \tilde{W}_2^I \rangle = \langle Q_0^I(V,W), W^I \rangle + R_n(t) \]

where, for a new constant $C > 0$ and every $t \in [1, T]$,

\[ (2.2.108) \quad |R_n(t)| \leq CA\varepsilon t^{-1+\frac{\delta}{2}}E_n(t;W)^{\frac{1}{2}}. \]

Reminding definition (2.1.12) of $Q_0^I(V,W)$ and the fact that coefficients $c_{I_1,I_2}$ are all equal to 0 when $I \in j_n$, we notice that some of the contributions to the scalar product in the right hand side of (2.2.107) are also remainders $R_n(t)$. These are precisely the following ones:

\[
\sum_{(I_1,I_2)\in \mathcal{I}(I)} \langle Q_0^{k_1}(v_{I_1}^+,D_1v_{I_2}^N), u_+^I + u_-^I \rangle + \sum_{(I_1,I_2)\in \mathcal{I}(I) \mid |I_1| \leq |I_2|} \langle Q_0^{k_2}(v_{I_1}^+,D_1u_{I_2}^N), u_+^I + u_-^I \rangle
\]

in consequence of Cauchy-Schwarz inequality and estimates (2.1.27), (1.1.1b), (1.1.1c). Moreover, $\langle Q^I(U,V), W^I \rangle$ in the right hand side of (2.2.106) is also a remainder $R_n(t)$ because of Cauchy-Schwarz, (2.2.105), a-priori estimates (1.1.1a), (1.1.1b), and the fact that

\[ \|Q^I(U,V)\|_{L^2} \leq CA\varepsilon t^{-1+\frac{\delta}{2}}, \]

which follows choosing $\theta \ll 1$ in (2.2.6), using (2.1.38) and (1.1.1a)-(1.1.1c).

Since remainder $R(t)$ in (2.2.106) (verifying (2.2.104)) can be enclosed in $R_n(t)$ after (1.11c), we obtain that equality (2.2.106) can be further reduced to

\[
\frac{1}{2} \partial_t \|W_2^I(t,\cdot)\|_{L^2}^2 = -3 \left[ \langle Op^B(A''(V^I;\eta))U + Op^B_R(A''(V^I;\eta))U, W^I \rangle 
\right. \\
\left.+ \sum_{(I_1,I_2)\in \mathcal{I}(I) \mid |I_1| \leq |I_2|} \langle Q_0^{k_2}(v_{I_1}^+,D_1u_{I_2}^N), u_+^I + u_-^I \rangle + \langle T_{-18}(U)W^I, W^I \rangle \right] + R_n(t).
\]

From definition (2.2.46), equalities (2.2.35), (2.2.37), (2.2.39) with $N = 18$, (2.2.40), together with (2.2.76), (2.2.84) with $N = 18$, (2.2.92), we deduce that

\[
\frac{1}{2} \left| \partial_t \tilde{E}_n^I(t;W) \right| \lesssim |R_n(t)| + \sum_{I \in j_n} \left( |D_{\text{quart}}^I(t)| + |D_{\text{quart}}^{I,18}(t)| + \sum_{I \in j_n} \sum_{(I_1,I_2)\in \mathcal{I}(I) \mid |I_1| \leq |I_2|} |D_{\text{quart}}^{I_1,I_2}(t)| \right),
\]

where quartic terms $D_{\text{quart}}^I, D_{\text{quart}}^{I,18}, D_{\text{quart}}^{I_1,I_2}$ satisfy, respectively, (2.2.77), (2.2.83), (2.2.93) with $N = 18$, (2.2.93). These latter ones can also be considered as remainders $R_n(t)$ thanks to lemma 2.1.2 (i) and a-priori estimates (1.1.11), which implies that, for some new $C > 0$ and every $t \in [1, T]$,

\[
\left| \partial_t \tilde{E}_n^I(t;W) \right| \leq CA\varepsilon t^{-1+\frac{\delta}{2}}E_n(t;W)^{\frac{1}{2}}.
\]

Then

\[
\tilde{E}_n^I(t;W)^{\frac{1}{2}} \leq \tilde{E}_n^I(1;W)^{\frac{1}{2}} + \int_1^t CA\varepsilon \tau^{-1+\frac{\delta}{2}}d\tau,
\]

94
so after equivalence (2.2.101a) and a-priori estimate (1.1.11c)

\[ E_n(t; W)^{\frac{1}{2}} \leq C E_n(1; W)^{\frac{1}{2}} + \int_1^t C A \varepsilon \tau^{-1 + \frac{\delta}{2}} d\tau \]

\[ \leq C E_n(1; W)^{\frac{1}{2}} + \frac{2 C A \varepsilon}{\delta} t^{\frac{\delta}{2}}, \]

again for a new \( C > 0 \). Taking \( B > 1 \) sufficiently large so that \( E_n(1; W)^{\frac{1}{2}} \leq \frac{B \varepsilon}{2 \sqrt{\delta}} \) and \( \frac{2 C A \varepsilon}{\delta} < \frac{B}{2 \sqrt{\delta}} \) we finally obtain (1.1.12c).

**Propagation of a-priori estimate (1.1.11d):** Let us now suppose that \( I \in \mathcal{V}_3^k \) for \( 0 \leq k \leq 2 \). After (2.1.39) and (2.2.104) we have that

\[ \langle Q_0(V, W), \tilde{W}_x^I \rangle = \langle Q_0(V, W), W^I \rangle + R_3^k(t) \]

with

\[ (2.2.109) \quad |R_3^k(t)| \leq CA(A + B) \varepsilon^2 t^{-1 + \frac{\delta k}{2}} E_3^k(t; W)^{\frac{1}{2}}, \]

and moreover

\[ (2.2.110) \quad - \Im \left[ \langle Q_0(V, W), W^I \rangle \right] = - \delta_{yk} \sum_{(I_1, I_2) \in \mathcal{I}(I)} c_{I_1, I_2} \Im \left[ \langle Q_0^{k g} \left( v^I_{1 \pm}, \chi(t^{-\sigma} D_x) D_x u^I_{2 \pm} \right), v^I_+ + v^I_- \rangle \right] - \delta_{yk} \sum_{(J_0) \in \mathcal{I}(I)} c_{J_0} \Im \left[ \langle Q_0^{k g} \left( v^I_{1 \pm}, \chi(t^{-\sigma} D_x) |D_x| u^I_{2 \pm} \right), v^I_+ + v^I_- \rangle \right] + R_3^k(t), \]

with \( \delta_{yk} = 1 \) if \( I \in \mathcal{V}_k \), 0 otherwise, as already seen in (2.2.50). Also, \( \langle \mathfrak{R}(U, V), \tilde{W}_x^I \rangle \) in the right hand side of (2.2.100) and \( R(t) \) are remainders \( R_3^k(t) \) in consequence of the same argument used in the previous case, but with estimate (2.1.38) replaced with (2.1.39). Therefore, we can further reduce (2.2.106) to the following equality:

\[ \frac{1}{2} \partial_t ||\tilde{W}_x^I(t, \cdot)||_{L^2}^2 = - \Im \left[ \langle Op^B(A''(V^I; \eta)) U + Op^B_R(A''(V^I; \eta)) U, \tilde{W}_x^I \rangle + \langle T_{-18}(U) W^I, W^I \rangle \right] - \delta_{yk} \sum_{(I_1, I_2) \in \mathcal{I}(I)} c_{I_1, I_2} \Im \left[ \langle Q_0^{k g} \left( v^I_{1 \pm}, \chi(t^{-\sigma} D_x) D_x u^I_{2 \pm} \right), v^I_+ + v^I_- \rangle \right] - \delta_{yk} \sum_{(J_0) \in \mathcal{I}(I)} c_{J_0} \Im \left[ \langle Q_0^{k g} \left( v^I_{1 \pm}, \chi(t^{-\sigma} D_x) |D_x| u^I_{2 \pm} \right), v^I_+ + v^I_- \rangle \right] + R_3^k(t), \]

and deduce from definition (2.2.55), equalities (2.2.35), (2.2.37), (2.2.39) with \( N = 18 \), (2.2.51), together with (2.2.76), (2.2.84) with \( N = 18 \), and (2.2.95), that

\[ \left| \partial_t E_3^k(t; W) \right| \lesssim |R_3^k(t)| + \sum_{I \in \mathcal{V}_3^k} \left( |\mathfrak{D}_1^{18}(t)| + |\mathfrak{D}_2^{18}(t)| \right) + \delta_{k<2} \sum_{I \in \mathcal{V}_3^k} \sum_{(I_1, I_2) \in \mathcal{I}(I)} \left| \mathfrak{G}_{I_1, I_2}(J_1, J_2, J_3) \right| \]

with \( \delta_{k<2} = 1 \) for \( k < 2 \), 0 otherwise. On the one hand, quartic terms \( \mathfrak{D}_1^{18}, \mathfrak{D}_2^{18} \) satisfy, respectively, (2.2.77) and (2.2.83) with \( N = 18 \), and are remainders \( R_3^k(t) \) after (2.1.39) and
a-priori estimates. On the other hand, \( \phi^{I_1,I_2}_{(j_1,j_2,j_3)} \) verifies estimate \((2.2.96)\). Consequently, there is a constant \( C > 0 \) such that

\[
\tilde{E}^k(t; W) \leq \tilde{E}^k(t; W) + C(A + B)^2 \varepsilon^2 \int_1^t \tau^{-1+\frac{4k}{2}+\beta+\delta_1^1} \tilde{E}^1(\tau; W)^{\frac{1}{2}} d\tau + \delta_{k=0} \int_1^t \tau^{-1+\frac{4k}{2}+\beta+\delta_1^1} \tilde{E}^1(\tau; W)^{\frac{1}{2}} d\tau + \int_1^t \tau^{-\frac{3}{4}} d\tau
\]

with \( \delta_{k=0} = 1 \) if \( k = 0 \), 0 otherwise, \( \beta > 0 \) as small as we want, and after equivalence \((2.2.101b)\)

\[
E^k(t; W) \leq CE^k(1; W) + C(A + B)^2 \varepsilon^2 \int_1^t \tau^{-1+\frac{4k}{2}} \tilde{E}^1(\tau; W)^{\frac{1}{2}} d\tau + \delta_{k=0} \int_1^t \tau^{-1+\frac{4k}{2}} \tilde{E}^1(\tau; W)^{\frac{1}{2}} d\tau + \int_1^t \tau^{-\frac{3}{4}} d\tau,
\]

for a new \( C > 0 \). Injecting \((1.1.11d)\) in the above inequality and integrating in \( d\tau \), we obtain that

\[
E^k(t; W) \leq CE^k(1; W) + C(A + B)^2 B \varepsilon^3 \left[ \frac{1}{\delta_k} t^\delta_k + \delta_{k=0} \frac{1}{\frac{\beta}{2}+\beta+\delta_1^1} \right],
\]

and taking \( \beta \) sufficiently small so that \( \beta + \delta_1 \leq \delta_0/2 \), \( B > 1 \) sufficiently large so that \( E^k(1; W) \leq \frac{B^2 \varepsilon^2}{2CK^2} \) and \( B \geq A \), and \( \varepsilon_0 > 0 \) sufficiently small so that

\[
\varepsilon_0 \leq \frac{1}{8BCK^2} \left[ \frac{1}{\delta_k} + \delta_{k=0} \frac{1}{\frac{\beta}{2}+\beta+\delta_1^1} \right]^{-1},
\]

we finally derive enhanced estimate \((1.1.12d)\) and the conclusion of the proof.
Chapter 3

Uniform Estimates

3.1 Semilinear normal forms

In proposition 2.2.13 of the previous chapter we proved the propagation of the a-priori the energy estimates, i.e. that there exist some constants $A, B > 1$ large and $\varepsilon > 0$ small, such that \(1.1.11\) implies \(1.1.12a\), \(1.1.12b\). To conclude the proof of theorem 1.1.2 it only remains to show that \(1.1.11\) also implies \(1.1.12a\), \(1.1.12b\). In particular, as $u_+ = -\bar{v}$ and $v_+ = -\bar{v}$, it will be enough to prove this result for \((u_-, v_-)\), which is solution to

\[
\begin{align*}
(D_t + |D_x|) u_- &= Q^w_0 (v_\pm, D_1 v_\pm), \\
(D_t + \langle D_x \rangle) v_- &= Q^{k_0} (v_\pm, D_1 u_\pm),
\end{align*}
\]

with $Q^w_0 (v_\pm, D_1 v_\pm), Q^{k_0} (v_\pm, D_1 u_\pm)$ given by \((2.1.1)\).

As for the simpler case of the one-dimensional Klein-Gordon equation (see \[29\]), the main idea is to reformulate system \((3.1.1)\) in terms of two new functions $\tilde{u}, \tilde{v}$, defined from $u_-, v_-$ and living in a new framework (the semi-classical framework), and to deduce a new simpler system, made of a transport equation and an ODE. Through this new system we will be able to recover the required enhanced estimates \((1.1.12a), (1.1.12b)\).

Before introducing the semi-classical framework in which we will work for the rest of the paper, we need to replace almost all quadratic non-linearities in \((3.1.1)\) with cubic ones by a normal forms. This is the object of the following two subsections. We highlight the fact that we do not make use directly of the normal forms obtained in the proof of the energy inequality, because our goals and constraints are henceforth different. In fact, we want to obtain a \(L^\infty\) estimate for essentially $\rho$ derivatives of our solution, having a control on its $H^s$ norm for $s \gg \rho$. Therefore, we are allowed to lose some derivatives in the normal form reduction, which means that we do not care any more about the quasi-linear nature of our problem.

We warn the reader that, for seek of compactness, we will often use the notation $NL_w$ (resp. $NL_{k_0}$) when referring to $Q^w_0 (v_\pm, D_1 v_\pm)$ (resp. to $Q^{k_0} (v_\pm, D_1 u_\pm)$).

### 3.1.1 Normal forms for the Klein-Gordon equation

The aim of this subsection is to introduce a new unknown $v^{NF}$, defined in terms of $v_-$, in such a way it is solution to a cubic half Klein-Gordon equation instead of the quadratic one satisfied by $v_-$ in \((3.1.1)\). This normal form is motivated by the fact that the $L^2$ norm of $Q^{k_0} (v_\pm, D_1 u_\pm)$ decays too slowly in time (only $t^{-1+\delta/2}$), as follows from \((3.1.4)\) and a-priori estimates \((1.1.11)\).
It is fundamental to observe that, after (1.1.11) and inequality (3.1.7b) below with \( \theta \ll 1 \) small enough (e.g. \( \theta < (2 + \delta)^{-1} \)), \( v^{NF} \) and \( v_- \) are comparable, in the sense that there is a positive constant \( C \) such that
\[
(3.1.2) \quad \|v_-(t, \cdot)\|_{H^{\rho, \infty}} - \|v^{NF}(t, \cdot)\|_{H^{\rho, \infty}} \leq C \varepsilon^2 t^{-1}.
\]

Then bootstrap assumption (1.1.11b) implies that the new unknown \( v^{NF} \) disperses in time at the same rate \( t^{-1} \) as \( v_- \), and the propagation of a suitable estimate of the \( H^{\rho, \infty} \) norm of \( v^{NF} \) will provide us with enhanced (1.1.12b).

**Proposition 3.1.1.** Assume that \((u, v)\) is solution to (1.1.1) in \([1, T]\) for a fixed \( T > 1 \), consider \((u_+, v_+, u_-, v_-)\) defined in (1.1.3) and solution to (2.1.1) with \( |I| = 0 \), and remind definition (2.1.11) of vectors \( U, V \). Let
\[
(3.1.3) \quad v^{NF} := v_- - \frac{i}{4(2\pi)^2} \sum_{j_1, j_2 \in \{+,-\}} \int e^{ix \cdot \xi} B^1_{(j_1, j_2, +)}(\xi, \eta) \hat{v}_{j_1}(\xi - \eta) \hat{u}_{j_2}(\eta) d\xi d\eta,
\]
with \( B^1_{(j_1, j_2, +)}(\xi, \eta) \) given by (2.2.11) with \( k = 1 \) and \( j_3 = + \). Then for every \( t \in [1, T] \) \( v^{NF} \) is solution to
\[
(3.1.4) \quad (D_t + \langle D_+ \rangle) v^{NF}(t, x) = r^{NF}_{k_{g}}(t, x),
\]
where
\[
(3.1.5) \quad v^{NF}_{k_{g}}(t, x) = -\frac{i}{4(2\pi)^2} \sum_{j_1, j_2 \in \{+,-\}} \int e^{ix \cdot \xi} B^1_{(j_1, j_2, +)}(\xi, \eta) \times \left[ \hat{N}L_{k_{g}}(\xi - \eta) \hat{u}_{j_2}(\eta) + \hat{v}_{j_1}(\xi - \eta) \hat{N}L_{w_{\eta}}(\eta) \right] d\xi d\eta
\]
satisfies
\[
(3.1.6a) \quad \|r^{NF}_{k_{g}}(t, \cdot)\|_{L^2} \lesssim \sum_{\mu=0}^{1} \|V(t, \cdot)\|_{H^{1, \infty}} \|R^\mu U(t, \cdot)\|_{L^\infty} \|U(t, \cdot)\|_{H^1} + \|V(t, \cdot)\|_{H^{2, \infty}}^{2} \|V(t, \cdot)\|_{H^{2, \infty}},
\]
\[
(3.1.6b) \quad \|\chi(t^{-\sigma} D_x) r^{NF}_{k_{g}}(t, \cdot)\|_{L^\infty} \lesssim \|V(t, \cdot)\|_{H^{1, \infty}} \left( \sum_{\mu=0}^{1} \|R^\mu U(t, \cdot)\|_{H^{2, \infty}}^{2} \right) + \|V(t, \cdot)\|_{H^{2, \infty}}^{3} \|V(t, \cdot)\|_{H^{2, \infty}},
\]
for any \( \chi \in C_0^\infty(\mathbb{R}^2), \sigma > 0 \). Moreover, for every \( s, \rho \geq 0 \), any \( \theta \in [0, 1] \),
\[
(3.1.7a) \quad \|(v^{NF} - v_-)(t, \cdot)\|_{H^s} \lesssim \sum_{\mu=0}^{1} \|V(t, \cdot)\|_{H^s} \|R^\mu U(t, \cdot)\|_{L^\infty} + \|V(t, \cdot)\|_{L^\infty} \|U(t, \cdot)\|_{H^{s+1}},
\]
\[
(3.1.7b) \quad \|(v^{NF} - v_-)(t, \cdot)\|_{H^{s, \infty}} \lesssim \sum_{\mu=0}^{1} \|V(t, \cdot)\|_{H^{s, \infty}} \|V(t, \cdot)\|_{H^{s, \infty}}^{1-\theta} \|V(t, \cdot)\|_{H^{s+2}}^{\theta} \|R^\mu U(t, \cdot)\|_{L^\infty} + \sum_{\mu=0}^{1} \|V(t, \cdot)\|_{L^\infty} \|R^\mu U(t, \cdot)\|_{H^{s+3}}^{1-\theta} \|U(t, \cdot)\|_{H^{s+3}},
\]
98
From definition (3.1.3) of Proof.
and that, after formula (A.15), we have the following explicit expressions:

\[ (3.1.10) \]

Inequalities (3.1.7a), (3.1.7b) are straightforward from (3.1.10) and corollary A.4 in appendix A.

\[ \text{used the Leibniz rule, and from bounding the} \]

\[ \chi \]

one observes that operator \( \Omega \) means of the classical Sobolev injection. Inequalities (3.1.8a), (3.1.8b) are also straightforward if \( v \) is solution to (3.1.4) with \( NF \) is continuous with norm \( O(t^\sigma) \).

As concerns \( v^{NF} \), we have the following explicit expressions:

\[ (3.1.10) \]

\[ (3.1.11) \]

Inequalities (3.1.7a), (3.1.7b) are straightforward from (3.1.10) and corollary A.4 in appendix A.

Inequality (3.1.7c) is also obtained from corollary A.4 after having applied \( \Omega \) to (3.1.10) and used the Leibniz rule, and from bounding the \( L^\infty \) norm of \( NF \) with their \( H^2 \) norm by means of the classical Sobolev injection. Inequalities (3.1.8a), (3.1.8b) are also straightforward if one observes that operator \( \chi(t^{-\sigma}D_x) \), with \( \chi \in C_0^\infty(R^2) \) and \( \sigma > 0 \), is \( L^2 - H^1 \) continuous with norm \( O(t^\sigma) \).

As concerns \( r^{NF}_{kg} \), from (3.1.11) and corollary A.4 we find that

\[ (3.1.11) \]

and

\[ (3.1.12) \]

Inequalities (3.1.6a) and (3.1.6b) follow then by (B.1.3c) with \( s = 1 \), (B.1.3b), (B.1.4a) and (B.1.4b).
3.1.2 Normal forms for the wave equation

We now focus on the wave equation satisfied by \( u_- \):

\[
(D_t + |D_x|)u_-(t,x) = Q_0^w(v_\pm, D_1 v_\pm),
\]

and perform a normal form argument in order to replace (a part of) the quadratic non-linearity in the above right hand side with a cubic non-local one. The fundamental reason for that is to be found in lemma 3.2.13 where we have to prove that the \( L^2 \) norm of some operator, acting on the non-linearity of the equation satisfied by \( u_- \), decays like \( t^{-1/2+\beta} \), for a small \( \beta > 0 \). That decay is obtained if the \( L^2 \) norm of the mentioned non-linearity is a \( O(t^{-3/2+\beta'}) \), for some small \( \beta' > 0 \), which is not the case for \( Q_0^w(v_\pm, D_1 v_\pm) \), as follows from \( (3.1.3a), (1.1.11b), (1.1.11c) \).

This normal form can be actually performed only on contributions depending on \((v_+, v_+)\) and \((v_-, v_-)\) but not on \((v_+, v_-)\), which are resonant. Nevertheless, the structure of these latter contributions allows us to recover the right mentioned time decay for their \( L^2 \) norm (see lemmas 3.2.15 and 3.2.16).

Thanks to inequalities (3.1.20b), (3.1.20c) and a-priori estimates (1.1.11), the new unknown \( u_{\text{NF}} \) we define in (3.1.15) below is equivalent to the former \( u_- \), meaning that there exists a positive constant \( C \) such that

\[
(3.1.12) \quad \sum_{\kappa=0}^{1} \left|\|R_\kappa^w u_-(t,\cdot)\|_{H^{p+1,\infty}} - \|R_\kappa^w u_{\text{NF}}(t,\cdot)\|_{H^{p,\infty}}\right| \leq C \varepsilon^2 t^{-1+\frac{\beta}{2}}.
\]

After (1.1.11a) this means that \( u_{\text{NF}} \) and \( R_1 u_{\text{NF}} \) decay in the \( H^{p+1,\infty} \) norm at the same rate \( t^{-1/2} \) as \( u_- \), \( R_1 u_- \), and the propagation of a suitable estimate of this norm will provide us with enhanced (1.1.11a).

Let us rewrite \( Q_0^w(v_\pm, D_1 v_\pm) \) as follows

\[
(3.1.13) \quad Q_0^w(v_\pm, D_1 v_\pm) = -\frac{1}{2} \sum_{j \in \{+, -\}} \int e^{i\xi \cdot x} \left( 1 - \frac{\xi - \eta}{\langle \xi - \eta \rangle} \cdot \frac{\eta}{\langle \eta \rangle} \right) \eta_j \dot{v}_j(\xi - \eta) \dot{v}_j(\eta) d\xi d\eta,
\]

and introduce, for any \( j \in \{+, -\} \),

\[
(3.1.14) \quad D_j(\xi, \eta) := \frac{1 - \frac{\xi - \eta}{\langle \xi - \eta \rangle} \cdot \frac{\eta}{\langle \eta \rangle}}{j(\xi - \eta) + j(\eta) + \langle \xi \rangle}.
\]

**Proposition 3.1.2.** Assume that \((u, v)\) is solution to \((1.1.1)\) in \([1, T]\) for a fixed \( T > 1\), consider \((u_+, v_+, u_-, v_-)\) defined in \((1.1.5)\) and solution to \((2.1.2)\) with \(|I| = 0\), remind definition \((2.1.1)\) of vectors \(U, V\) and \((3.1.3)\) of \(u_{\text{NF}}\). Let

\[
(3.1.15) \quad u_{\text{NF}} := u_- - \frac{i}{4(2\pi)^2} \sum_{j \in \{+, -\}} \int e^{i\xi \cdot x} D_j(\xi, \eta) \dot{v}_j(\xi - \eta) \dot{v}_j(\eta) d\xi d\eta,
\]

with multiplier \(D_j\) defined in \((3.1.14)\). For every \( t \in [1, T] \) \( u_{\text{NF}} \) is solution to

\[
(3.1.16) \quad (D_t + |D_x|)u_{\text{NF}}(t,x) = q_w(t,x) + c_w(t,x) + r_{\text{NF}}(t,x),
\]

where quadratic term \(q_w\) is given by

\[
(3.1.17) \quad q_w(t,x) = \frac{1}{2} \left[ v_{\text{NF}} D_1 v_{\text{NF}} - \frac{D_x}{D_x} v_{\text{NF}} \cdot \frac{D_x D_1}{D_x} v_{\text{NF}} \right],
\]

100
while cubic terms $c_w, r^\text{NF}_w$ are equal, respectively, to

\[
\begin{align*}
c_w(t, x) &= \frac{1}{2} \left[ \frac{(v_- - v^{\text{NF}})}{D_x} D_1 v_- + v^{\text{NF}} D_1 (v_- - v^{\text{NF}}) \right], \\
r^\text{NF}_w(t, x) &= -\frac{i}{4(2\pi)^2} \sum_{j \in \{+, -\}} \int e^{ix\cdot \xi} D_j(\xi, \eta) \left[ \hat{\mathcal{N}L}_k \hat{v}_j(\xi - \eta) + \hat{v}_j(\xi - \eta) \hat{\mathcal{N}L}_k(\eta) \right] d\xi d\eta.
\end{align*}
\]

(3.1.18)

and

(3.1.19)

For any $s, \rho \geq 0$, any $t \in [1, T]$,

(3.1.20a)  
\[ \|u^{\text{NF}}(t, \cdot) - u_-(t, \cdot)\|_{H^s} \lesssim \|V(t, \cdot)\|_{L^\infty} \|V(t, \cdot)\|_{H^{s+15}}, \]

(3.1.20b)  
\[ \|u^{\text{NF}}(t, \cdot) - u_-(t, \cdot)\|_{H^{s+1, \infty}} \lesssim \|V(t, \cdot)\|_{L^\infty} \|V(t, \cdot)\|_{H^{s+18}}, \]

(3.1.20c)  
\[ \|R_j u^{\text{NF}}(t, \cdot) - R_j u_-(t, \cdot)\|_{H^{s+1, \infty}} \lesssim \|V(t, \cdot)\|_{L^\infty} \|V(t, \cdot)\|_{H^{s+18}}, \quad j = 1, 2. \]

Moreover, for any cut-off function $\chi \in C^\infty_0(\mathbb{R}^2)$ and $\sigma > 0$ there exists some $\chi_1 \in C^\infty_0(\mathbb{R}^2)$ and $s > 0$ such that

(3.1.21a)  
\[ \left\| \chi(t^{-\sigma} D_x) c_w(t, \cdot) \right\|_{L^2} \lesssim t^\sigma \left\| \chi(t^{-\sigma} D_x)(v^{\text{NF}} - v_-)(t, \cdot) \right\|_{L^2} \left( \|V(t, \cdot)\|_{H^{2, \infty}} + \|v^{\text{NF}}(t, \cdot)\|_{H^{1, \infty}} \right) 
+ t^{-N(s)} \left( \|v^{\text{NF}} - v_-\|_{L^2} \|V(t, \cdot)\|_{H^s} + \|v^{\text{NF}}(t, \cdot)\|_{H^s} \right), \]

(3.1.21b)  
\[ \left\| \chi(t^{-\sigma} D_x) c_w(t, \cdot) \right\|_{L^\infty} \lesssim t^\sigma \left\| \chi(t^{-\sigma} D_x)(v^{\text{NF}} - v_-)(t, \cdot) \right\|_{L^\infty} \left( \|V(t, \cdot)\|_{H^{2, \infty}} + \|v^{\text{NF}}(t, \cdot)\|_{H^{1, \infty}} \right) 
+ t^{-N(s)} \left( \|v^{\text{NF}} - v_-\|_{L^2} \|V(t, \cdot)\|_{H^s} + \|v^{\text{NF}}(t, \cdot)\|_{H^s} \right), \]

(3.1.21c)  
\[ \left\| \chi(t^{-\sigma} D_x) \Omega c_w(t, \cdot) \right\|_{L^2} \lesssim t^\sigma \left\| \chi(t^{-\sigma} D_x) \frac{2}{\Omega} (v^{\text{NF}} - v_-)(t, \cdot) \right\|_{L^2} \left( \|V(t, \cdot)\|_{H^{2, \infty}} + \|v^{\text{NF}}(t, \cdot)\|_{H^{1, \infty}} \right) 
+ t^{-N(s)} \left( \|v^{\text{NF}} - v_-\|_{L^2} \|V(t, \cdot)\|_{H^s} + \|v^{\text{NF}}(t, \cdot)\|_{H^s} \right) 
+ t^\sigma \left( \|v^{\text{NF}} - v_-\|_{L^2} \|V(t, \cdot)\|_{H^s} + \|v^{\text{NF}}(t, \cdot)\|_{H^s} \right) \times \sum_{\mu = 0}^1 \left( \left\| \Omega^\mu V(t, \cdot) \right\|_{H^1} + \left\| \Omega^\mu v^{\text{NF}}(t, \cdot) \right\|_{L^2} \right) \]

with $N(s) > 0$ as large as we want as long as $s > 0$ is large, and

(3.1.22a)  
\[ \left\| \chi(t^{-\sigma} D_x) r^{\text{NF}}_w(t, \cdot) \right\|_{L^2} \lesssim \|V(t, \cdot)\|_{H^{13, \infty}} \|U(t, \cdot)\|_{H^1}, \]

(3.1.22b)  
\[ \left\| \chi(t^{-\sigma} D_x) r^{\text{NF}}_w(t, \cdot) \right\|_{L^\infty} \lesssim \|V(t, \cdot)\|_{H^{13, \infty}}^2 \|U(t, \cdot)\|_{H^{2, \infty}} + \|R^1 U(t, \cdot)\|_{H^{2, \infty}}, \]

and for any $\theta \in [0, 1],$

(3.1.22c)  
\[ \left\| \chi(t^{-\sigma} D_x) \Omega r^{\text{NF}}_w(t, \cdot) \right\|_{L^2} \lesssim t^\beta \left[ \|V(t, \cdot)\|_{H^{15, \infty}} \|V(t, \cdot)\|_{H^{17}} \|U(t, \cdot)\|_{H^{1, \infty}} + \|R^1 U(t, \cdot)\|_{H^{1, \infty}} \right] 
+ \|V(t, \cdot)\|_{L^\infty} \left( \|U(t, \cdot)\|_{H^{10, \infty}} + \|R^1 U(t, \cdot)\|_{H^{10, \infty}} \right) \|U(t, \cdot)\|_{H^{18}} \|\Omega V(t, \cdot)\|_{L^2} 
+ t^\beta \left[ \|V(t, \cdot)\|_{H^{1, \infty}} \|U(t, \cdot)\|_{H^1} + \|\Omega U(t, \cdot)\|_{H^1} \right] 
+ \left( \|U(t, \cdot)\|_{H^{2, \infty}} + \|R^1 U(t, \cdot)\|_{H^{2, \infty}} \right) \|V(t, \cdot)\|_{L^2} + \|\Omega V(t, \cdot)\|_{L^2} \right] \|V(t, \cdot)\|_{H^{17, \infty}}. \]
Proof. By definition \((3.1.15)\) of \(u^{NF}\), system \((2.1.2)\) with \(|I| = 0\), \((3.1.13)\) and \((3.1.14)\), it follows that \(u^{NF}\) is solution to

\[
(D_t + |D_x|)u^{NF}(t,x) = \frac{1}{2} 3 \left[ v_+ D_1 v_- + \frac{D_x}{D_x} v_+ \cdot \frac{D_x D_t}{D_x} v_- \right] + r_w^{NF}(t,x),
\]

with \(r_w^{NF}\) given by \((3.1.19)\). Reminding that \(v_+ = -\overline{v}\) and replacing each occurrence of \(v_-\) in the quadratic contribution to the above right hand side, we find that \(u^{NF}\) is solution to \((3.1.16)\).

The first part of lemma \(\text{A.8}\) and the fact that any \(H^{p+1,\infty}\) injects into \(H^{p+3}\) by Sobolev inequality immediately imply estimates \((3.1.20)\) and

\[
\|\chi(t^{-\sigma} D_x) r_w^{NF}(t,\cdot)\|_{L^2} \lesssim \|NL_{kg}(t,\cdot)\|_{L^2} \|V(t,\cdot)\|_{H^{13,\infty}},
\]

\[
\|\chi(t^{-\sigma} D_x) r_w^{NF}(t,\cdot)\|_{L^\infty} \lesssim \|NL_{kg}(t,\cdot)\|_{L^\infty} \|V(t,\cdot)\|_{H^{13,\infty}},
\]

for any \(s, \rho \geq 0\). Moreover, from \(\text{A.37a}\) we derive that

\[
\|\chi(t^{-\sigma} D_x) r^{NF}(t,\cdot)\|_{L^2} \lesssim \left( \|NL_{kg}(t,\cdot)\|_{L^2} + \|\Omega NL_{kg}(t,\cdot)\|_{L^2} \right) \|V(t,\cdot)\|_{H^{17,\infty}} + t^{\beta} \|NL_{kg}(t,\cdot)\|_{H^{15,\infty}} \|\Omega V(t,\cdot)\|_{L^2},
\]

so estimates \((3.1.22)\) are obtained using \((3.1.4a), (3.1.4e)\) with \(s = 15\), and \((3.1.4h)\).

Finally, inequality \((3.1.21a)\) (resp. \((3.1.21b)\)) is obtained using lemma \(\text{B.2.2}\) in appendix \(\text{B}\) with \(L = L^2\) (resp. \(L = L^\infty\), \(w = v_- - v^{NF}\), and the fact that \(\chi_1(t^{-\sigma} D_x)\) is continuous from \(L^2\) to \(H^1\) (resp. from \(L^\infty\) to \(H^{1,\infty}\)) with norm \(O(t^{\sigma})\). Inequality \((3.1.21c)\) is deduced applying \(\Omega\) to \((3.1.18)\) and using the Leibniz rule. The \(L^2\) norm of products in which \(\Omega\) is acting on \(v_- - v^{NF}\) is estimated by means of lemma \(\text{B.2.2}\) with \(L = L^2\), \(w = v_- - v^{NF}\), whereas the \(L^2\) norm of the remaining products is simply estimated by taking the \(L^\infty\) norm on \(v_- - v^{NF}\) times the \(L^2\) norm of the remaining factor. \(\square\)

### 3.2 From PDEs to ODEs

In the previous section we showed that, if \((u_-, v_-)\) is solution to system \((5.1.1)\) in some interval \([1, T]\), for a fixed \(T > 1\), one can define two new functions, \(v^{NF}\) as in \((3.1.13)\) and \(u^{NF}\) as in \((3.1.15)\), respectively comparable to \(v_-\) and \(u_-\) in the sense of \((4.1.2)\) and \((4.1.2)\), such that \((u^{NF}, v^{NF})\) is solution to a new wave-Klein-Gordon system:

\[
(3.2.1) \begin{cases}
(D_t + |D_x|) u^{NF}(t,x) = q_w(t,x) + c_w(t,x) + r_w^{NF}(t,x), \\
(D_t + |D_x|) v^{NF}(t,x) = r_{kg}^{NF}(t,x),
\end{cases}
\]

for every \((t,x) \in [1, T] \times \mathbb{R}^2\), where quadratic inhomogeneous term \(q_w\) is given by \((3.1.17)\) and cubic ones \(c_w, r_w^{NF}\) and \(r_{kg}^{NF}\) respectively by \((3.1.18), (3.1.19)\) and \((3.1.19)\).

As anticipated before, our aim is to deduce from \((3.2.1)\) a system made of a transport equation and an ODE, from which it will be possible to deduce suitable estimates on \((u^{NF}, v^{NF})\) (and consequently on \((u_-, v_-)\)). Thanks to \((3.1.2)\) and \((3.1.12)\) these estimates will allow us to close the bootstrap argument and prove theorem \(1.1.2\).

In subsection \(3.2.1\) we focus on the deduction of the mentioned ODE starting from the Klein-Gordon equation satisfied by \(v^{NF}\), while in subsection \(3.2.2\) we show how to derive a transport equation from the wave equation satisfied by \(u^{NF}\). The framework in which this plan takes place is the semi-classical framework, introduced below.
Let us introduce the semi-classical parameter $h := t^{-1}$ together with the following two new functions:

$$\tilde{u}(t, x) := t^N_F(t, tx), \quad \tilde{v}(t, x) := t^N_F(t, tx),$$

and observe that, from definition (3.2.2) and inequalities (3.1.12), (3.1.2), a-priori estimates (1.1.11a), (1.1.11b) are equivalent respectively to

$$(3.2.3a) \quad \|\tilde{u}(t, \cdot)\|_{H^{k+1, \infty}_h} + \|\Omega^w_h(x, \xi)|^{-1}\tilde{u}(t, \cdot)\|_{H^{k+1, \infty}_h} \leq C\varepsilon h^{-\frac{1}{2}},$$

$$(3.2.3b) \quad \|\tilde{v}(t, \cdot)\|_{H^{k, \infty}_h} \leq C\varepsilon,$$

for some positive constant $C$. A suitable propagation of the above estimates will therefore provide us with (1.1.12a) and (1.1.12b).

A straight computation shows that $\tilde{(u, v)}$ satisfies the following coupled system of semi-classical pseudo-differential equations:

$$(3.2.4) \quad \left\{ \begin{array}{l} \left[ D_t - \Omega^w_h(x, \xi - |\xi|) \right] \tilde{u}(t, x) = h^{-1} \left[ q_w(t, tx) + c_w(t, tx) + r^N_F(t, tx) \right] \\
\left[ D_t - \Omega^w_h(x, \xi - |\xi|) \right] \tilde{v}(t, x) = h^{-1} r^N_F(t, tx), \end{array} \right.$$  

where $\Omega^w_h$ denotes the semi-classical Weyl quantization introduced in (1.1.17) (ii). Moreover, if $M_j$ (resp. $L_j$), $j = 1, 2$, is the operator introduced in (1.2.17) (resp. (1.2.68)), $M_j \tilde{u}$ (resp. $L_j \tilde{v}$) can be expressed in term of $Z_j u^N_F$ (resp. $Z_j v^N_F$). We have the following general result:

**Lemma 3.2.1.** (i) Let $w(t, x)$ be a solution to the inhomogeneous half wave equation

$$(3.2.5) \quad [D_t + |D_x|] w(t, x) = f(t, x),$$

and $\tilde{w}(t, x) = tw(t, tx)$. For any $j = 1, 2$,

$$(3.2.6) \quad Z_j w(t, y) = i h \left[ -M_j \tilde{w}(t, x) + \frac{1}{2i} \Omega^w_h \left( \frac{\xi_j}{|\xi|} \right) \tilde{w}(t, x) \right] |_{x = \frac{y}{t}} + iy_j f(t, y);$$

(ii) If $w(t, x)$ is solution to the inhomogeneous half Klein-Gordon equation

$$(3.2.7) \quad [D_t + \langle D_x \rangle] w(t, x) = f(t, x),$$

then

$$(3.2.8) \quad Z_j w(t, y) = i h \left[ -\Omega^w_h(\xi) L_j \tilde{w}(t, x) + \frac{1}{4} \Omega^w_h \left( \frac{\xi_j}{|\xi|} \right) \tilde{w}(t, x) \right] |_{x = \frac{y}{t}} + iy_j f(t, y).$$

**Proof.** (i) If $w$ is solution to half wave equation (3.2.5) then $\tilde{w}(t, x)$ satisfies

$$[D_t - \Omega^w_h(x, \xi - |\xi|)] \tilde{w}(t, x) = h^{-1} f(t, tx),$$

so, for any $i = 1, 2$,

$$(3.2.9) \quad Z_j w(t, y) =$$

$$i h^{-1} \left[ x_j D_t + \Omega^w_h(\xi_j - x_j x, \xi) + \frac{3h}{2i} x_j \left( \frac{1}{t} \tilde{w}(t, x) \right) \right] |_{x = \frac{y}{t}}$$

$$= i \left[ x_j D_t + \Omega^w_h(\xi_j - x_j x, \xi) + \frac{h}{2i} x_j \right] \tilde{w}(t, x) |_{x = \frac{y}{t}}$$

$$= i \left[ x_j \Omega^w_h(x, \xi - |\xi|) \tilde{w}(t, x) + \Omega^w_h(\xi_j - x_j x, \xi) \tilde{w}(t, x) + \frac{h}{2i} x_j \tilde{w}(t, x) + h^{-1} x_j f(t, tx) \right] |_{x = \frac{y}{t}}$$

$$= i h \left[ -M_j \tilde{w}(t, x) + \frac{1}{2i} \Omega^w_h \left( \frac{\xi_j}{|\xi|} \right) \tilde{w}(t, x) \right] |_{x = \frac{y}{t}} + iy_j f(t, y).$$
We should specify that last equality is obtained by a trivial version of symbolic calculus (1.2.18), that applies also to symbols \( b(\xi) \) singular at \( \xi = 0 \). Indeed, if symbol \( a = a(x, \xi) \) is linear in \( x \), and \( b(\xi) \) is lipschitz, the development \( a^* b \) is actually finite:

\[
a^* b(x, \xi) = a(x, \xi) b(\xi) - \frac{h}{2i} \partial_x a(x, \xi) \cdot \partial_\xi b(\xi).
\]

\((ii)\) The result is analogous to the previous one, after observing that \( \tilde{w} \) satisfies

\[
[D_t - \text{Op}_r^w (x \cdot \xi - \langle \xi \rangle)] \tilde{w}(t, x) = h^{-1} f(t, tx).
\]

As a straight consequence of lemma \([3.2.1]\) and system \([3.2.1] \) we have that

(3.2.9a)

\[
Z_j u^{N\xi}(t, y) = \frac{ih}{2i} \partial_y \left( \frac{\xi_j}{\xi} \right) \tilde{u}(t, x) \bigg|_{x = \frac{y}{t}} + i y_j \left[ q_w + c_w + r_w^{N\xi} \right] (t, y),
\]

(3.2.9b)

\[
Z_j v^{N\xi}(t, y) = \frac{ih}{2i} \partial_y \left( \frac{\xi_j}{\xi} \right) \tilde{v}(t, x) \bigg|_{x = \frac{y}{t}} + i y_j r_w^{N\xi}(t, y).
\]

In view of lemma \([3.2.14]\) it is also useful to write down the analogous relation between \((Z_m Z_n u)_- \) and \( M[t(Z_n u)_-(t, tx)] \). As \((Z_n u)_- \) is solution to

(3.2.10)

\[
(Z_m Z_n u)_-(t, y) = \frac{ih}{2i} \partial_y \left( \frac{\xi_m}{\xi} \right) \tilde{u}(t, x) \bigg|_{x = \frac{y}{t}} + i y_m Z_m NL_w(t, y) - D_m \left( \frac{D_y}{|D_y|} \right) (Z_n u)_-(t, y),
\]

where \( J \) is the index such that \( \Gamma^J = Z_n \) and \( \tilde{u}^J(t, x) := t(Z_n u)_-(t, tx) \). Also, observe that from \([1.1.15], [1.1.16], [1.1.5] \) and \([1.1.10]\) we find that

(3.2.11)

\[
|Z_n NL_w(t, \cdot)|_{L^2} \lesssim |Z_n V(t, \cdot)|_{H^1} \|V(t, \cdot)|_{H^{1, \infty}} + \|V(t, \cdot)|_{H^1} \|L^\infty \|U(t, \cdot)|_{H^{1, \infty}} + \|V(t, \cdot)|_{H^{1, \infty}} \|U(t, \cdot)|_{H^{1, \infty}} \|V(t, \cdot)|_{H^{1, \infty}}.
\]

Moreover, from the definition of \( M_j \) and \( L_j \) we see that

\[
hM_j \tilde{w}(t, x) = \frac{y_j}{2i} \partial_y |D_y| w(t, y)|_{y = tx},
\]

\[
h\partial_y \left( \frac{\xi}{\xi} \right) L_j \tilde{w}(t, x) = \left[ \frac{y_j}{|D_y|} D_j \right] w(t, y)|_{y = tx},
\]

so lemma \([3.2.1]\) implies that, if \( w \) is solution to half wave equation \([3.2.5]\) (resp. to half Klein-Gordon \([3.2.7]\)),

(3.2.12a)

\[
[y_j |D_y| - tD_j + \frac{1}{2i} \frac{D_j}{|D_y|}] w(t, y) = i Z_j w(t, y) + \frac{1}{2i} \frac{D_j}{|D_y|} w(t, y) + y_j f(t, y),
\]

(3.2.12b)

\[
\text{(resp. } [(D_y) y_j - tD_j] w(t, y) = i Z_j w(t, y) - i \frac{D_j}{|D_y|} w(t, y) + y_j f(t, y)\text{)}.
\]
3.2.1 Derivation of the ODE and propagation of the uniform estimate on the Klein-Gordon component

Let us firstly deal with the semi-classical Klein-Gordon equation satisfied by $\tilde{v}$:

\begin{equation}
\left[D_t - \text{Op}_h^w(x \cdot \xi - p(\xi))\right]\tilde{v}(t, x) = h^{-1}r_{kg}^{NF}(t, x),
\end{equation}

where $p(\xi) = \langle \xi \rangle$ and $r_{kg}^{NF}$ is given by (3.1.3) and satisfies (3.1.6). We remind that $p'(\xi)$ denotes the gradient of $p(\xi)$ while $p''(\xi)$ is its $2 \times 2$ Hessian matrix, and that $L_j$ is the operator introduced in (1.2.68) for $j = 1, 2$. We also remind definition (1.2.66) of manifold $\Lambda_{kg}$, represented in dimension 1 by picture 3.1 below, and decompose $\tilde{v}$ into the sum of two contributions: one localized in a neighbourhood of $\Lambda_{kg}$ of size $\sqrt{h}$ (in the spirit of [14]), the other localized out of this neighbourhood. The contribution localized away from $\Lambda_{kg}$ appears to be $O(h^{1/2-0})$ if we assume a moderate growth for the $L^2$ norm of $L^\mu \tilde{v}$, with $0 \leq |\mu| \leq 2$, and has hence a better decay in time than the one expected for $\tilde{v}$ (remind $h = t^{-1}$). Thus the main contribution to $\tilde{v}$ is the one localized around $\Lambda_{kg}$. We are going to show that this latter one is solution to an ODE (see proposition 3.2.6) and that its $H^\rho, \infty_h$ norm is uniformly bounded in time, which will finally enable us to propagate (3.2.3b) and obtain (1.1.11b) (see proposition 3.2.7).

For any fixed $\rho \in \mathbb{Z}$ let $\Sigma(\xi) := \langle \xi \rangle^\rho$, and for some $\gamma, \chi \in C^\infty_0(\mathbb{R}^2)$ equal to 1 close to the origin, $\sigma > 0$ small (e.g. $\sigma < \frac{1}{4}$) let

\begin{equation}
\Gamma_{kg} := \text{Op}_h^w \left( \gamma \left( \frac{x - p'(\xi)}{\sqrt{h}} \right) \chi(h^\sigma \xi) \right).
\end{equation}

We also introduce the following notations:

\begin{equation}
\tilde{v}^{\Sigma} := \text{Op}_h^w(\Sigma(\xi))\tilde{v},
\end{equation}

\begin{equation}
\tilde{v}^{\Sigma}_{\Lambda_{kg}} := \Gamma_{kg} \tilde{v}^{\Sigma},
\end{equation}

\begin{equation}
\tilde{v}^{\Sigma}_{\Lambda_{kg}} := \Gamma_{kg} \tilde{v}^{\Sigma}.
\end{equation}

so that $\tilde{v}^{\Sigma} = \tilde{v}^{\Sigma}_{\Lambda_{kg}} + \tilde{v}^{\Sigma}_{\Lambda_{kg}}$, and remind that $\|L^{\gamma} w\| = \|L_{1}^{\gamma_1} L_{2}^{\gamma_2} w\|$, for any $\gamma = (\gamma_1, \gamma_2) \in \mathbb{N}^2$. 

Figure 3.1: Lagrangian for the Klein-Gordon equation
Lemma 3.2.2. Let \( \tilde{\gamma} \in C^\infty(\mathbb{R}^2) \) vanish in a neighbourhood of the origin and be such that \( |\partial_z^\alpha \tilde{\gamma}(z)| \lesssim \langle z \rangle^{-|\alpha|} \). Let \( c(x, \xi) \in \mathcal{S}_\delta(1) \) with \( \delta \in [0, \frac{1}{2}] \), \( \alpha \rightarrow 0 \), be supported for \( |\xi| \lesssim h^{-\sigma} \). For any \( \chi \in C^\infty_0(\mathbb{R}^2) \) such that \( \chi(h^\sigma \xi) \equiv 1 \) on the support of \( c(x, \xi) \),

\[
(3.2.17a) \quad \left\| \text{Op}_h^w \left( \frac{x - p'(\xi)}{\sqrt{h}} \right) c(x, \xi) \right\|_{L^2} \lesssim \sum_{|\mu| = 0} h^{\frac{1}{2} - \beta} \left\| \text{Op}_h^w(\chi(h^\sigma \xi)) L^\mu w \right\|_{L^2},
\]

\[
(3.2.17b) \quad \left\| \text{Op}_h^w \left( \frac{x - p'(\xi)}{\sqrt{h}} \right) c(x, \xi) \right\|_{L^\infty} \lesssim \sum_{|\mu| = 0} h^{-\beta} \left\| \text{Op}_h^w(\chi(h^\sigma \xi)) L^\mu w \right\|_{L^2},
\]

and

\[
(3.2.18a) \quad \left\| \text{Op}_h^w \left( \frac{x - p'(\xi)}{\sqrt{h}} \right) c(x, \xi) \right\|_{L^2} \lesssim \sum_{|\mu| = 0} 2 h^{1 - \beta} \left\| \text{Op}_h^w(\chi(h^\sigma \xi)) L^\mu w \right\|_{L^2},
\]

\[
(3.2.18b) \quad \left\| \text{Op}_h^w \left( \frac{x - p'(\xi)}{\sqrt{h}} \right) c(x, \xi) \right\|_{L^\infty} \lesssim \sum_{|\mu| = 0} 2 h^{\frac{1}{2} - \beta} \left\| \text{Op}_h^w(\chi(h^\sigma \xi)) L^\mu w \right\|_{L^2},
\]

for a small \( \beta > 0 \), \( \beta \to 0 \) as \( \sigma \to 0 \).

Proof. The proof of (3.2.17) (resp. of (3.2.18)) follows straightly by inequalities (1.2.70) (resp. (1.2.71)), after observing that, as \( \tilde{\gamma} \) vanishes in a neighbourhood of the origin,

\[
\tilde{\gamma}(\frac{x - p'(\xi)}{\sqrt{h}}) c(x, \xi) = \sum_{j=1}^2 \tilde{\gamma}_j \left( \frac{x - p'(\xi)}{\sqrt{h}} \right) \left( \frac{x_j - p_j'(\xi)}{\sqrt{h}} \right) c(x, \xi),
\]

where \( \tilde{\gamma}_1(j) := \tilde{\gamma}(z)z_j|z|^{-2} \) is such that \( |\partial_z^\alpha \tilde{\gamma}_1(j)| \lesssim \langle z \rangle^{-1 - |\alpha|} \) (resp.

\[
\tilde{\gamma}(\frac{x - p'(\xi)}{\sqrt{h}}) c(x, \xi) = \sum_{j=1}^2 \tilde{\gamma}_2 \left( \frac{x - p'(\xi)}{\sqrt{h}} \right) \left( \frac{x_j - p_j'(\xi)}{\sqrt{h}} \right)^2 c(x, \xi),
\]

where \( \tilde{\gamma}_2(j) := \tilde{\gamma}(z)|z|^{-2} \) is such that \( |\partial_z^\alpha \tilde{\gamma}_2(j)| \lesssim \langle z \rangle^{-2 - |\alpha|} \).

Corollary 3.2.3. There exists \( s > 0 \) sufficiently large such that

\[
(3.2.19a) \quad \left\| \tilde{\nu}_{\chi_k}^\Sigma(t, \cdot) \right\|_{L^2} \lesssim h^{1 - \beta} \left( \|\tilde{\nu}(t, \cdot)\|_{H^s_k} + \sum_{1 \leq |\mu| \leq 2} \|\text{Op}_h^w(\chi(h^\sigma \xi)) L^\mu \tilde{\nu}(t, \cdot)\|_2 \right),
\]

\[
(3.2.19b) \quad \left\| \tilde{\nu}_{\chi_k}^\Sigma(t, \cdot) \right\|_{L^\infty} \lesssim h^{\frac{1}{2} - \beta} \left( \|\tilde{\nu}(t, \cdot)\|_{H^s_k} + \sum_{1 \leq |\mu| \leq 2} \|\text{Op}_h^w(\chi(h^\sigma \xi)) L^\mu \tilde{\nu}(t, \cdot)\|_2 \right).
\]

for a small \( \beta > 0 \), \( \beta \to 0 \) as \( \sigma \to 0 \).

Proof. Since symbol \( 1 - \gamma(\frac{x - p'(\xi)}{\sqrt{h}}) \chi(h^\sigma \xi) \) is supported for \( \frac{|x - p'(\xi)|}{\sqrt{h}} \geq d_1 > 0 \) or \( |h^\sigma \xi| \geq d_2 > 0 \), for some small \( d_1, d_2 > 0 \), we may consider a smooth cut-off function \( \tilde{\chi} \) equal to \( 1 \) close to the origin and such that \( \tilde{\chi} \chi \equiv \chi \), so that \( 1 - \gamma(\frac{x - p'(\xi)}{\sqrt{h}}) \chi(h^\sigma \xi) \) writes as

\[
\left[ 1 - \gamma(\frac{x - p'(\xi)}{\sqrt{h}}) \right] \chi(h^\sigma \xi) + \left[ 1 - \gamma(\frac{x - p'(\xi)}{\sqrt{h}}) \chi(h^\sigma \xi) \right] (1 - \tilde{\chi})(h^\sigma \xi),
\]

106
the first symbol being supported in \( \{(x, \xi) : \left|\frac{x-p'(\xi)}{\sqrt{h}}\right| \geq d_1, |\xi| \lesssim h^{-\sigma}\} \), the second one for large frequencies \( |\xi| \gtrsim h^{-\sigma}\).

Using lemma [2.24] and the fact that \( \gamma\left(\frac{x-p'(\xi)}{\sqrt{h}}\right)\chi(h^\sigma\xi) \in S^1_{\frac{1}{2},\sigma}\left(\left(\frac{x-p'(\xi)}{\sqrt{h}}\right)^{-M}\right) \), for any \( M \in \mathbb{N} \), we have that, for a fixed \( N \in \mathbb{N}^* \),

\[
1 - \gamma\left(\frac{x-p'(\xi)}{\sqrt{h}}\right)\chi(h^\sigma\xi) \in S^1_{\frac{1}{2},\sigma}\left(\left(\frac{x-p'(\xi)}{\sqrt{h}}\right)^{-M}\right),
\]

\[
1 - \chi(h^\sigma\xi) \simeq 1 - \chi(h^\sigma\xi),
\]

\[
1 - \gamma\left(\frac{x-p'(\xi)}{\sqrt{h}}\right)\chi(h^\sigma\xi) \simeq 1 - \chi(h^\sigma\xi),
\]

where function \( \tilde{\chi}_j(h^\sigma\xi) \) is still supported for large frequencies \( |\xi| \gtrsim h^{-\sigma} \), for every \( 1 \leq j < N \), up to negligible multiplicative constants,

\[
a_j(x, \xi) = h^{j\frac{1}{2}\sigma} \sum_{|\alpha| = j} (\partial^\alpha \gamma)\left(\frac{x-p'(\xi)}{\sqrt{h}}\right)\chi(h^\sigma\xi) \in S^1_{\frac{1}{2},\sigma}\left(\left(\frac{x-p'(\xi)}{\sqrt{h}}\right)^{-M}\right),
\]

and \( r_N \in h^{N\frac{1}{2}\sigma} S^1_{\frac{1}{2},\sigma}\left(\left(\frac{x-p'(\xi)}{\sqrt{h}}\right)^{-M}\right) \). Lemma [2.40], proposition [2.36], and the semi-classical Sobolev injection imply that

\[
\|\text{Op}_h^w\left[1 - \gamma\left(\frac{x-p'(\xi)}{\sqrt{h}}\right)\chi(h^\sigma\xi)\right](t, \cdot)\|_{L^2} \lesssim h^{N(s)} \|\tilde{v}(t, \cdot)\|_{H^s_h},
\]

\[
\|\text{Op}_h^w\left[1 - \chi(h^\sigma\xi)\right](t, \cdot)\|_{L^\infty} \lesssim h^{N'(s)} \|\tilde{v}(t, \cdot)\|_{H^s_h},
\]

where \( N(s), N'(s) \geq 1 \) if \( s > 2 \) is sufficiently large.

On the other hand, as function \( (1 - \gamma)\left(\frac{x-p'(\xi)}{\sqrt{h}}\right) \) vanishes in a neighbourhood of the origin and is such that \( |\partial^\alpha_x(1 - \gamma)(z)| \leq |z|^{-|\alpha|} \), by inequalities (3.2.18) and the fact that, using symbolic calculus to commute \( \mathcal{L} \) with \( \Sigma(\xi) \),

\[
(3.2.20) \quad \|\text{Op}_h^w(\chi(h^\sigma\xi)\mathcal{L}^{\mu}\tilde{\Sigma}(t, \cdot))\|_{L^2} \lesssim h^{-\nu} \sum_{|\mu_1| \leq |\mu|} \|\text{Op}_h^w(\chi(h^\sigma\xi)\mathcal{L}^{\mu_1}\tilde{\Sigma}(t, \cdot))\|_{L^2}
\]

with \( \nu = \rho_\sigma \) if \( \rho \geq 0 \), 0 otherwise, we have that

\[
\|\text{Op}_h^w\left((1 - \gamma)\left(\frac{x-p'(\xi)}{\sqrt{h}}\right)\chi(h^\sigma\xi)\right)(t, \cdot)\|_{L^2} \lesssim \sum_{|\mu| \leq 2} h^{1-\beta} \|\text{Op}_h^w(\chi(h^\sigma\xi)\mathcal{L}^{\mu}\tilde{\Sigma}(t, \cdot))\|_{L^2},
\]

\[
\|\text{Op}_h^w\left((1 - \gamma)\left(\frac{x-p'(\xi)}{\sqrt{h}}\right)\chi(h^\sigma\xi)\right)(t, \cdot)\|_{L^\infty} \lesssim \sum_{|\mu| \leq 2} h^{\beta} \|\text{Op}_h^w(\chi(h^\sigma\xi)\mathcal{L}^{\mu}\tilde{\Sigma}(t, \cdot))\|_{L^2},
\]

for a small \( \beta > 0 \), \( \beta \to 0 \) as \( \sigma \to 0 \).

In the following lemma we show how to develop the symbol \( a(x, \xi) \) associated to an operator acting on \( \Gamma^{kg}w \), for some suitable function \( w \), at \( \xi = -d\phi(x) \), where \( \phi(x) = \sqrt{1 - |x|^2} \).

**Lemma 3.2.4.** Let \( a(x, \xi) \) be a real symbol in \( S^\delta_0(\xi^q) \), \( q \in \mathbb{R} \), for some \( \delta > 0 \) small, \( \Sigma(\xi) = (\xi)^p \) for some fixed \( \rho \in \mathbb{Z} \), \( \Gamma^{kg} \) the operator introduced in (3.2.14) and \( w = w(t, x) \) such that \( \mathcal{L}^{\mu}w(t, \cdot) \in L^2(\mathbb{R}^2) \) for any \( |\mu| \leq 2 \). Let us also introduce \( w_{\Sigma^{kg}} := \Gamma^{kg}\text{Op}_h^w(\Sigma)w \). There exists a family \( (\theta_h(x))_h \) of \( C_0^\infty \) functions real valued, equal to 1 on the closed ball \( B_{1-ch^{2\sigma}}(0) \) and supported
in $B_{1-c_1 h^\sigma}(0)$, for some small $0 < c_1 < c, \sigma > 0$, with $\|\partial_x^\alpha \theta_h\|_{L^\infty} = O(h^{-2|\alpha|})$ and $(h \partial_h)^k \theta_h$ bounded for every $k$, such that

\begin{equation}
(3.2.21) \quad \text{Op}_h^w(a)w_{\Lambda_{kg}}^\Sigma = \theta_h(x)a(x, -d\phi(x))w_{\Lambda_{kg}}^\Sigma + R_1(w),
\end{equation}

where $R_1(w)$ satisfies

\begin{align}
(3.2.22a) \quad \|R_1(w)(t, \cdot)\|_{L^2} & \lesssim h^{1-\beta} \left(\|w(t, \cdot)\|_{H^0_k} + \sum_{|\gamma|=1} \|\text{Op}_h^w(\chi(h^\sigma \xi))\mathcal{L}^\gamma w(t, \cdot)\|_{L^2}\right), \\
(3.2.22b) \quad \|R_1(w)(t, \cdot)\|_{L^\infty} & \lesssim h^{\frac{1}{2}-\beta} \left(\|w(t, \cdot)\|_{H^0_k} + \sum_{1 \leq |\gamma| \leq 2} \|\text{Op}_h^w(\chi(h^\sigma \xi))\mathcal{L}^\gamma w(t, \cdot)\|_{L^2}\right),
\end{align}

with $\beta = \beta(\sigma, \delta) > 0$, $\beta \to 0$ as $\sigma, \delta \to 0$. Moreover, if $\partial_x a(x, \xi)$ vanishes at $\xi = -d\phi(x)$, the above estimates can be improved and $R_1(w)$ is rather a remainder $R_2(w)$ such that

\begin{align}
(3.2.23a) \quad \|R_2(w)(t, \cdot)\|_{L^2} & \lesssim h^{2-\beta} \left(\|w(t, \cdot)\|_{H^0_k} + \sum_{1 \leq |\gamma| \leq 2} \|\text{Op}_h^w(\chi(h^\sigma \xi))\mathcal{L}^\gamma w(t, \cdot)\|_{L^2}\right), \\
(3.2.23b) \quad \|R_2(w)(t, \cdot)\|_{L^\infty} & \lesssim h^{\frac{3}{2}-\beta} \left(\|w(t, \cdot)\|_{H^0_k} + \sum_{1 \leq |\gamma| \leq 2} \|\text{Op}_h^w(\chi(h^\sigma \xi))\mathcal{L}^\gamma w(t, \cdot)\|_{L^2}\right).
\end{align}

\textbf{Proof.} After lemma [1.2.38] we know that there exists a family of functions $\theta_h(x)$ as in the statement such that equality (1.2.67) holds. We highlight the fact that any derivative of $\theta_h$ vanishes on the support of $\gamma\left(x \frac{\psi'(\xi)}{\sqrt{h}}\right)\chi(h^\sigma \xi)$ and its derivatives. After remark [1.2.22] this implies that

$$w_{\Lambda_{kg}}^\Sigma = \theta_h(x)w_{\Lambda_{kg}}^\Sigma + r_\infty, \quad r_\infty \in h^N S_{\frac{1}{2}, \sigma}((x)^{-\infty})$$

and hence that

$$\text{Op}_h^w(a)w_{\Lambda_{kg}}^\Sigma = \text{Op}_h^w(a)\theta_h(x)w_{\Lambda_{kg}}^\Sigma + \text{Op}_h^w(r_\infty)w_{\Lambda_{kg}}^\Sigma,$$

with $r_\infty = a^\sharp r_\infty \in h^{N-\gamma} S_{\frac{1}{2}, \sigma}((x)^{-\infty})$ and $\gamma = q\sigma$ if $q \geq 0$, 0 otherwise. From proposition [1.2.36] and the semi-classical Sobolev injection it follows at once that $\text{Op}_h^w(r_\infty)w_{\Lambda_{kg}}^\Sigma$ satisfies enhanced estimates (3.2.23) if $N$ is taken sufficiently large. Up to negligible multiplicative constants, a further application of symbolic calculus gives also that

$$\text{Op}_h^w(a(x, \xi))\theta_h(x)w_{\Lambda_{kg}}^\Sigma = \text{Op}_h^w(a(x, \xi)\theta_h(x))w_{\Lambda_{kg}}^\Sigma + \sum_{|\alpha|=1} h^{|\alpha|} \text{Op}_h^w(\partial_x^\alpha a(x, \xi)\partial_x^\alpha \theta_h(x))w_{\Lambda_{kg}}^\Sigma + \text{Op}_h^w(r_N(x, \xi))w_{\Lambda_{kg}}^\Sigma,$$

where $r_N \in h^{N-\beta} S_{\theta', 0}((\xi)^q-N(x)^{-\infty})$ for a new small $\beta = \beta(\delta, \sigma)$ and $\delta' = \max\{\delta, \sigma\}$. From the same argument as above $\text{Op}_h^w(r_N)w_{\Lambda_{kg}}^\Sigma$ verifies enhanced estimates (3.2.23) if $N$ is suitably chosen. Also, since the support of $\partial_x^\alpha a(x, \xi) \cdot \partial_x^\alpha \theta_h(x)$ has empty intersection with that of $\gamma\left(x \frac{\psi'(\xi)}{\sqrt{h}}\right)\chi(h^\sigma \xi)$ for any $|\alpha| \geq 1$, all the $|\alpha|$-order terms in the above equality are remainders $R_1(w)$. 

108
Now, as symbol $a(x,\xi)\theta_h(x)$ is supported for $|x| \leq 1 - c_1 h^{2\sigma} < 1$, we are allowed to develop it at $\xi = -d\phi(x)$:

$$a(x,\xi)\theta_h(x) = a(x, -d\phi(x))\theta_h(x) + \sum_{|\alpha|=1}^{1} \int_0^1 (\partial^\alpha_{\xi} a)(x, t\xi + (1 - t)d\phi(x))dt \theta_h(x)(\xi + d\phi(x))^\alpha$$

$$= a(x, -d\phi(x))\theta_h(x) + \sum_{j=1}^{2} b_j(x,\xi)(x_j - p_j'(\xi)), \quad j = 1, 2.$$ (3.2.24)

with

$$b_j(x,\xi) = \sum_{|\alpha|=1}^{1} \int_0^1 (\partial^\alpha_{\xi} a)(x, t\xi + (1 - t)d\phi(x))dt \theta_h(x)(\xi + d\phi(x))^\alpha(x_j - p_j'(\xi))$$

$$|x - p_j'(\xi)|^2, \quad j = 1, 2.$$ (3.2.25)

If $\chi \in C_0^\infty(\mathbb{R}^2)$ is a new cut-off function equal to 1 close to the origin, we can reduce ourselves to the analysis of symbol $\tilde{b}_j(x,\xi)(x_j - p_j'(\xi))\chi_1(h^\sigma \xi)$. In fact, as $\tilde{b}_j(x,\xi)(x_j - p_j'(\xi))(1 - \chi_1)(h^\sigma \xi)$ is supported for large frequencies, one can prove that its operator acting on $w^\Sigma_{\Lambda_{kg}}$ is a $O_{L^2(L^\infty)}(h^N\|w(t, \cdot)\|_{L^2})$ with $N > 0$ large as long as $s > 0$ is large, by using the semi-classical Sobolev injection, symbolic calculus of proposition 1.2.21, lemma 1.2.40 and proposition 1.2.36. Furthermore, if we consider a smooth cut-off function $\bar{\gamma} \in C_0^\infty(\mathbb{R}^2)$, equal to 1 close to the origin and such that $\bar{\gamma}(\langle \xi \rangle^2(x - p'(\xi))) \equiv 1$ on the support of $\gamma(\frac{x - p'(\xi)}{\sqrt{h}})\chi(h^\sigma \xi)$ (which is possible if $\sigma < 1/4$), we have that

$$b_j(x,\xi)(x_j - p_j'(\xi))\chi_1(h^\sigma \xi) = b_j(x,\xi)(x_j - p_j'(\xi))\chi_1(h^\sigma \xi)\bar{\gamma}(\langle \xi \rangle^2(x - p'(\xi))) + b_j(x,\xi)(x_j - p_j'(\xi))\chi_1(h^\sigma \xi)(1 - \bar{\gamma})(\langle \xi \rangle^2(x - p'(\xi))).$$

Since $b_j(x,\xi)(x_j - p_j'(\xi))\chi_1(h^\sigma \xi)(1 - \bar{\gamma})(\langle \xi \rangle^2(x - p'(\xi))) \in h^{-\beta} S_{\delta,\sigma}(1)$, for some new small $\beta, \delta > 0$, and its support has empty intersection with that of $\gamma(\frac{x - p'(\xi)}{\sqrt{h}})$ (which instead belongs to class $S_{\delta,\sigma}(\frac{x - p'(\xi)}{\sqrt{h}})$, for $M \in \mathbb{N}$ as large as we want), its quantization acting on $w^\Sigma_{\Lambda_{kg}}$ is also an enhanced remainder $R_2(w)$.

The very contribution that only enjoys estimates (3.2.22) is $\text{Op}_h^\Sigma(c(x,\xi)(x_j - p_j'(\xi))) w^\Sigma_{\Lambda_{kg}}$, with $c(x,\xi) := b_j(x,\xi)\chi_1(h^\sigma \xi)\bar{\gamma}(\langle \xi \rangle^2(x - p'(\xi))) \in h^{-\beta} S_{2\sigma,\sigma}(1)$ and $\beta$ depending linearly on $\sigma$. In fact, if we assume that the support of $\chi_1$ is sufficiently small so that $\chi_1 1_N \equiv \chi_1$ and all derivatives of $\chi$ vanish on that support, by using symbolic development (1.2.18) until a sufficiently large order $N$ and observing that

$$\left\{ c(x,\xi)(x_j - p_j'(\xi)), \gamma\left(\frac{x - p'(\xi)}{\sqrt{h}}\right) \right\} = \left\{ c(x,\xi), \gamma\left(\frac{x - p'(\xi)}{\sqrt{h}}\right) \right\} (x_j - p_j'(\xi))$$

$$= \left[ (\partial_x c) \cdot (\partial_{\gamma} p'(\xi)) \frac{x - p'(\xi)}{\sqrt{h}} + (\partial_x c) \cdot (\partial_{\gamma}) \frac{x - p'(\xi)}{\sqrt{h}} p''(\xi) \right] \left( x_j - p_j'(\xi) \right)$$

does not lose any power $h^{-1/2}$, we derive that, up to negligible constants,

$$\left[ c(x,\xi)(x_j - p_j'(\xi)) \right] \gamma\left(\frac{x - p'(\xi)}{\sqrt{h}}\right) \chi(h^\sigma \xi) = \gamma\left(\frac{x - p'(\xi)}{\sqrt{h}}\right) \chi(h^\sigma \xi) c(x,\xi)(x_j - p_j'(\xi)) + \sum \gamma(\frac{x - p'(\xi)}{\sqrt{h}}) \tilde{c}(x,\xi) + r_N(x,\xi).$$
In the above equality $\sum'$ is a concise notation to indicate a linear combination, $\tilde{\gamma} \in C^\infty_0(\mathbb{R}^2 \setminus \{0\})$, $\tilde{c} \in h^{-\beta} S_{\delta,\sigma}(1)$ for some new small $\beta, \delta, \sigma > 0$, and $r_N \in h^{(N+1)/2-\beta} S_{2\delta,\sigma}((\frac{x-y'(t)}{\sqrt{h}})^{(M-1)})$ as $c(x, \xi)(x_j - p_j'(\xi)) \in h^{1/2-\beta} S_{2\sigma,\sigma}((\frac{x-y'(t)}{\sqrt{h}}))$. From inequalities (3.2.70) and (3.2.20) we deduce that $\text{Op}_h^w(\gamma(\frac{x-y'(t)}{\sqrt{h}})h^\sigma \xi c(x, \xi)(x_j - p_j'(\xi)))\text{Op}_h^w(\Sigma)w$ is a remainder $R_1(w)$ satisfying (3.2.22).

The quantization of all the addends in $\sum'$ acting on $\text{Op}_h^w(\Sigma)w$ is estimated by using that $\tilde{\gamma}(z)$ vanishes in a neighbourhood of the origin and can be rewritten as $\delta_j = \tilde{\gamma}(z)|z|^{-2}$ such that $|\tilde{\gamma}_2(z)| \lesssim |z|^{-2-|\alpha|}$. Inequalities (3.2.21) and the successive commutation of $\mathcal{L}^\gamma$ with $\Sigma$, for $|\gamma| = 1, 2$, give then that $h\text{Op}_h^w(\tilde{\gamma}(\frac{x-y'(t)}{\sqrt{h}})\tilde{c}(x, \xi))\text{Op}_h^w(\Sigma)w$ is a remainder $R_2(w)$. Finally, as

$$ r_N(x, \xi)\xi^\gamma(\Sigma) \in h^{\frac{N}{2}-2\beta-\mu} S_{\delta,\sigma}((\frac{x-p'(t)}{\sqrt{h}})^{(M-1)}) $$

with $\mu = \sigma \rho$ if $\rho \geq 0$, 0 otherwise, $\text{Op}_h^w(r_N)\text{Op}_h^w(\Sigma)w$ is also a remainder $R_2(w)$ just from (1.2.36).

If symbol $a(x, \xi)$ is such that $\partial \xi a|_{\xi=\ldots} = 0$, instead of equality (3.2.24) with $b_j$ given by (3.2.20), we have

$$ a(x, \xi)\theta_h(x) = a(x, -d\phi(x))\theta_h(x) + \sum_{j=1,2} b(x, \xi)(x_j - p_j'(\xi))^2, $$

with

$$ b(x, \xi) = \sum_{|\alpha| = 2/1} \frac{2}{\alpha!} \int_0^1 (\partial^\alpha_x a)(t\xi - (1 - t)d\phi(x))(1 - t)dt \theta_h(x)\left(\frac{x + d\phi(x)}{x - p'(t)}\right)^2. $$

The same argument as before can be applied to $\text{Op}_h^w(b(x, \xi)\theta_h(x)(x_j - p_j'(\xi))^2)w_{\xi^\beta}$ to show that it reduces to

$$ \text{Op}_h^w\left(b(x, \xi)\theta_h(x)(x_j - p_j'(\xi))^2\chi(1)\tilde{\gamma}(\langle \xi \rangle^2(x - p'(t)))\right)w_{\xi^\beta} \gamma + R_2(w), $$

with $R_2(w)$ satisfying (3.2.28). If

$$ B(x, \xi) := b(x, \xi)\theta_h(x)\chi(1)\tilde{\gamma}(\langle \xi \rangle^2(x - p'(t))) $$

then $B(x, \xi)(x_j - p_j'(\xi))^2 \in h^{-\beta} S_{\delta',\sigma}(1)$ by lemma (1.2.43) for some new small $\beta, \delta', \sigma > 0$ depending on $\sigma, \delta$. Using lemma (1.2.24) symbolic development (1.2.18) until order 4, and assuming that the support of $\chi_1$ is sufficiently small so that $\chi_1 \equiv \chi$, we derive that

$$ \left[B(x, \xi)(x_j - p_j'(\xi))^2\right] \xi^\gamma(\frac{x-p'(t)}{\sqrt{h}})\chi(h^\sigma \xi) = B(x, \xi)\gamma\left(\frac{x-p'(t)}{\sqrt{h}}\right) (x_j - p_j'(\xi))^2 $$

$$ + \frac{h}{i} \sum_{i=1}^2 (\partial_i \gamma)(\frac{x-p'(t)}{\sqrt{h}}) (x_j - p_j'(\xi)) \left[\partial_i B + \sum_{j} (\partial_{x_j} B)p_{\xi_j}'(\xi)\right] (x_j - p_j'(\xi)) $$

$$ + \sum_{2 \leq |\alpha| \leq 3} \left[\frac{h}{i} \frac{\alpha - \beta_\alpha}{|\alpha| - 3} \right] B_{\alpha}(x, \xi) + r_4(x, \xi), $$

where $\gamma_\alpha \in C^\infty_0(\mathbb{R}^2 \setminus \{0\})$, $B_{\alpha}(x, \xi) \in S_{\delta',\sigma}(\chi_1)$, and $r_4(x, \xi) \in h^{2-4\beta'} S_{\delta,\sigma}$($\langle \frac{x-p'(t)}{\sqrt{h}}\rangle^{-M}$). As $r_4(x, \xi)\xi^\gamma(\Sigma) \in h^{2-\beta} S_{\delta,\sigma}$($\langle \frac{x-p'(t)}{\sqrt{h}}\rangle^{-M}$), for $\beta' = 2 - 4\beta' - \beta - \rho \sigma$ if $\rho \geq 0$, $\beta' = 2 - 4\beta' - \beta$ otherwise, it immediately follows from propositions (1.2.36) and (1.2.37) that $\text{Op}_h^w(r_4)\xi^\gamma$ is a remainder $R_2(w)$. After inequalities (1.2.70) with $\gamma_\alpha = \gamma$ and $c = B$ (resp. inequalities (1.2.70) with $\gamma_\alpha(z) = \partial \gamma(z)z_\alpha$ and $c = h^{\delta'} [(\partial_{x_i} B) + (\partial_{x_j} B) (\partial_{\xi_1} p_1 + \partial_{\xi_2} p_2)] \in S_{\delta',\sigma}(1)$, for $i, j = 1, 2$, and
we deduce that the quantization of the first (resp. the second) contribution in above symbolic development is a remainder $R_2(w)$, when acting on $\text{Op}_h^w(\Sigma)w$. Finally, as $\gamma_\alpha$ vanishes in a neighbourhood of the origin, we write

$$\gamma_\alpha \left( \frac{x - p'(\xi)}{\sqrt{\hbar}} \right) = \frac{2}{\hbar} \left( \frac{x - p'(\xi)}{\sqrt{\hbar}} \right)^2 \gamma_\alpha \left( \frac{x - p'(\xi)}{\sqrt{\hbar}} \right), \quad |\alpha| = 2,$$

and obtain that the quantization of $\alpha$-th order term with $|\alpha| = 2$ (resp. $|\alpha| = 3$) is a remainder $R_2(w)$ when acting on $\text{Op}_h^w(\Sigma)w$, after inequalities (1.2.71) (resp. (1.2.70)) with $\gamma_n = \tilde{\gamma}_\alpha$ (resp. $\gamma_n = \tilde{\gamma}_\alpha^k$, $k = 1, 2$) and $c = B_\alpha$.

The following two results allow us to finally derive the ODE satisfied by $\tilde{v}_{\Lambda_{kg}}^\Sigma$.

**Lemma 3.2.5.** We have that

$$[D_t - \text{Op}_h^w(x \cdot \xi - p(\xi)), \Gamma^{kg}] = \text{Op}_h^w(b),$$

where

$$b(x, \xi) = -\frac{h}{2\hbar} (\partial \gamma) \left( \frac{x - p'(\xi)}{\sqrt{\hbar}} \right) \cdot \left( \frac{x - p'(\xi)}{\sqrt{\hbar}} \right) \chi(h^\sigma \xi) - \frac{\sigma \hbar}{i} \gamma \left( \frac{x - p'(\xi)}{\sqrt{\hbar}} \right) (\partial \chi)(h^\sigma \xi) \cdot (h^\sigma \xi)$$

$$+ \frac{i}{24} h^{\frac{5}{2}} \sum_{|\alpha| = 3} (\partial^\alpha \gamma) \left( \frac{x - p'(\xi)}{\sqrt{\hbar}} \right) (\partial^\alpha x p'(\xi)) \chi(h^\sigma \xi) + r(x, \xi)$$

and $r \in h^{5/2}S^1_{\alpha_{kg}}((x - p'(\xi))^{-N})$ for any $N \geq 0$. Therefore, function $\tilde{v}_{\Lambda_{kg}}^\Sigma$ is solution to

$$[D_t - \text{Op}_h^w(x \cdot \xi - p(\xi))] \tilde{v}_{\Lambda_{kg}}^\Sigma = \Gamma^{kg} \text{Op}_h^w(\Sigma(x)) [h^{-1}r_{kg}^{NF}(t,tx)] + R_2(\tilde{v})$$

with $R_2(\tilde{v})$ satisfying estimates (3.2.23).

**Proof.** Recalling the definition (3.2.14) of $\Gamma^{kg}$, one can prove by a straight computation that

$$[D_t, \Gamma^{kg}] = \frac{h}{i} \text{Op}_h^w \left( (\partial \gamma) \left( \frac{x - p'(\xi)}{\sqrt{\hbar}} \right) \cdot \frac{p'(\xi) \xi}{\sqrt{\hbar}} \chi(h^\sigma \xi) \right)$$

$$+ \frac{h}{2i} \text{Op}_h^w \left( (\partial \gamma) \left( \frac{x - p'(\xi)}{\sqrt{\hbar}} \right) \cdot \frac{p'(\xi) \xi}{\sqrt{\hbar}} \chi(h^\sigma \xi) \right) - \frac{(1 + \sigma)h}{i} \text{Op}_h^w \left( \frac{x - p'(\xi)}{\sqrt{\hbar}} (\partial \chi)(h^\sigma \xi) \cdot (h^{\sigma} \xi) \right).$$

Since the development of a commutator’s symbol only contains odd-order terms, lemma (1.2.24) gives that the symbol associated to $[\Gamma^{kg}, \text{Op}_h^w(x \cdot \xi - p(\xi))]$ writes as

$$\frac{h}{i} \left\{ \gamma \left( \frac{x - p'(\xi)}{\sqrt{\hbar}} \right) \chi(h^\sigma \xi), x \cdot \xi - p(\xi) \right\} + \frac{i}{24} h^{\frac{5}{2}} \sum_{|\alpha| = 3} (\partial^\alpha \gamma) \left( \frac{x - p'(\xi)}{\sqrt{\hbar}} \right) \chi(h^\sigma \xi) (\partial^\alpha p(\xi)) + r_5(x, \xi)$$

111
The proof of the statement follows directly from lemma 3.2.4 if we observe that
\[
\begin{align*}
&\left[\Gamma^{kg}, \text{Op}_h^w(x \cdot \xi - p(\xi))\right] = -\frac{h}{i} \text{Op}_h^w \left( (\partial_\gamma) \left( \frac{x - p'(\xi)}{\sqrt{h}} \right) \right) \cdot \left( \frac{x - p'(\xi)}{\sqrt{h}} \right) \cdot \chi(h^\sigma \xi) \\
&- \frac{h}{i} \text{Op}_h^w \left( (\partial_\gamma) \left( \frac{x - p'(\xi)}{\sqrt{h}} \right) \right) \cdot \left( \frac{x - p'(\xi)}{\sqrt{h}} \right) \chi(h^\sigma \xi) + \frac{h}{i} \text{Op}_h^w \left( (\partial_\gamma) \left( \frac{x - p'(\xi)}{\sqrt{h}} \right) \right) (\partial_\chi) (h^\sigma \xi) \cdot (h^\sigma \xi) \\
&+ \frac{i}{24} h^\frac{5}{2} \sum_{|\alpha|=3} \text{Op}_h^w \left( (\partial_\alpha \gamma) \left( \frac{x - p'(\xi)}{\sqrt{h}} \right) \right) (\partial_\beta \gamma p'(\xi)) \chi(h^\sigma \xi) + \text{Op}_h^w (r_5(x, \xi)),
\end{align*}
\]
which summed to the previous commutator gives (3.2.24).

The last part of the statement follows applying to equation (3.2.13) operators \(\text{Op}_h^w(\Sigma(\xi))\) (which commutes exactly with the linear part of the equation, evident in non semi-classical coordinates) and \(\Gamma^{kg}\). Since

\[
{\begin{align*}
&h \text{Op}_h^w \left( (\partial_\gamma) \left( \frac{x - p'(\xi)}{\sqrt{h}} \right) \right) \cdot \left( \frac{x - p'(\xi)}{\sqrt{h}} \right) \chi(h^\sigma \xi) \\
&= \sum_{k=1}^2 \text{Op}_h^w \left( \gamma^k \left( \frac{x - p'(\xi)}{\sqrt{h}} \right) \right) \cdot (x - p'(\xi)) (x_k - p_k'(\xi)) \end{align*}}
\]

with \(\gamma^k(z) := (\partial_\gamma)(z) z_k |z|^{-2}, \) and

\[
{\begin{align*}
h^\frac{5}{2} \text{Op}_h^w \left( (\partial_\alpha \gamma) \left( \frac{x - p'(\xi)}{\sqrt{h}} \right) \right) (\partial_\beta \gamma p'(\xi)) \\
= h \text{Op}_h^w \left( \gamma^\alpha \left( \frac{x - p'(\xi)}{\sqrt{h}} \right) \right) (\partial_\beta \gamma p'(\xi)) (x_k - p_k'(\xi)) \end{align*}}
\]

with \(\gamma^\alpha(z) := (\partial_\alpha \gamma)(z) z_k |z|^{-2}, \) we obtain from inequalities (1.2.41) (resp. 1.2.40) and (3.2.21) that \(h \text{Op}_h^w ((\partial_\gamma) \left( \frac{x - p'(\xi)}{\sqrt{h}} \right) \chi(h^\sigma \xi) \tilde{\nu}^\Sigma \) (resp. \(h^{3/2} \text{Op}_h^w ((\partial_\alpha \gamma) \left( \frac{x - p'(\xi)}{\sqrt{h}} \right) (\partial_\beta \gamma p'(\xi))) \), \(|\alpha| = 3\) is a remainder \(R_5(\tilde{\nu}).\) The same holds true for \(\text{Op}_h^w (\gamma \left( \frac{x - p'(\xi)}{\sqrt{h}} \right) (\partial_\gamma)(h^\sigma \xi) \cdot (h^\sigma \xi) \tilde{\nu}^\Sigma, \) as follows combining symbolic calculus and lemma 1.2.40 because its symbol is supported for large frequencies \(|\xi| \gtrsim h^{-\sigma}.\) From propositions 1.2.30 and 1.2.37 it immediately follows that \(\text{Op}_h^w (r_5) \tilde{\nu}^\Sigma\) satisfies (3.2.22a) and (3.2.22b).

**Proposition 3.2.6 (Deduction of the ODE).** There exists a family \((\theta_h(x))_h \) of \(C^\infty\) functions, real valued, equal to 1 on the closed ball \(\overline{B}_{1- \varepsilon_1} (0)\) and supported in \(\overline{B}_{1- \varepsilon_2} (0),\) for some small \(0 < \varepsilon_1 < c, \sigma > 0, \) with \(\|\partial_\alpha \theta_h\|_{L^\infty} = O(h^{-2|\alpha| \sigma})\) and \((h \partial_\alpha \theta_h) \) bounded for every \(k,\) such that

\[
(3.2.29) \quad \text{Op}_h^w (x \cdot \xi - p(\xi)) \tilde{\nu}^\Sigma_{kg} = -\phi (x) \theta_h (x) \tilde{\nu}^\Sigma_{kg} + R_2(\tilde{\nu}),
\]

where \(\phi(x) = \sqrt{1-|x|^2}\) and \(R_2(\tilde{\nu})\) satisfies estimates (3.2.23). Therefore, \(\tilde{\nu}^\Sigma_{kg}\) is solution of the following non-homogeneous ODE:

\[
(3.2.30) \quad D_{\partial_{\xi} \theta_h} \tilde{\nu}^\Sigma_{kg} = -\phi (x) \theta_h (x) \tilde{\nu}^\Sigma_{kg} + \Gamma^{kg} \text{Op}_h^w (\Sigma(\xi)) [h^{-1} r^{NF}_{kg} (t, tx)] + R_2(\tilde{\nu}),
\]

with \(r^{NF}_{kg}\) given by (3.1.35).

**Proof.** The proof of the statement follows directly from lemma 3.2.4 if we observe that \(\partial_\xi (x \cdot \xi - p(\xi)) = 0\) at \(\xi = -d\phi(x)\) and \(x \cdot (-d\phi(x)) - p(-d\phi(x)) = -\phi(x).\) Therefore, (3.2.29) holds and, injecting it in (3.2.28), we obtain (3.2.30).
Proposition 3.2.7 (Propagation of the uniform estimate on $V$). Let us fix $K_1 > 0$. There exist two integers $n \gg \rho \gg 1$ sufficiently large, two constants $A,B > 1$ sufficiently large, $\varepsilon_0 \in ]0,(2A + B)^{-1}]$ sufficiently small, and $0 < \delta_2 \leq \delta_1 \leq \delta_0 < 1$ small, such that, for any $0 < \varepsilon < \varepsilon_0$, if $(u,v)$ is solution to (1.1.1)-(1.1.2) in some interval $[1,T]$ for a fixed $T > 1$, and $u_+, v_+$ defined in (1.1.3) satisfy a-priori estimates (1.1.11) for every $t \in [1,T]$, then it also verify (1.1.12b) in the same interval $[1,T]$.

Proof. We warn the reader that, throughout the proof, we will denote by $C, \beta$ (resp. $\beta'$) two positive constants such that $\beta \to 0$ as $\sigma \to 0$ (resp. $\beta' \to 0$ as $\delta_0, \sigma \to 0$). These constants may change line after line. We also remind that $h = 1/t$.

In proposition 3.1.1 we introduced function $v_{NF}$, defined from $v_-$ through (3.1.3), and proved that its $H^{\rho,\infty}$ norm differs from that of $v_-$ by a quantity satisfying (3.1.7b). Hence, from a-priori estimates (1.1.11a), (1.1.11b), (1.1.11d) and for $\theta \in ]0,1[$ sufficiently small (e.g. $\theta < 1/4$)

\[ (3.2.31) \quad \|v_-(t,\cdot)\|_{H^{\rho,\infty}} \leq \|v_{NF}(t,\cdot)\|_{H^{\rho,\infty}} + C A^2 \theta B^0 \varepsilon h^{-\frac{\beta}{2}}. \]

We successively introduced $\tilde{v}$ in (3.2.22) and decomposed it into the sum of functions $\tilde{v}_{NK_0}^\Sigma$ and $\tilde{v}_{NK_0}^\gamma$ (see (3.2.16)). We will show in lemma B.2.14 of appendix B that, for any $s \leq n$,

\[ (3.2.32) \quad \|\tilde{v}(t,\cdot)\|_{H^s_h} + \sum_{|\gamma| = 1} \|\text{Op}_h^w(\chi(h^\sigma \xi))L^{\gamma}\tilde{v}(t,\cdot)\|_{L^2} \leq C B \varepsilon h^{-\beta'} \]

for all $t \in [1,T]$, so inequality (3.2.19b) gives that

\[ (3.2.33) \quad \|\tilde{v}_{NK_0}^\Sigma(t,\cdot)\|_{L^\infty} \leq C B \varepsilon h^{-\frac{\beta}{2} - \beta'}. \]

As concerns $\tilde{v}_{NK_0}^\gamma$, we proved in proposition 3.2.6 that it is solution to ODE (3.2.30), with $r_{NK_0}^{\Sigma}$ given by (3.1.3) and satisfying (3.1.6), and $R_2(\tilde{v})$ verifying (3.2.23). From (3.2.32), we then have that

\[ \|R_2(\tilde{v})(t,\cdot)\|_{L^\infty} \leq C B \varepsilon t^{-\frac{1}{2} + \beta'}. \]

We also have that

\[ (3.2.34) \quad \left\| \Gamma^g \text{Op}_h^w(\Sigma(\xi))[tr_{NK_0}(t,x)] \right\|_{L^\infty(dx)} \leq C (A + B) A B \varepsilon^3 t^{-\frac{1}{2} + \beta'}. \]

In fact, by symbolic calculus of lemma (1.2.24) we derive that, for a fixed $N \in \mathbb{N}$ (e.g. $N > \rho$) and up to negligible multiplicative constants,

\[ \Gamma^g \text{Op}_h^w(\Sigma(\xi)) = \sum_{|\alpha| = 0}^{N-1} h^{\frac{1}{2} |\alpha|} \text{Op}_h^w \left( (\partial^\alpha \gamma) \frac{(x - \mu'(\xi)}{\sqrt{h}} \chi(h^\sigma \xi) (\partial^\gamma \Sigma)(\xi) \right) + \text{Op}_h^w(r_N(x,\xi)), \]

where $r_N \in h^{\frac{N}{2} S_{2,\sigma}}((x - \mu'(\xi)/\sqrt{h})^{-1})$. Choosing $N$ sufficiently large, we deduce from proposition (1.2.37) the fact that $\|tw(t,\cdot)\|_{L^2} = \|w(t,\cdot)\|_{L^2}$, inequality (3.1.6a) and a-priori estimates, that for every $t \in [1,T]$}

\[ \left\| \text{Op}_h^w(r_N(x,\xi))[tr_{NK_0}(t,x)] \right\|_{L^\infty(dx)} \leq C A^2 B \varepsilon^3 t^{-2}. \]
Using, instead, proposition 1.2.39 with \( p = +\infty \), inequality (3.2.35) in appendix 2 and that \( h = t^{-1} \), we deduce that

\[
\sum_{|a|=0}^{N-1} h^{\frac{|a|}{2}} \left\| \text{Op}_h^w \left( \langle \partial^\alpha \gamma \rangle \frac{x - p'(\xi)}{\sqrt{h}} \chi(h^\sigma \xi) (\partial^\alpha \Sigma)(\xi) \right) \text{Op}_h^w(\chi_1(h^\sigma \xi)) [t] \right\|_{L^\infty} \\
\lesssim t\beta \left\| \chi(t^{-s} D x) \text{Op}_h^w \left( t_{k g}^{N F}(t, \cdot) \right) \right\|_{L^\infty} \leq C(A + B) AB^3 t^{-\frac{1}{2} + \beta}.
\]

Summing up, \( \Gamma^{k g} \text{Op}_h^w(\Sigma(\xi))[t]^{-1} r_{k g}^{N F}(t, t x) + R_2(\tilde{v}) = F_{k g}(t, x) \) with

\[
\| F_{k g}(t, \cdot) \|_{L^\infty} \leq \| C(A + B) AB\varepsilon^3 + C B\varepsilon \| t^{-\frac{1}{2} + \beta},
\]

Using equation (3.2.35) we deduce that

\[
\frac{1}{2} \partial_t [\tilde{v}^{\Sigma}_{k g}(t, x)]^2 = 3 \left( \tilde{v}^{\Sigma}_{k g} D_t [\tilde{v}^{\Sigma}_{k g} - \tilde{v}^{\Sigma}_{k g}] \right) \leq \| \tilde{v}^{\Sigma}_{k g}(t, x) \|_{L^\infty} \| F_{k g}(t, x) \|
\]

and hence that

\[
\| \tilde{v}^{\Sigma}_{k g}(t, \cdot) \|_{L^\infty} \leq \| \tilde{v}^{\Sigma}_{k g}(1, \cdot) \|_{L^\infty} + \int_1^t \| F_{k g}(\tau, \cdot) \|_{L^\infty} d\tau \\
\leq \| \tilde{v}^{\Sigma}_{k g}(1, \cdot) \|_{L^\infty} + C(A + B) AB\varepsilon^3 + C B\varepsilon.
\]

As \( \| \tilde{v}^{\Sigma}_{k g}(1, \cdot) \|_{L^\infty} \lesssim \| \tilde{v}(1, \cdot) \|_{L^\infty} \leq C B\varepsilon \) by proposition 1.2.37 and a-priori estimate 1.1.11c, the above inequality together with (3.2.33) and definition (3.2.2) of \( \tilde{v} \), gives that

\[
\| v^{N F}(t, \cdot) \|_{L^\infty} \leq (C(A + B) AB\varepsilon^3 + C B\varepsilon) t^{-1},
\]

which injected in (3.2.31) leads finally to (1.1.12b) if we take \( A > 1 \) sufficiently large such that \( C B \leq \frac{A}{4K_1} \), and \( \varepsilon_0 > 0 \) sufficiently small to verify \( C(A + B) B^3\varepsilon_0 \leq \frac{1}{3K_1} \).

3.2.2 The derivation of the transport equation

We now focus on the semi-classical wave equation satisfied by \( \tilde{u} \):

\[
[D_t - \text{Op}_h^w(x \cdot \xi - |\xi|)] \tilde{u}(t, x) = h^{-1} \left[ q_w(t, t x) + c_w(t, t x) + r_w^{N F}(t, t x) \right],
\]

with \( q_w, c_w, r_w^{N F} \) given by (3.1.17), (3.1.18), respectively, and on the derivation of the mentioned transport equation. As we will make use several times of proposition 1.2.30 and inequalities (1.2.32), we remind the reader about definition (1.2.40) of \( \Omega_h \) and (1.2.49) of \( \Omega_j \).

Also, \( \phi_0(x) \) denotes a smooth radial cut-off function (often coming with operator \( \Omega_h \)) while \( \chi \in C_0^\infty(\mathbb{R}^2) \) is equal to 1 in a neighbourhood of the origin and suitably supported.

In order to recover a sharp estimate for \( \tilde{u} \) such as (3.2.37), we study the behaviour of this function separately in different regions of the phase space \( (x, \xi) \in \mathbb{R}^2 \times \mathbb{R}^2 \). We start by fixing \( \rho \in \mathbb{Z} \), and by introducing

\[
\Sigma_j(\xi) := \begin{cases} (\xi)^\rho, & \text{for } j = 0, \\ (\xi)^{\rho} |\xi|^{-1}, & \text{for } j = 1, 2. 
\end{cases}
\]

Taking a smooth cut-off function \( \chi_0 \) equal to 1 in a neighbourhood of the origin, a Littlewood-Paley decomposition, and a small \( \sigma > 0 \), we write the following for any \( j \in \{0, 1, 2\} \):

\[
\text{Op}_h^w(\Sigma_j(\xi)) \tilde{u} = \text{Op}_h^w(\Sigma_j(\xi) \chi_0(h^{-1} \xi)) \tilde{u} + \sum_k \text{Op}_h^w(\Sigma_j(\xi)(1 - \chi_0)(h^{-1} \xi) \varphi(2^{-k} \xi) \chi_0(h^\sigma \xi)) \tilde{u} \\
+ \text{Op}_h^w(\Sigma_j(\xi)(1 - \chi_0)(h^\sigma \xi)) \tilde{u},
\]

114
observing that the sum over $k$ is actually finite and restricted to set of indices \( K := \{ k \in \mathbb{Z} : h \lesssim 2^k \lesssim h^{-\sigma}\} \). From the classical Sobolev injection and the continuity on $L^2$ of the Riesz operator \( (3.2.39) \)
\[
\|\text{Op}_h^w(\Sigma_j(x)\chi_0(h^{-1}\xi))\hat{u}(t,\cdot)\|_{L^\infty} = \|\Sigma_j(hD)\chi_0(D)\hat{u}(t,\cdot)\|_{L^\infty} \lesssim \|\hat{u}(t,\cdot)\|_{L^2},
\]
while from the semi-classical Sobolev injection along with lemma \( 3.2.38 \),
\[
(3.2.40) \]
\[
\|\text{Op}_h^w(\Sigma_j(x)(1-\chi_0)(h^\rho\xi))\|_{L^\infty} \lesssim h^N\|\hat{u}(t,\cdot)\|_{H_k^N},
\]
where $N = N(s) \geq 0$ if $s > 0$ is sufficiently large. The remaining terms in the right hand side of \( (3.2.38) \), localised for frequencies $|\xi| \sim 2^k$, need a sharper analysis because a direct application of semi-classical Sobolev injection only gives that
\[
\|\text{Op}_h^w(\Sigma_j(x)(1-\chi_0)(h^{-1}\xi)\varphi(2^{-k}\xi)\chi_0(h^\rho\xi))\hat{u}\|_{L^\infty} \leq 2^k h^{-1-\mu}\|\hat{u}\|_{L^2},
\]
with $\mu = \sigma \rho$ if $\rho \geq 0$, $0$ otherwise, and factor $2^k h^{-1-\mu}$ may grow too much when $h \to 0$.

For any fixed $k \in K$, $\rho \in \mathbb{Z}$ and $j \in \{0,1,2\}$, let us introduce
\[
\tilde{w}^{\Sigma,j,k}(t,x) := \text{Op}_h^w(\Sigma_j(x)(1-\chi_0)(h^{-1}\xi)\varphi(2^{-k}\xi)\chi_0(h^\rho\xi))\hat{u}(t,x)
\]
and observe that, from the commutation of the above operator with the linear part of equation \( (3.2.40) \), we get that $\tilde{w}^{\Sigma,j,k}$ is solution to
\[
(3.2.41) \]
\[
[D_t - \text{Op}_h^w(x \cdot \xi - |\xi|)]\tilde{w}^{\Sigma,j,k}(t,x)
= h^{-1}\text{Op}_h^w(\Sigma_j(x)(1-\chi_0)(h^{-1}\xi)\varphi(2^{-k}\xi)\chi_0(h^\rho\xi))\left[q_w(t,tx) + c_w(t,tx) + r_{wNF}(t,tx)\right]
- ih\text{Op}_h^w(\Sigma_j(x)(\partial\chi_0)(h^{-1}\xi) \cdot (h^{-1}\xi)\varphi(2^{-k}\xi))\hat{u} - i\sigma h\text{Op}_h^w(\Sigma_j(x)\varphi(2^{-k}\xi)(\partial\chi_0)(h^\rho\xi)) \cdot (h^\rho\xi))\hat{u}.
\]

We introduce the following manifold (see picture \ref{fig:manifold})
\[
\Lambda_w := \left\{(x,\xi) : x - \frac{\xi}{|\xi|} = 0\right\},
\]
and with operator
\[
(3.2.42) \]
\[
\Gamma^{w,j,k} := \text{Op}_h^w\left(\gamma\left(\frac{x,|\xi| - \xi}{h^{1/2-\sigma}}\right)\psi(2^{-k}\xi)\right),
\]
for some $\gamma \in C_0^\infty(\mathbb{R}^2)$ equal to 1 close to the origin and $\psi \in C_0^\infty(\mathbb{R}^2 \setminus \{0\})$ equal to 1 on supp$\varphi$, whose symbol is localized in a neighbourhood of $\Lambda_w \cap \{|\xi| \sim 2^k\}$ of size $h^{1/2-\sigma}$. We also define
\[
(3.2.43a) \]
\[
\tilde{u}^{\Sigma,j,k}_{\Lambda_w} := \Gamma^{w,j,k}\tilde{u}^{\Sigma,j,k}_{\Lambda_w},
\]
\[
(3.2.43b) \]
so that $\tilde{u}^{\Sigma,j,k} = \tilde{u}^{\Sigma,j,k}_{\Lambda_w} + \tilde{u}^{\Sigma,j,k}_{\Lambda_w^c}$. We are going to prove that, if we suitably control the $L^2$ norm of \( (\theta_0\Omega_h)^\mu \mathcal{M}^\nu \tilde{u}^{\Sigma,j,k}_{\Lambda_w} \), for any $\mu, |\nu| \leq 1$, then $\tilde{u}^{\Sigma,j,k}_{\Lambda_w}$ is a $O_{L^\infty}(h^{-0})$ (see proposition \( 3.2.8 \)). As $h = t^{-1}$, this means that $\tilde{u}^{\Sigma,j,k}_{\Lambda_w}$ grows in time at a rate slower than the one expected for $\tilde{w}^{\Sigma,j,k}$ (that is $t^{1/2}$ after \( 3.2.38 \)). Analogously to the Klein-Gordon case discussed in the previous subsection, the main contribution to $\tilde{w}^{\Sigma,j,k}$ is hence the one localized around $\Lambda_w$ and represented by $\tilde{w}^{\Sigma,j,k}_{\Lambda_w}$. We will show that this function is solution to a transport equation (see proposition \( 3.2.17 \), from which we will be able to derive a suitable estimate of its uniform norm and to finally propagate \( 3.1.12 \) (see proposition \( 3.3.7 \)).
Proposition 3.2.8. There exists a constant $C > 0$ such that, for any $h \in ]0,1]$, $k \in K,$

\begin{align}
\|\tilde{u}_{\Lambda_{w}}^{\Sigma_{j},k}(t,\cdot)\|_{L^{2}} & \leq C h^{1/2-\beta} \left(\|\tilde{u}_{\Lambda_{w}}^{\Sigma_{j},k}(t,\cdot)\|_{L^{2}} + \|M\tilde{u}_{\Lambda_{w}}^{\Sigma_{j},k}(t,\cdot)\|_{L^{2}}\right), \\
\|\tilde{u}_{\Lambda_{w}}^{\Sigma_{j},k}(t,\cdot)\|_{L^{\infty}} & \leq C h^{1/2-\beta} \sum_{\mu=0}^{1} \left(\|((\theta_{0}\Omega_{h})^{\mu}\tilde{u}_{\Lambda_{w}}^{\Sigma_{j},k}(t,\cdot))\|_{L^{2}} + \|((\theta_{0}\Omega_{h})^{\mu}M\tilde{u}_{\Lambda_{w}}^{\Sigma_{j},k}(t,\cdot))\|_{L^{2}}\right),
\end{align}

for a small $\beta > 0$, $\beta \to 0$ as $\sigma \to 0$.

Proof. The proof is straightforward if one writes

$$
\tilde{u}_{\Lambda_{w}}^{\Sigma_{j},k} = \sum_{j=1}^{2} \text{Op}_{\Lambda_{w}}^{w} \left(\gamma_{j}^{t} \left(\frac{x|\xi| - \xi}{h^{1/2-\sigma}}\right) \frac{x_{j}|\xi| - \xi_{j}}{h^{1/2-\sigma}}\right) \psi(2^{-k}\xi) \tilde{u}_{\Lambda_{w}}^{\Sigma_{j},k},
$$

where $\gamma_{j}^{t}(z) := \frac{(1-\gamma(z)x)z^{j}}{|z|^{j}}$ is such that $|\partial_{z}^{\alpha} \gamma_{j}^{t}(z)| \lesssim (z)^{-(|\alpha|+1)}$, and uses inequalities (1.2.52) with $a(x) = b_{p}(\xi) \equiv 1$. \qed

Lemma 3.2.9. Let $\tilde{\varphi} \in C_{0}^{\infty}(\mathbb{R}^{2} \setminus \{0\})$ be such that $\tilde{\varphi} \equiv 1$ on supp$\varphi$ and have a sufficiently small support so that $\psi \tilde{\varphi} \equiv \psi$. Then for any $k \in K$

\begin{align}
\left[\Gamma^{w,k}, D_{t} - \text{Op}_{h}^{w}((x \cdot \xi - |\xi|)(2^{-k}\xi))\right] \text{Op}_{h}^{w}(\varphi(2^{-k}\xi)) = \text{Op}_{h}^{w}(b(x,\xi)),
\end{align}

where, for any $w \in L^{2}$ such that $\theta_{0}\Omega_{h}w$, $(\theta_{0}\Omega_{h})^{\mu}Mw \in L^{2}(\mathbb{R}^{2})$, for $\mu = 0, 1$

\begin{align}
\|\text{Op}_{h}^{w}(b(x,\xi))w\|_{L^{2}} & \lesssim h^{1-\beta} (\|w\|_{L^{2}} + \|Mw\|_{L^{2}}), \\
\|\text{Op}_{h}^{w}(b(x,\xi))w\|_{L^{\infty}} & \lesssim h^{1-\beta} \sum_{\mu=0}^{1} (\|((\theta_{0}\Omega_{h})^{\mu}w\|_{L^{2}} + \|((\theta_{0}\Omega_{h})^{\mu}Mw\|_{L^{2}}),
\end{align}

with $\beta > 0$ small, $\beta \to 0$ as $\sigma \to 0$. 116
Proof. We warn the reader that most of the terms arising from the development of the commutator in the left hand side of (3.2.47) satisfy a better $L^2$ estimate than (3.2.48a), namely
\begin{equation}
\| \cdot \|_{L^2} \lesssim h^{\frac{3}{2} - \beta} (\|w\|_{L^2} + \|Mw\|_{L^2}).
\end{equation}
The only contribution whose $L^2$ norm is only a $O(h\|w\|_{L^2})$ is the integral remainder called $\tilde{r}_N^k$, appearing in symbolic development (3.2.51).

Since $\partial_t = -h^2 \partial h$, an easy computation shows that
\begin{equation}
|\Gamma^{w,k}, D_t| = \left( \frac{1}{2} + \sigma \right) \frac{h}{i} \text{Op}_h^w \left( (\partial \gamma) \left( \frac{x|\xi| - \xi}{h^{1/2 - \sigma}} \right) \cdot \left( \frac{x|\xi| - \xi}{h^{1/2 - \sigma}} \right) \psi(2^{-k}\xi) \right) + \frac{h}{i} \text{Op}_h^w \left( \gamma \left( \frac{x|\xi| - \xi}{h^{1/2 - \sigma}} \right) (\partial \psi)(2^{-k}\xi) \cdot (2^{-k}\xi) \right).
\end{equation}
The first term in the above right hand side satisfies (3.2.49) and (3.2.48b) after inequalities (1.2.52). The same estimates hold also for the latter one when it acts on $\text{Op}_h^w(\varphi(2^{-k}\xi))w$, for the derivatives of $\psi$ vanish on the support of $\varphi$ (and then of $\varphi$) as a consequence of our assumptions.

In fact, if we introduce a smooth function $\tilde{\psi} \in C_0^\infty(\mathbb{R}^2 \setminus \{0\})$, equal to 1 on the support of $\partial \psi$ and such that $\text{supp } \tilde{\psi} \cap \text{supp } \varphi = \emptyset$, and use symbolic calculus we find that, for any fixed $N \in \mathbb{N}$,
\begin{align*}
\text{Op}_h^w \left( \gamma \left( \frac{x|\xi| - \xi}{h^{1/2 - \sigma}} \right) (\partial \psi)(2^{-k}\xi) \cdot (2^{-k}\xi) \right) & \text{Op}_h^w(\varphi(2^{-k}\xi)) = \text{Op}_h^w \left( \gamma \left( \frac{x|\xi| - \xi}{h^{1/2 - \sigma}} \right) (\partial \psi)(2^{-k}\xi) \cdot (2^{-k}\xi) \right) \text{Op}_h^w(\tilde{\psi}(2^{-k}\xi)\varphi(2^{-k}\xi)) - \text{Op}_h^w(r_N^k),
\end{align*}
where the first term in the above right hand side is 0, and integral remainder $r_N^k$ is given by
\begin{align*}
r_N^k & = \left( \frac{h}{2i} \right)^N \sum_{|\alpha|=N} \frac{N(1 - |\alpha|)}{\alpha!(\pi h)^{|\alpha|}} \int e^{2\pi i (y - y') \zeta} \int_0^1 \partial_x^\alpha \left[ \gamma \left( \frac{x|\xi| - \xi}{h^{1/2 - \sigma}} \right) (\partial \psi)(2^{-k}\xi) \cdot (2^{-k}\xi) \right] |_{\xi = x + t\zeta, t = (x',\xi')} dt \times \partial_x^\alpha \left( \tilde{\psi}(2^{-k}\xi) \right) |_{\xi = x + t\zeta} dydzd\eta d\zeta.
\end{align*}
Developing explicitly the above derivatives and reminding definition (1.2.30) of integrals $I_{p,q}^k$, for general $k \in K$, $p,q \in \mathbb{Z}$, one recognizes that, up to some multiplicative constants, $r_N^k$ has the form
\begin{equation}
h^{N - (1/2 - \sigma)} 2^{-kN} I_{p,0}^k(x,\xi),
\end{equation}
with $a, a', b_q \equiv 1$, $p = N$ and $\psi(2^{-k}\xi)$ replaced with $|\partial \psi|(2^{-k}\xi) \cdot (2^{-k}\xi)$. Propositions (1.2.28) and (1.2.31) imply then that
\begin{equation}
\| \text{Op}_h^w(r_N^k) \|_{\mathcal{L}(L^2)} + \| \text{Op}_h^w(r_N^k) \|_{\mathcal{L}(L^2;L^\infty)} \lesssim h
\end{equation}
if $N \in \mathbb{N}$ is chosen sufficiently large (e.g. $N > 9$), which implies that the $\mathcal{L}(L^2)$ and $\mathcal{L}(L^2;L^\infty)$ norms of the latter operator in the right hand side of (3.2.50) is bounded by $h^2$.

As regards $[\Gamma^{w,k}, \text{Op}_h^w((x \cdot \xi - |\xi|)\tilde{\psi}(2^{-k}\xi))]$, we first remind that the symbolic development of a commutator’s symbol only contains odd order terms. Consequently, for a new fixed $N \in \mathbb{N}$ and up to multiplicative constants independent of $h,k$, the symbol of the considered commutator writes as
\begin{equation}
(3.2.51) \quad h \left\{ \gamma \left( \frac{x|\xi| - \xi}{h^{1/2 - \sigma}} \right), (x \cdot \xi - |\xi|)\tilde{\psi}(2^{-k}\xi) \right\} + \sum_{3 \leq |\alpha| < N} h^{\bar{|\alpha|}} \partial_x^{\alpha_1} \partial_t^{\alpha_2} \left[ \gamma \left( \frac{x|\xi| - \xi}{h^{1/2 - \sigma}} \right) \right] \partial_x^{\alpha_2} \partial_t^{\alpha_1} \left[ (x \cdot \xi - |\xi|)\tilde{\psi}(2^{-k}\xi) \right] + \tilde{r}_N^k(x,\xi),
\end{equation}
\text{with}\quad \bar{|\alpha|} = |\alpha_1| + |\alpha_2|
with
\[
\tilde{\gamma}_N^\alpha(x, \xi) = \left(\frac{h}{2^{\ell}}\right)^N \sum_{|\alpha_1| + |\alpha_2| = N} \frac{N(-1)^{|\alpha_1|}}{\alpha(\pi h)^2} \int_{\mathbb{R}^{2\ell(\pi h)}} \partial_{\xi_1} \partial_{\xi_2} \left[ \gamma \left( \frac{|\alpha_1| - \xi}{h^{1/2 - \sigma}} \right) \psi(2^{-k} \xi) \right]_{(x + t, \xi + \eta)} dt \\
\times \partial_{\xi_3} \partial_{\xi_4} \left[ (x \cdot \xi - |\xi|) \varphi(2^{-k} \xi) \right]_{(x + t, \xi + \eta)} dy dz d\eta d\zeta.
\]

Since \( \{ \gamma \left( \frac{x|\alpha| - \xi}{h^{1/2 - \sigma}} \right), x \cdot \xi - |\xi| \} = 0 \) the Poisson bracket in the above sum reduces to
\[
h \sum_{j,l} (\partial_j \gamma) \left( \frac{x|\alpha| - \xi}{h^{1/2 - \sigma}} \right) (\partial_l \varphi)(2^{-k} \xi) \left( \frac{x|\alpha| - \xi}{h^{1/2 - \sigma}} \right)(2^{-k} \xi)
\]
and its quantization acting on \( \text{Op}_h^w(\varphi(2^{-k} \xi))w \) satisfies (3.2.49), (3.2.48b) because \( \partial \varphi \) vanishes on the support of \( \varphi \).

An explicit calculation of terms of order \( 3 \leq |\alpha| < N \), with the help of lemma 1.2.20 and the observation that \( |\alpha_2| \leq 1 \) because \( (x \cdot \xi - |\xi|) \varphi(2^{-k} \xi) \) is affine in \( x \), shows that they are linear combination of products
\[
h^{3-|\alpha|} \gamma_{\alpha}(\frac{x|\alpha| - \xi}{h^{1/2 - \sigma}}) \varphi(2^{-k} \xi) x^\nu b_1(\xi)
\]
and
\[
h^{3-|\alpha|} \gamma_{\alpha}(\frac{x|\alpha| - \xi}{h^{1/2 - \sigma}}) \varphi(2^{-k} \xi) b_0(\xi)
\]
for two new cut-off functions \( \tilde{\gamma}, \tilde{\varphi}, |\partial^\beta b_0(\xi)| \lesssim \beta |\xi|^{-|\beta|} \), and \( \nu \in \mathbb{N}^2 \) of length at most 1. Furthermore, for \( j = 1, 2 \),
\[
h^{3-|\alpha|} \gamma_{\alpha}(\frac{x|\alpha| - \xi}{h^{1/2 - \sigma}}) \varphi(2^{-k} \xi) x_j b_1(\xi) = h^{3-|\alpha|} \gamma_{\alpha}(\frac{x|\alpha| - \xi}{h^{1/2 - \sigma}}) \varphi(2^{-k} \xi) b_0(\xi)
\]
with \( \tilde{\gamma}(z) = \gamma(z)z \). From propositions 1.2.27, 1.2.30, the fact that \( |\alpha| \geq 3 \) and \( 2^k \leq h^{-\sigma} \) we deduce that the quantization of these \( |\alpha| \)-order terms acting on \( \text{Op}_h^w(\varphi(2^{-k} \xi))w \) satisfies (3.2.49), (3.2.48b).

Finally, we notice that integral remainder \( \tilde{\gamma}_N^\alpha \) can be actually seen as the sum of two contributions, one of the form \( 1.2.41 \), the other like \( 1.2.45 \), with \( a \equiv 1 \) and \( p = 1 \). Lemma 1.2.32 implies then that the \( L(L^2) \) and \( L(L^2; L^\infty) \) norms of \( \text{Op}_h^w(\tilde{\gamma}_N^\alpha) \) are bounded by \( h \) as foretold, which concludes the proof of the statement.

**Lemma 3.2.10.** Function \( \tilde{u}_{\alpha, \omega}^{\Sigma, k} \) is solution to the following equation:

(3.2.52)
\[
\left[ D_t - \text{Op}_h^w \left( (x \cdot \xi - |\xi|) \tilde{\varphi}(2^{-k} \xi) \right) \right] \tilde{u}_{\alpha, \omega}^{\Sigma, k}(t,x) = f_k^w(t,x) \\
+ h^{-1} \Gamma_{w,k} \text{Op}_h^w \left( \Sigma_{\alpha}(\xi)(1 - \chi_0)(h^{-1} \xi) \varphi(2^{-k} \xi) \chi_0(h^\sigma \xi) \right) \left[ q_w(t,tx) + c_w(t,tx) + N^F(t,tx) \right] \\
- ih^{w,k} \text{Op}_h^w \left( \Sigma_{\alpha}(\xi)(\partial \chi_0)(h^{-1} \xi) \cdot (h^{-1} \xi) \varphi(2^{-k} \xi) \right) \tilde{u} \\
- i\sigma h^{w,k} \text{Op}_h^w \left( \Sigma_{\alpha}(\xi) \varphi(2^{-k} \xi) \partial \chi_0(h^\sigma \xi) \cdot (h^\sigma \xi) \right) \tilde{u},
\]
where \( \tilde{\varphi} \in C^0(\mathbb{R}^2 \setminus \{0\}) \) is equal to 1 on \( \text{supp} \varphi \), and there exist two constants \( C, C' > 0 \) such that, for any \( h \in [0,1], k \in K \),
\[
\|f_k^w(t,\cdot)\|_{L^2} \leq h^{1-\beta} \left( \| \tilde{u}_{\alpha, \omega}^{\Sigma, k}(t,\cdot) \|_{L^2} + \| \tilde{M} \tilde{u}_{\alpha, \omega}^{\Sigma, k}(t,\cdot) \|_{L^2} \right),
\]

(3.2.53a)
\begin{align*}
(3.2.53b) \quad \| f^n_k(t, \cdot) \|_{L^\infty} & \leq C^n h^{1-\beta} \sum_{\mu=0}^1 \left( \| (\theta_0 \Omega_n)^\mu \tilde{u}^\Sigma_{\mu,k}(t, \cdot) \|_{L^2} + \| (\theta_0 \Omega_n)^\mu \mathcal{M}_n \tilde{u}^\Sigma_{\mu,k}(t, \cdot) \|_{L^2} \right),
\end{align*}

with \( \beta > 0 \) small, \( \beta \to 0 \) as \( \sigma \to 0 \).

**Proof.** If we consider a cut-off function \( \tilde{\varphi} \in C_0^\infty(\mathbb{R}^2 \setminus \{0\}) \) such that \( \tilde{\varphi} \equiv 1 \) on the support of \( \varphi \) \((\varphi \text{ being the truncation on } \tilde{u}^\Sigma_{\mu,k} \text{ frequencies})\), we have the exact equality

\[
\text{Op}_h^w(x \cdot \xi - |\xi|) \tilde{u}^\Sigma_{\mu,k} = \text{Op}_h^w((x \cdot \xi - |\xi|)\tilde{\varphi}(2^{-k}\xi)) \tilde{u}^\Sigma_{\mu,k}.
\]

Moreover, if we assume that its support is sufficiently small so that \( \psi \tilde{\varphi} \equiv \tilde{\varphi} \), and apply operator \( \Gamma^w,k \) to equation \((3.2.42)\), lemma \( 3.2.9 \) gives us the result of the statement. \( \square \)

The transport equation we talked about at the beginning of this section will be deduced from equation \((3.2.52)\) by suitably developing symbol \((x \cdot \xi - |\xi|)\tilde{\varphi}(2^{-k}\xi)\). To do that, we first need to restrict the support of that symbol to bounded values of \( x \) through the introduction of a new cut-off function \( \theta(x) \). We remind that \( \Sigma' \) is a concise notation that we use to indicate a linear combination of a finite number of terms of the same form.

**Lemma 3.2.11.** Let \( 0 < D_1 < D_2 \) and \( \theta = \theta(x) \) be a smooth function equal to 1 for \( |x| \leq D_1 \) and supported for \( |x| \leq D_2 \). Then,

\[
(3.2.54) \quad \text{Op}_h^w((x \cdot \xi - |\xi|)\tilde{\varphi}(2^{-k}\xi)) = \text{Op}_h^w(\theta(x)(x \cdot \xi - |\xi|)\tilde{\varphi}(2^{-k}\xi)) + (1 - \theta(x)) \text{Op}_h^w((x \cdot \xi - |\xi|)\tilde{\varphi}(2^{-k}\xi)) + \sum_\gamma \tilde{\theta}(x) \text{Op}_h^w(\tilde{\varphi}(1^{-k}\xi)) + \text{Op}_h^w(r(x, \xi)),
\]

where \( \tilde{\theta} \) is a smooth function supported for \( D_1 < |x| < D_2 \), \( \tilde{\varphi}_1 \in C_0^\infty(\mathbb{R}^2 \setminus \{0\}) \) and

\[
\| \text{Op}_h^w(r) \|_{L^1} + \| \text{Op}_h^w(r) \|_{L^2, L^\infty} \lesssim h.
\]

Therefore, \( \tilde{u}^\Sigma_{\mu,k} \) verifies

\[
(3.2.55) \quad \left[ D_t - \text{Op}_h^w(\theta(x)(x \cdot \xi - |\xi|)\tilde{\varphi}(2^{-k}\xi)) \right] \tilde{u}^\Sigma_{\mu,k}(t, x) = f^n_k(t, x)
\]

\[
+ (1 - \theta(x)) \text{Op}_h^w((x \cdot \xi - |\xi|)\tilde{\varphi}(2^{-k}\xi)) \tilde{u}^\Sigma_{\mu,k} + \sum_\gamma \tilde{\theta}(x) \text{Op}_h^w(\tilde{\varphi}(1^{-k}\xi)) \tilde{u}^\Sigma_{\mu,k}
\]

\[
+ h^{-1} \Gamma^w,k \text{Op}_h^w(\Sigma(\xi)(1 - \chi_0)(h^{-1}\xi)\varphi(2^{-k}\xi)\chi_0(h^\sigma\xi)) \left[ q_w(t, tx) + q_{\mu}(t, tx) + r_{\mu}^N(t, tx) \right]
\]

\[
- \frac{i}{h} \Gamma^w,k \text{Op}_h^w(\Sigma(\xi)(\partial \chi_0)(h^{-1}\xi) \cdot (h^{-1}\xi)\varphi(2^{-k}\xi)) \tilde{u}
\]

\[
- i\sigma \Gamma^w,k \text{Op}_h^w(\Sigma(\xi)\varphi(2^{-k}\xi)(\partial \chi_0)(h^\sigma\xi) \cdot (h^\sigma\xi)) \tilde{u},
\]

where \( f^n_k \) satisfies estimates \((3.2.53)\).

**Proof.** Let \( \theta(x) \) be the cut-off function of the statement. By proposition \((1.2.21)\) we have that

\[
(3.2.56) \quad (1 - \theta(x))(x \cdot \xi - |\xi|)\tilde{\varphi}(2^{-k}\xi) = (1 - \theta(x)) \tilde{\varphi}(2^{-k}\xi)
\]

\[
- \frac{h}{2i} \partial \theta(x) \cdot (x - \frac{\xi}{|\xi|}) \tilde{\varphi}(2^{-k}\xi) - \frac{2^{-k} h}{2i} (x \cdot \xi - |\xi|) \partial \theta(x) \cdot (\partial \tilde{\varphi})(2^{-k}\xi) + r_{\tilde{\varphi}}(x, \xi)
\]

\[
= (1 - \theta(x)) \tilde{\varphi}(2^{-k}\xi) - \frac{h}{2i} \partial \theta(x) \cdot x \tilde{\varphi}(2^{-k}\xi) + \frac{h}{2i} \sum_{l=1}^2 \partial \theta(x) \tilde{\varphi}(2^{-k}\xi) \left[ \tilde{\varphi}(2^{-k}\xi) \right]
\]

\[
- \frac{h}{2i} \sum_{l=1}^2 \left( \partial \theta(x) x_l \right) \tilde{\varphi}(2^{-k}\xi)(2^{-k}\xi) + \frac{h}{2i} \sum_{l=1}^2 \partial \theta(x) x_l \tilde{\varphi}(2^{-k}\xi)(2^{-k}\xi) + r_{\tilde{\varphi}}(x, \xi) + \tilde{r}_{\tilde{\varphi}}(x, \xi),
\]

\[119\]
where $\partial\theta$ is supported for $D_1 < |x| < D_2$, and $r_2^k(t, x)$ (resp. $\tilde{r}_2^k(t, x)$) is a linear combination of integrals of the form
\[
\frac{h^{2-2k}}{(\pi h)^2} \int e^{\frac{\pi i yz}{h}} \int_0^1 \theta(x + tz)(1-t)^2 dt \ x^\nu \tilde{\varphi}(2^{-k}(\xi + \eta)) d\nu d\eta,
\]
with $|\nu| = 0, 1$ (resp. $|\nu| = 0$), for some new $\theta, \tilde{\varphi} \in C_0^\infty(\mathbb{R}^2 \setminus \{0\})$. By writing $x$ as $(x + tz) - tz$, using that $ze^{\frac{\pi i yz}{h}} = (\frac{\pi i y}{h}) \partial_{\bar{z}} e^{\frac{\pi i yz}{h}}$, and making an integration by parts, one can express $r_2^k(t, x)$ as the sum over $|\nu| = 0, 1$ of integrals such as
\[
\frac{h^{2-2k}(h^{2-k})^\nu}{(\pi h)^2} \int e^{\frac{\pi i yz}{h}} \int_0^1 \theta(x + tz)f(t) dt \ \tilde{\varphi}(2^{-k}(\xi + \eta)) d\nu d\eta,
\]
for some new smooth $\theta, f, \tilde{\varphi}$, and show that for any $\alpha, \beta \in \mathbb{N}^2$
\[
|\partial_x^\alpha \partial_{\xi}^\beta \left[ (r_2^k + \tilde{r}_2^k)(x, h\xi) \right]| \lesssim_{\alpha, \beta} h^{2-2k} \lesssim_{\alpha, \beta} h.
\]
Thus $(r_2^k + \tilde{r}_2^k)(x, h\xi) \in hS_0(1)$, which means, by classical results on pseudo-differential operators (see for instance [11]), that
\[
\text{Op}_h^w((r_2^k + \tilde{r}_2^k)(x, \xi)) = \text{Op}_h^w((r_2^k + \tilde{r}_2^k)(x, h\xi)) \in \mathcal{L}(L^2)
\]
with norm $O(h)$. Furthermore, one can also show that $|\text{Op}_h^w((r_2^k + \tilde{r}_2^k))|_{\mathcal{L}(L^2, L^{\infty})} \lesssim h$ using lemma [1.2.26] and the fact that, by making some integrations by parts, for any multi-indices $\alpha, \beta \in \mathbb{N}^2$ and a new $\tilde{\varphi} \in C_0^\infty(\mathbb{R}^2 \setminus \{0\})$
\[
\left\| \partial_x^\alpha \partial_{\xi}^\beta \left[ (r_2^k + \tilde{r}_2^k) \left( \frac{x + y}{2}, h\xi \right) \right] \right\|_{L^2(dx)} \lesssim h^{2-2k} \left\| \int (\eta)^{-3} |\tilde{\varphi}(2^{-k}h(\xi + \eta))) d\eta \right\|_{L^2(dx)} \lesssim h.
\]
These considerations, along with the continuity of $\Gamma^{w, k}$ on $L^2$, uniformly in $h$ and $k$ (see proposition [1.2.27]), imply that $\text{Op}_h^w((r_2^k + \tilde{r}_2^k)u_{\Lambda^w}, k)$ is a remainder $f_k^w$. \hfill \Box

**Lemma 3.2.12.** We have that
\[
|x| - x \cdot \xi = \frac{1}{2} (1 - |x|^2) x \cdot \xi + e(x, \xi)
\]
with
\[
e(x, \xi) = \frac{1}{2} |\xi| |x - \frac{\xi}{|\xi|}|^2 + \frac{1}{2} \left( (x - \frac{\xi}{|\xi|}) \cdot \xi \right) \left( x - \frac{\xi}{|\xi|} \right) \cdot \left( x + \frac{\xi}{|\xi|} \right).
\]

**Proof.**
\[
|x| - x \xi = \frac{1}{2} |\xi| \left| x - \frac{\xi}{|\xi|} \right|^2 + \frac{1}{2} |\xi| (1 - |x|^2)
\]
\[
= \frac{1}{2} |\xi| \left| x - \frac{\xi}{|\xi|} \right|^2 + \frac{1}{2} |\xi| (1 - |x|^2) + \frac{1}{2} (1 - |x|^2) x \cdot \xi
\]
\[
= \frac{1}{2} |\xi| \left| x - \frac{\xi}{|\xi|} \right|^2 + \frac{1}{2} \left( \left( \frac{\xi}{|\xi|} - x \right) \cdot \xi \right) \left( \frac{\xi}{|\xi|} - x \right) \cdot \left( \frac{\xi}{|\xi|} + x \right) + \frac{1}{2} (1 - |x|^2) x \cdot \xi.
\]
Lemma 3.2.13. Let $\gamma, \theta \in C_0^\infty(\mathbb{R}^2)$ and $\tilde{\varphi} \in C_0^\infty(\mathbb{R}^2 \setminus \{0\})$ be such that $\tilde{\varphi} \equiv 1$ on the support of $\varphi$ and have a sufficiently small support so that $\psi \tilde{\varphi} \equiv \tilde{\varphi}$. Let also

$$B(x, \xi) := \gamma \left( \frac{x|\xi| - \xi}{h^{1/2-\sigma}} \right) \tilde{\varphi}(2^{-k}\xi)\theta(x) \left( x_m - \frac{\xi_m}{|\xi|} \right), \quad m \in \{1, 2\}. \tag{3.2.58}$$

For any function $w \in L^2(\mathbb{R}^2)$ such that $Mw \in L^2(\mathbb{R}^2)$, any $m, n \in \{1, 2\}$,

$$\left\| \text{Op}_h^w \left( \theta(x) \tilde{\varphi}(2^{-k}\xi) \left( x_m - \frac{\xi_m}{|\xi|} \right) \right) \Gamma^{w,k}w \right\|_{L^2} \lesssim h^{1-\beta} \left( \|w\|_{L^2} + \|Mw\|_{L^2} \right), \tag{3.2.59a}$$

$$\left\| \text{Op}_h^w \left( \theta(x) \tilde{\varphi}(2^{-k}\xi) \left( x_m - \frac{\xi_m}{|\xi|} \right) \right) \Gamma^{w,k}w \right\|_{L^\infty} \lesssim \left( h^{1-\beta} \left( \|w\|_{L^2} + \|Mw\|_{L^2} \right) + h^{-\beta} \langle \text{Op}_h^w \left( B(x, \xi) \tilde{\varphi} \right) Mw \rangle_{L^2} \right), \tag{3.2.59b}$$

with $\beta > 0$ small, $\beta \to 0$ as $\sigma \to 0$.

Proof. After lemma 1.2.35 with $p = 0$ we have that

$$\text{Op}_h^w \left( \theta(x) \tilde{\varphi}(2^{-k}\xi) \left( x_m - \frac{\xi_m}{|\xi|} \right) \right) \Gamma^{w,k}w = \text{Op}_h^w \left( B(x, \xi) \tilde{\varphi} \right) w + \text{Op}_h^w \left( r_{N,1}^k(x, \xi) \right) w,$$

and the $L^2$ (resp. $L^\infty$) norm of the latter term in the above right hand side is bounded by the right hand side of (3.2.59a) (resp. of 3.2.59b) after inequality (1.2.60a) (resp. 1.2.60b). Moreover, the $L^2$ norm of $\text{Op}_h^w \left( B(x, \xi) \tilde{\varphi} \right) w$ is also bounded by the right hand side of (3.2.59a) as straightly follows from lemma 1.2.33. It only remains to prove that the $L^\infty$ norm of this term is bounded by the right hand side of (3.2.59b).

We first consider a new cut-off function $\tilde{\varphi}_1 \in C_0^\infty(\mathbb{R}^2 \setminus \{0\})$, equal to 1 on $\text{supp} \tilde{\varphi}$ so that its derivatives vanish against $\varphi$, and use symbolic calculus to write

$$\text{Op}_h^w \left( B(x, \xi) \tilde{\varphi} \right) \left( x_m - \frac{\xi_m}{|\xi|} \right) \Gamma^{w,k}w = \text{Op}_h^w \left( \tilde{\varphi}_1(2^{-k}\xi) \right) \text{Op}_h^w \left( B(x, \xi) \tilde{\varphi} \right) \left( x_m - \frac{\xi_m}{|\xi|} \right) \Gamma^{w,k}w,$$

where $r_{N,1}^k(x, \xi)$ is obtained using (1.2.20). Up to interchange the role of variables $y$ and $z$ (resp. $\eta$ and $\zeta$) and to consider $e^{\frac{2\pi i}{h}(y\xi - z\zeta)}$ instead of $e^{\frac{2\pi i}{h}(y\eta - z\zeta)}$ (which does not affect estimate (1.2.46)), $r_{N,1}^k$ is analogous to integral (1.2.35) with $p = 1$. Therefore, if $N \in \mathbb{N}$ is chosen sufficiently large (e.g. $N > 11$, lemma 1.2.32 implies that $\|\text{Op}_h^w \left( r_{N,1}^k \right) \|_{L^2 ; L^\infty} = O(h)$.

Since $\tilde{\varphi}_1$ localises frequencies $\xi$ in an annulus, the classical Sobolev injection gives that

$$\left\| \text{Op}_h^w \left( \tilde{\varphi}_1(2^{-k}\xi) \right) \text{Op}_h^w \left( B(x, \xi) \tilde{\varphi} \right) \left( x_m - \frac{\xi_m}{|\xi|} \right) \Gamma^{w,k}w \right\|_{L^\infty} \lesssim \log h \left\| \text{Op}_h^w \left( B(x, \xi) \tilde{\varphi} \right) \left( x_m - \frac{\xi_m}{|\xi|} \right) \right\|_{L^2} + \|D_x \text{Op}_h^w \left( B(x, \xi) \tilde{\varphi} \right) \left( x_m - \frac{\xi_m}{|\xi|} \right)\|_{L^2}.$$

As previously said, the former norm in the above right hand side satisfies inequality (3.2.59a).

As concerns the latter one, we remark that thanks to the specific structure of symbol $B(x, \xi)$ its first derivative with respect to $x$ does not lose any factor $h^{-1/2 + \sigma}$, as

$$\partial_x \left[ \gamma \left( \frac{x|\xi| - \xi}{h^{1/2-\sigma}} \right) \tilde{\varphi}(2^{-k}\xi)\theta(x) \left( x_m - \frac{\xi_m}{|\xi|} \right) \right] = (\partial_x) \left( \frac{x|\xi| - \xi}{h^{1/2-\sigma}} \right) \tilde{\varphi}(2^{-k}\xi)\theta(x) \left( x_m - \frac{\xi_m}{h^{1/2-\sigma}} \right).$$

Consequently, by using symbolic calculus we derive that

$$D_x \text{Op}_h^w \left( B(x, \xi) \tilde{\varphi} \right) \left( x_m - \frac{\xi_m}{|\xi|} \right) \Gamma^{w,k}w = h^{-1} \text{Op}_h^w \left( B(x, \xi) \tilde{\varphi} \right) \left( x_m - \frac{\xi_m}{|\xi|} \right) w + \sum \text{Op}_h^w \left[ \gamma \left( \frac{x|\xi| - \xi}{h^{1/2-\sigma}} \right) \tilde{\varphi}(2^{-k}\xi)\theta(x) \left( x_m - \frac{\xi_m}{h^{1/2-\sigma}} \right) \right] w,$$
where $\sum'$ is a concise notation to indicate linear combinations, $j \in \{m, n\}$ and $\gamma, \tilde{\varphi}, a$ are some new smooth functions with $a(x)$ compactly supported. Again by lemma 1.2.33 the $L^2$ norms of latter contributions in the above right hand side are bounded by $h^{-\beta} (\|w\|_{L^2} + \|Mw\|_{L^2})$.

Finally, we observe that symbol $B(x, \xi)\xi$ can be seen as

\[(3.2.61)\]

\[
\gamma \left( \frac{|x|}{h^{1/2-\sigma}} \right) (x_m|x| - \xi_m) \tilde{\varphi}(2^{-k}\xi) \theta(x) b_0(x),
\]

which implies, after lemma 1.2.27 that

\[
h^{-1} \text{Op}_h^{\psi}(B(x, \xi)(x_n|x| - \xi_n)\xi) w = \text{Op}_h^{\psi}(B(x, \xi)\xi) M_n w + \mathcal{O}_2 (h^{-\beta} (\|w\|_{L^2} + \|Mw\|_{L^2})).
\]

\[
\square
\]

**Lemma 3.2.14.** Let $e(x, \xi)$ be the symbol defined in (3.2.57), $\theta \in C_0^\infty(\mathbb{R}^2)$, and $\tilde{\varphi} \in C_0^\infty(\mathbb{R}^2 \setminus \{0\})$ with sufficiently small support so that $\psi \tilde{\varphi} \equiv \tilde{\varphi}$. If a-priori estimates (1.1.11) are satisfied for every $t \in [1, T]$, for some fixed $T > 1$, there exists a constant $C > 0$ such that

\[(3.2.62)\]

\[
\left\| \text{Op}_h^{\psi} \left( \theta(x) \tilde{\varphi}(2^{-k}\xi) e(x, \xi) \right) \right\|_{L^2} + \left\| \text{Op}_h^{\psi} \left( \theta(x) \tilde{\varphi}(2^{-k}\xi) e(x, \xi) \right) \right\|_{L^\infty} \leq CB \varepsilon h^{1-\beta}
\]

for every $t \in [1, T]$, with $\beta > 0$ small, $\beta \to 0$ as $\sigma \to 0$.

**Proof.** We warn the reader that, throughout this proof, $C, \beta$ and $\beta'$ will denote three positive constants that may change line after line, with $\beta \to 0$ as $\sigma \to 0$ (resp. $\beta' \to 0$ as $\sigma, \delta_1 \to 0$).

Since symbol $e(x, \xi)$ writes as

\[
e(x, \xi) = \frac{1}{2} \sum_{m=1}^{2} \left( x_m - \frac{\xi_m}{|\xi|} \right) (x_m|x| - \xi_m) + \frac{1}{2} \sum_{m=1}^{2} \left( x_m - \frac{\xi_m}{|\xi|} \right) (x_n|x| - \xi_n) \frac{\xi_m \xi_n}{|\xi|^2} + \frac{x_n \xi_m}{|\xi|} \frac{1}{|\xi|} ,
\]

it follows that the $L^2$ norm of $\text{Op}_h^{\psi} \left( \theta(x) \tilde{\varphi}(2^{-k}\xi) e(x, \xi) \right) \tilde{u}_{\Lambda_w}^{\Sigma_j,k}$ satisfies inequality (3.2.62) after lemmas 3.2.43 and 3.2.44 in appendix B. Moreover, from lemma 3.2.14

\[
\left\| \text{Op}_h^{\psi} \left( \theta(x) \tilde{\varphi}(2^{-k}\xi) e(x, \xi) \right) \tilde{u}_{\Lambda_w}^{\Sigma_j,k} \right\|_{L^\infty} \leq h^{1-\beta} \left( \|\tilde{u}_{\Sigma_j,k}^{\Sigma_j,k}(t, \cdot)\|_{L^2} + \|M\tilde{u}_{\Sigma_j,k}(t, \cdot)\|_{L^2} \right) + h^{-\beta} \|\text{Op}_h^{\psi} (B(x, \xi)\xi) M\tilde{u}_{\Sigma_j,k}^{\Sigma_j,k}(t, \cdot)\|_{L^2} ,
\]

with $B(x, \xi)$ defined in (3.2.55). The aim of the proof is then to show that the $L^2$ norm of $\text{Op}_h^{\psi} (B(x, \xi)\xi) M\tilde{u}_{\Sigma_j,k}^{\Sigma_j,k}$ is estimated by the right hand side of (3.2.62).

First of all, we remind that $B(x, \xi)\xi$ can be seen as a symbol of the form (3.2.61). From proposition 1.2.27 we hence have that

\[(3.2.63a)\]

\[
\|\text{Op}_h^{\psi} (B(x, \xi)\xi)\|_{\mathcal{L}(L^2)} = O(h^{\frac{1}{2}-\beta}) ,
\]

while from inequality (1.2.52a)

\[(3.2.63b)\]

\[
\|\text{Op}_h^{\psi} (B(x, \xi)\xi) w\|_{L^2} \leq h^{1-\beta} (\|w\|_{L^2} + \|Mw\|_{L^2}) .
\]

We also recall definition (3.2.41) of $\tilde{u}_{\Sigma_j,k}$, use the concise notation $\phi_k^{\Sigma_j}(\xi)$ for its symbol $\Sigma_j(\xi)(1 - \chi_0)(h^{-1}\xi) \varphi(2^{-k}\xi) \chi_0(h^\sigma \xi)$, and observe that

\[(3.2.64)\]

\[
[M_n, \text{Op}_h^{\psi} \phi_k^{\Sigma_j}(\xi)] = -\frac{1}{2k} \text{Op}_h^{\psi} (\xi | \partial_n \phi_k^{\Sigma_j}(\xi)) ,
\]

\[
\|M_n, \text{Op}_h^{\psi} (\delta_k)\|_{\mathcal{L}(L^2)} = O(h^{-\sigma}) ,
\]

\[
122
\]
after propositions [1.2.21] and [1.2.27].

Using (3.2.65) and recalling relation (3.2.93), we find that for any $n = 1, 2$,

\[
\|\text{Op}_n^{w}(B(x, \xi)\xi)\mathcal{M}_n\tilde{u}^{\Sigma, h}(t, \cdot)\|_{L^2} \lesssim \|\text{Op}_n^{w}(B(x, \xi)\xi)\text{Op}_n^{w}(\phi_k^{j}(\xi))\|_{L^2}\|t(Z_n u^{\text{NF}})(t, tx)\|_{L^2(dx)}\]

\[+ \|\text{Op}_n^{w}(B(x, \xi)\xi)\text{Op}_n^{w}(\phi_k^{j}(\xi))\tilde{u}(t, \cdot)\|_{L^2} + \|\text{Op}_n^{w}(B(x, \xi)\xi)\text{Op}_n^{w}(\xi|\partial_n \phi_k^{j}(\xi))\tilde{u}(t, \cdot)\|_{L^2} \]

\[+ \|\text{Op}_n^{w}(B(x, \xi)\xi)\text{Op}_n^{w}(\phi_k^{j}(\xi))\left[t(tx_n)\left[q_w(t, tx) + c_w(t, tx) + r_w^{\text{NF}}(t, tx)\right]\right]\|_{L^2(dx)},
\]

with $u^{\text{NF}}$ defined in (3.1.15a), $q_w$, $c_w$ and $r_w^{\text{NF}}$ given by (3.1.17), (3.1.18) and (3.1.19) respectively. Evidently, after (3.2.63b) and a further commutation of $\mathcal{M}$ with $\text{Op}_n^{w}(\xi|\xi^{-1} \phi_k^{j}(\xi))$ and $\text{Op}_n^{w}(\xi|\partial_n \phi_k^{j}(\xi))$ respectively, the second and third $L^2$ norm in the above right hand side are estimated by

\[
h^{1-\beta}(\|\tilde{u}(t, \cdot)\|_{L^2} + \|\text{Op}_n^{w}(\chi(h^\sigma \xi))\mathcal{M}\tilde{u}(t, \cdot)\|_{L^2}),
\]

for some $\chi \in C_0^\infty(\mathbb{R}^2)$. They are hence bounded by $CB\varepsilon h^{1-\beta}$ by lemma [3.2.41].

**Estimate of** $\|\text{Op}_n^{w}(B(x, \xi)\xi)\text{Op}_n^{w}(\phi_k^{j}(\xi))\|_{L^2}$: This $L^2$ norm is basically estimated in terms of the $L^2$ norm of $(Z^\mu u)_-$, for $|\mu| \leq 2$. In fact, after definition (3.1.15) and equality (2.1.15a)

(3.2.65) $\left(Z_n u^{\text{NF}}\right)(t, tx) = (Z_n u)_-(t, tx) + \left(\frac{D_n}{D_x} u_\mu\right)(t, tx)$

\[-\frac{i}{4(2\pi)^2} \sum_{l \in \{+,-\}} Z_n \int e^{iy\xi} D_l(\xi, \eta)\hat{v}_l(\xi - \eta)\hat{v}_l(\eta)d\xi d\eta\bigg|_{y=tx},\]

with $D_l$ given by (3.1.11). On the one hand, taking a new smooth cut-off function $\theta_1$ equal to 1 on the support of $\hat{\theta}$, using (1.2.50) with $\widetilde{a} = \theta_1$, together with (1.2.51d), proposition [1.2.27] and (3.2.65), we deduce that

\[
\|\text{Op}_n^{w}(B(x, \xi)\xi)\text{Op}_n^{w}(\phi_k^{j}(\xi))\|_{L^2(dx)} \lesssim \sum_{m=1}^2 h^1 \|\theta_1(x)\text{Op}_n^{w}(\phi_k^{j}(\xi))\mathcal{M}_m[t(Z_n u)_-(t, tx)\|_{L^2(dx)} + h^{1-\beta\|\mathcal{M}\|_{L^2}}\|\mathcal{M}\|_{L^2} .
\]

After relation (3.2.10),

\[
\|\theta_1(x)\text{Op}_n^{w}(\phi_k^{j}(\xi))\mathcal{M}_m[t(Z_n u)_-(t, tx)\|_{L^2} \lesssim \|\mathcal{M}_m[t(Z_n u)_-(t, tx)\|_{L^2} + \|\mathcal{M}_m[t(Z_n u)_-(t, tx)\|_{L^2} + \|\theta_1\left(\frac{x}{t}\right)\phi_k^{j}(D_x)\mathcal{M}_m[t(Z_n u)_-(t, tx)\|_{L^2}.
\]

Moreover,

\[
\theta_1\left(\frac{x}{t}\right)\phi_k^{j}(D_x)x_m = t\theta_{1,m}\left(\frac{x}{t}\right)\phi_k^{j}(D_x) + \theta_1\left(\frac{x}{t}\right)\phi_k^{j}(D_x) x_m,
\]

where $\theta_{1,m}(z) = \theta_1(z)z_m$, and $|\phi_k^{j}(D_x) x_m|$ is a bounded operator on $L^2$ with norm $O(t)$, as one can check computing its associated symbol and using that $2^{-k} \lesssim h^{-1} = t$. Therefore, using also
inequality (3.2.11) together with a-priori estimates (1.1.11) we deduce that

\[
\| \text{Op}_h^w(B(x, \xi)\text{Op}^w_h(\phi_k^l(\xi)) [t(Z_nu)_-(t, tx)] \|_{L^2(dx)} \leq \sum_{|n|=1}^2 h\|Z^n u)_-(t, \cdot)\|_{L^2} + \|Z_nV(t, \cdot)\|_{H^1} \|V(t, \cdot)\|_{H^2, \infty} + \|V(t, \cdot)\|_{H^1} + \|V(t, \cdot)\|_{L^2} \|U(t, \cdot)\|_{H^1, \infty} + \|V(t, \cdot)\|_{L^\infty} \|U(t, \cdot)\|_{H^1, \infty} \leq CB\varepsilon h^{1 - \frac{d}{2}}.
\]

On the other hand, it is a straight consequence of (3.2.63), (3.2.64) and lemma B.2.1 that

\[
\| \text{Op}_h^w(B(x, \xi)\xi)\text{Op}^w_h(\phi_k^l(\xi))[t(D_n|D_x|^{-1}u)_-(t, tx)] \|_{L^2} \leq h^{1 - \beta} \|\tilde{u}(t, \cdot)\|_{L^2} + \|\text{Op}_h^w(\chi(\sigma^\beta \xi))\tilde{M}u(t, \cdot)\|_{L^2} \leq CB\varepsilon h^{1 - \frac{d}{2}}.
\]

Finally, by symbolic calculus and (3.2.60) we have that

\[
\text{Op}_h^w(B(x, \xi)\xi) = \text{Op}_h^w(B(x, \xi)\xi D_x) + \frac{h}{2i} \text{Op}_h^w(\partial_x B(x, \xi)),
\]

where \(\partial_x B\) is of the form

\[
\gamma \left( \frac{x|\xi| - \xi}{h^{1/2 - \sigma}} \right) \tilde{\varphi}(2^{-k} \xi) \theta(x) b_0(\xi)
\]

for some new \(\gamma, \theta \in C_0^\infty(\mathbb{R}^2)\). Consequently, by proposition 1.2.27

\[
\| \text{Op}_h^w(B(x, \xi)\xi)\text{Op}^w_h(\phi_k^l(\xi)) [tZ_n \int e^{ix\xi} D_1(\xi, \eta)\hat{v}(\xi - \eta)\hat{v}(\eta) d\xi d\eta] \|_{L^2(dx)} \leq \|\chi(t^{-\sigma} D_x)D_x Z_n \int e^{ix\xi} D_1(\xi, \eta)\hat{v}(\xi - \eta)\hat{v}(\eta) d\xi d\eta \|_{L^2(dx)} + h\|\chi(t^{-\sigma} D_x)D_x Z_n \int e^{ix\xi} D_1(\xi, \eta)\hat{v}(\xi - \eta)\hat{v}(\eta) d\xi d\eta \|_{L^2(dx)}
\]

and the above right hand side is bounded by

\[
h^{1 - \beta} \|V(t, \cdot)\|_{H^1} + \|V(t, \cdot)\|_{L^2} \|\tilde{M}u(t, \cdot)\|_{L^2} \|U(t, \cdot)\|_{H^1, \infty} + \|R_1 U(t, \cdot)\|_{H^1, \infty} + \|V(t, \cdot)\|_{L^\infty} \|U(t, \cdot)\|_{H^1, \infty} \|V(t, \cdot)\|_{H^1, \infty} \leq CB\varepsilon h^{1 - \frac{d}{2}}.
\]

after inequalities (A.3.7b), (A.3.7c) and (B.1.6a) with \(s = 0\). From a-priori estimates (1.1.11) we then deduce that the left hand side of (3.2.70) is bounded by \(CB\varepsilon h^{1 - \beta}\), which implies, together with equality (3.2.65) and estimates (3.2.66), (3.2.67), that the \(L^2\) norm of contribution \(\text{Op}_h^w(B(x, \xi)\xi)\text{Op}^w_h(\phi_k^l(\xi)) [tZ_n u^{\text{NF}}(t, tx)]\) is estimated with the right hand side of (3.2.62).

**Estimate of** \(\| \text{Op}_h^w(B(x, \xi)\xi) [t(tx_n) q_w(t, tx)] \|_{L^2(dx)}\): After definition (3.1.17) of \(q_w(t, x)\) and (3.2.22) of \(\tilde{v}\), we first notice that

\[
tq_w(t, tx) = \frac{h}{2} \left[ \frac{\tilde{v} \text{Op}_h^w(\xi_1)\tilde{v} - \text{Op}_h^w \left( \frac{\xi_1}{\xi} \right) \tilde{v} \cdot \text{Op}_h^w \left( \frac{\xi_1}{\xi} \right) \tilde{v} \right] (t, x) =: \tilde{q}_w(t, x),
\]

where

\[
\| \tilde{q}_w(t, \cdot) \|_{L^2} \leq h \|\tilde{v}(t, \cdot)\|_{H^{1, \infty}} \|\tilde{v}(t, \cdot)\|_{H^1}.
\]
Then
\[ \|O_p^w(B(x,\xi)\xi)\|_{L^2(dx)} = h^{-1}\|O_p^w(B(x,\xi)\xi)\|_{L^2(dx)}. \]
Since \( B(x,\xi) \) is compactly supported in \( x \) and
\[
\left\| \left[ O_p^w(B(x,\xi)\xi)\right] x_n \right\|_{L^2} = O(h^{\frac{1}{2} - \beta}),
\]
as follows from symbolic calculus, (3.2.63a), equality (1.2.25) and proposition 1.2.27 we can morally reduce ourselves to the study of the \( L^2 \) norm of
\[ h^{-1}O_p^w(B(x,\xi)\xi)\tilde{\eta}_w(t,x) \]
up to a \( O_L^2(h^{-1/2 - \beta}\\|\tilde{\eta}_w\|_{L^2}) \). Using (3.2.68), (3.2.69), together with proposition 1.2.27 we deduce that
\[ h^{-1}\|O_p^w(B(x,\xi)\xi)\tilde{\eta}_w(t,\cdot)\|_{L^2} \lesssim h^{-1}\|O_p^w(\phi_k^j(\xi))(hD_x)\tilde{\eta}_w(t,\cdot)\|_{L^2} + \|\tilde{\eta}_w(t,\cdot)\|_{L^2}, \]
so from lemma 3.2.15 below, estimates (3.2.72), (3.2.38), and lemmas 3.2.14 3.3.17 in appendix B we conclude that
\[ (3.2.73) \quad h^{-1}\|O_p^w(\phi_k^j(\xi))(hD_x)\tilde{\eta}_w(t,\cdot)\|_{L^2} \lesssim h^{1-\beta}\|\tilde{\eta}(t,\cdot)\|_{H^s} + \sum_{|\mu|=1}^2\|O_p^w(\phi_k^j(\xi))(hD_x)\tilde{\eta}_w(t,\cdot)\|_{L^2} \|\tilde{\eta}(t,\cdot)\|_{H^1,\infty} \leq CB\epsilon h^{1-\beta}; \]

**Estimate of** \( \|O_p^w(B(x,\xi)\xi)\|_{L^2(dx)} \): As for the previous estimate, we can reduce the study of the \( L^2 \) norm of
\[ O_p^w(B(x,\xi)\xi)\|_{L^2(dx)} \]
up to a \( O_L^2(h^{-1/2 - \beta}\\|\tilde{\eta}_w\|_{L^2}) \) for some \( \chi \in C^\infty_0(\mathbb{R}^2) \). So using (3.2.63a), the fact that \( \|tw(t,\cdot)\|_{L^2} = \|w(t,\cdot)\|_{L^2} \), and (3.2.12a) with \( s > 0 \) sufficiently large so that \( N(s) > 2 \), we obtain that for a new \( \chi \in C^\infty_0(\mathbb{R}^2) \)
\[ \|O_p^w(B(x,\xi)\xi)\|_{L^2(dx)} \lesssim h^{-1/2 - \beta} \|\chi(t^{-\sigma}(hD_x)c_w(t,\cdot))\|_{L^2} \]
(3.2.74)
\[ \lesssim h^{-1/2 - \beta} \|\chi(t^{-\sigma}(hD_x)(U_{NF} - v_\nu)(t,\cdot))\|_{L^2} \left( \|V(t,\cdot)\|_{H^{2,\infty}} + \|U_{NF}(t,\cdot)\|_{H^{1,\infty}} \right) \\
+ h^{1/2} \left( \|U_{NF}(t,\cdot)\|_{H^s} + \|v_{NF}(t,\cdot)\|_{H^1} \right). \]
Then inequalities (3.1.7a) with \( s = 1 \) and (3.1.8a), together with a-priori estimates, give that
\[ \|O_p^w(B(x,\xi)\xi)\|_{L^2(dx)} \leq CB\epsilon h^{1-\beta}. \]

**Estimate of** \( \|O_p^w(B(x,\xi)\xi)\|_{L^2(dx)} \): Analogously, from (3.1.22a) and (1.1.1) we obtain that
\[ (3.2.75) \quad \|O_p^w(B(x,\xi)\xi)\|_{L^2(dx)} \lesssim h^{-1/2 - \beta} \|\chi(t^{-\sigma}(hD_x)r_w(t,\cdot))\|_{L^2} \]
\[ \lesssim h^{-1/2 - \beta} \|V(t,\cdot)\|_{H^{1,\infty}}^2 \|U(t,\cdot)\|_{H^1} \leq CB\epsilon h^{1/2 - \beta}. \]
Lemma 3.2.15. Let $\varphi \in C_0^\infty(\mathbb{R}^2 \setminus \{0\})$, $k \in K$ and $a_j(\xi)$ be two smooth real symbols of order $j = 0, 1$. Then

$$
\| \text{Op}_h^w(\varphi(2^{-k}\xi))(hD_x) \left[ a_0(hD_x)\tilde{v} a_1(hD_x)\tilde{v} \right] (t, \cdot) \|_{L^2} \lesssim h^{1-\beta} \left( \| \tilde{v}(t, \cdot) \|_{H^s_h} + \sum_{|\mu|=1}^2 \| \text{Op}_h^w(\chi(h^\sigma\xi))\mathcal{L}_\mu\tilde{v}(t, \cdot) \|_{L^2} \right) \| \tilde{v}(t, \cdot) \|_{H^s_h}.
$$

Proof. Let us split both $\tilde{v}$ in the left hand side of (3.2.76) into the sum $\tilde{v}_{\Lambda_{kg}} + \tilde{v}_{\Lambda_{kg}^c}$, with $\tilde{v}_{\Lambda_{kg}}$, $\tilde{v}_{\Lambda_{kg}^c}$ introduced in (3.2.16) with $\Sigma_j \equiv 1$. Remind that $\tilde{v}_{\Lambda_{kg}}$ satisfies inequality (3.2.19a) and that

$$
\| a_0(hD_x)\tilde{v}(t, \cdot) \|_{L^2} + \| a_0(hD_x)\tilde{v}_{\Lambda_{kg}}(t, \cdot) \|_{L^2} \lesssim h^{-\beta} \| \tilde{v}(t, \cdot) \|_{H^s_h},
$$

for a small $\beta > 0$, $\beta \to 0$ as $\sigma \to 0$, as follows from lemma 1.2.39 with $p = +\infty$ and the uniform continuity of $a_0(hD_x)$ from $H^{1,\infty}$ to $L^\infty$. Therefore, using the continuity on $L^2$ of $\text{Op}_h^w(\varphi(2^{-k}\xi))(hD_x)$ with norm $O(2^k)$ and the fact that $2^k \lesssim h^{-\sigma}$ we deduce that, for any $w_1, w_2 \in \{ \hat{\tilde{v}}, \tilde{v}_{\Lambda_{kg}}, \tilde{v}_{\Lambda_{kg}^c} \}$ with at least one $w_j$ equal to $\tilde{v}_{\Lambda_{kg}^c}$,

$$
\| \text{Op}_h^w(\varphi(2^{-k}\xi))(hD_x) \left[ a_0(hD_x)w_1 a_1(hD_x)w_2 \right] \|_{L^2} \lesssim h^{1-\beta} \left( \| \tilde{v}(t, \cdot) \|_{H^s_h} + \sum_{|\mu|=1}^2 \| \text{Op}_h^w(\chi(h^\sigma\xi))\mathcal{L}_\mu\tilde{v}(t, \cdot) \|_{L^2} \right) \| \tilde{v}(t, \cdot) \|_{H^s_h}.
$$

We are thus reduced to proving inequality (3.2.76) for

$$
\| \text{Op}_h^w(\varphi(2^{-k}\xi))(hD_x) \left[ a_0(hD_x)\tilde{v}_{\Lambda_{kg}} a_1(hD_x)\tilde{v}_{\Lambda_{kg}} \right] (t, \cdot) \|_{L^2}.
$$

Furthermore, by means of lemma 3.2.4 we can replace the action of $a_j(hD_x)$ in the above $L^2$ norm, for $j = 0, 1$, with the multiplication operator by a real function, up to new remainders bounded in $L^2$ by the right hand side of (3.2.76). In fact,

$$
a_j(hD_x)\tilde{v}_{\Lambda_{kg}} = \theta_h(x)a_j(-d\phi(x))\tilde{v}_{\Lambda_{kg}} + R_1(\tilde{v}), \quad j = 0, 1,
$$

where $\theta_h$ is a smooth cut-off function as in the statement of lemma 3.2.4 and $R_1(\tilde{v})$ satisfies (3.2.22a). Now

$$
hD_x|\tilde{v}_{\Lambda_{kg}}|^2 = [\text{Op}_h^w(\xi + d\phi(x)\theta_h(x))\tilde{v}_{\Lambda_{kg}}] \tilde{v}_{\Lambda_{kg}} - \tilde{v}_{\Lambda_{kg}} \text{Op}_h^w(\xi + d\phi(x)\theta_h(x))\tilde{v}_{\Lambda_{kg}},
$$

and from lemma 3.2.10 below

$$
\| \text{Op}_h^w(\xi + d\phi(x)\theta_h(x))\tilde{v}_{\Lambda_{kg}}(t, \cdot) \|_{L^2} \lesssim h^{1-\beta} \sum_{|\mu|=0}^1 \| \text{Op}_h^w(\chi(h^\sigma\xi))\mathcal{L}_\mu\tilde{v}(t, \cdot) \|_{L^2}.
$$

This implies, after having applied the Leibniz rule and proposition 1.2.39 that

$$
\| hD_x \left[ a_0(-d\phi(x))a_1(-d\phi(x))\theta_h^2(x) \right]|\tilde{v}_{\Lambda_{kg}}|^2(t, \cdot) \|_{L^2} \lesssim h^{1-\beta} \left( \| \tilde{v}(t, \cdot) \|_{H^s_h} + \sum_{|\mu|=1}^2 \| \text{Op}_h^w(\chi(h^\sigma\xi))\mathcal{L}_\mu\tilde{v}(t, \cdot) \|_{L^2} \right) \| \tilde{v}(t, \cdot) \|_{L^\infty}
$$

and the conclusion of the statement.

\[\square\]
Lemma 3.2.16. Let $\gamma, \chi \in C_0^\infty(\mathbb{R}^2)$ be equal to 1 in a neighbourhood of the origin, $\sigma > 0$ small, $(\theta_h(x))_h$ be a family of $C_0^\infty(B_1(0))$ functions, equal to 1 on the support of $\gamma(\frac{x-p'(\xi)}{\sqrt{h}})\chi(h^\sigma \xi)$, with $\|\partial_x^a \theta_h\|_{L^\infty} = O(h^{-2|a|}\sigma)$ and $(h\partial_{\theta_h})^k \theta_h$ bounded for every $k$. Let also $\phi(x) = \sqrt{1-|x|^2}$. Then for every $j = 1, 2$

$$\left\| \text{Op}_h^w(\xi_j + d_j \phi(x) \theta_h(x)) \text{Op}_h^w \left( \gamma \left( \frac{x-p'(\xi)}{\sqrt{h}} \right) \chi(h^\sigma \xi) \right) \tilde{v}(t, \cdot) \right\|_{L^2} \leq h^{1-\beta} \sum_{|\alpha| = 0}^2 \| \text{Op}_h^w(\chi(h^\sigma \xi))L^\mu\tilde{v}(t, \cdot) \|_{L^2},$$

with $\beta > 0$ small, $\beta \to 0$ as $\sigma \to 0$.

Proof. By symbolic calculus of lemma 1.2.24 and the fact that $\theta_h \equiv 1$ on the support of $\gamma(\frac{x-p'(\xi)}{\sqrt{h}})\chi(h^\sigma \xi)$, we have that, for any $j = 1, 2$,

\begin{equation}
\text{(3.2.77)}
\text{Op}_h^w(\xi_j + d_j \phi(x) \theta_h(x)) \text{Op}_h^w \left( \gamma \left( \frac{x-p'(\xi)}{\sqrt{h}} \right) \chi(h^\sigma \xi) \right) \tilde{v} = \text{Op}_h^w \left( \gamma \left( \frac{x-p'(\xi)}{\sqrt{h}} \right) \chi(h^\sigma \xi) \right) \tilde{v} + \frac{\sqrt{h}}{2t} \text{Op}_h^w \left( (\partial_\gamma) \left( \frac{x-p'(\xi)}{\sqrt{h}} \right) \chi(h^\sigma \xi) \right) \tilde{v}
- \frac{\sqrt{h}}{2t} \sum_{k,l=1}^2 \text{Op}_h^w \left( (\partial_\gamma) \left( \frac{x-p'(\xi)}{\sqrt{h}} \right) \gamma_{k,l}(d_j \phi(x) \theta_h(x)) \chi(h^\sigma \xi) \right) \tilde{v}
+ \frac{h^{1+\sigma}}{2t} \sum_{k=1}^2 \text{Op}_h^w \left( \left( \frac{x-p'(\xi)}{\sqrt{h}} \right) \partial_k(d_j \phi(x) \theta_h(x)) \chi(h^\sigma \xi) \right) \tilde{v} + \text{Op}_h^w(r_2(x, \xi)) \tilde{v},
\end{equation}

with $r_2 \in h^{1-4\sigma}S_{\frac{1}{2}, \sigma}(\frac{(x-p'(\xi)}{\sqrt{h}})^{-1})$. On the one hand, as

$$\text{Op}_h^w \left( \gamma \left( \frac{x-p'(\xi)}{\sqrt{h}} \right) \chi(h^\sigma \xi) \right) \tilde{v} = \sum_{k=1}^2 \text{Op}_h^w \left( \gamma \left( \frac{x-p'(\xi)}{\sqrt{h}} \right) \chi(h^\sigma \xi) \right) \tilde{v},$$

with $\tilde{v}$ satisfying (1.2.71) on the support of $\gamma(\frac{x-p'(\xi)}{\sqrt{h}})\chi(h^\sigma \xi)$, the $L^2$ norm of the first term in the right hand side of (3.2.77) can be estimated using (1.2.71a).

On the other hand, as $\partial_\gamma$ vanishes in a neighbourhood of the origin, the $L^2$ norm of the second and third term in the right hand side of (3.2.77) can be estimated using (3.2.71a).

The two remaining contributions to the right hand side of (3.2.77), that already carry the right power of $h$, can be estimated with $h^{1-\beta}||\tilde{v}(t, \cdot)||_{L^2}$ simply by proposition 1.2.36.

We can finally state the following result:

Proposition 3.2.17 (Deduction of the transport equation). For any fixed $T > 1$, $D > 0$, let $\Sigma_T := \{(t, x) : 1 \leq t \leq T, |x| \leq D\}$ be the truncated cylinder, and assume that estimates (1.2.11) are satisfied in time interval $[1, T]$. Then function

\begin{equation}
\tilde{u}^\Sigma_{\Lambda_w}(t, x) := \sum_k \tilde{u}^\Sigma_{\Lambda_w, k}(t, x)
\end{equation}

with $\tilde{u}^\Sigma_{\Lambda_w, k} \in C_0^\infty(\Sigma_T)$, and $\Lambda_w$ satisfying (1.2.74) on the support of $\gamma(\frac{x-p'(\xi)}{\sqrt{h}})\chi(h^\sigma \xi)$, the $L^2$ norm of the first term in the right hand side of (3.2.77) can be estimated using (1.2.71a).

On the other hand, as $\partial_\gamma$ vanishes in a neighbourhood of the origin, the $L^2$ norm of the second and third term in the right hand side of (3.2.77) can be estimated using (3.2.71a).

The two remaining contributions to the right hand side of (3.2.77), that already carry the right power of $h$, can be estimated with $h^{1-\beta}||\tilde{v}(t, \cdot)||_{L^2}$ simply by proposition 1.2.36.

We can finally state the following result:
is solution to the following transport equation:

\[(3.2.79) \quad \left[ D_t + \frac{1}{2}(1 - |x|^2) x \cdot (hD_x) + \frac{h}{2t}(1 - 2|x|^2) \right] \tilde{u}_{\Lambda w}^\Sigma (t, x) = F_w(t, x), \quad \forall (t, x) \in \mathbb{C}_D^T, \]

and there exists some constant \(C > 0\) such that

\[(3.2.80) \quad \|F_w(t, \cdot)\|_{L^\infty} \leq CB\varepsilon h^{1-\beta'} \]

for some \(\beta' > 0\) small, \(\beta' \to 0\) as \(\sigma, \delta_1 \to 0\).

Proof. By the assumption in the statement, all that we are going to say is to be meant in time interval \([1, T]\). We remind the reader that, by the definition of \(\tilde{u}_{\Lambda w}^{\Sigma_j, k}\) in \((3.2.43)\) and of \(\tilde{u}_{\Lambda w}^{\Sigma_j, k}\) in \((3.2.44)\), the sum defining \(\tilde{u}_{\Lambda w}^{\Sigma_j, k}\) is finite and restricted to indices \(k \in K := \{k \in \mathbb{Z} : h \lesssim 2^k \lesssim h^{-\sigma}\}\). Also, we warn the reader that, throughout the proof, \(C\) and \(\beta\) will denote two positive constants that may change line after line, with \(\beta \to 0\) as \(\sigma \to 0\).

In lemma \((3.2.11)\) we proved that function \(\tilde{u}_{\Lambda w}^{\Sigma_j, k}\) is solution to \((3.2.53)\) with \(f_k^{w}\) verifying \((3.2.53)\). Hence, by lemma \((3.2.1)\) we derive that \(f_k^{w}\) is a remainder of the form \(F_w\), satisfying \((3.2.80)\).

For seek of compactness, we denote symbol \(\Sigma_j(\xi)(1 - \chi_0)(h^{-1}\xi)\varphi(2^{-k}\xi)\chi_0(h^\sigma\xi)\) in the right hand side of \((3.2.55)\) by \(\phi_k^j(\xi)\). On the one hand, reminding \((3.2.7)\) and using the \(L^\infty - L^\infty\) continuity of operator \(\Gamma^{w, k}\) (see proposition \((1.2.29)\)), together with the classical Sobolev injection, the fact that

\[(3.2.81) \quad \left\|\text{Op}_h^{\Sigma_j}(\phi_k^j(\xi))\right\|_{L(L^2)} = O(h^{-\mu}), \]

with \(\mu = \sigma\rho\) if \(\rho \geq 0\), 0 otherwise, estimates \((3.2.72)\), \((3.2.73)\) and \((3.2.83)\), we find that

\[(3.2.82) \quad \left\|\Gamma^{w, k}\text{Op}_h^{\Sigma_j}(\chi_0)(1 - \chi_0)(h^{-1}\xi)\varphi(2^{-k}\xi)\chi_0(h^\sigma\xi)) \right\|_{L^\infty} \lesssim h^{-\beta} \|\tilde{q}_w(t, \cdot)\|_{L^2} + h^{-1-\beta} \|\text{Op}_h^{\Sigma_j}(\varphi(2^{-k}\xi))(hD_x)\tilde{q}_w(t, \cdot)\|_{L^2} \leq CB\varepsilon h^{1-\beta'}.

On the other hand, using proposition \((1.2.30)\) estimate \((5.2.31)\), the fact that the commutator between \(\text{Op}_h^{\Sigma_j}(\phi_k^j(\xi))\) and \(\Omega_k\) is also continuous on \(L^2\) with norm \(O(h^{-\mu})\), equality \(\|\tilde{q}_w(t, \cdot)\|_{L^2} = \|w(t, \cdot)\|_{L^2}\), and \((3.1.21)\), \((3.1.21)\), \((3.1.21)\), \((3.1.21)\), \((3.1.21)\) (in which we choose \(s > 0\) large enough to have, say, \(N(s) \geq 2\)), we deduce that there is a \(\chi \in C_0^\infty(\mathbb{R}^2)\) such that

\[(3.2.83) \quad \left\|\Gamma^{w, k}\text{Op}_h^{\Sigma_j}(\phi_k^j(\xi))(h^{-1}c_w(t, x))\right\|_{L^\infty(dx)} \lesssim t^{\frac{1}{2} + \beta} \left\|\chi(t^{-\sigma}D_x)(v^{NF} - v_0)(t, \cdot)\right\|_{L^2} \left(\|V(t, \cdot)\|_{H^{2, \infty}} + \|v^{NF}(t, \cdot)\|_{H^{1, \infty}}\right) + t^{-\frac{3}{2} + \beta} \left\|\Omega(v^{NF} - v_0)(t, \cdot)\right\|_{H^{2, \infty}} \left(\|V(t, \cdot)\|_{H^{1, \infty}} + \|v^{NF}(t, \cdot)\|_{H^{1, \infty}}\right) + \frac{1}{2} \chi \sum_{\mu = 0} \left(\Omega^\mu V(t, \cdot)\right)_{H^{1, \infty}} + \|\Omega^\mu v^{NF}(t, \cdot)\|_{L^2} \right).\]
Also, from (3.1.22a), (3.1.22c) we get that for every \( \theta \in [0, 1] \)
\[
\|\Gamma^{w,k} \text{Op}_h^w(\phi^j_k(\xi)) (h^{-1} r_{x}^{w,NF}(t, t x))\|_{L^\infty} \lesssim t^{j + \beta} \|V(t, \cdot)\|_{H^{13, \infty}}^2 \|U(t, \cdot)\|_{H^1} + \|t^{j + \beta} \|V(t, \cdot)\|_{H^{15, \infty}}^2 \|U(t, \cdot)\|_{H^{1, \infty}} + \|R_l U(t, \cdot)\|_{H^{1, \infty}} - \|U(t, \cdot)\|_{H^{1, \infty}} + \|R_l U(t, \cdot)\|_{H^{1, \infty}}.
\]
(3.2.84)
\[
\|V(t, \cdot)\|_{L^\infty} \left( \|U(t, \cdot)\|_{H^{1, \infty}}^{1 - \theta} + \|R_l U(t, \cdot)\|_{H^{1, \infty}}^{1 - \theta} \right)^{1/2} \|\Omega V(t, \cdot)\|_{L^2}^2 + \|U(t, \cdot)\|_{H^{1, \infty}} + \|R_l U(t, \cdot)\|_{H^{1, \infty}} - \|U(t, \cdot)\|_{H^{1, \infty}} + \|R_l U(t, \cdot)\|_{H^{1, \infty}} - \|\Omega V(t, \cdot)\|_{L^2}^2 \|V(t, \cdot)\|_{H^{17, \infty}}.
\]
Therefore, using (3.1.7) with \( s = 1 \), (3.1.8a), (1.1.11), and choosing \( \theta \ll 1 \) sufficiently small, we derive that \( h^{-1} \Gamma^{w,k} \text{Op}_h^w(\phi^j_k(\xi))(c_w(t, t x) + r_{x}^{w,NF}(t, t x)) \) is a remainder \( F_w(t, x) \) satisfying (3.2.80). Since function \( (\partial \chi_0)(h^{-1} \xi) \) is localized for frequencies of size \( h \), its product with \( \psi(2^{-k} \xi) \) is non-zero only for values of \( k \in \mathbb{Z} \) such that \( 2^k \sim h \). In that case, by commuting \( \Gamma^{w,k} \) with \( \text{Op}_h^w((\partial \chi_0)(h^{-1} \xi) \cdot (h^{-1} \xi) \psi(2^{-k} \xi)) \) and using the classical Sobolev injection, together with proposition 1.2.27 we find that
\[
\|i h \Gamma^{w,k} \text{Op}_h^w((\partial \chi_0)(h^{-1} \xi) \cdot (h^{-1} \xi) \psi(2^{-k} \xi)) \tilde{u}(t, \cdot)\|_{L^\infty} \lesssim h \|\tilde{u}(t, \cdot)\|_{L^2}.
\]
(3.2.85)
Since \( (\partial \chi_0)(h^2 \xi) \) is, instead, localized for frequencies larger than \( h^{-\sigma} \), by applying the semiclassical Sobolev injection and lemma 1.2.40 we find that
\[
\|i \sigma h \Gamma^{w,k} \text{Op}_h^w(\psi(2^{-k} \xi)(\partial \chi_0)(h^2 \xi)) \cdot (h^2 \xi) \tilde{u}(t, \cdot)\|_{L^\infty} \lesssim h^N \|\tilde{u}(t, \cdot)\|_{H^1_h},
\]
(3.2.86)
with \( N = N(s) > 1 \) as long as \( s > 0 \) is sufficiently large. By lemma 3.2.1 we obtain that also the fifth and sixth addend in the right hand side of (3.2.55) are remainders \( F_w(t, x) \).

Finally, after lemma 3.2.12
\[
- \text{Op}_h^w(\theta(x)(x \cdot \xi - |\xi|) \tilde{\varphi}(2^{-k} \xi)) \tilde{u}^{\Sigma_{j,k}} = \frac{1}{2} \text{Op}_h^w(\theta(x)(1 - |x|^2)x \cdot \xi \tilde{\varphi}(2^{-k} \xi)) \tilde{u}^{\Sigma_{j,k}} + \text{Op}_h^w(\theta(x) e(x, \xi) \tilde{\varphi}(2^{-k} \xi)) \tilde{u}^{\Sigma_{j,k}}
\]
with \( e(x, \xi) \) given by (3.2.57), and latter term in the above right hand side satisfies (3.2.62).

Using symbolic calculus of proposition 1.2.21 until order \( N \in \mathbb{N} \) we find that
\[
\frac{1}{2} \text{Op}_h^w(\theta(x)(1 - |x|^2)x \cdot \xi \tilde{\varphi}(2^{-k} \xi)) \tilde{u}^{\Sigma_{j,k}} = \theta(x) \left( \frac{1}{2} |1 - |x|^2|x| \cdot (hD_x + \frac{h}{2} |1 - |x|^2|) \right) \text{Op}_h^w(\tilde{\varphi}(2^{-k} \xi)) \tilde{u}^{\Sigma_{j,k}} + \frac{h}{4i} \tilde{\varphi}(x) \cdot x(1 - |x|^2) \text{Op}_h^w(\tilde{\varphi}(2^{-k} \xi)) \tilde{u}^{\Sigma_{j,k}} + \sum' h \theta_1(x) \text{Op}_h^w(\tilde{\varphi}_1(2^{-k} \xi)) \tilde{u}^{\Sigma_{j,k}} + \text{Op}_h^w(r(N \chi, x, \xi)) \tilde{u}^{\Sigma_{j,k}},
\]
with \( \sum' \) being a concise notation to indicate a linear combination, \( \theta(x) \) supported for \( |x| > D_1 \), \( \theta_1 \in C_0^\infty(\mathbb{R}^2) \), \( \tilde{\varphi}_1 \in C_0^\infty(\mathbb{R}^2 \setminus \{0\}) \) coming out from the derivatives of \( \tilde{\varphi} \), and \( r(N \chi, x, \xi) \) integral remainder of the form
\[
\frac{h^N}{(\pi h)^2} \int \int_0^1 \Theta_N(x + t z)(1 - t)^{N-1} dt \tilde{\varphi}_N(2^{-k}(\xi + \eta)) dz d\eta,
\]
for some other \( \Theta_N \in C_0^\infty(\mathbb{R}^2) \), \( \tilde{\varphi}_N \in C_0^\infty(\mathbb{R}^2 \setminus \{0\}) \), verifying that
(3.2.87)
\[
\|\text{Op}_h^w(r(N \chi, x, \xi))\|_{L^2 / L^\infty} = O(h)
\]
if \( N \) is taken sufficiently large. Therefore, from proposition 1.2.27, 1.2.81 and 1.2.41a
\[
\|\text{Op}_h^w(r(x, \xi)) \tilde{u}^{\Sigma_{j,k}}(t, \cdot)\|_{L^\infty} \lesssim h^{1 - \beta} \|\tilde{u}(t, \cdot)\|_{L^2} \leq CB \varepsilon h^{1 - \beta'}.
\]
129
Moreover, since \( \tilde{\varphi} \equiv 1 \) on the support of \( \varphi \) (which defines \( \tilde{u}^{\varphi}_{\Sigma^i, k} \)), by commutating \( \text{Op}_h^w(\tilde{\varphi}(2^{-k}\xi)) \) with \( \Gamma^w, k \) and using remark (1.2.22) we find that, for any \( N \in \mathbb{N} \) as large as we want,

\[
\text{Op}_h^w(\tilde{\varphi}(2^{-k}\xi))\tilde{u}^{\varphi}_{\Sigma^i, k} = \tilde{u}^{\varphi}_{\Sigma^i, k} + O_{L^\infty}(h^N\|\tilde{u}\|_{L^2}).
\]

Also, since \( \tilde{\varphi}_1 \) is obtained from the derivatives of \( \tilde{\varphi} \) and vanishes on the support of \( \varphi \),

\[
\theta_1(x)\text{Op}_h^w(\tilde{\varphi}_1(2^{-k}\xi))\tilde{u}^{\varphi}_{\Sigma^i, k} = O_{L^\infty}(h^N\|\tilde{u}\|_{L^2}).
\]

Therefore, again from (3.2.1a) we deduce that

\[
- \text{Op}_h^w(\theta(x)(x \cdot \xi - |\xi|)\tilde{\varphi}(2^{-k}\xi))\tilde{u}^{\varphi}_{\Sigma^i, k} = \theta(x)\left[\frac{1}{2}(1 - |x|^2)x \cdot (hD_x) + h \frac{1}{2t}(1 - 2|x|^2)\right]\tilde{u}^{\varphi}_{\Sigma^i, k} + \frac{h}{4t}v(\theta(x)\tilde{\varphi}(2^{-k}\xi)e(x, \xi))\tilde{u}^{\varphi}_{\Sigma^i, k} + O_{L^\infty}(h^{1-\beta'}),(\beta')
\]

which implies, summed up with estimates from (3.2.82) to (3.2.86), that \( \tilde{u}^{\varphi}_{\Sigma^i, k} \) is solution to

\[
\left[D_t + \theta(x)\frac{1}{2}(1 - |x|^2)x \cdot (hD_x) + \theta(x)\frac{h}{2t}(1 - 2|x|^2)\right]\tilde{u}^{\varphi}_{\Sigma^i, k}(t, x) = F_w^k(t, x)
\]

\[
+ \left[(1 - \theta(x))\text{Op}_h^w((x \cdot \xi - |\xi|)\tilde{\varphi}(2^{-k}\xi)) + \tilde{\theta}(x)\text{Op}_h^w(\tilde{\varphi}(2^{-k}\xi))\right]\tilde{u}^{\varphi}_{\Sigma^i, k}(t, x),
\]

where \( F_w^k(t, x) \) satisfies (3.2.80). Choosing \( D_1 = D \), we obtain that \( \tilde{u}^{\varphi}_{\Sigma^i} \) is solution to (3.2.79) in cylinder \( C_D \), with \( F_w(t, x) := \sum_k F_w^k(t, x) \) (this sum being finite and restricted to indices \( k \in K \)) satisfying the same \( L^\infty \) estimate as \( F_w^k \), up to an additional factor \( h^{-\sigma} \).

\[\square\]

### 3.3 Analysis of the transport equation and end of the proof

In previous section (see proposition (3.2.7) we firstly showed how to propagate a-priori uniform estimate (1.1.11) on the Klein-Gordon component \( v_- \), in the sense of deducing (1.1.12b) from estimates (1.1.11). We then passed to the study of the wave equation and proved that, if \( (u_-, v_-) \) is solution to (3.1.1) in some interval \([1, T] \), function \( \tilde{u}^{\varphi}_{\Sigma^i} \) defined in (3.2.78) is solution to transport equation (3.2.79) in truncated cylinder \( C_D^x := \{ (t, x) : 1 \leq t \leq T, |x| \leq D \} \) for any \( D > 0 \). The aim of this section is to study such a transport equation in order to deduce some information on the uniform norm of its solutions. This will allow us to finally propagate a-priori estimate (1.1.11a) on the wave component \( u_- \) and to close the bootstrap argument. A short proof of main theorem (1.1.1) is given at the end of this section.

#### 3.3.1 The inhomogeneous transport equation

The aim of this subsection is to study the behaviour of a solution \( w \) to the following transport equation

\[
(3.3.1) \quad \left[D_t + \frac{1}{2}(1 - |x|^2)x \cdot (hD_x) - \frac{i}{2t}(1 - 2|x|^2)\right]w = f,
\]

in a cylinder \( C = \{ (t, x) : t \geq 1, |x| \leq D \} \) for a large constant \( D \gg 1 \), where the inhomogeneous term \( f \) is a \( O_{L^\infty}(\varepsilon t^{-1+\beta}) \), for some \( \varepsilon > 0 \) small and \( 0 \leq \beta < 1/2 \). We distinguish in \( C \) two subregions:

\[I_1 := \{ (t, x) : t \geq 1, |x| < \left(\frac{t}{t-1}\right)^{\frac{1}{2}}, |x| \leq D \}; \quad I_2 := \{ (t, x) : t > 1, \left(\frac{t}{t-1}\right)^{\frac{1}{2}} \leq |x| \leq D \} \]
and denote by $I_{1,t}, I_{2,t}$ their sections at a fixed time $t \geq 1$,

$$I_{1,t} := \left\{ x : |x| < \left( \frac{t}{t-1} \right)^{\frac{1}{2}}, |x| \leq D \right\}, \quad I_{2,t} := \left\{ x : \left( \frac{t}{t-1} \right)^{\frac{1}{2}} \leq |x| \leq D \right\}.$$  

The result we prove is the following.

**Proposition 3.3.1.** Let $\varepsilon > 0$ be small and $w$ be the solution to the following Cauchy problem

$$(3.3.2) \begin{cases} [D_x + \frac{1}{2}(1 - |x|^2)x \cdot (hD_x) - \frac{1}{\sqrt{t}}(1 - 2|x|^2)] w = f, \\ w(1, x) = \varepsilon w_0(x), \end{cases}$$

with $f = O_{L^\infty}(et^{-1+\beta})$, for some fixed $0 \leq \beta < 1/2$. Let us suppose that $|w_0(x)| \lesssim (x)^{-2}$ and that $|w(t, x)| \lesssim \varepsilon t^\beta''$ for some $\beta'' > 0$ whenever $|x| > D \gg 1$. Therefore,

$$(3.3.3) |w(t, x)| \lesssim \varepsilon \|w_0\|_{L^\infty} t^{\beta''}(1 + |x|)^{-\frac{1}{2}}(t^{-1} + |1 - |x||)^{-\frac{1}{2} + \beta''},$$

for every $(t, x) \in \mathcal{C}_D = \{ (t, x) | t \geq 1, |x| \leq D \}$, with $\beta'' = \max\{\beta, \beta''\}$.

We observe that, if $W(t, x) = t^{-1}w(t^{-1}x)$, the above inequality implies that

$$|W(t, x)| \lesssim \varepsilon \|w_0\|_{L^\infty} (t + |x|)^{-\frac{1}{4}}(1 + |t - |x||)^{-\frac{1}{4} + \beta''},$$

showing that the uniform norm of $W(t, \cdot)$ decays in time at a rate $t^{-1/2}$, enhanced to $t^{-1+\beta''}$ out of the light cone $t = |x|$.

In order to prove the result of proposition 3.3.1 we fix $T \geq 1$, $x \in B_D(0)$, and look for the characteristic curve of (3.3.2) with initial point $(T, x)$, i.e. map $t \mapsto X(t; T, x)$ solution of

$$(3.3.4) \begin{cases} \frac{d}{dt}X(t; T, x) = \frac{1}{\sqrt{t}}(1 - |X(t; T, x)|^2)X(t; T, x), \\ X(T; T, x) = x \end{cases} \quad t \geq T.$$  

**Lemma 3.3.2.** Solution $X(t; T, x)$ to (3.3.4) writes explicitly as

$$(3.3.5) X(t; T, x) = \frac{\sqrt{T_x}}{(T - (T - t)|x|^2)^{\frac{1}{2}}}$$

and it is well defined for all $t > T(1 - |x|^{-2})$. Moreover, for any fixed $t > T$, map $x \in \mathbb{R}^2 \mapsto X(t; T, x) \in \left\{ |x| < \left( \frac{t}{1 - t} \right)^{\frac{1}{2}} \right\}$ is a diffeomorphism of inverse $Y(t, y) = \frac{\sqrt{T_y}}{(t + (T-t)y^2)^{\frac{1}{2}}}$.  

Figure 3.3: Regions $I_1$ and $I_2$ in space dimension 1
Proof. Multiplying equation (3.3.4) by $2X(t; T, x)$ we deduce that $|X(t; T, x)|^2$ satisfies the equation
\[
\frac{d}{dt} |X(t; T, x)|^2 = \frac{1}{t} \left( 1 - |X(t; T, x)|^2 \right) |X(t; T, x)|^2,
\]
from which follows that $1 - |X(t; T, x)|^2 = \frac{T(1 - |x|^2)}{T - (t - T)|x|^2}$. Injecting this result in (3.3.4) and integrating in time, we obtain expression (3.3.5) and observe that the obtained map is well defined for all $t > T(1 - |x|^{-2})$.

In order to prove the second part of the statement, we fix $t > T$, $y \in \{ |y| \leq \left( \frac{t}{t - T} \right)^{\frac{1}{2}} \}$ and look for $Y(t, y)$ such that $X(t; T, Y(t, y)) = y$. In other words,
\[
y = \frac{\sqrt{T} Y(t, y)}{(T - (1 - T)|y|^2)^{\frac{1}{2}}},
\]
which implies that $Y(t, y) = \frac{\sqrt{T} y}{(t + (T - t)|y|^2)^{\frac{1}{2}}}$. This map is well defined as long as $|y| < \left( \frac{t}{t - T} \right)^{\frac{1}{2}}$. □

Along the characteristic curve $X(t; T, x)$ function $w$ satisfies
\[
\frac{d}{dt} w(t, X(t; T, x)) = -\frac{1}{2t} \left( 1 - 2|X(t; T, x)|^2 \right) w(t, X(t; T, x)) + i f(t, X(t; T, x))
\]
\[
= -\frac{1}{2t} \frac{T - T|x|^2 - t|x|^2}{T - (T - t)|x|^2} w(t, X(t; T, x)) + i f(t, X(t; T, x))
\]
and hence
\[
\frac{d}{dt} \left( \exp \int_T^t \frac{1}{2\tau} \frac{T - T|x|^2 - \tau|x|^2}{T - (T - \tau)|x|^2} d\tau \right) w(t, X(t; T, x)) = i \left( \exp \int_T^t \frac{1}{2\tau} \frac{T - T|x|^2 - \tau|x|^2}{T - (T - \tau)|x|^2} d\tau \right) f(t, X(t; T, x)).
\]

Lemma 3.3.3.
\[
\exp \int_T^t \frac{1}{2\tau} \frac{T - T|x|^2 - \tau|x|^2}{T - (T - \tau)|x|^2} d\tau = \left( \frac{t}{T} \right)^{\frac{1}{2}} \left( \frac{T - T|x|^2 + t|x|^2}{T} \right)^{-\frac{1}{2}}.
\]

Proof. The result follows writing
\[
\frac{1}{2\tau} \frac{T - T|x|^2 - \tau|x|^2}{T - (T - \tau)|x|^2} = \frac{1}{2\tau} - \frac{|x|^2}{T - (T - \tau)|x|^2}
\]
taking the integral over $\tau \in [T, t]$ and then passing to its exponential. □

Let us first study the behaviour of $w$, solution to (3.3.2), in region $I_1$. We fix $T = 1$ and, integrating equality (3.3.6) over $[1, t]$, we find that
\[
\left( \exp \int_1^t \frac{1}{2\tau} \frac{1 - |x|^2 - \tau|x|^2}{1 - (1 - \tau)|x|^2} d\tau \right) w(t, X(t; 1, x)) = w(1, x) + i \int_1^t \left( \exp \int_1^s \frac{1}{2\tau} \frac{1 - |x|^2 - s|x|^2}{1 - (1 - s)|x|^2} ds \right) f(s, X(s; 1, x)) ds.
\]
Using (3.3.7) and the fact that \( f = O_{L^\infty}(\epsilon t^{-1+\beta}) \), we then obtain that

\[
|w(t, X(t; 1, x))| \leq t^{-\frac{\beta}{2}}(1 - |x|^2 + t|x|^2)|w(1, x)| + C\epsilon t^{-\frac{1}{2}}(1 - |x|^2 + t|x|^2)\int_1^t \frac{ds}{(1 - |x|^2 + s|x|^2)s^{\frac{1}{2} - \beta}},
\]

for some positive constant \( C \).

**Lemma 3.3.4.** For any fixed \( 0 \leq \beta < 1/2 \)

\[
\int_1^t \frac{ds}{(1 - |x|^2 + s|x|^2)s^{\frac{1}{2} - \beta}} \lesssim t^{\frac{1}{2} + \beta} \lesssim \frac{t^{\frac{1}{2} + \beta}}{(1 + \sqrt{t}|x|)^{1+2\beta}(1 + |x|)^{-1+2\beta+\beta'}},
\]

for all \( t \geq 1 \) and \( \beta > 0 \) as small as we want.

**Proof.** For \( \sqrt{t}|x| \leq 1 \), we have that

\[
\int_1^t \frac{ds}{(1 - |x|^2 + s|x|^2)s^{\frac{1}{2} - \beta}} \lesssim t^{\frac{1}{2} + \beta} \lesssim \frac{t^{\frac{1}{2} + \beta}}{(1 + \sqrt{t}|x|)^{1+2\beta}(1 + |x|)^{-1+2\beta+\beta'}},
\]

for any \( \beta' > 0 \). Suppose then that \( \sqrt{t}|x| > 1 \). For \( t \leq 2 \)

\[
\int_1^t \frac{ds}{(1 - |x|^2 + s|x|^2)s^{\frac{1}{2} - \beta}} \lesssim (1 + |x|)^{-2} \log(1 + |x|^2)
\]

and \( |x|^{-2} \log(1 + |x|^2)(1 + \sqrt{t}|x|)^{1+2\beta} \lesssim (1 + |x|)^{-1+2\beta} \log(1 + |x|^2) \),

which immediately implies inequality (3.3.10). For \( t \geq 2 \)

\[
\int_1^t \frac{ds}{(1 - |x|^2 + s|x|^2)s^{\frac{1}{2} - \beta}} = \int_1^2 \frac{ds}{(1 - |x|^2 + s|x|^2)s^{\frac{1}{2} - \beta}} + \int_2^t \frac{ds}{(1 - |x|^2 + s|x|^2)s^{\frac{1}{2} - \beta}},
\]

where the first integral is bounded from the right hand side of (3.3.10). The second one is less or equal than \( \int_1^{t-1} \frac{ds}{(1+s|x|^2)s^{\frac{1}{2} - \beta}}, \) so for \( |x| \geq 1 \) it follows that

\[
\int_1^{t-1} \frac{ds}{(1+s|x|^2)s^{\frac{1}{2} - \beta}} \leq |x|^{-2} \int_1^{t-1} \frac{ds}{s^{\frac{1}{2} - \beta}} \leq (1 + |x|)^{-2}.
\]

Since \( \frac{(1+\sqrt{t}|x|)^{1+2\beta}}{t^{\frac{1}{2}+\beta}} \leq (1 + |x|)^{1+2\beta} \), from the above inequality we deduce the right bound of the statement. For \( |x| < 1 \), a change of variables gives that

\[
\int_1^{t-1} \frac{ds}{(1+s|x|^2)s^{\frac{1}{2} - \beta}} = |x|^{-1-2\beta} \int_{|x|^2}^{(t-1)|x|^2} \frac{ds}{(1+s|x|^2)s^{\frac{1}{2} - \beta}} \lesssim |x|^{-1-2\beta} (t|x|^2)^{\frac{1}{2} + \beta} \lesssim \frac{t^{\frac{1}{2} + \beta}}{(1 + t|x|^2)^{\frac{1}{2} + \beta}}.
\]

\[\Box\]

If initial condition \( u_0(x) \) is sufficiently decaying in space, e.g. \( |u_0(x)| \lesssim \langle x \rangle^{-2} \), we deduce from inequalities (3.3.9) and (3.3.10) the following bound for \( w \) along the characteristic curve \( X(t; 1, x) \):

\[
|w(t, X(t; 1, x))| \lesssim \epsilon \|w_0\|_{L^\infty} t^{\beta}(1 + \sqrt{t}|x|)^{1-2\beta}(1 + |x|)^{-1+2\beta+\beta'},
\]

for any \( \beta' > 0 \) as small as we want.
Proposition 3.3.5. Let $w$ be the solution to transport equation $(3.3.2)$, with $\|f(t, \cdot)\|_{L^\infty} \lesssim \varepsilon t^{-1+\beta}$ for some fixed $0 \leq \beta < 1/2$, and initial condition $|w_0(x)| \lesssim \langle x \rangle^{-2}, \forall x \in \mathbb{R}^2$. Then

$$(3.3.12) \quad |w(t, x)| \lesssim \varepsilon t^\beta \left[ t^{-1} + |1 - |x|| \right]^{-\frac{1}{2} + \beta}$$

for every $(t, x) \in I_1 = \{(t, x) : t \geq 1, |x| < \left(\frac{t}{t-1}\right)^{\frac{1}{2}}, |x| \leq D\}$.

Proof. In lemma (3.3.2) we proved that, for any fixed $t > T = 1$, map $x \in \mathbb{R}^2 \mapsto X(t; 1, x) \in \{x : |x| < \left(\frac{t}{t-1}\right)^{\frac{1}{2}}\}$ is a diffeomorphism with inverse $Y(t, y) = y(t + (1 - t)|y|^2)^{-1/2}$. From inequality $(3.3.11)$ we hence deduce that, for any $y$ such that $|y| < \left(\frac{t}{t-1}\right)^{\frac{1}{2}}$,

$$|w(t, y)| \lesssim \varepsilon t^\beta \left(1 + \sqrt{t}|y|\right)^{1-2\beta} (1 + |Y(t, y)|)^{-1+2\beta + \beta'}.$$

In particular, as $t(1 - |y|^2) + |y|^2 \sim t(1 - |y|^2) + |y|^2$ when $|y| < \left(\frac{t}{t-1}\right)^{\frac{1}{2}}$ and $t \geq t_0 > 1$, and $t|1 - |y|^2| + |y|^2 \sim t|1 - |y|| + |y|$ when $|y| \leq D$, we find for those values of $(t, y)$ that

$$|w(t, y)| \lesssim \varepsilon t^\beta \left(1 + \frac{\sqrt{t}|y|}{(t)|1 - |y|| + |y|}\right)^{1-2\beta} \lesssim \varepsilon t^\beta \left[ t^{-1} + |1 - |y|| \right]^{-\frac{1}{2} + \beta},$$

simply using that $(1 + |Y(t, y)|)^{-1+2\beta + \beta'} \leq 1$. Moreover, for $t \to 1$ and $|y| \leq D$,

$$|w(t, y)| \lesssim \varepsilon \lesssim \varepsilon t^\beta \left[ t^{-1} + |1 - |y|| \right]^{-\frac{1}{2} + \beta}.$$

\[ \square \]

Proposition 3.3.6. Let $\varepsilon > 0$ be small and $w$ be the solution to transport equation $(3.3.2)$, with $\|f(t, \cdot)\|_{L^\infty} \lesssim \varepsilon t^{-1+\beta}$ for some fixed $0 \leq \beta < 1/2$, and suppose that $|w(t, x)| \lesssim \varepsilon t^{\beta'}$ for some $\beta' > 0$ whenever $|x| \geq D$. Then

$$|w(t, x)| \lesssim \varepsilon t^{\beta''} (|x|^2 - 1)^{\beta'' - \frac{1}{2}},$$

for every $(t, x) \in I_2 = \{(t, x) : t > 1, \left(\frac{t}{t-1}\right)^{\frac{1}{2}} \leq |x| \leq D\}$, where $\beta'' = \max\{\beta, \beta'\}$.  

134
so since the first term in right hand side of (3.3.14) is bounded by $F_0$ from (3.3.13), we integrate expression (3.3.6) over $w$ (3.3.14) enters in the region $\{ (t, x) : t \geq 1, |x| \leq D \}$, to never leave it again for function $t \mapsto |X(t; T, x)|$ is strictly decreasing. A simple computation shows that

\[
T^* = \frac{D^2}{D^2 - 1} (1 - |x|^{-2}) T < T.
\]

Integrating expression (3.3.6) over $[T^*, T]$ and using (3.3.7), we find that

\[
w(T, x) = \left( T^* \right) \left( \frac{T - T(1 - |x|^{-2})}{T^* - T(1 - |x|^{-2})} \right) w(T^*, X(T^*; T, x))
\]

\[
+ i \int_{T^*}^{T} \left( \frac{t}{T} \right) \left( \frac{T - T(1 - |x|^{-2})}{t - T(1 - |x|^{-2})} \right) f(t, X(t; T, x)) dt.
\]

From (3.3.13)

\[
T^* = T(1 - |x|^{-2}) = \frac{1}{D^2 - 1} (1 - |x|^{-2}) T \quad \text{and} \quad \frac{T^*}{T} = \frac{D^2}{D^2 - 1} (1 - |x|^{-2})
\]

so since $|w(t, x)| \lesssim \varepsilon t^{\beta'}$ whenever $|x| \geq D$, for some $\beta' > 0$ by the hypothesis, we find that the first term in right hand side of (3.3.14) is bounded by $C\varepsilon(|x|^2 - 1)^{-\frac{1}{2}}(T^*)^\beta'$, for some constant $C > 0$. Setting $c = \frac{1}{1 - T}$, by the hypothesis on $f$ we derive that

\[
\left| \int_{T^*}^{T} \left( \frac{t}{T} \right) \left( \frac{T - T(1 - |x|^{-2})}{t - T(1 - |x|^{-2})} \right) f(t, X(t; T, x)) dt \right| \lesssim \varepsilon T^\frac{1}{2} \int_{T^*}^{T} (t - T(1 - |x|^{-2}))^{-1} t^{-\frac{1}{2} + \beta} dt
\]

\[
= \varepsilon T^\frac{1}{2} \int_{T^*}^{T} (t - T^* + c(1 - |x|^{-2}) T)^{-1} t^{-\frac{1}{2} + \beta} dt
\]

\[
\leq \varepsilon T^\frac{1}{2} \int_{T^*}^{T} \frac{dt}{(t + c(1 - |x|^{-2}) T) t^{\frac{1}{2} - \beta}}
\]

\[
\lesssim \varepsilon T^\frac{1}{2} (1 - |x|^{-2} T)^{\beta - \frac{1}{2}} = \varepsilon T^\beta (1 - |x|^{-2})^{2\beta - \frac{1}{2}}.
\]
3.3.2 Propagation of the uniform estimate on the wave component

Proposition 3.3.7 (Propagation of the a-priori estimate on \(U, RU\)). Let us fix \(K_1 > 0\). There exist two integers \(n \gg \rho \gg 1\) sufficiently large, two constants \(A, B > 1\) sufficiently large, some small \(0 < \delta < \delta_0 \ll \delta_1 \ll \delta_0\), and \(\varepsilon_0 \in ]0, 1[\) sufficiently small, such that, for any \(0 < \varepsilon < \varepsilon_0\), if \((u, v)\) is solution to (1.1.1)–(1.1.2) in some interval \([1, T]\), for a fixed \(T > 1\), and \(u_\pm, v_\pm\) defined in (1.1.5) satisfy a-priori estimates (1.1.11), for every \(t \in [1, T]\), then it also verify (1.1.12) in the same interval \([1, T]\).

Proof. We warn the reader that, throughout the proof, \(C, \beta, \beta'\) will denote some positive constants that may change line after line, such that \(\beta \to 0\) as \(\sigma \to 0\) (resp. \(\beta' \to 0\) as \(\delta_1, \sigma \to 0\)). We also remind that \(h = 1/t\).

In proposition 3.1.2 we introduced function \(u^{NF}\), defined from \(u_-\) through (3.1.15), and showed that its \(H^{p+1, \infty}\) norm (resp. the \(H^{p+1, \infty}\) norm of \(Ru^{NF}\)) differs from that of \(u_-\) (resp. of \(Ru_-\)) by a quantity satisfying (3.1.20b) (resp. (3.1.20c)). If \(n\) is sufficiently large with respect to \(\rho\) (at least \(n \geq \rho + 18\)), a-priori estimates (1.1.11b), (1.1.11c) give that, for every \(t \in [1, T]\),

\[
(3.3.15) \quad \left\| u_-(t, \cdot) \right\|_{H^{p+1, \infty}} + \sum_{j=1}^{2} \left\| R_j u_-(t, \cdot) \right\|_{H^{p+1, \infty}} \leq \left\| u^{NF}(t, \cdot) \right\|_{H^{p+1, \infty}} + \sum_{j=1}^{2} \left\| R_j u^{NF}(t, \cdot) \right\|_{H^{p, \infty}} + 2ABA\varepsilon^2 t^{-1 + \delta}.
\]

We successively considered \(\tilde{u}(t, x) := t\tilde{u}^{NF}(t, tx)\) and decomposed it as in (3.2.38), with \(\Sigma_j\) given by (3.2.37), showing that it satisfies (3.2.39) (resp. (3.2.40)) when restricted to small frequencies \(|\xi| \lesssim t^{-1}\) (resp. large frequencies \(|\xi| \gtrsim t^\sigma\)). We then focused on \(\tilde{u}^{\Sigma_j, k}\) defined in (3.2.41), which is localized for frequencies supported in an annulus of size \(2^k\) with \(k \in K = \{k \in \mathbb{Z} : h \lesssim 2^k \lesssim h^{-\sigma}\}\), and further split it into the sum of functions \(\tilde{u}^{\Sigma_j, k}_w, \tilde{u}^{\Sigma_j, k}_\tilde{u}\) (see (3.2.45)). On the one hand, from inequality (3.2.46b) and lemma 3.2.1, we have that there is a positive constant \(C\) such that, for every \(t \in [1, T]\),

\[
\left\| \tilde{u}^{\Sigma_j, k}_w(t, \cdot) \right\|_{L^\infty} \leq C\varepsilon t^{\beta'}.
\]

On the other hand, we proved in proposition 3.2.1 that, for any \(D > 0\) and any \((t, x)\) in truncated cylinder \(\mathbb{E}_D^T = \{(t, x) : 1 \leq t \leq T, |x| \leq D\}\), \(\tilde{u}^{\Sigma_j}_w(t, x)\) defined in (3.2.78) is solution to inhomogeneous transport equation (3.2.79), with inhomogeneous term \(F_w(t, x)\) satisfying (3.2.80). Observe that, by definition (1.2.49) of \(\mathcal{M}\), symbolic calculus, and proposition 1.2.36, we have that

\[
\left\| \tilde{u}^{\Sigma_j}_w(1, \cdot) \right\|_{L^2} + \left\| x \tilde{u}^{\Sigma_j}_w(1, \cdot) \right\|_{L^2} \lesssim \left\| \tilde{u}(1, \cdot) \right\|_{L^2} + \left\| Op_h^w(\chi(h^\sigma \xi)) M\tilde{u}(1, \cdot) \right\|_{L^2} \leq C\varepsilon,
\]

which means that \(\varepsilon^{-1} \langle x \rangle \tilde{u}^{\Sigma_j}_w(1, x) \in L^2\). That hence implies that \(\tilde{u}^{\Sigma_j}_w(1, x) \lesssim \varepsilon(x)^{-2}\) for every \(x \in \mathbb{R}^2\) (if not, we would have \(\langle x \rangle^{-1} \tilde{u}^{\Sigma_j}_w(1, x) \lesssim \varepsilon^{-1} \left\| \tilde{u}(1, \cdot) \right\|_{L^2}\)). Moreover, if \(D \gg 1\) is sufficiently large, from lemma 3.3.9 below and (3.2.1) in appendix B we deduce that

\[
(3.3.16) \quad \left| 1_{|x| \geq D} \tilde{u}^{\Sigma_j}_w(t, x) \right| \leq C \frac{\log |x|}{|x|} h^{-\beta} \left( \left\| Op_h^w(\chi(h^\sigma \xi)) \tilde{u}(t, \cdot) \right\|_{L^2} + \left\| Op_h^w(\chi(h^\sigma \xi)) M\tilde{u}(t, \cdot) \right\|_{L^2} \right)
\]

\[
\leq C\varepsilon \frac{\log |x|}{|x|} t^{-\beta'}.
\]
Therefore, from proposition 5.3.1 we obtain that
\[ |\tilde{u}_\Sigma^\lambda(t,x)| \lesssim C\varepsilon t^\beta (1 + |x|)^{-\frac{1}{2}} (t^{-1} + |1 - |x||)^{\frac{1}{2} + \beta'}, \quad \forall (t,x) \in \mathbb{R}^2. \]
Summing up, denoting by \( 1_{\mathbb{R}^D} \) the characteristic function of cylinder \( \mathbb{R}^D \),
\[ |\tilde{u}_\Sigma(t,x)| \leq C\varepsilon 1_{\mathbb{R}^D} t^\beta (1 + |x|)^{-\frac{1}{2}} (t^{-1} + |1 - |x||)^{\frac{1}{2} + \beta'} + C\varepsilon t^{\frac{1}{2} + \beta'}, \quad \forall (t,x) \in [1,T] \times \mathbb{R}^2. \]
Returning back to function \( u^{NF} \) via (3.2.14), this means that, for every \( (t,x) \in [1,T] \times \mathbb{R}^2 \),
\begin{equation}
(3.3.17) \quad \left| (D_x)^\beta u^{NF}(t,x) \right| + \sum_{j=1}^2 \left| (D_x)^\beta R_j u^{NF}(t,x) \right| \leq C\varepsilon 1_{\{|x|\leq DT\}} (1 + |x|)^{-\frac{1}{2}} (t^{-1} + |1 - |x||)^{\frac{1}{2} + \beta'} + C\varepsilon t^{-1 + \beta'}. \end{equation}
Finally, reminding definition (1.2.1) (iii) of space \( H^p;\infty \), injecting the above inequality in (3.3.15), and choosing \( \lambda > 1 \) sufficiently large such that \( C < \frac{\lambda}{\lambda K_1}, \varepsilon_0 > 0 \) sufficiently small so that \( C B \varepsilon_0 < (3K_1)^{-1} \), we deduce enhanced estimate (1.1.13). \( \Box \)

**Remark 3.3.8.** Beside the propagation of estimate (1.1.11a), by combining inequalities (3.3.15), (3.3.17), and (1.1.3), we also deduce the following inequality
\[ \left| \partial_t u(t,x) \right| + \left| \nabla_x u(t,x) \right| \leq C\varepsilon 1_{\{|x|\leq DT\}} (1 + |x|)^{-\frac{1}{2}} (t^{-1} + |1 - |x||)^{\frac{1}{2} + \beta'} + C\varepsilon t^{-1 + \beta'}, \]
with \( \beta' > 0 \) small as long as \( \sigma, \delta_1 \) are small, which almost corresponds to the optimal decay in time and space enjoyed by the linear wave in space dimension two.

**Lemma 3.3.9.** Let \( \chi \in C^\infty_0(\mathbb{R}^2) \) be equal to 1 in a neighbourhood of the origin and \( \sigma > 0 \) be small. Let also \( \varphi \in C^\infty_0(\mathbb{R}^2 \setminus \{0\}) \). There exists a constant \( C > 0 \) such that for every \( h \in ]0,1[, R \gg 1 \), and any function \( w(t,x) \) with \( w(t,\cdot), \text{Op}_h^w(\chi(h^\sigma \xi)) \mathcal{M} w(t,\cdot) \in L^2(\mathbb{R}^2) \),
\begin{equation}
(3.3.18) \quad \left\| \varphi \left( \frac{x}{R} \right) \text{Op}_h^w(\chi(h^\sigma \xi)) w(t,\cdot) \right\|_{L^\infty} \leq CR^{-1} (\log R + |\log h|) \sum_{|\gamma|=0} \| \text{Op}_h^w(\chi(h^\sigma \xi)) \mathcal{M}^\gamma w(t,\cdot) \|_{L^2}. \end{equation}

**Proof.** Let us fix \( R \gg 1 \) and, for seek of compactness, denote \( \text{Op}_h^w(\chi(h^\sigma \xi)) \) by \( w^\chi \). For a new smooth cut-off function \( \chi_1 \) equal to 1 on the support of \( \chi \), we have that
\[ \varphi \left( \frac{x}{R} \right) \text{Op}_h^w(\chi(h^\sigma \xi)) w = \text{Op}_h^w(\chi_1(h^\sigma \xi)) \left[ \varphi \left( \frac{x}{R} \right) w^\chi \right] + \left[ \varphi \left( \frac{x}{R} \right), \text{Op}_h^w(\chi_1(h^\sigma \xi)) \right] w^\chi, \]
where the symbol associated to above commutator is given by
\[ r_R(x,\xi) = -\frac{h^{1+\sigma} R^{-1}}{i(\pi h)^2} \int e^{\frac{2\pi i y}{h}} dt \int_0^1 (\partial_x \varphi) \left( \frac{R x + t \xi}{R} \right) dt (\partial_x \chi_1)(h^\sigma (\xi + \eta)) d\eta, \]
as follows from (1.2.19) and integration in \( dy, d\xi \). Since \( (\partial_x \chi_1)(h^\sigma \xi) \) is supported for frequencies \( |\xi| \leq h^{-\sigma} \), and \( R^{-1}, h^{1+\sigma} \leq 1 \), by making a change of coordinates \( \eta/h \mapsto \eta \) and using that
\[ e^{2\pi i \xi} = \left( \frac{1-2i\eta \partial_\eta}{1+4|\eta|^2} \right) \left( \frac{1-2i\eta \partial_\eta}{1+4|\eta|^2} \right) e^{2\pi i \xi}, \]
together with some integration by parts, one can check that
\[ \left\| \partial_{\xi}^\beta \partial_{\eta}^\alpha \left[ r_R \left( \frac{x + y}{2}, h \xi \right) \right] \right\|_{L^2(\mathbb{R}^2)} \lesssim R^{-1} \]
for any $\alpha, \beta \in \mathbb{N}^2$, and hence obtain from lemma 1.2.23 that
\[
\| \text{Op}_h^w(r_h^k(x, \xi)) w^\chi(t, \cdot) \|_{L^\infty} \lesssim R^{-1} \| w^\chi(t, \cdot) \|_{L^2}.
\]
Successively, taking a Littlewood-Paley decomposition such that
\[
\chi_1(h^\sigma \xi) \equiv \left[ \phi\left( \frac{R}{h} \xi \right) + \sum_{hR^{-1} \leq 2^j \leq h^{-\sigma}} (1 - \phi)\left( \frac{R}{h} \xi \right) \psi(2^{-j} \xi) \right] \chi_1(h^\sigma \xi),
\]
with $\phi \in C_0^\infty(\mathbb{R}^2)$, equal to 1 close to the origin and $\psi \in C_0^\infty(\mathbb{R}^2 \setminus \{0\})$, we derive that
\[
(3.3.19) \quad \| \text{Op}_h^w(\chi_1(h^\sigma \xi)) \left[ \varphi\left( \frac{X}{R} \right) w^\chi \right] (t, \cdot) \|_{L^\infty} \lesssim \| \text{Op}_h^w(\phi\left( \frac{R}{h} \xi \right) \chi_1(h^\sigma \xi)) \left[ \varphi\left( \frac{X}{R} \right) w^\chi \right] (t, \cdot) \|_{L^\infty}
\]
\[
+ \sum_{hR^{-1} \leq 2^j \leq h^{-\sigma}} \| \text{Op}_h^w(1 - \phi)\left( \frac{R}{h} \xi \right) \psi(2^{-j} \xi) \chi_1(h^\sigma \xi)) \left[ \varphi\left( \frac{X}{R} \right) w^\chi \right] (t, \cdot) \|_{L^\infty},
\]
and immediately notice that
\[
(3.3.20) \quad \| \text{Op}_h^w\left( \phi\left( \frac{R}{h} \xi \right) \chi_1(h^\sigma \xi) \right) \left[ \varphi\left( \frac{X}{R} \right) w^\chi \right] (t, \cdot) \|_{L^\infty} \lesssim R^{-1} \| w^\chi(t, \cdot) \|_{L^2},
\]
just by the classical Sobolev injection and the uniform continuity of $\text{Op}_h^w(\chi_1(h^\sigma \xi)) \varphi\left( \frac{X}{R} \right)$ on $L^2$. Introducing operators $\Theta_R, \Theta_R^{-1}$, where $\Theta_R u(x) := u(Rx)$, $\Theta_R^{-1} u(x) := u(\frac{x}{R})$, we have the following equality
\[
(3.3.21) \quad \text{Op}_h^w\left( (1 - \phi)\left( \frac{R}{h} \xi \right) \psi(2^{-j} \xi) \chi_1(h^\sigma \xi) \right) \left[ \varphi\left( \frac{X}{R} \right) w^\chi \right] (t, \cdot) = \Theta_R^{-1} \text{Op}_{h_{Rj}}^w \left[ (1 - \phi)\left( \frac{\xi}{h_{Rj}} \right) \psi(\xi) \chi_1(h^{\sigma}2^j \xi) \right] \varphi(x) \Theta_R w^\chi
\]
with $h_{Rj} := \frac{h}{R^j} \leq 1$, and by $h_{Rj}$-symbolic calculus (that is proposition 1.2.21 with $h$ replaced by $h_{Rj}$),
\[
\text{Op}_{h_{Rj}}^w \left( (1 - \phi)\left( \frac{\xi}{h_{Rj}} \right) \psi(\xi) \chi_1(h^{\sigma}2^j \xi) \right) \varphi(x) = \text{Op}_{h_{Rj}}^w \left( (1 - \phi)\left( \frac{\xi}{h_{Rj}} \right) \psi(\xi) \chi_1(h^{\sigma}2^j \xi) \varphi(x) \right) + \text{Op}_{h_{Rj}}^w \left( r(x, \xi) \right)
\]
with
\[
r(x, \xi) = \frac{h_{Rj}}{2\pi(h_{Rj})^2} \int e^{-\frac{2\pi}{h_{Rj}} y \cdot \xi} \left[ \int_0^1 \partial_\xi \left[ (1 - \phi)\left( \frac{\xi}{h_{Rj}} \right) \psi(\xi) \chi_1(h^{\sigma}2^j \xi) \right] \|_{\xi + \xi \cdot dt} \right] (\partial \varphi)(x + y) dy d\xi.
\]
Similarly as before, one can prove that
\[
\| \partial_\xi^\alpha \partial_\xi^\beta \left[ r\left( \frac{x + y}{2}, h\xi \right) \right] \|_{L^2(\xi)} \lesssim 1
\]
for any $\alpha, \beta \in \mathbb{N}^2$, observing that no negative power of $h_{Rj}$ appears in the right hand side of this inequality for the product of $\psi(\xi)$ with any derivative of $(1 - \phi)(\frac{\xi}{h_{Rj}})$ is supported for
$h_{Rj} \sim |\xi| \sim 1$. Hence lemma [1.2.25] gives that operator $Op_{h_{Rj}}^w (r(x, \xi))$ is uniformly bounded from $L^2$ to $L^\infty$ and

$$
\| Op_{h_{Rj}}^w (r(x, \xi)) \Theta R w^x(t, \cdot) \|_{L^\infty} \lesssim \| \Theta R w^x(t, \cdot) \|_{L^2} \lesssim R^{-1} \| w^x(t, \cdot) \|_{L^2}.
$$

Since symbol $(1 - \phi) \left( \frac{x}{h_{Rj}} \right) \psi(\xi) \chi_1 (h^s 2^j \xi) \varphi(x)$ is supported for $|x| \sim |\xi| \sim 1$,

$$(1 - \phi) \left( \frac{x}{h_{Rj}} \right) \psi(\xi) \chi_1 (h^s 2^j \xi) \varphi(x)$$

$$= \sum_{l=1}^{2} \left( 1 - \phi \right) \left( \frac{x}{h_{Rj}} \right) \psi(\xi) \chi_1 (h^s 2^j \xi) \varphi(x) \left( R x_l |2^j \xi| - 2^j \xi_l \right) \left( R x_l |2^j \xi| - 2^j \xi_l \right),$$

with $a_l(x, \xi) \in R^{-1} 2^{-j} S_{0,0}(1)$ as long as $R \gg 1$, and by $h_{Rj}$-symbolic calculus

$$(1 - \phi) \left( \frac{x}{h_{Rj}} \right) \psi(\xi) \chi_1 (h^s 2^j \xi) \varphi(x) = \sum_{l=1}^{2} a_l(x, \xi) x \left( R x_l |2^j \xi| - 2^j \xi_l \right) \tilde{\psi}(\xi) + r_{Rj}(x, \xi),$$

with $\tilde{\psi} \in C_0^\infty (\mathbb{R}^2 \setminus \{0\})$ such that $\tilde{\psi} \psi \equiv \psi$, and $r_{Rj} \in h_{Rj} S_{0,0}(1)$. From semi-classical Sobolev injection

$$\| Op_{h_{Rj}}^w (r_{Rj}(x, \xi)) \Theta R w^x(t, \cdot) \|_{L^\infty} \lesssim \| \Theta R w^x(t, \cdot) \|_{L^2} \lesssim R^{-1} \| w^x(t, \cdot) \|_{L^2}$$

while

$$(3.3.22) \quad Op_{h_{Rj}}^w (a_l(x, \xi)) Op_{h_{Rj}}^w \left( \left( R x_l |2^j \xi| - 2^j \xi_l \right) \tilde{\psi}(\xi) \right) \Theta R w^x$$

$$= Op_{h_{Rj}}^w (a_l(x, \xi)) \Theta R \left[ Op_{h}^w \left( (x_l |2^j \xi| - 2^j \xi_l) \tilde{\psi}(2^{-j} \xi) \right) w^x \right]$$

$$= Op_{h_{Rj}}^w (a_l(x, \xi)) \Theta R \left[ Op_{h}^w \left( \tilde{\psi}(2^{-j} \xi) \right) Op_{h}^w \left( x_l |2^j \xi| - 2^j \xi_l \right) w^x - \frac{h}{2l} \left( 2^{-j} \xi \right) \left( \partial \tilde{\psi} \right) (2^{-j} \xi) w^x \right].$$

The last thing to do to conclude the proof of the statement is to study continuity of operator $Op_{h_{Rj}}^w (a_l(x, \xi))$.

**Lemma 3.3.10.** We have that $Op_{h_{Rj}}^w (a_l(x, \xi)) : L^2 \to L^\infty$ is bounded with norm

$$\| Op_{h_{Rj}}^w (a_l(x, \xi)) \|_{L^2(L^\infty)} \lesssim h^{-1}.$$

**Proof.** The result comes straightly from lemma [1.2.25]. Indeed, since symbol $a_l(x, \xi)$ is compactly supported in $x$ there is a smooth cut-off function $\varphi_1 \in C_0^\infty (\mathbb{R}^2 \setminus \{0\})$, with $\varphi_1 \varphi \equiv \varphi$, such that

$$\left| Op_{h_{Rj}}^w (a_l(x, \xi)) w \right| \lesssim \| w \|_{L^2(dx)} \int \left| \varphi_1 \left( \frac{x + y}{2} \right) \right| \left\| \partial_{\xi}^a \left[ a_l \left( \frac{x + y}{2}, h_{Rj} \xi \right) \right] \right\|_{L^2(d\xi)} dy,$$

and for $|a| \leq 3$

$$\left\| \partial_{\xi}^a \left[ a_l \left( \frac{x + y}{2}, h_{Rj} \xi \right) \right] \right\|_{L^2(d\xi)} \lesssim \frac{R}{h} \left\| \partial_{\xi}^a \left[ \frac{(1 - \phi) (x_l |2^j \xi| - 2^j \xi_l) \chi_1 (h^s 2^j \xi) \varphi_1 (\frac{x + y}{2})}{\left( \frac{x_l + y_l}{2} \right) \xi_l - \xi_l^2} \right] \frac{R (x_l + y_l |2^j \xi| - 2^j \xi_l)}{\left| \xi_l^2 - \xi_l^2 \right|} \right\|_{L^2(d\xi)}$$

$$\lesssim \left\| \frac{\tilde{\varphi} (\frac{x + y}{h})}{h} \right\|_{L^2(d\xi)} \lesssim \left\| \frac{\tilde{\varphi} (\frac{x + y}{h})}{h} \right\|_{L^2(d\xi)},$$

where $\tilde{\varphi} \in C_0^\infty (\mathbb{R}^2 \setminus \{0\})$. \qed
Finally, summing up all formulas from (3.3.21) to (3.3.22) and using lemma 3.3.10 we obtain that
\[
\left\| \text{Op}_h^w \left( (1 - \phi) \left( \frac{R}{h} \xi \right) \psi(2^{-j} \xi) \chi(h^\sigma \xi) \right) \left[ \phi \left( \frac{R}{h} \right) w^\infty(t, \cdot) \right] \right\|_{L^\infty} \lesssim R^{-1} \left\| w^\infty(t, \cdot) \right\|_{L^2} + \| M w^\infty(t, \cdot) \|_{L^2},
\]
for any index \( j \in \mathbb{Z} \) such that \( hR^{-1} \leq 2^j \leq h^{-\sigma} \). Injecting (3.3.20) and the above inequality in (3.3.19), and using that \([M, \text{Op}_h^w(\chi(h^\sigma \xi))] = \text{Op}_h^w((\partial \chi)(h^\sigma \xi))(h^\sigma \xi)]\) is uniformly continuous on \( L^2 \), we deduce (3.3.18) (the loss in \( \log R + |\log h| \) arising from the fact that we are considering a sum over indices \( j \), with \( \log h - \log R \leq j \leq \log(h^{-1}) \)).

\[\square\]

### 3.3.3 Proof of the main theorems

**Proof of theorem (1.1.2)** Straightforward after propositions 2.2.13, 3.2.7, 3.3.7

**Proof of theorem (1.1.1)** Let us prove that, for small enough data satisfying (1.1.4), Cauchy problem (1.1.1) has a unique global solution. This result follows by a local existence argument, after having proved that there exist two integers \( n \gg \rho \gg 1 \), two constants \( A', B' > 1 \) sufficiently large, \( \epsilon_0 > 0 \) sufficiently small, and \( 0 < \delta \ll 1 \ll \epsilon_0 \ll 0 \) such that, for any \( 0 < \epsilon < \epsilon_0 \), if \((u, v)\) is solution to (1.1.1) in \([1, T] \times \mathbb{R}^2\), for some \( T > 1 \), with \( \partial_{x, u} u \in C^0([1, T]; H^n(\mathbb{R}^2)) \), \( v \in C^0([1, T]; H^{n+1}(\mathbb{R}^2)) \cap C^1([1, T]; H^n(\mathbb{R}^2)) \), and satisfies

\[\begin{align*}
(3.3.23a) \quad & \| \partial_t u(t, \cdot) \|_{H^{n+1}} + \| \nabla_x u(t, \cdot) \|_{H^{n+1}} + \| |D_x| u(t, \cdot) \|_{H^{n+1}} + \sum_{j=1}^2 \| R_j \partial_t u(t, \cdot) \|_{H^{n+1}} \leq A' \epsilon t^{-\frac{1}{2}}, \\
(3.3.23b) \quad & \| \partial_t v(t, \cdot) \|_{H^{n+1}} + \| v(t, \cdot) \|_{H^{n+1}} \leq A' \epsilon t^{-1}, \\
(3.3.23c) \quad & \| \partial_t u(t, \cdot) \|_{H^n} + \| \nabla_x u(t, \cdot) \|_{H^n} + \| \partial_t v(t, \cdot) \|_{H^n} + \| \nabla_x v(t, \cdot) \|_{H^n} + \| v(t, \cdot) \|_{H^n} \leq B' \epsilon t^{\frac{1}{2}}, \\
(3.3.23d) \quad & \sum_{|I|=k} \left( \| \partial_t I^I u(t, \cdot) \|_{L^2} + \| \nabla_x I^I u(t, \cdot) \|_{L^2} + \| \partial_t I^I v(t, \cdot) \|_{L^2} + \| \nabla_x I^I v(t, \cdot) \|_{L^2} \right)
\end{align*}\]

for every \( t \in [1, T] \), then in the same interval it satisfies

\[\begin{align*}
(3.3.24a) \quad & \| \partial_t u(t, \cdot) \|_{H^{n+1}} + \| \nabla_x u(t, \cdot) \|_{H^{n+1}} + \| |D_x| u(t, \cdot) \|_{H^{n+1}} + \sum_{j=1}^2 \| R_j \partial_t u(t, \cdot) \|_{H^{n+1}} \leq \frac{A'}{2} \epsilon t^{-\frac{1}{2}}, \\
(3.3.24b) \quad & \| \partial_t v(t, \cdot) \|_{H^{n+1}} + \| v(t, \cdot) \|_{H^{n+1}} \leq \frac{A'}{2} \epsilon t^{-1}, \\
(3.3.24c) \quad & \| \partial_t u(t, \cdot) \|_{H^n} + \| \nabla_x u(t, \cdot) \|_{H^n} + \| \partial_t v(t, \cdot) \|_{H^n} + \| \nabla_x v(t, \cdot) \|_{H^n} + \| v(t, \cdot) \|_{H^n} \leq \frac{B'}{2} \epsilon t^{\frac{1}{2}}, \\
(3.3.24d) \quad & \sum_{|I|=k} \left( \| \partial_t I^I u(t, \cdot) \|_{L^2} + \| \nabla_x I^I u(t, \cdot) \|_{L^2} + \| \partial_t I^I v(t, \cdot) \|_{L^2} + \| \nabla_x I^I v(t, \cdot) \|_{L^2} \right)
\end{align*}\]

\[\left. + \| I^I v(t, \cdot) \|_{L^2} \right\| \leq \frac{B'}{2} \epsilon t^{\frac{1}{2}}, \quad 1 \leq k \leq 3.\]
We remind that, if $I = (i_1, \ldots, i_n)$ is a multi-index of length $|I| = n$, with $i_j \in \{1, \ldots, 5\}$, $\Gamma' = \Gamma_{i_1} \cdots \Gamma_{i_n}$ is a product of vector fields in family $\mathcal{U} = \{\Omega, Z, \partial_j | j = 1, 2\}$.

We can immediately observe that the above bounds are verified at time $t = 1$ after (1.1.4) and Sobolev injection. By definition (1.1.5) we also notice that

\begin{equation}
\tag{3.3.25a}
\|u_\pm(t, \cdot)\|_{H^{p+1, \infty}} + \sum_{j=1}^{2} \|R_j u_\pm(t, \cdot)\|_{H^{p+1, \infty}} \leq 2\|\partial_t u(t, \cdot)\|_{H^{p+1, \infty}} + 2\|D_x u(t, \cdot)\|_{H^{p+1, \infty}}
\end{equation}

\begin{equation}
\tag{3.3.25b}
+ 2\sum_{j=1}^{2} (\|\partial_j u(t, \cdot)\|_{H^{p+1, \infty}} + \|R_j \partial_t u(t, \cdot)\|_{H^{p+1, \infty}}),
\end{equation}

\begin{equation}
\tag{3.3.26a}
\|\partial_t v(t, \cdot)\|_{H^{p+1, \infty}} + \|D_x v(t, \cdot)\|_{H^{p+1, \infty}} + \sum_{j=1}^{2} (\|\partial_j u(t, \cdot)\|_{H^{p+1, \infty}} + \|R_j \partial_t u(t, \cdot)\|_{H^{p+1, \infty}})
\end{equation}

\begin{equation}
\tag{3.3.26b}
\leq \|u_+(t, \cdot)\|_{H^{p+1, \infty}} + \|u_-(t, \cdot)\|_{H^{p+1, \infty}} + \sum_{j=1}^{2} (\|R_j u_+(t, \cdot)\|_{H^{p+1, \infty}} + \|R_j u_-(t, \cdot)\|_{H^{p+1, \infty}}),
\end{equation}

Moreover, reminding definition (1.1.9) of generalized energies $E_n(t; u_\pm, v_\pm)$, $E^k_3(t; u_\pm, v_\pm)$, for $n \geq 3$ and $0 \leq k \leq 2$, and of set $2^k \in (24.1.7)$, there is a constant $C > 0$ such that

\begin{equation}
\tag{3.3.27a}
C^{-1} E_n(t; u_\pm, v_\pm) \leq \left[ \|\partial_t u(t, \cdot)\|^2_{H^n} + \|\nabla_x u(t, \cdot)\|^2_{H^n} + \|\partial_t v(t, \cdot)\|^2_{H^n} + \|\nabla_x v(t, \cdot)\|^2_{H^n} + \|v(t, \cdot)\|^2_{H^n} \right] \leq CE_n(t; u_\pm, v_\pm),
\end{equation}

and for any $0 \leq k \leq 2$,

\begin{equation}
\tag{3.3.27b}
C^{-1} E^k_3(t; u_\pm, v_\pm) \leq \sum_{I \in 2^k} \left[ \|\partial_t \Gamma^I u(t, \cdot)\|^2_{L^2} + \|\nabla_x \Gamma^I u(t, \cdot)\|^2_{L^2} + \|\partial_t \Gamma^I v(t, \cdot)\|^2_{L^2} + \|\nabla_x \Gamma^I v(t, \cdot)\|^2_{L^2} + \|\Gamma^I v(t, \cdot)\|^2_{L^2} \right] \leq CE^k_3(t; u_\pm, v_\pm).
\end{equation}

Therefore, after (3.3.25), (3.3.27), and (3.3.23), we deduce that estimates (1.1.11) are satisfied with $A = 2A'$, $B = C_1 B'$, for some new $C_1 > 0$, so choosing for instance $K_1 = 4$ and $K_2$ sufficiently large, theorem (1.1.2) and inequalities (3.3.26), (3.3.27) imply (3.3.24).
Appendix A

The aim of this appendix is to prove the continuity of some trilinear integral operators (see lemmas A.5 and A.6) that arise in subsection 2.2.2 when performing a normal form argument at the energy level, and of some bilinear integral operators (see lemma A.8) that instead appear in subsection 3.1.2 when we perform a normal form wave equation (see proposition 3.1.2). All the other results of this chapter are stated and proved in view of the above mentioned lemmas.

Lemma A.1. Let \( \hat{a}(x) \) denote the inverse transform of a function \( a(\xi) \).

(i) If \( a : \mathbb{R}^2 \to \mathbb{C} \) is such that, for any \( \alpha \in \mathbb{N}^2 \) with \( 1 \leq |\alpha| \leq 4 \),

\[
|a(\xi)| \lesssim \langle \xi \rangle^{-3} \quad \text{and} \quad |\partial^\alpha a(\xi)| \lesssim_\alpha \langle \xi \rangle \langle \xi \rangle^{-1} |\alpha| \langle \xi \rangle^{-3} \quad \forall \xi \in \mathbb{R}^2
\]

then

\[
|\hat{a}(x)| \lesssim |x|^{-1} \langle x \rangle^{-2}, \quad \forall x \in \mathbb{R}^2.
\]

(ii) If \( a \) is such that, for any \( \alpha \in \mathbb{N}^2 \) with \( |\alpha| \leq 3 \),

\[
|\partial^\alpha a(\xi)| \lesssim (\langle \xi \rangle^{-1} |\alpha| \langle \xi \rangle^{-3}, \quad \forall \xi \in \mathbb{R}^2
\]

then

\[
|\hat{a}(x)| \lesssim \langle x \rangle^{-2}, \quad \forall x \in \mathbb{R}^2;
\]

(iii) Let \( N \in \mathbb{N} \). If for any \( \alpha \in \mathbb{N}^2 \) with \( |\alpha| \leq N \) there exists \( f_\alpha \in L^1(\mathbb{R}^2) \) such that \( |\partial^\alpha a(\xi)| \lesssim_\alpha |f_\alpha(\xi)| \) then

\[
|\hat{a}(x)| \lesssim \langle x \rangle^{-N}, \quad \forall x \in \mathbb{R}^2.
\]

Proof. (i) We consider a cut-off function \( \phi \in C_c^\infty(\mathbb{R}^2) \) equal to 1 in the unit ball and write

\[
\hat{a}(x) = K_0(x) + K_1(x)
\]

with

\[
K_0(x) := \frac{1}{(2\pi)^2} \int e^{ix\cdot\xi} a(\xi) \phi(\xi) d\xi, \quad K_1(x) := \frac{1}{(2\pi)^2} \int e^{ix\cdot\xi} a(\xi)(1 - \phi)(\xi) d\xi.
\]

On the one hand, since \( |\partial^\alpha a(\xi)| \lesssim_\alpha \langle \xi \rangle^{-3} \) on the support of \( (1 - \phi)(\xi) \) for any \( |\alpha| \leq 4 \), we immediately deduce by integration by parts that \( |K_1(x)| \lesssim \langle x \rangle^{-4} \) for any \( x \in \mathbb{R}^2 \). On the other hand, again an integration by parts gives that

\[
x K_0(x) = \int e^{ix\cdot\xi} a_1(\xi) d\xi
\]

with \( a_1(\xi) \) supported for \( |\xi| \lesssim 1 \) and such that \( |\partial^\alpha a_1(\xi)| \lesssim_\alpha |\xi|^{-|\alpha|} \) for any \( \xi \in \mathbb{R}^2 \), any \( |\alpha| \leq 3 \). This implies that \( |x K_0(x)| \lesssim 1 \) for any \( x \in \mathbb{R}^2 \). Moreover, \( |x^\alpha x K_0(x)| \lesssim_\alpha 1 \) for any \( |\alpha| \leq 3 \). This
is obvious in the unit ball. Out of the unit ball we consider a Littlewood-Paley decomposition in frequencies so that

\[
\phi(\xi) = \phi(\xi) \left[ \varphi(2^{-L_0}\xi) + \sum_{k=L_0+1}^{0} \varphi(2^{-k}\xi) \right],
\]

with \( \text{supp} \varphi_0 \subset B_1(0), \varphi \in C_0^\infty(\mathbb{R}^2 \setminus \{0\}) \) and \( L_0 < 0 \) such that \( 2^{L_0} \sim |x|^{-1} \), and write

\[
xK_0(x) = K_0^0(x) + \sum_{k=L_0+1}^{0} K_0^k(x)
\]

with \( K_0^0(x) := \int e^{ix \cdot \alpha} \varphi_0(2^{-L_0}\xi) d\xi, \ K_0^k(x) := \int e^{ix \cdot \alpha} \varphi_k(2^{-k}\xi) d\xi. \)

Performing a change of coordinates and making some integrations by parts we deduce that

\[
|K_0^0(x)| \lesssim 2^{2L_0} \quad \text{and} \quad |K_0^k(x)| \lesssim 2^{2k}(2^k x)^{-3}, \quad L_0 + 1 \leq k \leq 0
\]

for any \( x \in \mathbb{R}^2 \), which finally implies \( |xK_0(x)| \lesssim 2^{2L_0} \sim |x|^{-2} \).

(iii) The result follows splitting \( \tilde{u} \) as in (A.1) and applying to \( K_0(x) \) the same argument previously used for \( xK_0(x) \).

(iii) The result follows straightforwardly from integration by parts and the fact that \( f_\alpha \in L^1(\mathbb{R}^2) \) for any \( |\alpha| \leq N \).

**Corollary A.2.** Let \( d \in \mathbb{N}^*, \ N \in \mathbb{N} \) and \( g_\beta \in L^1(\mathbb{R}^d) \) for every \( |\beta| \leq N \).

(i) If \( a(\xi, \eta) : \mathbb{R}^2 \times \mathbb{R}^d \to \mathbb{C} \) is such that, for any \( \beta \in \mathbb{N}^d \) with \( |\beta| \leq N \),

\[
|\partial^\beta_\eta a(\xi, \eta)| \lesssim_{\beta} |\xi|^{-3}|g_\beta(\eta)|,
\]

\[
|\partial_\xi \partial^\beta_\eta a(\xi, \eta)| \lesssim_{\alpha, \beta} (|\xi|(|\xi|^{-1})^{1-|\alpha|}|\xi|^{-3}|g_\beta(\eta)|), \quad 1 \leq |\alpha| \leq 4.
\]

for any \( (\xi, \eta) \in \mathbb{R}^2 \times \mathbb{R}^d \), then

\[
\left| \int e^{ix \cdot \xi + iy \cdot \eta} a(\xi, \eta) d\xi d\eta \right| \lesssim |x|^{-1} \langle x \rangle^{-2} \langle y \rangle^{-N}, \quad \forall (x, y) \in \mathbb{R}^2 \times \mathbb{R}^d.
\]

Moreover, if \( d = 2 \) and \( N = 3 \), for any \( u, v \in L^2(\mathbb{R}^2) \cap L^\infty(\mathbb{R}^2) \)

\[
\| \int e^{ix \cdot \xi} a(\xi, \eta) \tilde{u}(\xi - \eta) \hat{v}(\eta) d\xi d\eta \|_{L^2(\mathbb{R}^2)} \lesssim \|u\|_{L^2} \|v\|_{L^\infty} \quad \text{(or \ \lesssim \|u\|_{L^\infty} \|v\|_{L^2})}
\]

and

\[
\| \int e^{ix \cdot \xi} a(\xi, \eta) \tilde{u}(\xi - \eta) \hat{v}(\eta) d\xi d\eta \|_{L^\infty(\mathbb{R}^2)} \lesssim \|u\|_{L^\infty} \|v\|_{L^\infty}.
\]

(ii) If \( a(\xi, \eta) \) is such that, for any \( \alpha \in \mathbb{N}^2 \) with \( |\alpha| \leq 3, \beta \in \mathbb{N}^d \) with \( |\beta| \leq N \),

\[
|\partial^\alpha_\xi \partial^\beta_\eta a(\xi, \eta)| \lesssim_{\alpha, \beta} (|\xi|(|\xi|^{-1})^{1-|\alpha|}|\xi|^{-3}|g_\beta(\eta)|),
\]

for any \( (\xi, \eta) \in \mathbb{R}^2 \times \mathbb{R}^d \), then

\[
\left| \int e^{ix \cdot \xi + iy \cdot \eta} a(\xi, \eta) d\xi d\eta \right| \lesssim \langle x \rangle^{-2} \langle y \rangle^{-N}, \quad \forall (x, y) \in \mathbb{R}^2 \times \mathbb{R}^d.
\]
Moreover, if \( d = 2, N = 3 \), for any \( u, v \in L^2(\mathbb{R}^2) \)

\[
\left\| \int e^{ix\cdot\xi} a(\xi, \eta) \hat{u}(\xi - \eta) \hat{v}(\eta) d\xi d\eta \right\|_{L^2(dx)} \lesssim \|u\|_{L^2} \|v\|_{L^2}
\]

while if \( u \in L^2(\mathbb{R}^2), v \in L^\infty(\mathbb{R}^2) \),

\[
\left\| \int e^{ix\cdot\xi} a(\xi, \eta) \hat{u}(\xi - \eta) \hat{v}(\eta) d\xi d\eta \right\|_{L^\infty(dx)} \lesssim \|u\|_{L^2} \|v\|_{L^\infty}.
\]

**Proof.** Let

\[ K(x, \eta) := \int e^{ix\cdot\xi} a(\xi, \eta) d\xi \quad \text{and} \quad \tilde{K}(x, y) := \int e^{ix\cdot\xi} K(x, \eta) d\eta. \]

By the hypothesis on \( a(\xi, \eta) \) and lemma \( \text{A.1} \) (i) (resp. (ii)) we derive that, for any \( \beta \in \mathbb{N}^d \) with \( |\beta| \leq N \),

\[ |\partial^\beta_{\eta} K(x, \eta)| \lesssim |x|^{-1} \langle x \rangle^{-2} |g_\beta(\eta)| \quad \text{(resp.} \quad |\partial^\beta_{\eta} K(x, \eta)| \lesssim \langle x \rangle^{-2} |g_\beta(\eta)| \quad \forall (x, \eta) \in \mathbb{R}^2 \times \mathbb{R}^d. \]

Hence \( \text{A.3} \) (resp. \( \text{A.4} \)) follows applying lemma \( \text{A.1} \) (iii) to \( \tilde{K}(x, y) \).

(i) If \( d = 2, N = 3 \), inequality \( \text{A.4a} \) from the fact that

\[
\int e^{ix\cdot\xi} a(\xi, \eta) \hat{u}(\xi - \eta) \hat{v}(\eta) d\eta = \int \tilde{K}(x - y, y - z) u(y)v(z) dy dx,
\]

and by \( \text{A.3} \), for \( L = L^2 \) or \( L = L^\infty \),

\[
\left\| \int \tilde{K}(x - y, y - z) \hat{u}(y) \hat{v}(z) dy dz \right\|_{L^2(dx)} \lesssim \left\| \int |x - y|^{-1} \langle x - y \rangle^{-2} \langle y - z \rangle^{-3} \hat{u}(y) \hat{v}(z) dy dz \right\|_{L(dx)}
\]

\[
\lesssim \left\| \int |y|^{-1} \langle y \rangle^{-2} \langle z \rangle^{-3} \|u(y)\|v(z)\| dz \right\|_{L(dx)}
\]

\[
\lesssim \|u\|_{L^\infty} \|v\|_{L} \quad \text{(or} \quad \lesssim \|u\|_{L} \|v\|_{L^\infty}).
\]

(ii) By inequality \( \text{A.6} \)

\[
\left\| \int \tilde{K}(x - y, y - z) u(y)v(z) dy dz \right\|_{L^2(dx)} \lesssim \left\| \int (x - y)^{-2} (y - z)^{-3} |u(y)||v(z)| dy dz \right\|_{L^2(dx)}
\]

\[ \lesssim \int (y - z)^{-3} |u(y)||v(z)| dy dz \lesssim \int |v(z)| \left( \int (y - z)^{-3} dy \right)^{\frac{1}{2}} \left( \int (y - z)^{-3} |u(y)|^2 dy \right)^{\frac{1}{2}} dz
\]

\[ \lesssim \|v\|_{L^2} \left( \int (y - z)^{-3} |u(y)|^2 dy dz \right)^{\frac{1}{2}} \lesssim \|u\|_{L^2} \|v\|_{L^2}
\]

and

\[
\left\| \int \tilde{K}(x - y, y - z) u(y)v(z) dy dz \right\|_{L^\infty(dx)} \lesssim \left\| \int (x - y)^{-2} (y - z)^{-3} |u(y)||v(z)| dy dz \right\|_{L^\infty(dx)}
\]

\[ \lesssim \|v\|_{L^\infty} \left\| \int (x - y)^{-2} |u(y)| dy \right\|_{L^\infty(dx)} \lesssim \|u\|_{L^2} \|v\|_{L^\infty}. \]
Lemma A.3 (Sobolev norm of a product). Let $s \in \mathbb{N}$. For any $u, v \in H^s(\mathbb{R}^2) \cap L^\infty(\mathbb{R}^2)$,

\begin{equation}
\|uv\|_{H^s} \lesssim \|u\|_{H^s} \|v\|_{L^\infty} + \|u\|_{L^\infty} \|v\|_{H^s};
\end{equation}

for any $u, v \in H^{s,\infty}(\mathbb{R}^2) \cap H^{s+2}(\mathbb{R}^2)$, any $\theta \in [0, 1[$,

\begin{equation}
\|uv\|_{H^{s,\infty}} \lesssim \|u\|_{H^{s,\infty}}^{1-\theta} \|u\|_{H^{s+2}}^{\theta} \|v\|_{L^\infty} + \|u\|_{L^\infty} \|v\|_{H^{s,\infty}} \|v\|_{H^{s+2}}^{\theta}.
\end{equation}

Proof. Inequality (A.9) is a classical result (see, for instance, [2]). In order to deduce (A.10) we decompose product $uv$ as follows:

\begin{equation}
uv = Tu + Tv + R(u, v),
\end{equation}

where $Tu$ is the para-product of $u$ times $v$ defined by

\[ T_u := S_{-3}uS_0v + \sum_{k \geq 1} S_{k-3}u \Delta kv, \]

with $S_k = \chi(2^{-k}D_x)$, $\chi \in C_0^\infty(\mathbb{R}^2)$ such that $\chi(\xi) = 1$ for $|\xi| \leq 1/2$, $\chi(\xi) = 0$ for $|\xi| \geq 1$, $D_0 = S_0$ and $\Delta_k = S_k - S_{k-1}$ for $k \geq 1$, and $R(u, v) = \sum_k \Delta_k u \Delta kv$, with $\Delta_k = \Delta_{k-1} + \Delta_k + \Delta_{k+1}$. Since

\[ T_u v = \sum_{j \geq 0} \Delta_j [S_{k-3}u \Delta kv], \]

for a certain $N_0 \in \mathbb{N}$, by definition [1.2.1] (iii) of the $H^{s,\infty}$ norm and the fact that $\|\Delta kv\|_{L^\infty} \lesssim 2^k \|\Delta kv\|_{L^2}$ we deduce that, for any fixed $\theta \in [0, 1[$,

\begin{equation}
\|T_u v\|_{H^{s,\infty}} = \|(D_x)^s T_u v\|_{L^\infty} \leq \sum_{j,k=0} \|\Delta_j [S_{k-3}u \Delta kv]\|_{L^\infty} \lesssim \sum_{j,k=0} \|\Delta_j [S_{k-3}u \Delta kv]\|_{L^\infty} \leq \sum_{j,k=0} \|D_j (D_x)^s v\|_{L^\infty} (2^{-ks} \|\Delta_k (D_x)^s v\|_{L^\infty})^{1-\theta} (2^k \|\Delta kv\|_{L^2})^\theta \]

Similarly,

\begin{equation}
\| Tu u \|_{H^{s,\infty}} + \| R(u, v) \|_{H^{s,\infty}} \lesssim \| u \|_{H^{s,\infty}} \| u \|_{H^{s+2}} \| v \|_{L^\infty}.
\end{equation}

\begin{proof}
Corollary A.4. Let $s \in \mathbb{N}^*$, $a_1(\xi) \in S_0^{m_1}(\mathbb{R}^2)$, $a_2(\xi) \in S_0^{m_2}(\mathbb{R}^2)$, for some $m_1, m_2 \geq 0$. For any $u \in H^{s+m_1}(\mathbb{R}^2) \cap H^{m_1,\infty}(\mathbb{R}^2)$, $v \in H^{s+m_2}(\mathbb{R}^2) \cap H^{m_2,\infty}(\mathbb{R}^2)$,

\begin{equation}
\| [a_1(D_x) u] [a_2(D_x) v] \|_{H^s} \lesssim \|u\|_{H^{s+m_1}} \|v\|_{H^{m_1,\infty}} + \|u\|_{H^{m_1,\infty}} \|v\|_{H^{s+m_2}};
\end{equation}

for any $u \in H^{s+m_1,\infty}(\mathbb{R}^2) \cap H^{s+m_1+2}(\mathbb{R}^2)$, $v \in H^{s+m_2,\infty}(\mathbb{R}^2) \cap H^{s+m_2+2}(\mathbb{R}^2)$, any $\theta \in [0, 1[$,

\begin{equation}
\| [a_1(D_x) u] [a_2(D_x) v] \|_{H^{s,\infty}} \leq \| u \|_{H^{s+m_1,\infty}} \| u \|_{H^{s+m_1+2}} \| v \|_{H^{m_1,\infty}} + \| u \|_{H^{m_1,\infty}} \| v \|_{H^{s+m_2}} \| v \|_{H^{s+m_2+2}} \| v \|_{H^{s+m_2+2}}.
\end{equation}
Proof. The result of the statement follows writing $[a_1(D_x)u][a_2(D_x)v]$ in terms of para-products as in (A.11), and using that $T_{a_1(D)u}(a_2(D)v), T_{a_2(D)v}(a_1(D)u)$ and remainder $R(a_1(D)u,a_2(D)v)$ can be written from $\tilde{u} = \langle D_x \rangle^{m_1} u$, $\tilde{v} = \langle D_x \rangle^{m_2} v$, as done below for the former of these terms:

$$T_{a_1(D)u}(a_2(D)v) = [S_{-\text{a}_1}(D)\langle D_x \rangle^{-m_1}\tilde{u}][S_{0}\text{a}_2(D)\langle D_x \rangle^{-m_2}\tilde{v}]$$

$$+ \sum_k [S_{k-3}\text{a}_1(D)\langle D_x \rangle^{-m_1}\tilde{u}][\Delta_k a_2(D)\langle D_x \rangle^{-m_2}\tilde{v}].$$

Since $a_j(\xi)\langle \xi \rangle^{-m_j} \in S_0^0(\mathbb{R}^2)$, $j = 1,2$, operators $S_k a_j(D)\langle D_x \rangle^{-m_j}$, $\Delta_k a_j(D)\langle D_x \rangle^{-m_j}$ have the same spectrum (i.e. the support of the Fourier transform) up to a negligible constant of $S_k$ and $\Delta_k$ respectively.

In the following lemma we prove a result of continuity for a trilinear integral operator defined from multiplier $B^k_{(j_1,j_2,j_3)}(\xi,\eta)$ given by (2.2.42) (resp. by (2.2.53)) for $k = 1,2$ (resp. $k = 3$), any $j_1,j_2,j_3 \in \{+,-\}$. It is useful to observe that, since

$$B^k_{(j_1,j_2,j_3)}(\xi,\eta) = \frac{j_1(\xi - \eta) + j_2|\eta| - j_3(\eta)}{2j_1,j_2(\xi - \eta)|\eta|} \eta_k, \quad k = 1,2$$

from (2.2.42), while

$$B^3_{(j_1,j_2,j_3)}(\xi,\eta) = \frac{j_1(\xi - \eta) + j_2|\eta| - j_3(\eta)}{2(\xi - \eta)}$$

(2.2.53), we have that

\begin{align*}
(A.15) \quad & \frac{1}{(2\pi)^2} \int e^{ix\cdot\xi} B^k_{(j_1,j_2,j_3)}(\xi,\eta)\hat{u}(\xi - \eta)\hat{v}(\eta)d\xi d\eta = \frac{j_2}{2}(uR_k v)(x) - \frac{j_1}{2}[\langle D_{D_x}^{-1} u \rangle v](x) \\
& + \frac{j_1}{2} D_1[\langle (D_x)^{-1} u \rangle v](x) - \frac{j_3}{2j_1,j_2}(D_x)[\langle (D_x)^{-1} u \rangle R_k v](x)
\end{align*}

for $k = 1,2$, while for $k = 3$

\begin{align*}
(A.16) \quad & \frac{1}{(2\pi)^2} \int e^{ix\cdot\xi} B^3_{(j_1,j_2,j_3)}(\xi,\eta)\hat{u}(\xi - \eta)\hat{v}(\eta)d\xi d\eta = \frac{1}{2}(uv)(x) + \frac{j_1j_2}{2}[\langle (D_x)^{-1} u \rangle D_x v](x) \\
& - \frac{j_1j_3}{2}(D_x)[\langle (D_x)^{-1} u \rangle v](x).
\end{align*}

**Lemma A.5.** Let $B^k_{(j_1,j_2,j_3)}(\xi,\eta)$ be given by (2.2.42) when $k = 1,2$, and by (2.2.53) when $k = 3$, for any $j_1,j_2,j_3 \in \{+,-\}$. Let also $\delta_k = 1$ if $k \in \{1,2\}$, $\delta_k = 0$ if $k = 3$. For any $u,v \in L^2(\mathbb{R}^2), v \in H^{2,\infty}(\mathbb{R}^2)$ such that $\delta_k R_k v \in H^{2,\infty}(\mathbb{R}^2)$,

\begin{equation}
(A.17) \quad \left| \int B^k_{(j_1,j_2,j_3)}(\xi,\eta)\hat{u}(\xi - \eta)\hat{v}(\eta)\hat{w}(-\xi)d\xi d\eta \right| \lesssim \|u\|_{L^2} \|v\|_{H^{2,\infty}} + \delta_k \|R_k v\|_{H^{2,\infty}} \|w\|_{L^2}.
\end{equation}

**Proof.** First of all we observe that for $k \in \{1,2\}$

\begin{align*}
(A.18a) \quad & \int B^k_{(j_1,j_2,j_3)}(\xi,\eta)\hat{u}(\xi - \eta)\hat{v}(\eta)\hat{w}(-\xi)d\xi d\eta = \frac{j_2}{2} \int u(R_k v)(\xi)\hat{w}(-\xi)d\xi - \frac{j_1}{2} \int [\langle D_{D_x}^{-1} u \rangle v](\xi)\hat{w}(-\xi)d\xi \\
& + \frac{j_1}{2} \int \frac{\xi_1}{(\xi - \eta)}\hat{u}(\xi - \eta)\hat{v}(\eta)\hat{w}(-\xi)d\eta - \frac{j_3}{2j_1,j_2} \int \frac{\xi}{(\xi - \eta)}\hat{u}(\xi - \eta)\hat{v}(\eta)\hat{w}(-\xi)d\eta.
\end{align*}
while for \(k = 3\),

\[
(A.18b) \quad \int B_{\nu_1,\nu_2,\nu_3}^3(\xi, \eta) \hat{u}(\xi - \eta) \hat{v}(|\xi|) \hat{\omega}(-\xi) d\xi d\eta = \frac{1}{2} \int \hat{u}(\xi) \hat{v}(-\xi) d\xi
\]

\[
+ \frac{i \nu_1 \nu_2}{2} \int \left( |(D_x)^{-1} u| |D_x^\eta v| \right)(\xi) \hat{\omega}(-\xi) d\xi - \frac{i \nu_1 \nu_2}{2} \int \left( \frac{\xi}{|\xi| - \eta} \right) \hat{u}(\xi - \eta) \hat{v}(\eta) \hat{\omega}(-\xi) d\xi.
\]

Hölder’s inequality shows immediately that the first two addends in both above right hand sides are bounded by the right hand side of (A.17). Then the result of the statement follows by proving that inequality (A.17) is satisfied by integrals such as

\[
\int a(\xi, \eta) \hat{u}_1(\xi - \eta) \hat{u}_2(\eta) \hat{u}_3(-\xi) d\xi d\eta
\]

with \(a(\xi, \eta) = \xi_1(\xi - \eta)^{-1}\) or \(a(\xi, \eta) = \langle \xi \rangle(\xi - \eta)^{-1}\), and some general functions \(u_1, u_2, u_3 \in L^2(\mathbb{R}^2), u_2 \in L^\infty(\mathbb{R}^2)\). By taking a Littlewood-Paley decomposition we can split the above integral as

\[
(A.19) \quad \sum_{k,l \geq 0} \int a(\xi, \eta) \varphi_k(\xi) \varphi_l(\eta) \hat{u}_1(\xi - \eta) \hat{u}_2(\eta) \hat{u}_3(-\xi) d\xi d\eta.
\]

with \(\varphi_0 \in C_0^\infty(\mathbb{R}^2)\), \(\varphi \in C_0^\infty(\mathbb{R}^2 \setminus \{0\})\) and \(\varphi_k(\xi) = \varphi(2^{-k} \xi)\) for any \(k \in \mathbb{N}^+\). Since frequencies \(\xi, \eta\) are bounded on the support of \(\varphi_0(\xi)\varphi_0(\eta)\), kernel

\[
K_0(x,y) := \int e^{ix \xi + iy \eta} a(\xi, \eta) \varphi_0(\xi) \varphi_0(\eta) d\xi d\eta
\]

is such that \(|K_0(x,y)| \lesssim \langle x \rangle^{-3} \langle y \rangle^{-3}\) for any \((x,y)\), after the first part of corollary (A.2) (i). Therefore

\[
\left| \int a(\xi, \eta) \varphi_0(\xi) \varphi_0(\eta) \hat{u}_1(\xi - \eta) \hat{u}_2(\eta) \hat{u}_3(-\xi) d\xi d\eta \right| = \int \left| K_0(z - x, y) u_1(x) u_2(y) u_3(z) dxdydz \right|
\]

\[
\lesssim \int \langle x - y \rangle^{-3} \langle y \rangle^{-3} \langle u_1(x) \rangle \langle u_2(y) \rangle \langle u_3(z) \rangle dxdydz
\]

\[
\lesssim \|u_2\|_{L^\infty} \int \langle x \rangle^{-3} \langle u_1(x) \rangle \langle u_3(z) \rangle dxdz \lesssim \|u_1\|_{L^2} \|u_2\|_{L^\infty} \|u_3\|_{L^2},
\]

where last inequality obtained by Hölder inequality.

For positive indices \(l, k\) such that \(l > k + N_0 \geq 0\) (resp. \(l - k \leq N_0\)), for a suitably large integer \(N_0 > 1\), we have that \(|\xi| < |\eta| \sim \langle \xi - \eta \rangle\) (resp. \(\langle \xi \rangle \sim |\eta|\)) on the support of \(\varphi_k(\xi)\varphi_l(\eta)\). If we define

\[
a_{l+k+N_0}(\xi, \eta) := a(\xi, \eta)(\eta)^{-1} \quad \text{and} \quad a_{l-k} \leq N_0(\xi, \eta) := a(\xi, \eta)(\eta)^{-7},
\]

it is a computation to check that, for any \(\alpha, \beta \in \mathbb{N}^2\) with \(|\alpha|, |\beta| \leq 3\),

\[
|\partial_x^\alpha \partial_y^\beta a_{l+k+N_0}(2^k \xi, 2^l \eta)| + |\partial_x^\alpha \partial_y^\beta a_{l-k} \leq N_0(\xi, \eta)| \lesssim 2^{-l}.
\]

Hence, their associated kernels \(K_{l+k+N_0}(x,y)\) and \(K_{l-k} \leq N_0(x,y)\) are such that

\[
|K_{l+k+N_0}(x,y)| + |K_{l-k} \leq N_0(x,y)| \lesssim 2^{k+2l} 2^l (2^k x - 3 (2^l y)^{-3}, \quad \forall (x,y) \in \mathbb{R}^2 \times \mathbb{R}^2
\]

as follows after a change of coordinates and some integrations by parts, and for any \(l > k + N_0\)

\[
(A.20) \quad \left| \int a(\xi, \eta) \varphi_k(\xi) \varphi_0(\eta) \hat{u}_1(\xi - \eta) \hat{u}_2(\eta) \hat{u}_3(-\xi) d\xi d\eta \right| = \int K_{l+k+N_0}(z - x, y) u_1(x)[(D_x)u_2](y) u_3(z) dxdydz
\]

\[
\lesssim 2^{k+2l} \int \langle (2^k x - 3 (2^l y)^{-3} u_1(x) \rangle \langle (D_x)u_2(y) \rangle \langle u_3(z) \rangle dxdydz
\]

\[
\lesssim 2^{-l} 2^{k} 2^l \|u_1\|_{L^2} \|u_2\|_{H^l} \|u_3\|_{L^2},
\]

148
while for \( |l - k| \leq N_0 \)

\[
\int a(\xi, \eta) \varphi(\xi) \varphi(\eta) \hat{u}_1(\xi - \eta) \hat{u}_2(\eta) \hat{u}_3(-\xi) d\xi d\eta \\
= \int K_{|l - k| \leq N_0}(z - x, x - y) u_1(x) [(D_x)^7 u_2]_y(u_3(z) (z) dx dy dz \\
\leq 2^{3l} \int (2^l (z - x))^{-3} (2^l (x - y))^{-3} |u_1(x)||[(D_x)^7 u_2]_y(u_3(z) (z) dx dy dz \\
\leq 2^{-1} ||u_1||_{L^2} ||u_2||_{H^{7, \infty}} ||u_3||_{L^2}. 
\]

Finally, when positive indices \( l, k \) are such that \( k > l - N_0 \) we observe that frequencies \( \xi \) and \( \xi - \eta \) are equivalent and of size \( 2^k \) on the support of \( \varphi_k(\xi) \varphi_k(\eta) \). If we take \( a_{k,l-N_0}(\xi, \eta) \) equal to \( a_{l,k+N_0}(\xi, \eta) \), denote by \( k_{k,l-N_0}(x, y) \) its associated kernel (which is hence equal to \( k_{l-k+N_0}(x, y) \)), and introduce two new smooth cut-off function \( \varphi^1, \varphi^2 \in C_c^\infty(\mathbb{R}^2) \) equal to 1 on the support of \( \varphi \), together with operators \( \Delta^1_k := \varphi^1(2^{-k} D_x), \Delta^2_k := \varphi^2(2^{-k} D_x) \), we deduce that

\[
\int a(\xi, \eta) \varphi(\xi) \varphi(\eta) \hat{u}_1(\xi - \eta) \hat{u}_2(\eta) \hat{u}_3(-\xi) d\xi d\eta \\
= \int K_{k,l-N_0}(z - x, x - y) [\Delta^1_k u_1](x) [(D_x) \varphi^2]_y(u_3(z) (z) dx dy dz \\
\leq 2^{3k} 2^l \int (2^k (z - x))^{-3} (2^l (x - y))^{-3} |\Delta^1_k u_1(x)||[(D_x) \varphi^2]_y(u_3(z) (z) dx dy dz \\
\leq 2^{-1} ||\Delta^1_k u_1||_{L^2} ||u_2||_{H^{7, \infty}} - ||\Delta^2_k u_3||_{L^2}. 
\]

Combining decomposition (A.19) together with (A.20), (A.21) and Cauchy-Schwarz inequality we finally obtain that

\[
\int a(\xi, \eta) \hat{u}_1(\xi - \eta) \hat{u}_2(\eta) \hat{u}_3(-\xi) d\xi d\eta \lesssim ||u_1||_{L^2} ||u_2||_{H^{7, \infty}} ||u_3||_{L^2},
\]

\[
\square
\]

**Lemma A.6.** Let \( \varepsilon > 0 \) be small, \( N \in \mathbb{N}^* \), and \( \sigma^N(\xi, \eta) : \mathbb{R}^2 \times \mathbb{R}^2 \to \mathbb{C} \) be supported for \( |\xi| \leq \varepsilon(\eta) \) and such that, for any \( \alpha, \beta \in \mathbb{N}^2 \),

\[
|\partial_\xi^\alpha \partial_\eta^\beta \sigma^N(\xi, \eta)| \lesssim |\xi|^{N+1-|\alpha|} |\xi|^{-N-|\beta|}, \quad \forall (\xi, \eta) \in \mathbb{R}^2 \times \mathbb{R}^2.
\]

For any \( (j_1, j_2, j_3) \in \{+, -\}^3 \) let also

\[
\sigma_{(j_1, j_2, j_3)}^N(\xi, \eta) := \frac{\sigma^N(\eta, \xi - \eta)}{j_1(\xi - \eta) + j_2|\eta| - j_3(\xi)}. 
\]

Then for any \( \alpha, \beta \in \mathbb{N}^2 \)

\[
|\partial_\xi^\alpha \partial_\eta^\beta \sigma_{(j_1, j_2, j_3)}^N(\xi, \eta)| \lesssim_{\alpha, \beta} \langle \xi - \eta \rangle^{2-N+|\alpha|+2|\beta|} |\eta|^{N-|\beta|}, \quad \forall (\xi, \eta) \in \mathbb{R}^2 \times \mathbb{R}^2 
\]

and if \( N \geq 15 \), for any \( u, w \in L^2(\mathbb{R}^2), v \in H^{N+3, \infty}(\mathbb{R}^2) 
\]

\[
\int \sigma_{(j_1, j_2, j_3)}^N(\xi, \eta) \hat{u}(\xi - \eta) \hat{v}(\eta) \hat{w}(-\xi) d\xi d\eta \lesssim ||u||_{L^2} ||v||_{H^{N+3, \infty}} ||w||_{L^2}.
\]

**Proof.** From definition (A.22) function \( \sigma_{(j_1, j_2, j_3)}^N(\xi, \eta) \) can be written as follows

\[
\sigma_{(j_1, j_2, j_3)}^N(\xi, \eta) = \frac{j_1(\xi - \eta) + j_2|\eta| + j_3(\xi)}{2j_1 j_2 (\xi - \eta)|\eta| - 2(\xi - \eta) \cdot \eta} \sigma_{(j_1, j_2, j_3)}^N(\eta, \xi - \eta).
\]
We observe that
\[ |j_1 j_2 (\xi - \eta) | |\eta| - (\xi - \eta) \cdot |\eta| |^{-1} \lesssim |\xi - \eta| |\eta|^{-1}, \quad \forall (\xi, \eta) \in \mathbb{R}^2 \times \mathbb{R}^2 \]
and that for any multi-indices \( \alpha, \beta \in \mathbb{N}^2 \) of positive length
\[
| \partial^\alpha \xi (j_1 j_2 (\xi - \eta) | |\eta| - (\xi - \eta) \cdot |\eta| |^{-1} | 
\lesssim \sum_{1 \leq |\alpha_1| \leq |\alpha|} |j_1 j_2 (\xi - \eta) | |\eta| - (\xi - \eta) \cdot |\eta| |^{-1-|\alpha_1|} |\eta|^{|\alpha_1|} (\xi - \eta)^{-|\alpha|-|\alpha_1|},
\]
and
\[
| \partial^\beta \eta (j_1 j_2 (\xi - \eta) | |\eta| - (\xi - \eta) \cdot |\eta| |^{-1} | 
\lesssim \sum_{0 \leq |\beta_1| < |\beta|} |j_1 j_2 (\xi - \eta) | |\eta| - (\xi - \eta) \cdot |\eta| |^{-1-(|\beta| - |\beta_1|)} \sum_{i+j=|\beta|-|\beta_1| \atop i,j \leq |\beta|-|\beta_1|} (\xi - \eta)^{i} |\eta|^j.
\]
From above inequalities we hence deduce that on the support of \( \sigma^N_{j_1 j_2 j_3} (\eta, \xi - \eta) \) (i.e. for \( |\eta| \leq \varepsilon |\xi - \eta| \)), for any \( \alpha, \beta \in \mathbb{N}^2 \),
\[
| \partial^\alpha \xi \partial^\beta \eta (j_1 j_2 (\xi - \eta) | |\eta| - (\xi - \eta) \cdot |\eta| |^{-1} | \lesssim_{\alpha, \beta} (\xi - \eta)^{1+|\alpha|+2|\beta|} |\eta|^{-1-|\beta|},
\]
and therefore that
\[
| \partial^\alpha \xi \partial^\beta \eta [\sigma^N_{j_1 j_2 j_3} (\eta, \xi - \eta) | \lesssim_{\alpha, \beta} (\xi - \eta)^{-N-|\alpha|} |\eta|^{N+1-|\beta|},
\]
gives the first part of the statement.

Let us now suppose that \( N \geq 15 \) and take \( \chi \in C_0^\infty (\mathbb{R}^2) \) equal to 1 in a neighbourhood of the origin. We have that
\[
\int \tilde{\sigma}^N_{j_1 j_2 j_3} (\xi, \eta) \tilde{u}(\xi - \eta) \tilde{v}(\eta) \tilde{w}(\xi) d\xi d\eta = \int K_0^N (z - x, x - y, y) u(x) v(y) w(z) dx dy dz
\]
\[
+ \int K_1^N (z - x, x - y) u(x) ([D_x]^{N+3} v)(y) w(z) dx dy dz,
\]
with
\[
K_k^N (x, y) := \int e^{ix \cdot \xi + iy \cdot \eta} \tilde{\sigma}^N_{j_1 j_2 j_3} (\xi, \eta) d\xi d\eta,
\]
\[
\tilde{\sigma}^N_{j_1 j_2 j_3} (\xi, \eta) = \sigma^N_{j_1 j_2 j_3} (\xi, \eta) \chi(\eta) \quad \text{and} \quad \tilde{\sigma}^N_{j_1 j_2 j_3} (\xi, \eta) \chi(\eta) \quad \text{and} \quad \tilde{\sigma}^N_{j_1 j_2 j_3} (\xi, \eta) \chi(\eta)
\]
Then inequality (A.23) is obtained using the fact that, for any \( \tilde{u}, \tilde{w} \in L^2, \tilde{v} \in L^\infty,
\[
\int (z - x)^{-3} (x - y)^{-3} |\tilde{u}(x)||\tilde{v}(y)||\tilde{w}(z) dx dy dz \lesssim ||v||_{L^\infty} \int (z - x)^{-3} |\tilde{u}(x)||\tilde{w}(z - x) dx dz
\]
\[
\lesssim ||u||_{L^2} ||v||_{L^\infty} ||w||_{L^2}.
\]
\[\Box\]
In the following lemma we derive some results on the Sobolev continuity of the bilinear integral operator

\[ (u, v) \mapsto \int e^{i\xi \cdot \xi} D_{(j_1,j_2)}(\xi, \eta) \hat{u}(\xi - \eta) \hat{v}(\eta) d\xi d\eta, \]

with \( D_{(j_1,j_2)} \) defined in (3.1.14). We warn the reader that we are not going to take advantage of factor \((1 - \frac{\xi_i}{\xi_0^2} : \frac{\eta_i}{\eta_0^2})\) in \( D_{(j_1,j_2)}(\xi, \eta) \) when deriving the estimates mentioned below, since the Sobolev continuity of the above integral operator does not depend on the null structure \( Q_0(v, \partial_1 v) \) we chose for the Klein-Gordon self-interaction in the wave equation in system (1.1.1).

**Lemma A.7.** Let \( \rho \in \mathbb{N} \) and \( D(\xi, \eta) \) a function satisfying, for any multi-indices \( \alpha, \beta \in \mathbb{N}^2 \), the following:

(i) if \( |\xi| \lesssim 1 \),

\[
|\partial_\xi^\alpha D(\xi, \eta)| \lesssim_{\rho, |\beta|} \langle \eta \rangle^{\rho + |\beta|},
\]

\[
|\partial_\xi^\alpha \partial_\eta^\beta D(\xi, \eta)| \lesssim_{\alpha, \beta} \langle \eta \rangle^{\rho + |\alpha| + |\beta|} + \sum_{|\alpha_1| + |\alpha_2| = |\alpha|} |\xi| \langle \eta \rangle^{\rho + |\alpha_1| + |\beta|}, \quad |\alpha| \geq 1;
\]

(ii) for \( |\xi| \gtrsim 1 \), \( |\eta| \lesssim \langle \xi - \eta \rangle \),

\[
|\partial_\xi^\alpha \partial_\eta^\beta D(\xi, \eta)| \lesssim_{\alpha, \beta} \langle \xi - \eta \rangle^{\rho + |\alpha| + |\beta|};
\]

(iii) for \( |\xi| \gtrsim 1 \), \( |\eta| \gtrsim \langle \xi - \eta \rangle \),

\[
|\partial_\xi^\alpha \partial_\eta^\beta D(\xi, \eta)| \lesssim_{\alpha, \beta} \langle \xi - \eta \rangle^{\rho + |\alpha| + |\beta|}.
\]

Then for any \( s \geq 0 \), any \( u, v \in H^{s+\rho+13}(\mathbb{R}^2) \cap L^\infty(\mathbb{R}^2) \) (resp. \( u, v \in H^{s+\rho+13, \infty}(\mathbb{R}^2) \cap L^2(\mathbb{R}^2) \))

\[
(A.25a) \quad \left\| \int e^{i\xi \cdot \xi} D(\xi, \eta) \hat{u}(\xi - \eta) \hat{v}(\eta) d\xi d\eta \right\|_{H^s(dx)} \lesssim \|u\|_{H^{s+\rho+13}} \|v\|_{L^\infty} + \|u\|_{L^\infty} \|v\|_{H^{s+\rho+13}}
\]

(strongly)

\[
(A.25b) \quad \left\| \int e^{i\xi \cdot \xi} D(\xi, \eta) \hat{u}(\xi - \eta) \hat{v}(\eta) d\xi d\eta \right\|_{H^s(dx)} \lesssim \|u\|_{H^{s+\rho+13, \infty}} \|v\|_{L^\infty} + \|u\|_{L^\infty} \|v\|_{H^{s+\rho+13, \infty}}.
\]

Furthermore, if \( \phi \in C_0^\infty(\mathbb{R}^2), \ t \geq 1, \ \sigma > 0 \) small, there exists \( \delta > 0 \) depending linearly on \( \sigma \), such that

\[
(A.26a) \quad \left\| \phi(t^{-\sigma} D_x) \int e^{i\xi \cdot \xi} D(\xi, \eta) \hat{u}(\xi - \eta) \hat{v}(\eta) d\xi d\eta \right\|_{H^s(dx)} \lesssim t^\delta \|u\|_{H^{s+\rho+13}} \|v\|_{L^\infty}\]

(strongly)

\[
(A.26b) \quad \left\| \phi(t^{-\sigma} D_x) \int e^{i\xi \cdot \xi} D(\xi, \eta) \hat{u}(\xi - \eta) \hat{v}(\eta) d\xi d\eta \right\|_{H^s(dx)} \lesssim t^\delta \|u\|_{H^{s+\rho+13, \infty}} \|v\|_{L^\infty}\]

(strongly).

Finally, if for any \( \alpha, \beta \in \mathbb{N}^2 \) \( D(\xi, \eta) \) satisfies (ii), (iii) when \( |\xi| \gtrsim 1 \), together with:
(i) if $|\xi| \lesssim 1$

\[ |\partial_\xi^a \partial_\eta^b D(\xi, \eta) \lesssim a_0(\eta)^{a+b+|\alpha|} + \sum_{|\alpha_1|+|\alpha_2| = |\alpha|} |\xi|^{-|\alpha_1|+1} (\eta)^{a+|\alpha_2|}| \]

then, for any $u, v \in H^{s+\rho+13}(\mathbb{R}^2) \cap L^\infty(\mathbb{R}^2)$,

(A.27a) \[
\left\| e^{ix \cdot \xi} D(\xi, \eta) \hat{u}(\xi - \eta) \hat{v}(\eta) d\xi d\eta \right\|_{H^{s}(dx)} \lesssim \|u\|_{H^{\rho+10}} \|v\|_{L^\infty} + \|u\|_{H^{s+\rho+13}} \|v\|_{L^\infty} + \|u\|_{L^\infty} \|v\|_{H^{s+\rho+13}}
\]

(or \[
\lesssim \|u\|_{L^2} \|v\|_{H^{s+\rho+13}} + \|u\|_{H^{s+\rho+13}} \|v\|_{L^\infty} + \|u\|_{L^\infty} \|v\|_{H^{s+\rho+13}}
\])

and for any $u, v \in H^{s+\rho+13, \infty}(\mathbb{R}^2)$, with $u \in H^{\rho+10}(\mathbb{R}^2)$ (or $u \in L^2(\mathbb{R}^2)$)

(A.27b) \[
\left\| e^{ix \cdot \xi} D(\xi, \eta) \hat{u}(\xi - \eta) \hat{v}(\eta) d\xi d\eta \right\|_{H^{s, \infty}(dx)} \lesssim \|u\|_{H^{\rho+10}} \|v\|_{L^\infty} + \|u\|_{H^{s+\rho+13, \infty}} \|v\|_{L^\infty} + \|u\|_{L^\infty} \|v\|_{H^{s+\rho+13, \infty}}
\]

(or \[
\lesssim \|u\|_{L^2} \|v\|_{H^{s+\rho+13, \infty}} + \|u\|_{H^{s+\rho+13, \infty}} \|v\|_{L^\infty} + \|u\|_{L^\infty} \|v\|_{H^{s+\rho+13, \infty}}
\])

Proof. Let $L(\mathbb{R}^2)$ denote either the $L^2(\mathbb{R}^2)$ space or the $L^\infty(\mathbb{R}^2)$ one. After definition (1.2.3) (i) of space $H^s$ (resp. (iii) of $H^{s, \infty}$), we should prove that the $L^2$ norm (resp. the $L^\infty$) norm of

(A.28) \[
\left\| e^{ix \cdot \xi} D^*(\xi, \eta) \hat{u}(\xi - \eta) \hat{v}(\eta) d\xi d\eta \right\|
\]

with $D^*(\xi, \eta) := D(\xi, \eta)^\ast$ is bounded by the right hand side of (A.25a) and (A.26a) (resp. (A.25b) and (A.26b)). Let us first take $\chi \in C_0^\infty(\mathbb{R}^2)$ equal to 1 in a neighbourhood of the origin and split the above integral, distinguishing between bounded and unbounded frequencies $\xi$, as

(A.29) \[
\int e^{ix \cdot \xi} D^*(\xi, \eta) \chi(\xi) \hat{u}(\xi - \eta) \hat{v}(\eta) d\xi d\eta + \int e^{ix \cdot \xi} D^*(\xi, \eta) (1 - \chi)(\xi) \hat{u}(\xi - \eta) \hat{v}(\eta) d\xi d\eta.
\]

On the support of $\chi(\xi)$ frequencies $\xi - \eta, \eta$ are either bounded or equivalent, thus if

\[
a_0^\ast(\xi, \eta) := \begin{cases} D^*(\xi, \eta) \chi(\xi) (\xi - \eta)^{-\rho-10} \\
D^*(\xi, \eta) \chi(\eta) (\eta)^{-\rho-10}
\end{cases}
\]

$a_0^\ast(\xi, \eta)$ satisfies (A.2) with $g_{\beta}(\eta) = (\eta)^{-3}$ for any $|\beta| \leq 3$, after hypothesis (i) on $D(\xi, \eta)$. Then by (A.4) and depending on the choice of $a_0^\ast(\xi, \eta)$, we have that

(A.30a) \[
\left\| e^{ix \cdot \xi} D^*(\xi, \eta) \chi(\xi) \hat{u}(\xi - \eta) \hat{v}(\eta) d\xi d\eta \right\|_{L(dx)} \lesssim \|D_x\rho+10 u(\xi - \eta) \hat{v}(\eta) d\xi d\eta\|_{L(dx)}
\]

or

(A.30b) \[
\left\| e^{ix \cdot \xi} D^*(\xi, \eta) \chi(\xi) \hat{u}(\xi - \eta) \hat{v}(\eta) d\xi d\eta \right\|_{L(dx)} \lesssim \|u\|_{L^\infty} \|D_x\rho+10 v(\eta) d\xi d\eta\|_{L(dx)}.
\]
Successively, we consider a Littlewood-Paley decomposition in order to write

\[(A.31) \quad \int e^{ix \cdot \xi} D^s(\xi, \eta)(1 - \chi(\xi)) \hat{u}(\xi - \eta) \hat{v}(\eta) d\xi d\eta \]

\[= \sum_{k \geq 1, l \geq 0} \int e^{ix \cdot \xi} D^s(\xi, \eta)(1 - \chi(\xi)) \varphi_k(\xi) \varphi_l(\eta) \hat{u}(\xi - \eta) \hat{v}(\eta) d\xi d\eta,\]

where \(\varphi_0 \in C_0^\infty(\mathbb{R}^2), \varphi_k(\zeta) = \varphi(2^{-k} \zeta)\) with \(\varphi \in C_0^\infty(\mathbb{R}^2 \setminus \{0\})\) for any \(k \in \mathbb{N}^*.\) When positive indices \(l, k\) are such that \(k > l + N_0\) for a certain large \(N_0 \in \mathbb{N}^*,\) we have that \(|\eta| < |\xi - \eta|\) and \(|\xi - \eta| \sim |\xi| \sim 2^k\) on the support of \(\varphi_k(\xi)\varphi_l(\eta).\) If

\[a^*_k > l + N_0(\xi, \eta) := D^s(\xi, \eta) \varphi_k(\xi)\varphi_l(\eta)(\xi - \eta)^{-s - \rho - 13},\]

by hypothesis (ii) we deduce that, for any \(\alpha, \beta \in \mathbb{N}^2\) of length less or equal than 3,

\[|\partial^\alpha_x \partial^\beta_\eta[a^*_k > l + N_0(2^k \xi, 2^l \eta)]| \lesssim 2^{-k}, \quad \forall (\xi, \eta) \in \mathbb{R}^2 \times \mathbb{R}^2\]

and its associated kernel

\[K^*_k > l + N_0(x, y) := \int e^{ix \cdot \xi + iy \cdot \eta} a^*_k > l + N_0(\xi, \eta) d\xi d\eta,\]

verifies that

\[|K^*_k > l + N_0(x, y)| \lesssim 2^k 2^2 l (2^k x)^{-3} (2^l y)^{-3}, \quad \forall (x, y) \in \mathbb{R}^2 \times \mathbb{R}^2\]

as one can check doing some integration by parts. Therefore

\[\left\| \int e^{ix \cdot \xi} D^s(\xi, \eta) \varphi_k(\xi) \varphi_l(\eta) \hat{u}(\xi - \eta) \hat{v}(\eta) d\xi d\eta \right\|_{L(dx)}\]

\[= \left\| \int K^*_k > l + N_0(x, y - z)(D_x)^{s + \rho + 13} u(y) v(z) dy dz \right\|_{L(dx)}\]

\[\lesssim 2^k 2^l \left( \int (2^k (x - y))^{-3} (2^l (y - z))^{-3} (D_x)^{s + \rho + 13} u(y) |v(z)| dy dz \right)_{L(dx)}\]

\[\lesssim 2^k 2^l \left( \int (2^k y)^{-3} (2^l z)^{-3} (D_x)^{s + \rho + 13} u(\cdot - y) v(\cdot - z) \right)_{L(dx)} dy dz\]

\[\lesssim 2^{-l} 2^{-\frac{3}{2}} \left\| (D_x)^{s + \rho + 13} u \right\|_L \left\| v \right\|_L (\text{or } 2^{-l} 2^{-\frac{3}{2}} \left\| (D_x)^{s + \rho + 13} u \right\|_L \left\| v \right\|_L).\]

For indices \(l, k\) such that \(1 \leq k \leq l + N_0\) we have that \(|\xi - \eta| \lesssim |\eta|\) on the support of \(\varphi_k(\xi)\varphi_l(\eta).\) If

\[a^*_k \leq l + N_0(\xi, \eta) := D^s(\xi, \eta) \varphi_k(\xi)\varphi_l(\eta)(\eta)^{-s - \rho - 13},\]

by hypothesis (iii) for any multi-indices \(\alpha, \beta\) of length less or equal than 3,

\[|\partial^\alpha_x \partial^\beta_\eta[a^*_k \leq l + N_0(2^k \xi, 2^l \eta)]| \lesssim_{\alpha, \beta} 2^{-l},\]

and its associated kernel \(K^*_k \leq l + N_0(x, y)\) is such that

\[K^*_k \leq l + N_0(x, y) | \lesssim 2^k 2^l (2^k x)^{-3} (2^l y)^{-3}, \quad \forall (x, y) \in \mathbb{R}^2 \times \mathbb{R}^2.\]

Consequently

\[\left\| \int e^{ix \cdot \xi} D^s(\xi, \eta) \varphi_k(\xi) \varphi_l(\eta) \hat{u}(\xi - \eta) \hat{v}(\eta) d\xi d\eta \right\|_{L(dx)}\]

\[\lesssim 2^{-l} 2^{-\frac{3}{2}} \left\| u \right\|_L \left\| (D_x)^{s + \rho + 13} v \right\|_L \left(\text{or } 2^{-l} 2^{-\frac{3}{2}} \left\| u \right\|_L \left\| (D_x)^{s + \rho + 13} v \right\|_L),\right.\]

153
and inequality (A.25a) (resp. (A.25b)) is hence obtained by combining inequalities (A.30), (A.32), (A.33) with \( L = L^2 \) (resp. \( L = L^\infty \)), and taking the sum over \( k \geq 1, l \geq 0 \).

In order to derive inequalities (A.26), we first observe that we can reduce to study the \( L^2 \) and \( L^\infty \) norm of (A.28) with \( s = 0 \) and \( D(\xi, \eta) \) multiplied by \( \phi(t^{-s} \xi) \), up to a factor \( t^{s} \). Here we use again decompositions (A.29), (A.31), and only need to modify some of the multipliers defined above, depending on if we want derivatives falling entirely on \( u \) or rather on \( v \). In fact, in order to prove the first two inequalities in (A.26a) and the first one in (A.26b) we introduce

\[
a_l^\phi \big|_{l < k + N_0} (\xi, \eta) := D(\xi, \eta) \chi(t^{-s} \xi) \phi_l(\xi) \phi_l(\eta)
\]

\[
a_l^\phi \big|_{l > k + N_0} (\xi, \eta) := D(\xi, \eta) \chi(t^{-s} \xi) \phi_l(\eta) \phi_l(\xi)^{-\rho - 13}
\]

and deduce from hypothesis (ii) – (iii) on \( D(\xi, \eta) \) and the fact that \( |\xi| \lesssim t^s \) on the support of \( \phi(t^{-s} \xi) \) that, for any \( \alpha, \beta \in \mathbb{N}^2 \) of length less or equal than 3,

\[
|\partial_\xi^\alpha \partial_\eta^\beta [a_l^\phi \big|_{l \leq k + N_0}(2^k \xi, 2^l \eta)]| \lesssim t^{\delta - 2k} \quad \text{and} \quad |\partial_\xi^\alpha \partial_\eta^\beta [a_l^\phi \big|_{l > k + N_0}(2^k \xi, 2^l \eta)]| \lesssim 2^{-l}
\]

with \( \delta > 0, \delta \to 0 \) as \( \sigma \to 0 \). On the one hand, kernel \( K_l^\phi \big|_{l \leq k + N_0}(x, y) \) associated to \( a_l^\phi \big|_{l \leq k + N_0} (\xi, \eta) \) verifies

\[
|K_l^\phi \big|_{l \leq k + N_0}(x, y) \| \lesssim t^{\delta} 2^{2l} (2^k x)^{-3} (2^l y)^{-3}, \quad \forall (x, y) \in \mathbb{R}^2 \times \mathbb{R}^2
\]

and then for any \( l, k \) such that \( l \leq k + N_0 \)

\[
\left\| \int e^{ix \xi} D(\xi, \eta) \phi(t^s \xi) \phi_l(\xi) \phi_l(\eta) u(\xi - \eta) v(\eta) d\xi d\eta \right\|_{L(dx)} \lesssim t^{\delta} 2^{2l} \| u \|_{L^2} \| v \|_{L^\infty}
\]

(A.34)

\[
\left\| \int K_l^\phi \big|_{l \leq k + N_0}(x - y, y - z) u(y) v(y) d\xi d\eta \right\|_{L(dx)} \lesssim t^{\delta} 2^{2l} \| u \|_{L^2} \| v \|_{L^\infty}
\]

On the other hand, kernel \( K_l^\phi \big|_{l > k + N_0}(x, y) \) associated to \( a_l^\phi \big|_{l > k + N_0} (\xi, \eta) \) satisfies

\[
|K_l^\phi \big|_{l > k + N_0}(x, y) \| \lesssim 2^{2l} (2^k x)^{-3} (2^l y)^{-3}, \quad \forall (x, y) \in \mathbb{R}^2 \times \mathbb{R}^2
\]

so for indices \( l, k \) such that \( l > k + N_0 \)

\[
\left\| \int e^{ix \xi} D(\xi, \eta) \phi(t^s \xi) \phi_l(\xi) \phi_l(\eta) u(\xi - \eta) v(\eta) d\xi d\eta \right\|_{L(dx)} \lesssim t^{\delta} 2^{2l} \| u \|_{L^2} \| v \|_{L^\infty}
\]

\[
\left\| \int K_l^\phi \big|_{l > k + N_0}(x - y, y - z) u(y) v(y) d\xi d\eta \right\|_{L(dx)} \lesssim t^{\delta} 2^{2l} \| u \|_{L^2} \| v \|_{L^\infty}
\]

Combining these two inequalities with (A.30a) and taking the sum over \( k \geq 1, l \geq 0 \) we obtain the wished estimates.

Last two inequalities in (A.26a) and last one in (A.26b) are instead obtained combining (A.30b) with (A.33) (that evidently holds for \( D^s(\xi, \eta) \) replaced with \( D(\xi, \eta) \phi(t^s \xi) \)) and (A.34).

Finally, last part of the statement follows from the same argument of above, with the only difference that, after hypothesis (i), multiplier \( \tilde{a}_l^\phi(\xi, \eta) := \tilde{D}(\xi, \eta) \chi(\xi) \langle \eta \rangle^{-\rho - 10} \) satisfies (A.5) with \( |\beta(\eta)| \lesssim \langle \eta \rangle^{-3} \) for any \( |\beta| \leq 3 \), then by (A.7) we have that

\[
\left\| \int e^{ix \xi} \tilde{D}^s(\xi, \eta) \chi(\xi) \hat{u}(\xi - \eta) \hat{v}(\eta) d\xi d\eta \right\|_{L(dx)} \lesssim \| D^s \|_{L^2} \| u \|_{L^2} \| v \|_{L^\infty}
\]

154
or

$$
\left\| \int e^{ix \cdot \xi} \tilde{D}^* (\xi, \eta) \chi(\xi) \hat{u}(\xi - \eta) \hat{v}(\eta) d\xi d\eta \right\|_{L^2(dx)} \\
= \left\| \int e^{ix \cdot \xi} \hat{u}_0 (\xi, \eta) \hat{u}(\xi - \eta) (D_\eta e^{\rho+10}) \hat{v}(\eta) d\xi d\eta \right\|_{L^2(dx)} 
\lesssim \| u \|_{L^2} \| (D_\eta e^{\rho+10}) \hat{v} \|_{L^2}.
$$

**Lemma A.8.** Let \( j \in \{+,-\}, \phi \in C_0^\infty (\mathbb{R}^2), t \geq 1, \sigma > 0, \) and \( D_j (\xi, \eta) \) be the multiplier introduced in (A.14). For any \( s \geq 0, i = 1, 2, D_j (\xi, \eta) \) and \( \hat{\xi} D_j (\xi, \eta) \) satisfy inequalities (A.25), (A.26) with \( \rho = 2, \) and

$$
\begin{align*}
\left\| \int e^{ix \cdot \xi} \partial_t D_j (\xi, \eta) \hat{u}(\xi - \eta) \hat{v}(\eta) d\xi d\eta \right\|_{H^s (dx)} & \lesssim \| u \|_{H^{11}} \| v \|_{L^2} + \| u \|_{H^{16,\infty}} \| v \|_{L^\infty} + \| u \|_{L^2} \| v \|_{H^{16,\infty}} \\
\text{(resp.} & \lesssim \| u \|_{H^{13}} \| v \|_{L^2} + \| u \|_{H^{16,\infty}} \| v \|_{L^\infty} + \| u \|_{L^2} \| v \|_{H^{16,\infty}}),
\end{align*}
$$

(A.35a)

$$
\begin{align*}
\left\| \int e^{ix \cdot \xi} \partial_t D_j (\xi, \eta) \hat{u}(\xi - \eta) \hat{v}(\eta) d\xi d\eta \right\|_{H^{s,\infty} (dx)} & \lesssim \| u \|_{H^{13}} \| v \|_{L^\infty} + \| u \|_{H^{16,\infty}} \| v \|_{L^\infty} + \| u \|_{L^2} \| v \|_{H^{16,\infty}},
\end{align*}
$$

(A.35b)

together with

$$
\begin{align*}
\left\| \phi (t^{-\sigma} D_x) \int e^{ix \cdot \xi} \partial_t D_j (\xi, \eta) \hat{u}(\xi - \eta) \hat{v}(\eta) d\xi d\eta \right\|_{H^s (dx)} & \lesssim t^\delta \| u \|_{H^{13}} \left( \| v \|_{L^2} + \| v \|_{L^\infty} \right) \\
\text{(or} & \lesssim t^\delta \| u \|_{L^2} \left( \| v \|_{H^{10}} + \| v \|_{H^{13}} \right)),
\end{align*}
$$

(A.36a)

$$
\begin{align*}
\left\| \phi (t^{-\sigma} D_x) \int e^{ix \cdot \xi} \partial_t D_j (\xi, \eta) \hat{u}(\xi - \eta) \hat{v}(\eta) d\xi d\eta \right\|_{H^{s,\infty} (dx)} & \lesssim t^\delta \left( \| u \|_{H^{13}} + \| u \|_{H^{16,\infty}} \right) \| v \|_{L^\infty} \\
\text{(or} & \lesssim t^\delta \left( \| u \|_{L^2} + \| u \|_{L^\infty} \right) \| v \|_{H^{16,\infty}}).
\end{align*}
$$

Moreover, if \( \Omega = x_1 \partial_2 - x_2 \partial_1 \) and \( Z_n = x_n \partial_t + t \partial_n, \) \( n = 1, 2, \)

$$
\begin{align*}
\left\| \phi (t^{-\sigma} D_x) \Omega \int e^{ix \cdot \xi} D_j (\xi, \eta) \hat{u}(\xi - \eta) \hat{v}(\eta) d\xi d\eta \right\|_{L^2 (dx)} & \lesssim t^\delta \left( \| u \|_{L^2} + \| \Omega u \|_{L^2} \right) \| v \|_{H^{17,\infty}} + \| u \|_{H^{15,\infty}} \| \Omega v \|_{L^2},
\end{align*}
$$

(A.37a)

$$
\begin{align*}
\left\| \phi (t^{-\sigma} D_x) Z_n \int e^{ix \cdot \xi} D_j (\xi, \eta) \hat{u}(\xi - \eta) \hat{v}(\eta) d\xi d\eta \right\|_{L^2 (dx)} & \lesssim t^\delta \left( \| \partial_t u \|_{L^2} \| v \|_{H^{13}} + \| u \|_{H^{13}} \| \partial_t v \|_{L^2} + \| Z_n u \|_{L^2} \| v \|_{H^{15,\infty}} + \| u \|_{H^{15,\infty}} \| Z_n v \|_{L^2},
\end{align*}
$$

(A.37b)

$$
\begin{align*}
\left\| \phi (t^{-\sigma} D_x) Z_n \int e^{ix \cdot \xi} D_j (\xi, \eta) \hat{u}(\xi - \eta) \hat{v}(\eta) d\xi d\eta \right\|_{L^2 (dx)} & \lesssim t^\delta \left[ \| \partial_t u \|_{L^2} \| v \|_{H^{14,\infty}} + \| u \|_{H^{14,\infty}} \| \partial_t v \|_{L^2} + \| Z_n u \|_{L^2} \| v \|_{H^{17,\infty}} + \| u \|_{H^{17,\infty}} \| Z_n v \|_{L^2},
\end{align*}
$$

(A.37c)

with \( \delta > 0, \delta \to 0 \) as \( \sigma \to 0. \)
Proof. The statement follows essentially from the observation that, for $j \in \{+,-\}$, functions $D_j(\xi,\eta)$ and $[\eta_1\partial_{\xi_1} + (\eta_2\partial_{\eta_2})^{k_2}D_j](\xi,\eta)$ satisfy hypothesis $(i)$–$(iii)$ of lemma \[A.1\] with $\rho = 2$ and $\rho = 2 + 2(k_1 + k_2)$ respectively, while $\partial_{\xi_j} D_j(\xi,\eta)$ satisfies $(i), (ii), (iii)$ with $\rho = 3$. In fact, we first remark that, for every $\xi, \eta$, denominator $1 + \langle \xi - \eta \rangle \langle \eta \rangle - \langle \xi - \eta \rangle \cdot \eta$ is bounded from below by a positive constant; secondly, the derivation of that denominator gives rise to losses in $\langle \xi - \eta \rangle, \langle \eta \rangle$, as

$$
\partial_{\xi_k}(1 + \langle \xi - \eta \rangle \langle \eta \rangle - \langle \xi - \eta \rangle \cdot \eta) = \frac{\xi_k - \eta_k}{\langle \xi - \eta \rangle} + \eta_k,
$$

$$
\partial_{\eta_k}(1 + \langle \xi - \eta \rangle \langle \eta \rangle - \langle \xi - \eta \rangle \cdot \eta) = \frac{\xi_k - \eta_k}{\langle \xi - \eta \rangle} + \langle \xi - \eta \rangle \eta_k + \langle \xi - \eta \rangle - (\xi_k - \eta_k).
$$

For $|\xi| \lesssim 1$ we have that $\langle \xi - \eta \rangle \lesssim \langle \eta \rangle$, so for any $\alpha, \beta \in \mathbb{N}^2$

$$
\left| \partial^\alpha_{\xi} \partial^\beta_{\eta} \left[ \frac{\langle j \xi - \eta \rangle + \langle j \eta \rangle}{1 + \langle \xi - \eta \rangle \langle \eta \rangle - \langle \xi - \eta \rangle \cdot \eta} \right] \right| \lesssim_{\alpha,\beta} \langle \eta \rangle^{2 + |\alpha| + |\beta|},
$$

while

$$
\left| \partial^\alpha_{\eta} \left[ \frac{|\xi|}{1 + \langle \xi - \eta \rangle \langle \eta \rangle - \langle \xi - \eta \rangle \cdot \eta} \right] \right| \lesssim_{\alpha} \langle \eta \rangle^{1 + |\beta|},
$$

$$
\left| \partial^\alpha_{\xi} \partial^\beta_{\eta} \left[ \frac{|\xi|}{1 + \langle \xi - \eta \rangle \langle \eta \rangle - \langle \xi - \eta \rangle \cdot \eta} \right] \right| \lesssim_{\alpha,\beta} \sum_{|\alpha_1| + |\alpha_2| = |\alpha|} |\xi|^{1 - |\alpha_1|} \langle \eta \rangle^{1 + |\alpha_2| + |\beta|}, \quad |\alpha| \geq 1.
$$

For $|\xi| \gtrsim 1$ and $|\eta| \lesssim \langle \xi - \eta \rangle$ (resp. $|\eta| \gtrsim \langle \xi - \eta \rangle$) we have that $|\xi| \lesssim |\xi - \eta|$ (resp. $|\xi| \lesssim |\eta|$), so each time a derivative hits the denominator of $D_j(\xi,\eta)$ we lose a factor $\langle \xi - \eta \rangle$ (resp. $\langle \eta \rangle$). Hence lemma \[A.1\] immediately implies inequalities \[A.26\], \[A.26\] with $D = D_j$ and $\rho = 2$, together with \[A.35\], \[A.36\], while inequalities \[A.37\] follow from \[A.26\] and the fact that, after some integration by parts,

$$
\Omega \int e^{ix \xi} D_j(\xi,\eta) \hat{u}(\xi - \eta) \hat{v}(\eta) d\xi d\eta
$$

$$
= \sum_{k_1 + k_2 + k_3 + k_4 = 1} \int e^{ix \xi} \left[ (\xi_1 \partial_{\xi_1} - \xi_2 \partial_{\xi_2})^{k_1} (\eta_1 \partial_{\eta_1} - \eta_2 \partial_{\eta_2})^{k_2} D_j \right](\xi,\eta) \hat{\Omega}^{k_3} \hat{u}(\xi - \eta) \hat{\Omega}^{k_4} \hat{v}(\eta) d\xi d\eta,
$$

$$
Z_n \int e^{ix \xi} D_j(\xi,\eta) \hat{u}(\xi - \eta) \hat{v}(\eta) d\xi d\eta
$$

$$
= \int e^{ix \xi} \left[ \partial_{\eta_1} D_j(\xi,\eta) D_t \hat{u}(\xi - \eta) \hat{v}(\eta) \right] d\xi d\eta + \int e^{ix \xi} \left[ \partial_{\eta_2} D_j(\xi,\eta) D_t \hat{u}(\xi - \eta) \hat{v}(\eta) \right] d\xi d\eta
$$

$$
+ \int e^{ix \xi} D_j(\xi,\eta) \hat{Z}_n \hat{u}(\xi - \eta) \hat{v}(\eta) d\xi d\eta + \int e^{ix \xi} D_j(\xi,\eta) \hat{Z}_n \hat{u}(\xi - \eta) \hat{v}(\eta) d\xi d\eta,
$$

and, if $\delta_{jn}$ denotes the Kronecker delta,

$$
D_j Z_n \int e^{ix \xi} D_j(\xi,\eta) \hat{u}(\xi - \eta) \hat{v}(\eta) d\xi d\eta
$$

$$
= \delta_{jn} \int e^{ix \xi} D_j(\xi,\eta) D_t \left[ \hat{u}(\xi - \eta) \hat{v}(\eta) \right] d\xi d\eta
$$

$$
+ \int e^{ix \xi} \partial_{\xi_1} \left[ \xi_1 D_j(\xi,\eta) D_t \left[ \hat{u}(\xi - \eta) \hat{v}(\eta) \right] \right] d\xi d\eta + \int e^{ix \xi} \partial_{\eta_1} \left[ \xi_1 D_j(\xi,\eta) D_t \left[ \hat{u}(\xi - \eta) \hat{v}(\eta) \right] \right] d\xi d\eta
$$

$$
+ \int e^{ix \xi} \xi_j D_j(\xi,\eta) \hat{Z}_n \hat{u}(\xi - \eta) \hat{v}(\eta) d\xi d\eta + \int e^{ix \xi} \xi_j D_j(\xi,\eta) \hat{Z}_n \hat{u}(\xi - \eta) \hat{v}(\eta) d\xi d\eta.
$$

\[\square\]
Appendix B

The aim of this chapter is to show how, from the bootstrap assumptions (1.1.11), it is possible to derive a moderate growth in time for the $L^2$ norm of $L^{|\mu|} \tilde{\nu}$, with $0 \leq |\mu| \leq 2$, and of $\Omega^{|\mu_0|} \tilde{\nu}^{\sigma-k}$, with $\mu, |\nu| = 0, 1$. These estimates are fundamentally used in propositions 3.2.7 and 3.3.3. Moreover, we also prove in lemma B.4.14 a sharp decay estimate for the uniform norm of the Klein-Gordon solution when one Klainerman vector field is acting on it (and when considered for frequencies less or equal than $t^\sigma$, with $\sigma > 0$ small). We are hence going to assume for the rest of this chapter that a-priori estimates (1.1.11) are satisfied in interval $[1, T]$, for some fixed $T > 1$, and that $\varepsilon_0 < (2A + B)^{-1}$. We remind that $\Gamma$ generally denotes one of the admissible vector fields belonging to $Z$ (see (1.1.7)) and that, for a multi-index $I = (i_1, \ldots, i_n)$ with $i_j \in \{1, \ldots, 5\}$ for $j = 1, \ldots, n$, $\Gamma^I = \Gamma_{i_1} \cdots \Gamma_{i_n}$. Also, we warn the reader that any norm $X$ ($X = L^\infty, H^s, H^s_k$, ...), $w = w(t, x)$ is here considered with respect to spatial variable $x$. We will often write $\| \cdot \|_X$ in place of $\| \cdot \|_{X(dx)}$.

B.1 Some preliminary lemmas

In the current section we list, on the one hand, some inequalities concerning the $H^s$ and $H^{s, \infty}$ norm of the quadratic non-linearities $Q_0^s(v_\pm, D_1 v_\pm)$, $Q_0^{k g}(v_\pm, D_1 u_\pm)$ (see lemmas B.1.1, B.1.2), as they are very frequently recalled in the second part of the paper. On the other hand, we introduce some preliminary small results that will be useful in sections B.2 and B.3.

For seek of compactness, we denote $Q_0^s(v_\pm, D_1 v_\pm)$ and $Q_0^{k g}(v_\pm, D_1 u_\pm)$ by $NL_w$ and $NL_{kg}$ respectively, i.e.

\begin{align}
NL_w &:= \frac{i}{4} \left( (v_+ + v_-) D_1(v_+ + v_-) - \frac{D_x}{\langle D_x \rangle} (v_+ - v_-) \cdot \frac{D_x D_1}{\langle D_x \rangle} (v_+ - v_-) \right), \\
NL_{kg} &:= \frac{i}{4} \left( (v_+ + v_-) D_1(u_+ + u_-) - \frac{D_x}{\langle D_x \rangle} (v_+ - v_-) \cdot \frac{D_x D_1}{|D_x|} (u_+ - u_-) \right).
\end{align}

We recall the result of lemma 1.2.40 that can be also stated in the classical setting and says that, for any real positive $s > s'$ and $w \in H^s(\mathbb{R}^2)$,

\begin{equation}
\|(1 - \chi)(t^{-\sigma} D_x) w\|_{H^{s'}} \leq C t^{-\sigma(s-s')} \|w\|_{H^s}, \quad \forall s > s'.
\end{equation}

It is also useful to remind, in view of upcoming lemmas, that the $L^2$ norm of $(\Gamma^I w)_\pm$ and $(\Gamma^I v)_\pm$ is estimated with:

\begin{align}
E_n(t; W)^\frac{1}{2}, & \text{ whenever } |I| \leq n \text{ and } \Gamma^I \text{ is a product of spatial derivatives;} \\
E_3(t; W)^\frac{1}{2}, & \text{ whenever } |I| \leq 3 \text{ and at most } 3 - k \text{ vector fields in } \Gamma^I, \text{ with } 0 \leq k \leq 2 \text{ belong to } \{\Omega, Z_m, m = 1, 2\}.
\end{align}
As assumed in \((1.1.1c), (1.1.1d)\), such energies have a moderate growth in time and a hierarchy is established among them in the sense that
\[
0 < \delta \ll \delta_2 \ll \delta_1 \ll \delta_0 \ll 1.
\]

We warn the reader that this hierarchy is often implicitly used throughout this chapter.

**Lemma B.1.1.** For any \(s \geq 0\), any \(\theta \in [0, 1[\), \(NL_{\theta}\) satisfies the following inequalities:

\[
\begin{align*}
\|NL_{\theta}(t, \cdot)\|_{L^2} &\lesssim \|V(t, \cdot)\|_{H^{1, \infty}} \|V(t, \cdot)\|_{H^1}, \\
\|NL_{\theta}(t, \cdot)\|_{L^\infty} &\lesssim \|V(t, \cdot)\|_{H^{2, \infty}}, \\
\|NL_{\theta}(t, \cdot)\|_{H^s} &\lesssim \|V(t, \cdot)\|_{H^{s+1}} \|V(t, \cdot)\|_{H^1}, \\
\|\Omega NL_{\theta}(t, \cdot)\|_{L^2} &\lesssim \|V(t, \cdot)\|_{H^{2, \infty}} (\|V(t, \cdot)\|_{L^2} + \|\Omega V(t, \cdot)\|_{H^1}),
\end{align*}
\]

while for \(NL_{k \theta}\) we have that:

\[
\begin{align*}
\|NL_{k \theta}(t, \cdot)\|_{L^2} &\lesssim \|V(t, \cdot)\|_{H^{1, \infty}} \|U(t, \cdot)\|_{H^1}, \\
\|NL_{k \theta}(t, \cdot)\|_{L^\infty} &\lesssim \|V(t, \cdot)\|_{H^{1, \infty}} (\|U(t, \cdot)\|_{H^2, \infty} + \|R_1 U(t, \cdot)\|_{H^{2, \infty}}), \\
\|NL_{k \theta}(t, \cdot)\|_{H^s} &\lesssim \|V(t, \cdot)\|_{H^{s+1}} (\|U(t, \cdot)\|_{H^1} + \|R_1 U(t, \cdot)\|_{H^1}) + \|V(t, \cdot)\|_{L^\infty} \|U(t, \cdot)\|_{H^1}, \\
\|\Omega NL_{k \theta}(t, \cdot)\|_{L^2} &\lesssim \|V(t, \cdot)\|_{L^2} + \|\Omega V(t, \cdot)\|_{L^2} (\|U(t, \cdot)\|_{H^2, \infty} + \|R_1 U(t, \cdot)\|_{H^2, \infty}).
\end{align*}
\]

**Proof.** Inequalities \((B.1.3a), (B.1.3b), (B.1.3c),\) and \((B.1.3d)\) are straightforward. The same is for \((B.1.3e)\) and \((B.1.4d)\) after commutation of \(\Omega\) with the operators appearing in \((2.1.1)\). All other inequalities in the statement are rather derived using corollary \(A.3\). 

**Lemma B.1.2.** For any \(s \geq 0\), any \(\theta \in [0, 1[\),

\[
\begin{align*}
\|D_t U(t, \cdot)\|_{H^s} &\lesssim \|U(t, \cdot)\|_{H^{s+1}} + \|V(t, \cdot)\|_{H^{s+1}} \|V(t, \cdot)\|_{H^1}, \\
\|D_t U(t, \cdot)\|_{H^{s, \infty}} &\lesssim \|U(t, \cdot)\|_{H^{s+2, \infty}} + \|V(t, \cdot)\|_{H^{s+1, \infty}} \|V(t, \cdot)\|_{H^1}, \\
\|D_t R_1 U(t, \cdot)\|_{H^s, \infty} &\lesssim \|R_1 U(t, \cdot)\|_{H^{s+1, \infty}} + \|V(t, \cdot)\|_{H^{s+1}} \|V(t, \cdot)\|_{H^1}, \\
\|D_t \Omega U(t, \cdot)\|_{L^2} &\lesssim \|\Omega U(t, \cdot)\|_{H^1} + \|V(t, \cdot)\|_{H^{2, \infty}} (\|V(t, \cdot)\|_{L^2} + \|\Omega V(t, \cdot)\|_{H^1}),
\end{align*}
\]

while

\[
\begin{align*}
\|D_t V(t, \cdot)\|_{H^{s, \infty}} &\lesssim \|V(t, \cdot)\|_{H^{s+1, \infty}} + \|V(t, \cdot)\|_{H^{s+1}} \|V(t, \cdot)\|_{H^1}, \\
\|D_t V(t, \cdot)\|_{L^\infty} &\lesssim \|U(t, \cdot)\|_{H^{s+1}} + \|V(t, \cdot)\|_{L^\infty} \|U(t, \cdot)\|_{H^{s+1}}, \\
\|D_t V(t, \cdot)\|_{H^s} &\lesssim \|V(t, \cdot)\|_{H^{s+1, \infty}} + \|V(t, \cdot)\|_{H^{s+1}} \|V(t, \cdot)\|_{H^1}, \\
\|D_t \Omega V(t, \cdot)\|_{L^2} &\lesssim \|\Omega V(t, \cdot)\|_{H^1} + \|V(t, \cdot)\|_{L^2} + \|\Omega V(t, \cdot)\|_{L^2} (\|U(t, \cdot)\|_{H^{2, \infty}} + \|R_1 U(t, \cdot)\|_{H^2, \infty}).
\end{align*}
\]

158
Proof. Straight consequence of the previous lemma and the fact that \((u_+, v_+, u_-, v_-)\) is solution to system (3.1.1). Observe that inequality (B.1.5c) is derived using that
\[
\|R_1NLw(t, \cdot)\|_{H^{s, \infty}} \lesssim \|NLw(t, \cdot)\|_{H^{s+2}}
\]
after classical Sobolev injection and continuity of \(R_1 : H^s \to H^s\), for any \(s \geq 0\).

Lemma B.1.3. Let \(|I| = 1\) be such that \(\Gamma^I \in \{\Omega, Z_m, m = 1, 2\}\). Then

\[
\|D_t U^I(t, \cdot)\|_{L^2} \lesssim \|U^I(t, \cdot)\|_{H^1} + \|V(t, \cdot)\|_{H^{2, \infty}} \left[\|V^I(t, \cdot)\|_{H^1}\right] + \|V(t, \cdot)\|_{L^\infty} \|U(t, \cdot)\|_{H^1},
\]

(B.1.7)

\[
\|D_t V^I(t, \cdot)\|_{L^2} \lesssim \|V^I(t, \cdot)\|_{H^1} + \sum_{\mu = 0}^{1} \|R_\mu U(t, \cdot)\|_{H^{2, \infty}} \|V^I(t, \cdot)\|_{L^2}
\]

(B.1.8)

\[
+ \|V(t, \cdot)\|_{H^{1, \infty}} \left[\|U^I(t, \cdot)\|_{H^1} + \|U(t, \cdot)\|_{H^1} + \|V(t, \cdot)\|_{H^{1, \infty}} \|V(t, \cdot)\|_{H^1}\right].
\]

Proof. The result of the statement follows using the equation satisfied, respectively, by \(u_\pm\) and \(v_\pm\), together with (B.1.5a), (B.1.6a) with \(s = 0\). In fact, by (B.1.5a) with \(|I| = 1\),
\[
D_t u_\pm = \pm |D_x| u_\pm + Q_0^w(v_\pm, D_1 v_\pm) + Q_0^w(v_\pm, D_1 v_\pm) + G_1^w(v_\pm, Dv_\pm),
\]

\[
D_t v_\pm = \pm |D_x| v_\pm + Q_0^w(v_\pm, D_1 v_\pm) + Q_0^w(v_\pm, D_1 v_\pm) + G_1^w(v_\pm, Dv_\pm),
\]

with \(G_1^w(v_\pm, \partial v_\pm) = G_1^w(v, \partial v), G_1^k(v_\pm, Du_\pm) = G_1^k(v, \partial u)\) and \(G_1\) given by (1.1.16). Hence one can estimate the \(L^2\) norm of the first two quadratic terms in above equalities with the \(L^2\) norm of factors indexed in \(I\) times the \(L^\infty\) norm of the remaining one, while the \(L^2\) norm of the latter quadratic terms can be instead bounded by taking the \(L^2\) norm of one of the two factors times the \(L^\infty\) norm of the remaining one, indifferently. We choose here to consider the \(L^2\) norm of factors \(D_\pm u_\pm, D_\pm v_\pm\), and use (B.1.5a), (B.1.6a) if the derivative \(D\) is a time derivative. □

It is useful to remind that, if \(w(t, x)\) is solution to inhomogeneous half wave equation (3.2.5) from (3.2.1a) we have that for any \(j, k \in \{1, 2\}\) and \(|\mu| \leq 1\)

\[
\begin{align*}
 x_j D_k \left(\frac{D_x}{|D_x|}\right)^\mu w &= \frac{D_k}{|D_x|} \left(\frac{D_x}{|D_x|}\right)^\mu w - \frac{D_j D_k}{|D_x|^2} \left(\frac{D_x}{|D_x|}\right)^\mu \left[w \right]_x + \frac{D_j}{|D_x|} \left(\frac{D_x}{|D_x|}\right)^\mu w + \frac{D_j D_k}{|D_x|^2} \left(\frac{D_x}{|D_x|}\right)^\mu \left[w \right]_x \\
&\hspace{1cm} + \frac{D_j}{|D_x|} \left(\frac{D_x}{|D_x|}\right)^\mu w + \frac{D_j}{|D_x|} \left(\frac{D_x}{|D_x|}\right)^\mu w + \frac{1}{|D_x|} \left(\frac{D_x}{|D_x|}\right)^\mu \left[w \right]_x \\
&\hspace{1cm} + \frac{D_j}{|D_x|} \left(\frac{D_x}{|D_x|}\right)^\mu w + \frac{D_j}{|D_x|} \left(\frac{D_x}{|D_x|}\right)^\mu w + \frac{1}{|D_x|} \left(\frac{D_x}{|D_x|}\right)^\mu \left[w \right]_x.
\end{align*}
\]

(B.1.9a)

Analogously, if \(w(t, x)\) is solution to inhomogeneous half Klein-Gordon (3.2.1b), from (3.2.12b) we have that

\[
\begin{align*}
 x_j \left(\frac{D_x}{|D_x|}\right)^\mu w &= \frac{1}{|D_x|} \left(\frac{D_x}{|D_x|}\right)^\mu \left[(D_x) x_j - t D_j\right] w + t \frac{D_j}{|D_x|} \left(\frac{D_x}{|D_x|}\right)^\mu w + i \text{Op}_h^w \left(\partial_j \left(\frac{\xi_x}{|\xi|}\right)\right) w \\
&\hspace{1cm} + i \frac{1}{|D_x|} \left(\frac{D_x}{|D_x|}\right)^\mu \left[(D_x) x_j - t D_j\right] w + t \frac{D_j}{|D_x|} \left(\frac{D_x}{|D_x|}\right)^\mu w + i \text{Op}_h^w \left(\partial_j \left(\frac{\xi_x}{|\xi|}\right)\right) w \\
&\hspace{1cm} + i \frac{1}{|D_x|} \left(\frac{D_x}{|D_x|}\right)^\mu \left[(D_x) x_j - t D_j\right] w + t \frac{D_j}{|D_x|} \left(\frac{D_x}{|D_x|}\right)^\mu w + i \text{Op}_h^w \left(\partial_j \left(\frac{\xi_x}{|\xi|}\right)\right) w.
\end{align*}
\]

(B.1.9b)
Thus, if \( \varepsilon \) (B.1.12b) along with that (B.1.13a)) into (B.1.12a) (resp. in (B.1.12b)), and using a priori estimates (1.1.11), we obtain and (B.1.13a) \( \|v\|_{H^1,\infty} \leq C(A + B)\varepsilon t^{1+\frac{3}{2}} \).

\[ \sum_{|\mu|=0}^{1} \left\| x_j \left( \frac{D_x}{(D_x)^2} \right)^\mu v_\pm(t, \cdot) \right\|_{H^1} \leq C B \varepsilon t^{1+\frac{3}{2}}, \]

and

\[ \sum_{|\mu|=0}^{1} \left\| x_j D_x \left( \frac{D_x}{(D_x)^2} \right)^\mu u_\pm(t, \cdot) \right\|_{L^2} \leq C B \varepsilon t^{1+\frac{3}{2}}. \]

**Proof.** We warn the reader that, throughout the proof, \( C \) will denote a positive constant that may change line after line. As \( v_+ = -v_- \) (resp. \( u_+ = -u_- \)), it is enough to prove the statement for \( v_- \) (resp. for \( u_- \)).

Since \( v_- \) is solution to equation (3.27) with \( f = NL_{kg} \), from (B.1.9b) it immediately follows that, for any \( |\mu| \leq 1 \),

\[ \left\| x_j \left( \frac{D_x}{(D_x)^2} \right)^\mu v_-(t, \cdot) \right\|_{H^1} \leq \|Z_j v_- (t, \cdot)\|_{L^2} + t\|v_- (t, \cdot)\|_{H^1} + \|x_j NL_{kg} (t, \cdot)\|_{L^2(dx)} \]

along with

\[ \left\| x_j \left( \frac{D_x}{(D_x)^2} \right)^\mu v_-(t, \cdot) \right\|_{H^1,\infty} \leq \|Z_j v_- (t, \cdot)\|_{H^2} + t\|v_- (t, \cdot)\|_{H^2,\infty} + \|x_j NL_{kg} (t, \cdot)\|_{L^\infty(dx)}, \]

derived by using the classical Sobolev injection. Observe that

\[ \left\| x_j NL_{kg} (t, \cdot) \right\|_{L^\infty} \lesssim \left( \left\| x_j v_- (t, \cdot) \right\|_{L^\infty} + \left\| x_j \frac{D_x}{(D_x)^2} v_- (t, \cdot) \right\|_{L^\infty} \right) \sum_{|\mu|=0}^{1} \left\| R_1^\mu U (t, \cdot) \right\|_{H^2,\infty}, \]

but also

\[ \left\| x_j NL_{kg} (t, \cdot) \right\|_{L^2} \lesssim \sum_{|\mu|=0}^{1} \left\| x_j \left( \frac{D_x}{(D_x)^2} \right)^\mu v_\pm(t, \cdot) \right\|_{L^2} \left( \|U(t, \cdot)\|_{H^2,\infty} + \|R_1 U(t, \cdot)\|_{H^2,\infty} \right). \]

Thus, if \( \varepsilon_0 > 0 \) is assumed sufficiently small to verify \( \varepsilon_0 < (2A)^{-1} \), by injecting (B.1.13b) (resp. (B.1.13a)) into (B.1.12a) (resp. in (B.1.12b)), and using a priori estimates (1.1.11), we obtain that

\[ \left( \text{resp. } \sum_{|\mu|=0}^{1} \left\| x_j \left( \frac{D_x}{(D_x)^2} \right)^\mu v_\pm(t, \cdot) \right\|_{H^1,\infty} \leq CE_3^2(t; W)^{\frac{1}{2}} + tE_3(t; W)^{\frac{1}{2}} \right) \]

\[ \leq CB \varepsilon t^{1+\frac{3}{2}}, \]

\[ \left( \text{resp. } \sum_{|\mu|=0}^{1} \left\| x_j \left( \frac{D_x}{(D_x)^2} \right)^\mu v_\pm(t, \cdot) \right\|_{H^1,\infty} \leq CE_3^2(t; W)^{\frac{1}{2}} + t\|V(t, \cdot)\|_{H^2,\infty} \leq C(A + B)\varepsilon t^{1+\frac{3}{2}} \right), \]

160
and the conclusion of the proof of (B.1.10).

Analogously, from (B.1.9a) with \( w = u_\cdot \) and \( f = NL_w \),

\[
\sum_{|\mu| = 0}^1 \left| x_j D_k \left( \frac{D_x}{D^* x} \right)^\mu u_\cdot (t, \cdot) \right|_{L^2} \lesssim \| Z_j u_\pm (t, \cdot) \|_{L^2} + t \| u_\pm (t, \cdot) \|_{L^2} + \| x_j NL_w (t, \cdot) \|_{L^2 (dx)} \\
\leq CB \varepsilon t^{1 + \frac{2}{k}},
\]
as follows (1.1.11c), (1.1.11d), (B.1.10b) and the fact that

\[
(B.1.14) \quad \| x_j NL_w (t, \cdot) \|_{L^2} \lesssim \sum_{|\mu| = 0}^1 \left| x_j \left( \frac{D_x}{D^* x} \right)^\mu v_\pm (t, \cdot) \right|_{L^\infty} \| v_\pm (t, \cdot) \|_{H^1}.
\]

\[\square\]

**Corollary B.1.5.** There exists a constant \( C > 0 \) such that, for every \( j = 1, 2, t \in [1, T] \),

\[
\begin{align*}
(B.1.15a) \qquad \| x_j NL_{kg} (t, \cdot) \|_{L^2} & \leq C(A + B)B \varepsilon t^{\frac{3 + 4}{k}}, \\
(B.1.15b) \qquad \| x_j NL_{kg} (t, \cdot) \|_{L^\infty} & \leq C(A + B)B \varepsilon t^{-\frac{1}{2} + \frac{2}{k}},
\end{align*}
\]

and

\[
\begin{align*}
(B.1.16a) \qquad \| x_j NL_w (t, \cdot) \|_{L^2} & \leq C(A + B)B \varepsilon t^{\frac{3 + 4}{k}}, \\
(B.1.16b) \qquad \| x_j NL_w (t, \cdot) \|_{L^\infty} & \leq C(A + B)B \varepsilon t^{-1 + \frac{2}{k}}.
\end{align*}
\]

**Proof.** From

\[
\| x_j NL_{kg} (t, \cdot) \|_{L^2} \lesssim \sum_{|\mu| = 0}^1 \left| x_j (D^* x)^{-1} \mu v_\pm (t, \cdot) \right|_{L^\infty} \| u_\pm (t, \cdot) \|_{H^1},
\]

and (B.1.13a), together with (B.1.14) and

\[
\| x_j NL_w (t, \cdot) \|_{L^\infty} \lesssim \sum_{|\mu| = 0}^1 \left| x_j (D^* x)^{-1} \mu v_\pm (t, \cdot) \right|_{L^\infty} \| v_\pm (t, \cdot) \|_{H^{2, \infty}},
\]

we immediately derive the estimates of the statement using (B.1.10b) and a-priori estimates. \[\square\]

**Lemma B.1.6.** There exists a positive constant \( C > 0 \) such that, for any multi-index \( I \) of length \( k \), with \( 1 \leq k \leq 2 \), any \( j = 1, 2, t \in [1, T] \),

\[
(B.1.17) \quad \sum_{|\mu| = 0}^1 \left| x_j \left( \frac{D_x}{D^* x} \right)^\mu (\Gamma^I v)_\pm (t, \cdot) \right|_{H^1} + \left| x_j D_x \left( \frac{D_x}{D^* x} \right)^\mu (\Gamma^I u)_\pm (t, \cdot) \right|_{L^2} \leq CB \varepsilon t^{1 + \frac{3 + 4}{k}}.
\]

**Proof.** We warn the reader that, throughout the proof, \( C \) will denote a positive constant that may change line after line. As \( \Gamma^I w_+ = -\Gamma^I w_- \) for any \( I \) and \( w \in \{ v, u \} \), it is enough to prove the statement for \( \Gamma^I v_\cdot, \Gamma^I u_\cdot \).

From equalities (B.1.9) together with the fact that, for any multi-index \( I \), \( (\Gamma^I v)_-, (\Gamma^I u)_- \) are solution to

\[
(B.1.18a) \quad [D_t + (D_x)](\Gamma^I v)_-(t, x) = \Gamma^I NL_{kg}
\]

161
and

\[(B.1.18b) \quad [D_t + \langle D_x \rangle] \langle \Gamma^I u \rangle_-(t, x) = \Gamma^I NL_w \]

respectively, we derive that, for any \(j, k \in \{1, 2\},\)

\[(B.1.19a) \quad \sum_{|\mu|=0}^1 \left\| x_j \left( \frac{D_x}{\langle D_x \rangle} \right)^\mu (\Gamma^I v)_\pm(t, \cdot) \right\|_{H^1} \leq \left\| Z_j (\Gamma^I v)_-(t, \cdot) \right\|_{L^2} + t \left\| (\Gamma^I v)_-(t, \cdot) \right\|_{L^2} + \left\| x_j \Gamma^I NL_{k_j}(t, \cdot) \right\|_{L^2} \]

together with

\[(B.1.19b) \quad \sum_{|\mu|=0}^1 \left\| x_j D_x \left( \frac{D_x}{\langle D_x \rangle} \right)^\mu (\Gamma^I u)_\pm(t, \cdot) \right\|_{L^2} \leq \left\| Z_j (\Gamma^I u)_-(t, \cdot) \right\|_{L^2} + t \left\| (\Gamma^I u)_-(t, \cdot) \right\|_{L^2} + \left\| x_j \Gamma^I NL_w(t, \cdot) \right\|_{L^2}. \]

The first two quantities in above right hand sides are bounded by \(CB\varepsilon t^{1+\delta_3-k/2} \) after \((1.1.11d),\) so the quantities that need to be estimated in order to prove the statement are the \(L^2\) norms of \(x_j \Gamma^I NL_{k_j}, x_j \Gamma^I NL_w,\) for \(1 \leq |I| \leq 2.\)

We first prove \((B.1.17)\) for \(|I| = 1\) and \(\Gamma^I = \Gamma,\) reminding that from \((1.1.10),\)

\[(B.1.20a) \quad \Gamma NL_{k_j} = Q_{0}^{kg}(\langle \Gamma v \rangle_\pm, D_1 u_\pm) + Q_{0}^{kg}(v_\pm, D_1 (\Gamma u)_\pm) + C_{1}^{kg}(v_\pm, Dv_\pm) \]

and

\[(B.1.20b) \quad \Gamma NL_w = Q_{0}^{w}(\langle \Gamma v \rangle_\pm, D_1 v_\pm) + Q_{0}^{w}(v_\pm, D_1 (\Gamma v)_\pm) + G_{1}^{w}(v_\pm, Dv_\pm), \]

with \(G_{1}^{kg}(v_\pm, Du_\pm) = G_{1}(v, \partial u), G_{1}^{w}(v_\pm, Dv_\pm) = G_{1}(v, \partial v),\) and \(G_{1}\) given by \((1.1.16)\).

By multiplying \(x_j\) against the Klein-Gordon component in each product of \(\Gamma NL_{k_j}\) we find that

\[(B.1.21) \quad \left\| x_j \Gamma NL_{k_j}(t, \cdot) \right\|_{L^2} \leq \sum_{|\mu|=0}^1 \left\| x_j \left( \frac{D_x}{\langle D_x \rangle} \right)^\mu (\Gamma v)_\pm(t, \cdot) \right\|_{L^2} \left( \left\| U(t, \cdot) \right\|_{H^2, \infty} + \left\| R_I U(t, \cdot) \right\|_{H^2, \infty} \right) + \sum_{|\mu|=0}^1 \left\| x_j \left( \frac{D_x}{\langle D_x \rangle} \right)^\mu v_\pm(t, \cdot) \right\|_{L^\infty} \left( \left\| (\Gamma u)_\pm(t, \cdot) \right\|_{H^1} + \left\| u_\pm(t, \cdot) \right\|_{H^1} + \left\| D_t u_\pm(t, \cdot) \right\|_{L^2} \right) \]

which injected into \((B.1.19a)\) with \(\Gamma^I = \Gamma,\) together with \((B.1.6a)\) with \(s = 0, \) \((B.1.10b),\) and a-priori estimates \((1.1.11),\) gives that

\[\sum_{|\mu|=0}^1 \left\| x_j \left( \frac{D_x}{\langle D_x \rangle} \right)^\mu (\Gamma^I v)_\pm(t, \cdot) \right\|_{H^1} \leq CB\varepsilon t^{1+\frac{\delta_3}{2}}. \]

Similarly, using the above estimate together with \((B.1.6a)\) with \(s = 0, \) \((B.1.10b)\) and a-priori estimates, we derive that

\[(B.1.22) \quad \left\| x_j \Gamma NL_w(t, \cdot) \right\|_{L^2} \leq \sum_{|\mu|=0}^1 \left\| x_j \left( \frac{D_x}{\langle D_x \rangle} \right)^\mu (\Gamma v)_\pm(t, \cdot) \right\|_{L^2} \left\| v_\pm(t, \cdot) \right\|_{H^2, \infty} \]

\[+ \sum_{|\mu|=0}^1 \left\| x_j \left( \frac{D_x}{\langle D_x \rangle} \right)^\mu v_\pm(t, \cdot) \right\|_{L^\infty} \left( \left\| (\Gamma v)_\pm(t, \cdot) \right\|_{H^1} + \left\| v_\pm(t, \cdot) \right\|_{H^1} + \left\| D_t v_\pm(t, \cdot) \right\|_{L^2} \right) \leq C(A + B)B\varepsilon \sqrt{t^{\delta_2}}. \]
Plugging the above inequality in \((B.1.19b)\) for \(\Gamma^I = \Gamma\) and using again a-priori estimates we deduce that
\[
\sum_{|\mu|=0}^1 \left\| x_j D_k \left( \frac{D_x}{D_{|x|}} \right)^\mu (\Gamma u)_-(t, \cdot) \right\|_{L^2} \leq CB\varepsilon t^{1+\frac{d_2}{2}},
\]
and conclude the proof of \((B.1.17)\) when \(|I| = 1\).

When \(|I| = 2\) we observe that, from \((1.1.17)\),
\[
\Gamma^I NL_{kg} = Q^k_{0}(v^I_\pm, D_1 u^I_\pm) + Q^k_{0}(v^I_\pm, D_1 w^I_\pm) + \sum_{(I_1, I_2) \subseteq \partial(I)} Q^k_{0}(v^I_{I_1} \pm, D_1 w^I_{I_2})
\]
\[
+ \sum_{(I_1, I_2) \subseteq \partial(I)} c_{I_1, I_2} Q^k_{0}(v^I_{I_1} \pm, D_1 w^I_{I_2}),
\]
with \(c_{I_1, I_2} \in \{-1, 0, 1\}\). Since the \(L^2\) norm of terms indexed in \(I_1, I_2\) with \(|I_1| = |I_2| = 1\) can be estimated using the Sobolev injection as follows:
\[
\left(\sum_{|\mu|=0}^1 \left\| x_j D_k \left( \frac{D_x}{D_{|x|}} \right)^\mu v^I_\pm \right\|_{L^2} \right)^2 \leq \sum_{|\mu|=0}^1 \left\| x_j D_k \left( \frac{D_x}{D_{|x|}} \right)^\mu v^I_\pm \right\|_{L^2} \left( \left\| R^I u^I_\pm \right\|_{H^{2, \infty}} + \left\| D_1 R^I u^I_\pm \right\|_{H^{1, \infty}} \right)
\]
\[
+ \sum_{|\mu|=0}^1 \left\| x_j D_k \left( \frac{D_x}{D_{|x|}} \right)^\mu u^I_\pm \right\|_{L^2} \left( \left\| R^I u^I_\pm \right\|_{H^{2, \infty}} + \left\| D_1 R^I u^I_\pm \right\|_{H^{1, \infty}} \right)
\]
\[
+ \sum_{|\mu|=0}^1 \left\| x_j D_k \left( \frac{D_x}{D_{|x|}} \right)^\mu u^I_\pm \right\|_{L^2} \left( \left\| R^I u^I_\pm \right\|_{H^{2, \infty}} + \left\| D_1 R^I u^I_\pm \right\|_{H^{1, \infty}} \right)
\]
As before, injecting the above inequality into \((B.1.19a)\), using a-priori estimates \((1.1.11)\) and the fact that \(\varepsilon_0 < (2A)^{-1}\), together with \((B.1.5a)\) with \(s = 0\), \((B.1.5b)\), \((B.1.5c)\) with \(s = 1\), \((B.1.7)\), \((B.1.10b)\), and \((B.1.14)\) with \(k = 1\), we obtain that
\[
\sum_{|\mu|=0}^1 \left\| x_j D_k \left( \frac{D_x}{D_{|x|}} \right)^\mu (\Gamma^I v)_-(t, \cdot) \right\|_{H^1} \leq CB\varepsilon t^{1+\frac{d_2}{2}}.
\]
Analogously, since
\[
\Gamma^I NL_w = Q^w_0(v^I_\pm, D_1 v^I_\pm) + Q^w_0(v^I_\pm, D_1 v^I_\pm) + \sum_{(I_1, I_2) \subseteq \partial(I)} Q^w_0(v^I_{I_1} \pm, D_1 v^I_{I_2})
\]
\[
+ \sum_{(I_1, I_2) \subseteq \partial(I)} c_{I_1, I_2} Q^w_0(v^I_{I_1} \pm, D_1 v^I_{I_2}),
\]
163
we have that
\[
\|x_j \Gamma^I NLw\|_{L^2} \lesssim \sum_{|\mu| \leq 2} \left\| x_j \left( \frac{D_x}{(D_x^2)} \right)^\mu (\Gamma^I v)_\pm (t, \cdot) \right\|_{L^2} \left( \|v_\pm(t, \cdot)\|_{H^{2, \infty}} + \|D_t v_\pm(t, \cdot)\|_{H^{1, \infty}} \right) + \sum_{|\mu| = 0} \left\| x_j \left( \frac{D_x}{(D_x^2)} \right)^\mu (\Gamma^I v)_\pm (t, \cdot) \right\|_{H^{1, \infty}} \left( \sum_{|J| \leq 2} \| (\Gamma^I v)_\pm (t, \cdot) \|_{H^1} + \sum_{|J| \leq 1} \| D_t v^J_\pm(t, \cdot) \|_{L^2} \right)
\]

so from (B.1.6a) with \( s = 0 \), (B.1.6b) with \( s = 1 \), (B.1.8), (B.1.10b), (B.1.17) with \( |I| = 1 \), (B.1.25) and a-priori estimates (1.1.11), we deduce
\[
\sum_{|\mu| = 0} \left\| x_j D_k \left( \frac{D_x}{(D_x^2)} \right)\mu (\Gamma^I u)_\pm (t, \cdot) \right\|_{L^2} \lesssim CB\varepsilon t^{1 + \frac{1}{2}},
\]
and hence conclude the proof of inequality (B.1.11) also for the case \( |I| = 2 \).

Corollary B.1.7. There exists a positive constant \( C > 0 \) such that, for any \( \Gamma \in \mathcal{Z} \), \( j = 1, 2 \), and every \( t \in [1, T] \),

\[
\begin{align*}
(B.1.26a) & \quad \| x_j \Gamma NL_{kg}(t, \cdot) \|_{L^2} \leq C(A + B)\varepsilon^{2} t^{2 + \frac{1}{\delta}}, \\
(B.1.26b) & \quad \| x_j \Gamma NLw(t, \cdot) \|_{L^2} \leq C(A + B)\varepsilon^{2} t^{2}.
\end{align*}
\]

Proof. Estimate (B.1.26a) follows straightly from (B.1.21), (B.1.5a) with \( s = 0 \), and estimates (1.1.11), (B.1.10b), and (B.1.17) with \( k = 1 \), while (B.1.26b) has already been proved in (B.1.22).

Lemma B.1.8. There exists a constant \( C > 0 \) such that, for every \( i, j = 1, 2 \), every \( t \in [1, T] \),

\[
\begin{align*}
(B.1.27a) & \quad \sum_{|\mu| = 0} \left\| x_j x_k \left( \frac{D_x}{(D_x^2)} \right)^\mu v_\pm(t, \cdot) \right\|_{L^2} \leq C B\varepsilon^{2} t^{2 + \frac{1}{\delta}}, \\
(B.1.27b) & \quad \sum_{|\mu| = 0} \left\| x_j x_k \left( \frac{D_x}{(D_x^2)} \right)^\mu v_\pm(t, \cdot) \right\|_{L^2} \leq C(A + B)\varepsilon t^{1 + \frac{1}{\delta}}.
\end{align*}
\]

Moreover, for any \( \Gamma \in \mathcal{Z} \),
\[
\sum_{|\mu| = 0} \left\| x_j x_k \left( \frac{D_x}{(D_x^2)} \right)^\mu (\Gamma v)_\pm(t, \cdot) \right\|_{L^2} \leq C B\varepsilon^{2} t^{2 + \frac{1}{\delta}}.
\]

Proof. The proof of the statement follows from the fact that, by multiplying (B.1.9b) by \( x_i \) and using that
\[
\|x_i x_j NL_{kg}(t, \cdot)\|_{L^2} \lesssim \sum_{|\mu| = 0} \left\| x_i x_j \left( \frac{D_x}{(D_x^2)} \right)^\mu v_\pm(t, \cdot) \right\|_{L^2} \left( \|u_\pm(t, \cdot)\|_{H^{2, \infty}} + \|R_1 u_\pm(t, \cdot)\|_{H^{2, \infty}} \right)
\]
together with
\[ \|x_i x_j \Omega_{\kappa \mu}^{(t)}\|_{L^\infty} \leq \sum_{|\mu|=0}^1 \left\| x_i x_j \left( \frac{D_x}{D_x^\mu} \right)^\mu \sigma_- \right\|_{L^2} \left( \|u_-^\mu(t,\cdot)\|_{H^{2,\infty}} + \|R_1 u_-^\mu(t,\cdot)\|_{H^{2,\infty}} \right), \]

we derive that
\[ \sum_{|\mu|=0}^1 \left\| x_i x_j \left( \frac{D_x}{D_x^\mu} \right)^\mu \sigma_- \right\|_{L^2} \leq \sum_{|\mu|=0}^1 \left( \|x_i^\mu (Z_j \sigma_-)\|_{L^2} + t \|x_i^\mu \sigma_-\|_{L^2} \right) + \sum_{k=0}^1 \left( \|x_i^\mu (Z_j \sigma_-)\|_{H^{1,\infty}} + t \|x_i^\mu \sigma_-\|_{H^{1,\infty}} \right) \]

and using that operator \( \langle D_x \rangle^{-1} \) is bounded from \( H^1 \) to \( L^\infty \)
\[ \sum_{|\mu|=0}^1 \left\| x_i x_j \left( \frac{D_x}{D_x^\mu} \right)^\mu \sigma_- \right\|_{L^2} \leq \sum_{|\mu|=0}^1 \left( \|x_i^\mu (Z_j \sigma_-)\|_{L^2} + t \|x_i^\mu \sigma_-\|_{L^2} \right) + \sum_{k=0}^1 \left( \|x_i^\mu (Z_j \sigma_-)\|_{H^{1,\infty}} + t \|x_i^\mu \sigma_-\|_{H^{1,\infty}} \right). \]

As \( \varepsilon_0 > 0 \) verifies that \( \varepsilon_0 < (2A)^{-1} \), inequality \( \text{(B.1.10a)} \), \( \text{(B.1.17)} \) with \( k = 1 \), and a-priori estimates \( \text{(B.1.11)} \) imply that
\[ \sum_{|\mu|=0}^1 \left\| x_i x_j \left( \frac{D_x}{D_x^\mu} \right)^\mu \sigma_- \right\|_{L^2} \leq CB\varepsilon t^{2+\frac{3}{2}}, \]

while from \( \text{(B.1.10b)} \), \( \text{(B.1.17)} \) with \( k = 1 \) and a-priori estimates,
\[ \sum_{|\mu|=0}^1 \left\| x_i x_j \left( \frac{D_x}{D_x^\mu} \right)^\mu \sigma_- \right\|_{L^2} \leq C(A + B)\varepsilon t^{1+\frac{3}{2}}. \]

As \( \sigma_+ = -\sigma_- \), that implies the first part of the statement.

Analogously, using \( \text{(B.1.9b)} \) with \( w = \langle \Gamma v \rangle_- \) and multiplying that relation by \( x_i \) we find that
\[ \text{(B.1.29)} \quad \sum_{|\mu|=0}^1 \left\| x_i x_j \left( \frac{D_x}{D_x^\mu} \right)^\mu \langle \Gamma v \rangle_- \right\|_{L^2} \]
\[ \leq \sum_{\mu=0}^1 \left( \|x_i^\mu Z_j (\Gamma v)_-\|_{L^2} + t \|x_i^\mu (\Gamma v)_-\|_{L^2} + \|x_i^\mu x_j \Omega_{\kappa \mu} \|_{L^2} \right), \]

and after \( \text{(B.1.17)} \), \( \text{(B.1.26a)} \) and a-priori estimates,
\[ \text{(B.1.30)} \quad \sum_{\mu=0}^1 \left( \|x_i^\mu Z_j (\Gamma v)_-\|_{L^2} + t \|x_i^\mu (\Gamma v)_-\|_{L^2} + \|x_j \Omega_{\kappa \mu} \|_{L^2} \right) \leq CB\varepsilon t^{2+\frac{3}{2}}. \]
By multiplying both $x_i, x_j$ against each Klein-Gordon factor in $\Gamma NL_{kg}$ (see equality (B.1.20a)) we derive that

$$
\|x_i x_j \Gamma NL_{kg}(t, \cdot)\|_{L^2} \lesssim \sum_{|\mu|=0} \left\| x_i x_j \left( \frac{D_x}{(D_x)^{\mu}} \right)^{\mu} (\Gamma v)_-(t, \cdot) \right\|_{L^2} \|R_t^\nu u_\pm(t, \cdot)\|_{H^{2, \infty}} + \sum_{|\mu|=0} \left\| x_i x_j \left( \frac{D_x}{(D_x)^{\mu}} \right)^{\mu} v_\pm(t, \cdot) \right\|_{L^\infty} \left( \|u_\pm(t, \cdot)\|_{H^1} + \|u_\mp(t, \cdot)\|_{H^1} + \|D_t u_\pm(t, \cdot)\|_{L^2} \right),
$$

so by (B.1.3a) with $s = 0$, (B.1.27b), a-priori estimates and the fact that $\epsilon_0 < (2A)^{-1}$,

$$
\|x_i x_j \Gamma NL_{kg}(t, \cdot)\|_{L^2} \leq \frac{1}{2} \|x_i x_j (\Gamma v)_-(t, \cdot)\|_{L^2} + C(A + B)B \epsilon t^{1+\delta_2},
$$

which injected in (B.1.29), together with (B.1.30), implies (B.1.28).

**Corollary B.1.9.** There exists a constant $C > 0$ such that, for every $i, j = 1, 2$, every $t \in [1, T], \quad (B.1.31)$

$$
\|x_i x_j NL_{kg}(t, \cdot)\|_{L^2} + \|x_i x_j NL_w(t, \cdot)\|_{L^2} \leq C(A + B)B \epsilon t^{1+\delta_2}.\quad (B.1.31)
$$

**Proof.** Straightforward after (1.1.12c), (B.1.27b) and the following inequality

$$
\|x_i x_j NL_{kg}(t, \cdot)\|_{L^2} + \|x_i x_j NL_w(t, \cdot)\|_{L^2} \lesssim \sum_{|\mu|=0} \left\| x_i x_j \left( \frac{D_x}{(D_x)^{\mu}} \right)^{\mu} v_\pm(t, \cdot) \right\|_{L^\infty} \left( \|u_\pm(t, \cdot)\|_{H^1} + \|v_\mp(t, \cdot)\|_{H^1} \right).
$$

**Lemma B.1.10.** There exists a constant $C > 0$ such that, for any $i, j, k = 1, 2$, every $t \in [1, T], \quad (B.1.32)$

$$
\sum_{|\mu|=0} \left\| x_i x_j x_k \left( \frac{D_x}{(D_x)^{\mu}} \right)^{\mu} v_\pm(t, \cdot) \right\|_{L^2} \leq CB \epsilon t^{3+\frac{\delta_2}{2}}.
$$

**Proof.** Using equality (B.1.9b) we derive that

$$
\|x_i x_j x_k v_-(t, \cdot)\|_{L^2} \lesssim \sum_{|\mu_1, \mu_2|=0} \left( \|x_i^{\mu_1} x_j^{\mu_2} (Z_k v)_-(t, \cdot)\|_{L^2} + t \|x_i^{\mu_1} x_j^{\mu_2} v_-(t, \cdot)\|_{L^2} \right) + \sum_{|\mu_1, \mu_2, |\mu|=0} \left\| x_i^{\mu_1} x_j^{\mu_2} x_k \left( \frac{D_x}{(D_x)^{\mu}} \right)^{\mu} v_\pm(t, \cdot) \right\|_{L^2} \left( \|u_\mp(t, \cdot)\|_{H^{2, \infty}} + \|R_1 u_\pm(t, \cdot)\|_{H^{2, \infty}} \right),
$$

so the result of the statement is a straight consequence of (B.1.10a), (B.1.17), (B.1.27a), (B.1.28), a-priori estimates, and the fact that $\epsilon_0$ is smaller than $(2A)^{-1}$. \hfill \square
B.2 First range of estimates

The aim of this section is to show that, if a-priori estimates (1.1.11) are satisfied for every \( t \in [1, T] \), for some fixed \( T > 1 \), then in the same interval the semi-classical Sobolev norms of the semi-classical functions \( \tilde{u}, \tilde{v} \) introduced in (3.2.2) grow in time at a moderate rate \( t^\beta \), for some small \( \beta > 0 \). More precisely, in Lemma B.2.1 we prove that this is the case for the \( H^s_h(\mathbb{R}^2) \) norm of \( \tilde{u}, \tilde{u}^{\Sigma_j, k} \) (see definition (3.2.41)) for any \( s \leq n - 15 \), and for the \( L^2(\mathbb{R}^2) \) norm of those functions when operators \( \Gamma_0 \) and \( M \), introduced in (3.2.40) and (3.1.15) respectively, are acting on them and frequencies are less or equal than \( h^{-\sigma} \), for some small \( \sigma > 0 \). Lemma B.2.14 shows that this moderate growth is also enjoyed by the \( H^s_h(\mathbb{R}^2) \) norm of \( \tilde{v}, \tilde{v}^{\Sigma_j, k} \), again for \( s \leq n = 15 \), and by the \( L^2(\mathbb{R}^2) \) norm of \( \mathcal{L}_v \) (see (1.2.68)) when restricted to frequencies \( |\xi| \lesssim h^{-\sigma} \). The proof of this latter lemma will require some intermediate results, among which lemma B.2.8 that provides us with a first non-sharp estimate of the \( L^\infty(\mathbb{R}^2) \) norm of Klein-Gordon functions \( v_\pm \) when one Kleinman vector field is acting on them (and again frequencies are localized for \( |\xi| \lesssim t^\sigma \)). This estimate will successively improved to the sharpest one (B.4.50) in Lemma B.4.14 of section B.4.

As said at the beginning of this chapter, we prove the below results under the hypothesis that a-priori estimates (1.1.11) are satisfied in some fixed \([1, T]\), with \( \varepsilon_0 < (2A + B)^{-1} \). We remind here that, if \( \chi \in C^\infty_C(\mathbb{R}^2) \) and \( \sigma > 0 \), \( \chi(t^{-\sigma} D_x) \) is a bounded operator from \( H^s \) to \( L^2 \) with norm \( O(t^{s\sigma}) \), and on \( L^\infty \) uniformly in time.

**Lemma B.2.1.** Let \( \tilde{u}, \tilde{u}^{\Sigma_j, k} \) be defined, respectively, in (3.2.2) and (3.2.41), and \( s \leq n - 15 \). There exists a constant \( C > 0 \) such that, for any \( \theta_0, \chi \in C^\infty_C(\mathbb{R}^2) \) and every \( t \in [1, T] \),

\[
\| \tilde{u}(t, \cdot) \|_{H^s_h} + \| \tilde{u}^{\Sigma_j, k}(t, \cdot) \|_{H^s_h} \leq C B \varepsilon t^{\frac{\beta}{2} + \kappa},
\]

\[
\| \Omega_h \tilde{u}^{\Sigma_j, k}(t, \cdot) \|_{L^2} \leq C B \varepsilon t^{\frac{\beta}{2} + \kappa},
\]

\[
\sum_{|\mu|=1} \left( \| \Omega_h \tilde{u}^{\Sigma_j, k}(t, \cdot) \|_{L^2} + \| \mathcal{M}_h \tilde{u}^{\Sigma_j, k}(t, \cdot) \|_{L^2} \right) \leq C(A + B) \varepsilon t^{\frac{\beta}{2} + \kappa},
\]

\[
\sum_{|\mu|=1} \| \theta_0(x) \Omega_h \mathcal{M} \tilde{u}^{\Sigma_j, k}(t, \cdot) \|_{L^2} \leq C B \varepsilon t^{\frac{\beta}{2} + \kappa},
\]

with \( \kappa = \sigma \rho \) if \( \rho \geq 0 \), 0 otherwise.

**Proof.** We warn the reader that, throughout the proof, \( C \) and \( \beta \) will denote positive constants that may change line after line, with \( \beta \to 0 \) as \( \sigma \to 0 \). We will also use the following concise notation

\[
\phi^j_k(\xi) := \Sigma(\xi)(1 - \chi_0)(h^{-1} \xi)\varphi(2^{-k} \xi)\chi_0(h^\sigma \xi),
\]

reminding that

\[
\| \Omega_h \tilde{u}^{\Sigma_j, k}(t, \cdot) \|_{L^2} \leq h^{-\beta} \| \Omega_h \tilde{u}(t, \cdot) \|_{L^2},
\]

\[
\| \mathcal{M} \tilde{u}^{\Sigma_j, k}(t, \cdot) \|_{L^2} \leq h^{-\beta} \sum_{|\mu|=1} \| \Omega_h \tilde{u}(t, \cdot) \|_{L^2},
\]

\[
|\tilde{u}(t, \cdot) \|_{L^2} \leq \| \tilde{u}(t, \cdot) \|_{L^2},
\]

Inequality (B.2.1a) is straightforward after (3.2.2), definitions (3.2.2) and (3.1.15), inequality (3.1.20a), and a-priori estimate (1.1.11b). By commutating \( \Omega_h \) with \( \mathcal{M} \) (the commutator with \( \Omega_h \) being zero if \( \varphi, \chi_0 \) are supposed to be radial) and using (3.2.2) we observe that there is some \( \chi \in C^\infty_C(\mathbb{R}^2) \) such that

\[
\| \Omega_h \tilde{u}^{\Sigma_j, k}(t, \cdot) \|_{L^2} \lesssim h^{-\beta} \| \mathcal{M} \tilde{u}^{\Sigma_j, k}(t, \cdot) \|_{L^2},
\]

\[
\| \mathcal{M} \tilde{u}^{\Sigma_j, k}(t, \cdot) \|_{L^2} \lesssim h^{-\beta} \sum_{|\mu|=1} \| \tilde{u}(t, \cdot) \|_{L^2},
\]
\[ \|\theta_0(x)\Omega_h\mathcal{M}_2^{\alpha_k}(t,\cdot)\|_{L^2} \lesssim \|\theta_0(x)\mathcal{O}_h^w(h^2(\xi))\Omega_h\mathcal{M}_2^{\alpha_k}(t,\cdot)\|_{L^2} + h^{-\gamma} \sum_{\mu=0}^1 \|\mathcal{O}_h^w(\chi(h^\sigma\xi))\Omega_h^w(\mu(t,\cdot))\|_{L^2}. \]

Therefore, as \( h = t^{-1} \), in order to prove (B.2.1b)-(B.2.1d) it is enough to show that, for any \( \chi \in C_0^\infty(\mathbb{R}^2) \),

(B.2.3a) \[ \|\mathcal{O}_h^w(\chi(h^\sigma\xi))\Omega_h^w(t,\cdot)\|_{L^2} \leq C B \varepsilon \|\tilde{\xi}\|_{t^2}, \]

(B.2.3b) \[ \|\mathcal{O}_h^w(\chi(h^\sigma\xi))\mathcal{M}_2^{\alpha_k}(t,\cdot)\|_{L^2} \leq C(A + B) \varepsilon \|\tilde{\xi}\|_{t^2}, \]

(B.2.3c) \[ \|\theta_0(x)\mathcal{O}_h^w(\phi^w_\chi(\xi))\Omega_h^w(t,\cdot)\|_{L^2} \leq C B \varepsilon \|\tilde{\xi}\|_{t^2}. \]

Estimate (B.2.3a) follows from definitions (3.2.24) and (3.1.15), inequality (A.3.1a) with \( u = v = v_\pm \), and a-priori estimates (1.1.14), as

\[ \|\mathcal{O}_h^w(\chi(h^\sigma\xi))\Omega_h^w(t,\cdot)\|_{L^2} \lesssim \|\Omega u(\cdot,\cdot)\|_{L^2} + \|\chi(t^{-\sigma}D_x)\Omega(\mu^{\infty} - u_-(\cdot,\cdot))\|_{L^2} \]

\[ \lesssim \|\Omega U(t,\cdot)\|_{L^2} + \|V(t,\cdot)\|_{L^2} + \|\Omega V(t,\cdot)\|_{L^2} \|V(t,\cdot)\|_{H^{\sigma,\infty}} \]

\[ \lesssim (1 + A \varepsilon t^{-1-\beta}) E_3^2(t,\|W\|_{t^2}) \leq C B \varepsilon \|\tilde{\xi}\|_{t^2}. \]

From equality (3.2.9a) and definition (3.1.15) of \( u^{\infty} \) we deduce that

(B.2.4) \[ \|\mathcal{O}_h^w(\chi(h^\sigma\xi))\mathcal{M}_2^{\alpha_k}(t,\cdot)\|_{L^2} \lesssim \|Z_n U(t,\cdot)\|_{L^2} + \|\chi(t^{-\sigma}D_x)Z_n(\mu^{\infty} - u_-(\cdot,\cdot))\|_{L^2} \]

\[ + \|\mathcal{M}_2^{\alpha_k}(x,\cdot)\|_{L^2} + \|\mathcal{O}_h^w(\chi(h^\sigma\xi))\|_{L^2} \|\mu^{\infty}(x,\cdot)\|_{H^{\sigma,\infty}} \]

\[ \lesssim t^3 \|D_t V(t,\cdot)\|_{L^2} + \|V(t,\cdot)\|_{H^{\sigma,\infty}} + \|\mu^{\infty}(x,\cdot)\|_{H^{\sigma,\infty}} \lesssim CB \varepsilon \|\tilde{\xi}\|_{t^2} \]

Let us observe that from (3.1.17), (3.1.18) we have that

(B.2.5) \[ \|\mathcal{O}_h^{w_0}(\chi(h^\sigma\xi))\mathcal{M}_2^{\alpha_k}(t,\cdot)\|_{L^2} \lesssim \|Z_n U(t,\cdot)\|_{L^2} + \|\chi(t^{-\sigma}D_x)Z_n(\mu^{\infty} - u_-(\cdot,\cdot))\|_{L^2} \]

\[ + \|\mathcal{M}_2^{\alpha_k}(x,\cdot)\|_{L^2} + \|\mathcal{O}_h^{w_0}(\chi(h^\sigma\xi))\|_{L^2} \|\mu^{\infty}(x,\cdot)\|_{H^{\sigma,\infty}} \lesssim CB \varepsilon \|\tilde{\xi}\|_{t^2} \]

where \( \tilde{V}(t,\cdot) := tv_-(t,\cdot) \) is such that, for every \( s, \rho \geq 0 \),

\[ \|\tilde{V}(t,\cdot)\|_{H^s_{-\rho}} = \|v_-(t,\cdot)\|_{H^s_{-\rho}}, \quad \|\tilde{V}(t,\cdot)\|_{H^\infty_{-\rho}} = t\|v_-(t,\cdot)\|_{H^\infty_{-\rho}}. \]

Moreover, by (3.2.18) with \( w = v_\pm \) and \( f = NL_{k_1} \),

\[ \|L_j \tilde{V}(t,\cdot)\|_{H^2_{-\rho}} \lesssim \|Z_j v_-(t,\cdot)\|_{L^2} + \|v_-(t,\cdot)\|_{L^2} \]

(3.2.7) \[ + \left( \|x_j v_\pm(t,\cdot)\|_{L^\infty} + \|x_j D_x(t,\cdot)\|_{L^\infty} \right) \|U(t,\cdot)\|_{H^1}. \]

Using (B.2.6) along with the definition of \( L_j \) in (B.2.68), we derive that

(B.2.8) \[ t(x)x_j[q_w + c_w](t,tx) = \frac{1}{2} \left[ \tilde{V} \mathcal{O}_h^w(\frac{\xi}{\xi}) \tilde{V} \cdot \mathcal{O}_h^w(\frac{\xi}{\xi}) (hL_j \tilde{V}) + \tilde{V} \mathcal{O}_h^w(\frac{\xi}{\xi}) \tilde{V} \cdot \mathcal{O}_h^w(\frac{\xi}{\xi}) \tilde{V} \right] \]

\[ - \mathcal{O}_h^w(\frac{\xi}{\xi}) \tilde{V} \cdot [x_j, \mathcal{O}_h^w(\frac{\xi}{\xi})] \tilde{V} \left( t, x, \right) \]
so after estimates (1.1.11) and (B.1.10b)

$$(B.2.9) \quad \|t(tx_j)[q_w + c_w](t, t, \cdot)\|_{L^2(dx)} \lesssim \left[\|\tilde{V}(t, \cdot)\|_{H^k_t} + h\|\mathcal{L}_j \tilde{V}(t, \cdot)\|_{H^k_t}\right] \|\tilde{V}(t, \cdot)\|_{H^1_t} \lesssim CA(A + B)\varepsilon^2 t^\frac{3}{2}.$$

Moreover, from (B.1.10), the fact that $x_j e^{ix \xi} = D_{\xi_j} e^{ix \xi}$, integration by parts, and inequalities (A.26a) with $\rho = 2$ (after the first part of lemma (A.8), (A.36a), we get that

$$(B.2.10) \quad \|\chi(t^{-\sigma} D_x)(x_n)^{\nu NF}(t, \cdot)\|_{L^2} \lesssim t^\beta \|\chi x_n v^-(t, \cdot)\|_{L^\infty} \|NL_{kj}(t, \cdot)\|_{H^{15}} + \|V(t, \cdot)\|_{H^{15}} \|x_n NL_{kj}(t, \cdot)\|_{L^\infty} + \|NL_{kj}(t, \cdot)\|_{L^2} (\|V(t, \cdot)\|_{H^{13}} + \|V(t, \cdot)\|_{H^{13, \infty}}) + \|V(t, \cdot)\|_{H^{13}} \|NL_{kj}(t, \cdot)\|_{L^\infty}) \lesssim C B \varepsilon t^{\frac{3}{2}},$$

where last estimate follows from (B.1.10b), (B.1.15a), inequalities (B.1.4a), (B.1.4b), (B.1.4c), (B.2.10), (B.2.11) and a-priori estimates (1.1.11). Consequently, from (B.2.4), (B.2.5), (B.2.9), (B.2.11) with $k = 2$, we obtain (B.2.35).

Let us now apply $\theta_0(\frac{x}{t}) \phi_k^j(D_x) \Omega$ to both sides of (B.2.9a) to deduce that

$$(B.2.11) \quad \left\|\theta_0(x) \mathcal{O}_n^\nu(\phi_k^j(\xi))\Omega u M_n \tilde{u}(t, \cdot)\right\|_{L^2} \lesssim \|\Omega Z_n U(t, \cdot)\|_{L^2}$$

$$+ \left\|\theta_0(\frac{x}{t}) \phi_k^j(D_x) \mathcal{O}_n Z_n (u^{NF} - u_\nu)(t, \cdot)\right\|_{L^2} + \left\|\mathcal{O}_n^\nu(\chi_0(h^\sigma\xi))\Omega u \tilde{u}(t, \cdot)\right\|_{L^2}$$

$$+ \left\|\theta_0(x) \mathcal{O}_n^\nu(\phi_k^j(\xi))\Omega u \mathcal{O}_n \tilde{u}(t, \cdot)\right\|_{L^2} + \left\|\mathcal{O}_n^\nu(\phi_k^j(\xi))\Omega u \mathcal{O}_n \tilde{u}(t, \cdot)\right\|_{L^2}.$$ 

In order to estimate the second addend in the above right hand side we first commute $Z_n$ to $\Omega$, reminding that

$$[\Omega, Z_1] = -Z_2 \quad \text{and} \quad [\Omega, Z_2] = Z_1,$$

and use that

$${\theta_0(\frac{x}{t}) \phi_k^j(D_x)} Z_j = \left[t \theta_0(\frac{x}{t}) \phi_k^j(D_x) + \theta_0(\frac{x}{t}) \phi_k^j(D_x, x_j)\right] \partial_t + t \theta_0(\frac{x}{t}) \phi_k^j(D_x) \partial_j,$$

with $\theta_0(\frac{x}{t}) := \theta_0(z) z_j$. Observe that commutator $[\phi_k^j(D_x), x_j]$ is bounded on $L^2$ with norm $O(t)$, and that its symbol is still supported for moderate frequencies $|\xi| \lesssim t^{-\sigma}$. Therefore, for some new $\chi \in C_0^\infty(\mathbb{R}^2)$ we have that

$$\left\|\theta_0(\frac{x}{t}) \phi_k^j(D_x) \Omega Z_n (u^{NF} - u_\nu)(t, \cdot)\right\|_{L^2} \lesssim t \|\chi(t^{-\sigma} D_x) \partial_t x(u^{NF} - u_\nu)(t, \cdot)\|_{L^2}$$

$$+ t \|\chi(t^{-\sigma} D_x) \partial_t x \Omega(u^{NF} - u_\nu)(t, \cdot)\|_{L^2},$$

so using (A.26a) with $\rho = 2$ (because of first part of lemma (A.8) and (A.37a), both considered with $u = \partial_t x v_{\pm}$, $v = v_{\pm}$, and $u = v_{\pm}$, $v = \partial_t x v_{\pm}$, we obtain that the above right hand side is estimated by

$$t^{1+\beta} \left[\|\partial_t x V(t, \cdot)\|_{L^2} + \|\Omega \partial_t x V(t, \cdot)\|_{L^2}\right] \|V(t, \cdot)\|_{H^{17, \infty}} + \|\Omega V(t, \cdot)\|_{L^2} + \|V(t, \cdot)\|_{L^2} \|\partial_t x V(t, \cdot)\|_{H^{17, \infty}}$$

From (B.1.6a) and (B.1.6b) with $s = 0$, (B.1.6c) and a-priori estimates, we hence deduce that

$$(B.2.12) \quad \left\|\theta_0(\frac{x}{t}) \phi_k^j(D_x) \Omega Z_n (u^{NF} - u_\nu)(t, \cdot)\right\|_{L^2} \lesssim C B \varepsilon t^{\beta + \frac{3}{2}}.$$
As concerns, instead, the estimate of the fourth $L^2$ norm in the right hand side of \([B.2.11]\), we observe that from equality \([B.2.8]\), Leibniz rule and \([B.2.2]\)

\[
(B.2.13) \quad \left\| \theta_0(x) \text{Op}^w_h(\phi_k^j(\xi)) \Omega_h[t(tx_j)][q_w + c_w](t,tx) \right\|_{L^2} \lesssim \sum_{\mu=0}^{1} h^{-n} \| \tilde{V}(t,\cdot) \|_{H^{2,\infty}} \| \Omega^\mu_h \tilde{V}(t,\cdot) \|_{H^1} + \frac{1}{h} \| \tilde{V}(t,\cdot) \|_{H^{1,\infty}} \| \Omega^\mu_h \tilde{V}(t,\cdot) \|_{H^1} + h^{-1-\kappa} \| \tilde{V}(t,\cdot) \|_{H^1} + h^{-1-\kappa} \| \tilde{V}(t,\cdot) \|_{L^\infty} \| \Omega^\mu_h \tilde{V}(t,\cdot) \|_{H^1},
\]

with $\kappa = \sigma \rho$ if $\rho \geq 0$, 0 otherwise. Using the semi-classical Sobolev injection, \([B.2.4]\) and the fact that $\| \Omega_h \tilde{V}(t,\cdot) \|_{H^1} = \| \Omega v_-(t,\cdot) \|_{H^1}$ for any $s \geq 0$, together with \([B.1.10]\) and a-priori estimates, we see that

\[
(B.2.14) \quad h \| \Omega_h \tilde{V}(t,\cdot) \|_{L^\infty} \| \Omega_h \tilde{V}(t,\cdot) \|_{H^1} \lesssim \| \Omega \tilde{V}(t,\cdot) \|_{H^1} \| \Omega_h \tilde{V}(t,\cdot) \|_{H^1} \leq CB\varepsilon t^{\frac{3\beta_2}{2}}.
\]

Also, from \([B.2.3]\) with $w = v_-$ and $f = NL_{k_2}$

\[
\| \Omega_h \tilde{V}(t,\cdot) \|_{L^2} \lesssim \| \Omega Z_j v_-(t,\cdot) \|_{L^2} + \sum_{\mu=0}^{1} \| \Omega^\mu v_-(t,\cdot) \|_{L^2} + \| \Omega (x_j NL_{k_2} - x) \|_{L^2} \leq C(A + B)\varepsilon^2 t^{\frac{1}{2} + \frac{\beta_2}{2}},
\]

where last inequality is obtained using \([1.1.10c], [1.1.11d]\) and estimates \([B.1.15a], [B.1.26a]\). Therefore

\[
\| \tilde{V}(t,\cdot) \|_{H^{1,\infty}} \| \Omega_h \tilde{V}(t,\cdot) \|_{L^2} \leq CAB(A + B)\varepsilon^2 t^{\frac{1}{2} + \frac{\beta_2}{2}},
\]

which combined with \([B.2.13], [B.2.14]\) and a-priori estimates gives that

\[
(B.2.15) \quad \left\| \theta_0(x) \text{Op}^w_h(\phi_k^j(\xi)) \Omega_h[t(tx_j)][q_w + c_w](t,tx) \right\|_{L^2} \leq CB\varepsilon t^{\frac{3\beta_2}{2}}.
\]

We estimate the latter $L^2$ norm in \([B.2.11]\) recalling definition \([3.1.19]\) of $v_{u}^{NF}$, commutating $\Omega$ and $x_n$, and using that

\[
\theta_0(x) \text{Op}^w_h(\phi_k^j(\xi))x_n = \theta_0'(x) \text{Op}^w_h(\phi_k^j(\xi)) + \theta_0(x)[\text{Op}^w_h(\phi_k^j(\xi)), x_n],
\]

where

\[
[\text{Op}^w_h(\phi_k^j(\xi)), x_n] = -i\hbar \text{Op}^w_h(\partial_n \phi_k^j(\xi))
\]

is uniformly bounded on $L^2$. After \([3.1.22a], [3.1.22c]\) with $\theta \ll 1$ small, and a-priori estimates \([1.1.11]\) we derive that, for some $\chi \in C_0^\infty(\mathbb{R}^2)$,

\[
\left\| \theta_0(x) \text{Op}^w_h(\phi_k^j(\xi)) \Omega_h[t(tx_n)] r_{w}^{NF}(t,tx) \right\|_{L^2(dx)} \lesssim \sum_{\mu=0}^{1} t \| \chi(t^{-\sigma} D_x) \Omega^\mu r_{w}^{NF}(t,\cdot) \|_{L^2} \leq CB\varepsilon.
\]

Combining \([B.2.11], [B.2.12], [B.2.15]\) and above estimate together with \([1.1.11d], [B.2.1a], [B.2.3a]\), and assuming $3\beta_2 \leq \delta_1$, we finally obtain \([B.2.3c]\) and the conclusion of the proof. \(\square\)

In the following lemma we explain how we estimate the $L^2$ or the $L^\infty$ norm of products supported for moderate frequencies $|\xi| \lesssim t^\rho$, when we have a control on high Sobolev norms of, at least, all factors but one. This type of estimate will be frequently used in most of the results that follow.
Lemma B.2.2. Let \( n \in \mathbb{N} \), \( n \geq 2 \), and \( w_1, \ldots, w_n \) such that \( w_1 \in L^2(\mathbb{R}^2) \), \( w_2, \ldots, w_n \in L^\infty(\mathbb{R}^2) \cap H^s(\mathbb{R}^2) \), for some large positive \( s \). Let also \( \chi \in C_0^\infty(\mathbb{R}^2) \) and \( \sigma > 0 \). There exists some \( \chi_1 \in C_0^\infty(\mathbb{R}^2) \), equal to 1 on the support of \( \chi \), such that for \( L = L^2 \) or \( L = L^\infty \)

\[
\left\| \chi(t^{-\sigma}D_x)[w_1 \ldots w_n] \right\|_{L^\infty} \lesssim \left\| \chi_1(t^{-\sigma}D_x)w_1 \right\|_{L(dx)} \prod_{j=2}^{n} \left\| \chi(t^{-\sigma}D_x)w_j \right\|_{L(dx)} + t^{-N(s)} \left\| w_1 \right\|_{L^2(dx)} \sum_{j=2}^{n} \left\| w_j \right\|_{L^\infty} \left\| w_j \right\|_{H^s(dx)},
\]

with \( N(s) \) as large as we want as long as \( s > 0 \) is large.

Proof. The idea of the proof is to decompose each factor \( w_j \), for \( j = 2, \ldots, n \) into

\[
\chi(t^{-\sigma}D_x)w_j + (1 - \chi)(t^{-\sigma}D_x)w_j,
\]

and to estimate the \( L^2 \) norm of product

\[
\chi(t^{-\sigma}D_x) \left[ w_1 \prod_{k=2}^{n} \tilde{w}_k \left[ (1 - \chi)(t^{-\sigma}D_x)w_j \right] \right],
\]

where \( \tilde{w}_k \) is either \( w_k \) or \( \chi(t^{-\sigma}D_x)w_k \), with the \( L^2 \) norm of \( w_1 \) times the \( L^\infty \) norm of all remaining factors, reminding that \( \chi(t^{-\sigma}D_x) \) is uniformly bounded on \( L^\infty \) and that by Sobolev injection and (B.1.2),

\[
\left\| (1 - \chi)(t^{-\sigma}D_x)w_j \right\|_{L^\infty(dx)} \lesssim t^{-N(s)} \left\| w_j \right\|_{H^s(dx)},
\]

with \( N(s) \) as large as we want as long as \( s > 0 \) is large. The \( L^\infty \) norm of (B.2.17) is estimated in the same way, using firstly the \( L^2 - L^\infty \) continuity of operator \( \chi(t^{-\sigma}D_x) \) acting on the entire product.

The end of the statement follows from the observation that, if \( \text{supp} \chi \subset B_C(0) \) for some \( C > 0 \), then

\[
\text{supp} \tilde{w}_1 \subset \{ \xi : |\xi| \geq C_1 > nC \} \Rightarrow \chi(t^{-\sigma}D_x) \left[ w_1 \prod_{j=2}^{n} \chi(t^{-\sigma}D_x)w_j \right] \equiv 0.
\]

Remark B.2.3. Property (B.2.19) is more general, meaning that if \( \chi, \chi_j \in C_0^\infty(\mathbb{R}^2) \) with \( \text{supp} \chi \subset B_C(0) \), \( \text{supp} \chi_j \subset B_{C_j}(0) \) for some \( C, C_j > 0 \), for every \( j = 2, \ldots, n \), then

\[
\text{supp} \tilde{w}_1 \subset \{ \xi : |\xi| \geq C_1 > C + \sum_{j=2}^{n} C_j \} \Rightarrow \chi(t^{-\sigma}D_x) \left[ w_1 \prod_{j=2}^{n} \chi_j(t^{-\sigma}D_x)w_j \right] \equiv 0.
\]

We have seen at the beginning of section B.1 and already used in the previous lemma’s proof, that, if \( w \in H^s(\mathbb{R}^2) \) for some large \( s > 0 \), the \( L^2 \) norm (resp. \( L^\infty \) norm) of this function when restricted to large frequencies \( |\xi| \gtrsim t^\sigma \) decays fast in time as \( t^{-\sigma s} \) (resp. \( t^{-\sigma(s-1)} \) after the semi-classical Sobolev injection). The aim of the following lemma is to show that, even if we don’t have a control on the \( H^s(\mathbb{R}^2) \) norm of \( (\Gamma u)_\pm, (\Gamma v)_\pm \), for \( \Gamma \in \{ \Omega, Z_m, m = 1, 2 \} \) and \( s \) larger than 2, the \( L^2 \) norm (resp. \( L^\infty \) norm) of products as in (B.2.21) still have a good decay in time.
Lemma B.2.4. Let $w \in \{u, v\}$ and for any $\Gamma \in \{\Omega, Z_m, m = 1, 2\}$

$$(\Gamma w)_{\pm} = \begin{cases} (D_t \pm [D_x])(\Gamma u), & \text{if } w = u, \\ (D_t \pm [D_x])(\Gamma v), & \text{if } w = v. \end{cases}$$

Let also $n \in \mathbb{N}^*$, $w_1, \ldots, w_n$ be such that $w_1, xw_1 \in L^2(\mathbb{R}^2) \cap L^\infty(\mathbb{R}^2)$, $w_j \in L^\infty(\mathbb{R}^2)$ for $j = 2, \ldots, n$, $\chi \in C_0^\infty(\mathbb{R}^2)$, $\sigma > 0$, and $a(D_x) = D_\alpha^\sigma (D_\beta^\sigma) \gamma$ for any $\alpha, \beta, \gamma \in \mathbb{N}^2$ with $|\alpha|, |\beta|, |\gamma| \leq 1$. Then for $L = L^2$ or $L = L^\infty$ we have that

\[ \|a(D_x)(\Omega w)_{\pm} w_1 \ldots w_n\|_{L(dx)} \lesssim \left\| \chi(t^{-\sigma} D_x a(D_x)(\Omega w)_{\pm}) \prod_{j=1}^n w_j \right\|_{L(dx)} + t^{-N(s)} \|w_{\pm}(t, \cdot)\|_{H^s} \left( \sum_{|\mu|=0}^1 \|x_{\mu}^\mu w_1\|_{L(dx)} \right) \prod_{j=2}^n \|w_j\|_{L^\infty(dx)} \]

and, for $m = 1, 2$,

\[ \|a(D_x)(Z_m w)_{\pm} w_1 \ldots w_n\|_{L(dx)} \lesssim \left\| \chi(t^{-\sigma} D_x a(D_x)(Z_m w)_{\pm}) \prod_{j=1}^n w_j \right\|_{L(dx)} + t^{-N(s)} \|w_{\pm}(t, \cdot)\|_{H^s} \left( \sum_{|\mu|=0}^1 \|x_{\mu}^\mu w_1\|_{L(dx)} + t \|w_1\|_{L(dx)} \right) \prod_{j=2}^n \|w_j\|_{L^\infty(dx)} \]

with $N(s)$ as large as we want as long as $s > 0$ is large.

Proof. Let us remind definition (1.1) of Klainerman vector fields $\Omega, Z_m$, for $m = 1, 2$, and decompose factor $a(D_x)(\Gamma w)_{\pm}$ in frequencies by means of operator $\chi(t^{-\sigma} D_x)$. When dealing with product

\[ [(1 - \chi)(t^{-\sigma} D_x) a(D_x)(\Gamma w)_{\pm}] w_1 \ldots w_n \]

the idea is to discharge on $w_1$ factors $x$ and/or $t$ defining $\Gamma$, after a previous commutation between $D_t \pm [D_x]$ if $w = u$ (resp. $D_t \pm [D_x]$ if $w = v$) and $\Gamma$, and between $(1 - \chi)(t^{-\sigma} D_x) a(D_x)$ and the mentioned factors $x, t$. For instance, if $w = u$ and $\Gamma = Z_1$

\[ \left[(1 - \chi)(t^{-\sigma} D_x) a(D_x)(Z_1 u)_{\pm}\right] w_1 \left[(1 - \chi)(t^{-\sigma} D_x) a(D_x)\right] w_1 \left[(1 - \chi)(t^{-\sigma} D_x) a(D_x)\right] \]

\[ \left[(1 - \chi)(t^{-\sigma} D_x) a(D_x)(\partial_t u)_{\pm}\right] w_1 \left[(1 - \chi)(t^{-\sigma} D_x) a(D_x)\right] \left[(1 - \chi)(t^{-\sigma} D_x) a(D_x)\right] \]

from which we deduce, using the Sobolev injection together with (B.1.2), that

\[ \|[(1 - \chi)(t^{-\sigma} D_x) a(D_x)(Z_1 u)_{\pm}] w_1\|_L \lesssim t^{-N(s)} \|u_{\pm}(t, \cdot)\|_{H^s} + \|D_t u(t, \cdot)\|_{H^s} \left( \sum_{|\mu|=0}^1 \|x_{\mu}^\mu w_1\|_L + t \|w_1\|_L \right), \]

with $N(s)$ large as long as $s$ is large. Analogous inequalities can be obtained for $\Gamma = \Omega, Z_2$ and/or $w = v$. This concludes the proof of the statement since the $L$ norm of (B.3.21) is bounded by the $L$ norm of $[(1 - \chi)(t^{-\sigma} D_x) a(D_x)(Z_1 u)_{\pm}] w_1$ times the $L^\infty$ norm of the remaining factors. □
Corollary B.2.5. If the hypothesis of lemma B.2.4 are satisfied and in addition \( w_1, \ldots, w_n \in H^s(\mathbb{R}^2) \), we have that

\[
\|a(D_x)(\Omega w)\pm w_1 \cdots w_n\|_L \lesssim \left\| \chi(t^{-s}D_x)a(D_x)(\Omega w)\pm \prod_{j=1}^{n} \chi(t^{-s}D_x)w_j \right\|_L
\]

(B.2.23a)

\[
+ t^{-N(s)}\|w_\pm(t, \cdot)\|_{H^s} + \|D_tw_\pm(t, \cdot)\|_{H^s} \left( \sum_{|\mu|=0}^{1} \|x_\mu w_1\|_L + t\|w_1\|_L \right) \prod_{j=2}^{n} \|w_j\|_{L^\infty}
\]

\[
+ t^{-N(s)}\|\Omega w\pm(t, \cdot)\|_{L^2} \sum_{j=1 \neq j}^{n} \prod_{k\neq j} \|w_k\|_{L^\infty} \|w_j\|_{H^s},
\]

with \( N(s) \) as large as we want as long as \( s > 0 \) is large. Moreover, there exists \( \chi_1 \in C_0^\infty(\mathbb{R}^2) \) such that, for any fixed \( j_0 \in \{1, \ldots, n\} \),

\[
\| \chi(t^{-s}D_x)[a(D_x)(\Omega w)\pm w_1 \cdots w_n] \|_L \lesssim \left\| \chi(t^{-s}D_x)a(D_x)(\Omega w)\pm \chi_1(t^{-s}D_x)w_{j_0} \prod_{j=1, j\neq j_0}^{n} \chi(t^{-s}D_x)w_j \right\|_L
\]

(B.2.24a)

\[
+ t^{-N(s)}\|w_\pm(t, \cdot)\|_{H^s} \left( \sum_{|\mu|=0}^{1} \|x_\mu w_1\|_L \right) \prod_{j=2}^{n} \|w_j\|_{L^\infty}
\]

\[
+ t^{-N(s)}\|\Omega w\pm(t, \cdot)\|_{L^2} \sum_{j=1 \neq j_0}^{n} \prod_{k\neq j_0} \|w_k\|_{L^\infty} \|w_j\|_{H^s},
\]

and, for \( m = 1, 2 \),

\[
\| \chi(t^{-s}D_x)[a(D_x)(Z_m w)\pm w_1 \cdots w_n] \|_L \lesssim \left\| \chi(t^{-s}D_x)a(D_x)(Z_m w)\pm \chi_1(t^{-s}D_x)w_{j_0} \prod_{j=1, j\neq j_0}^{n} \chi(t^{-s}D_x)w_j \right\|_L
\]

(B.2.24b)

\[
+ t^{-N(s)}\|w_\pm(t, \cdot)\|_{H^s} \left( \sum_{|\mu|=0}^{1} \|x_\mu w_1\|_L + t\|w_1\|_L \right) \prod_{j=2}^{n} \|w_j\|_{L^\infty}
\]

\[
+ t^{-N(s)}\|Z_m w\pm(t, \cdot)\|_{L^2} \sum_{j=1 \neq j_0}^{n} \prod_{k\neq j_0} \|w_k\|_{L^\infty} \|w_j\|_{H^s}.
\]

173
Proof. The inequalities of the statement mainly follows from (B.2.20). In fact, by decomposing each factor $w_j$ appearing in the first norm in the right hand sides of (B.2.20) as in (B.2.16), and then using the following inequality, for $\Gamma \in \{\Omega, Z_m, m = 1, 2\}$ and $\tilde{w}_k$ either equal to $w_k$ or to $\chi(t^{-\sigma}D_x)w_k$,

$$\left\| \chi(t^{-\sigma}D_x)a(D_x)(\Gamma w)_{\pm} \prod_{k=1,\ldots,n \atop k \neq j} \tilde{w}_k \left[ (1 - \chi)(t^{-\sigma}D_x)w_j \right] \right\|_L \lesssim t^{-N(s)}\| (\Gamma w)_{\pm} (t, \cdot) \|_{L^2} \prod_{k=1,\ldots,n \atop k \neq j} \| w_k \|_{L^\infty} \| w_j \|_{H^s},$$

with $N(s)$ as large as we want as long as $s > 0$, which is obtained from (B.1.2) together with the $L^2 - L^\infty$ and $L^\infty - L^\infty$ continuity of operator $\chi(t^{-\sigma}D_x)$, we obtain (B.2.23).

On the other hand, if the product in the left hand side of (B.2.20) is localized in frequencies by means of operator $\chi(t^{-\sigma}D_x)$, so it is for the product in the first norm of the same inequalities. Inequalities (B.2.24) are then derived by bounding these $L$ norms by means lemma [B.2.2] where the role of $w_1$ is here played by $w_{j_0}$, for some fixed $j_0 \in \{1, \ldots, n\}$.

The following two lemmas are stated and proved in view of lemma [B.2.8] in which we recover a first non-sharp estimate on the $L^\infty$ norm of the Klein-Gordon component when one Klainerman vector field is acting on it and its frequencies are less or equal than $t^\sigma$, for some small $\sigma > 0$. This estimate will be successively refined in lemma [B.3.4.13].

**Lemma B.2.6.** Let $\chi \in C_0^\infty(\mathbb{R}^2)$, $\sigma > 0$ small, and $w = w(t, x)$ such that, if $\tilde{w}(t, x) := tw(t, tx)$, $\text{Op}_h^\omega(\chi(h^\sigma \xi))\mathcal{L}^\mu \tilde{w}(t, \cdot) \in L^2(\mathbb{R}^2)$ for any $|\mu| \leq 1$. Then

$$\left\| \chi(t^{-\sigma}D_x)w(t, \cdot) \right\|_{L^\infty} \lesssim t^{-1+\beta} \sum_{|\mu| = 0} 1 \left\| \text{Op}_h^\omega(\chi(h^\sigma \xi))\mathcal{L}^\mu \tilde{w}(t, \cdot) \right\|_{L^2},$$

with $\beta > 0$ small, $\beta \to 0$ as $\sigma \to 0$.

**Proof.** Since $\chi(t^{-\sigma}D_x)w(t, y) = t^{-1} \text{Op}_h^\omega(\chi(h^\sigma \xi))\tilde{w}(t, x)|_{x = \frac{y}{t}}$, the goal is to prove that

$$\left\| \text{Op}_h^\omega(\chi(h^\sigma \xi))\tilde{w}(t, \cdot) \right\|_{L^\infty} \lesssim h^{-\beta} \sum_{|\mu| = 0} 1 \left\| \text{Op}_h^\omega(\chi(h^\sigma \xi))\mathcal{L}^\mu \tilde{w}(t, \cdot) \right\|_{L^2},$$

for a small $\beta > 0$, $\beta \to 0$ as $\sigma \to 0$. So let $w^\chi := \text{Op}_h^\omega(\chi(h^\sigma \xi))\tilde{w}$ and take $\chi_1 \in C_0^\infty(\mathbb{R}^2)$ equal to 1 on the support of $\chi$, so that

$$\text{Op}_h^\omega(\chi(h^\sigma \xi))\tilde{w} = \text{Op}_h^\omega(\chi_1(h^\sigma \xi))\tilde{w}^\chi.$$

For a $\gamma \in C_0^\infty(\mathbb{R}^2)$, equal to 1 in a neighbourhood of the origin and with sufficiently small support, we consider the following decomposition

$$\text{Op}_h^\omega \left( \gamma \left( \frac{x - \sqrt{h} \xi}{\sqrt{h}} \right) \chi_1(h^\sigma \xi) \right) \tilde{w}^\chi + \text{Op}_h^\omega \left( (1 - \gamma) \left( \frac{x - \sqrt{h} \xi}{\sqrt{h}} \right) \chi_1(h^\sigma \xi) \right) \tilde{w}^\chi,$$

174
and immediately observe that, from inequality (3.2.17b),
\[
\left\| \text{Op}_h^w \left( (1 - \gamma) \left( \frac{x - p'(\xi)}{\sqrt{h}} \right) \chi_1(h^\sigma \xi) \right) \tilde{w}^x(t, \cdot) \right\|_{L^\infty} \lesssim h^{-\beta} \sum_{|\mu| = 0} \| \text{Op}_h^w (\chi_1(h^\sigma \xi)) \mathcal{L}_\mu \tilde{w}^x(t, \cdot) \|_{L^2}.
\]
After lemma [1.2.33] there exists a family of smooth cut-off functions $\theta_h(x)$ such that equality [1.2.67] holds. Then, if we also consider a new cut-off function $\chi_2$ equal to 1 on the support of $\chi_1$ and a small $\sigma_1 > \sigma$, by symbolic calculus and remark [1.2.22] we derive that for any $N \in \mathbb{N}$
\[
\text{Op}_h^w \left( \gamma \left( \frac{x - p'(\xi)}{\sqrt{h}} \right) \chi_1(h^\sigma \xi) \right) \tilde{w}^x = \theta_h(x) \text{Op}_h^w (\chi_2(h^\sigma \xi)) \text{Op}_h^w \left( \gamma \left( \frac{x - p'(\xi)}{\sqrt{h}} \right) \chi_1(h^\sigma \xi) \right) \tilde{w}^x + \text{Op}_h^w (r_\infty(x, \xi)) \tilde{w}^x + \theta_h(x) \text{Op}_h^w (r_\infty^1(x, \xi)) \tilde{w}^x
\]
with $r_\infty, r_\infty^1 \in h^N S_{\frac{3}{2}, \sigma} \left( \left( \frac{x - p'(\xi)}{\sqrt{h}} \right)^{-1} \right)$. It is enough to take $N = 1$ to have, by proposition [1.2.37] that
\[
\left\| \text{Op}_h^w (r_\infty) \tilde{w}^x(t, \cdot) \right\|_{L^\infty} + \left\| \theta_h(x) \text{Op}_h^w (r_\infty^1) \tilde{w}^x(t, \cdot) \right\|_{L^\infty} \leq h^{-\beta} \| \tilde{w}^x(t, \cdot) \|_{L^2}.
\]
As function $\phi(x) := \sqrt{1 - |x|^2}$ is well defined on the support of $\theta_h$ we are allowed to to write the following:
\[
\left\| \theta_h(x) \text{Op}_h^w (\chi_2(h^{\sigma_1} \xi)) \text{Op}_h^w \left( \gamma \left( \frac{x - p'(\xi)}{\sqrt{h}} \right) \chi_1(h^\sigma \xi) \right) \tilde{w}^x(t, \cdot) \right\|_{L^\infty} = \left\| e^{\frac{i}{\sqrt{h}} \theta_h(x)} \text{Op}_h^w (\chi_2(h^{\sigma_1} \xi)) \text{Op}_h^w \left( \gamma \left( \frac{x - p'(\xi)}{\sqrt{h}} \right) \chi_1(h^\sigma \xi) \right) \tilde{w}^x(t, \cdot) \right\|_{L^\infty} \lesssim \left\| \text{Op}_h^w (\chi_2(h^{\sigma_1} \xi)) \left[ e^{\frac{i}{\sqrt{h}} \theta_h(x)} \text{Op}_h^w \left( \gamma \left( \frac{x - p'(\xi)}{\sqrt{h}} \right) \chi_1(h^\sigma \xi) \right) \tilde{w}^x \right] \right\|_{L^\infty} + \| \text{Op}_h^w (r_\infty) \tilde{w}^x(t, \cdot) \|_{L^\infty},
\]
for a new $r_\infty \in h^N S_{\frac{3}{2}, \sigma} \left( \left( \frac{x - p'(\xi)}{\sqrt{h}} \right)^{-1} \right)$. This latter $r_\infty$ comes out from the commutation between $e^{\frac{i}{\sqrt{h}} \theta_h(x)}$ and $\text{Op}_h^w (\chi_2(h^{\sigma_1} \xi))$, whose symbol is computed using [1.2.18] until a large enough order $M$. We notice that we gain a factor $h^{O(\sigma_1 - \sigma)}$ at each order of the mentioned asymptotic development as $\sigma_1 > \sigma$. Moreover, those terms write in terms of the derivatives of $\chi_2$ and hence vanish on the support of $\chi_1$. By proposition [1.2.21] and remark [1.2.22] we then deduce that the composition of the mentioned commutator with $\text{Op}_h^w \left( \gamma \left( \frac{x - p'(\xi)}{\sqrt{h}} \right) \chi_1(h^\sigma \xi) \right)$ is an operator of symbol $r_\infty$, with $N$ as large as we want.

Using the classical Sobolev injection, symbolic calculus and lemma [3.2.16] we find that
\[
\left\| \text{Op}_h^w (\chi_2(h^{\sigma_1} \xi)) \left[ e^{\frac{i}{\sqrt{h}} \theta_h(x)} \text{Op}_h^w \left( \gamma \left( \frac{x - p'(\xi)}{\sqrt{h}} \right) \chi_1(h^\sigma \xi) \right) \tilde{w}^x \right] \right\|_{L^\infty} \lesssim | \log h | \left\| \tilde{w}^x(t, \cdot) \right\|_{L^2} + \sum_{j = 1}^{2} \left\| D_j \left[ e^{\frac{i}{\sqrt{h}} \theta_h(x)} \text{Op}_h^w \left( \gamma \left( \frac{x - p'(\xi)}{\sqrt{h}} \right) \chi_1(h^\sigma \xi) \right) \tilde{w}^x \right] \right\|_{L^2} \lesssim | \log h | \left\| \tilde{w}^x(t, \cdot) \right\|_{L^2} + \sum_{j = 1}^{2} h^{-1} \left\| \text{Op}_h^w (\left( \xi_j + D_j \phi(x) \right) \theta_h(x)) \text{Op}_h^w \left( \gamma \left( \frac{x - p'(\xi)}{\sqrt{h}} \right) \chi_1(h^\sigma \xi) \right) \tilde{w}^x \right\|_{L^2} \lesssim | \log h | \left\| \tilde{w}^x(t, \cdot) \right\|_{L^2} + h^{-\beta} \sum_{|\mu| = 0} \| \text{Op}_h^w (\chi_1(h^\sigma \xi)) \mathcal{L}_\mu \tilde{w}^x(t, \cdot) \|_{L^2}.
\]
Finally, commutating $\mathcal{L}$ with $\text{Op}_h^w (\chi(h^\sigma \xi))$ defining $\tilde{w}^x$, and reminding that $\chi_1 \equiv 1$ on the support of $\chi$, we obtain
\[
\left\| \text{Op}_h^w (\chi(h^\sigma \xi)) \tilde{w}^x(t, \cdot) \right\|_{L^\infty} \lesssim h^{-\beta} \sum_{|\mu| = 0} \| \text{Op}_h^w (\chi(h^\sigma \xi)) \mathcal{L}_\mu \tilde{w}^x(t, \cdot) \|_{L^2},
\]
175
for every $t \in [1, T]$, and hence (B.2.26).

**Lemma B.2.7.** Let $I$ be a multi-index of length $j$, with $j = 1, 2$, and

\[ v^{I,NF}(t, x) := (\Gamma^I v)(t, x) - \frac{i}{4(2\pi)^2} \sum_{j_1,j_2 \in \{+, -\}} \int e^{ix \cdot \xi} B_{j_1,j_2}^1(\xi) (\xi - \eta) \tilde{v}_{j_1}^I(\eta) \tilde{a}_{j_2}(\eta) d\xi d\eta, \]

with $B_{j_1,j_2}^1$ given by (2.2.42) with $j_3 = +$ and $k = 1$. Then there exists a constant $C > 0$ such that, for any $\chi \in C_0^\infty(\mathbb{R}^2), \sigma > 0$ small, and every $t \in [1, T]$,

\[ \| \chi(t^{-\sigma} D_x) \left( v^{I,NF} - (\Gamma^I v)_- \right)(t, \cdot) \|_{L^\infty} \leq \frac{1}{2} \| \chi(t^{-\sigma} D_x)(\Gamma^I v)_-(t, \cdot) \|_{L^\infty} + C B \varepsilon t^{-1}. \]

Moreover, for every $m = 1, 2, t \in [1, T]$,

\[ \| \chi(t^{-\sigma} D_x) Z_m \left( v^{I,NF} - (\Gamma^I v)_- \right)(t, \cdot) \|_{L^2} \leq C(A + B) B^2 \varepsilon^{2\sigma + \frac{j_3 - j_2}{2}}. \]

**Proof.** We first notice that, after definition (B.2.27) and inequalities (A.15), (B.110), we have the following explicit expression:

\[ v^{I,NF} - (\Gamma^I v)_- = -\frac{i}{2} \left[ (D_1 \Gamma^I v)(D_1 u) - (D_1 \Gamma^I v)(D_1 u) + D_1[(\Gamma^I v)(D_1 u) - (D_x)(\Gamma^I v)(D_1 u)] \right]. \]

From the above equality together with lemma (B.2.2) with $L = L^\infty$ and $w_1 = (\Gamma^I v)_\pm$, and (B.110), (B.110), we deduce that there exists some $\chi_1 \in C_0^\infty(\mathbb{R}^2), \text{equal to 1 on the support of } \chi$, and $s > 0$ sufficiently large such that

\[ \| \chi(t^{-\sigma} D_x)(v^{I,NF} - v_-^I(t, \cdot)) \|_{L^\infty} \leq t^\sigma \sum_{\mu = 0}^1 \| \chi_1(t^{-\sigma} D_x)(\Gamma^I v)_\pm(t, \cdot) \|_{L^\infty} t^{-2} \| (\Gamma^I v)_\pm(t, \cdot) \|_{L^2} \| u_\pm(t, \cdot) \|_{H^s} \leq t^\sigma \sum_{\mu = 0}^1 \| \chi_1(t^{-\sigma} D_x)(\Gamma^I v)_\pm(t, \cdot) \|_{L^\infty} + B^2 \varepsilon^2 t^{-3/2}, \]

where the latter inequality follows from after a-priori energy estimates (1.111c), (1.111d). Our aim is to truncate factor $(\Gamma^I v)_\pm$ in the above right hand side rather with the same operator $\chi(t^{-\sigma} D_x)$ appearing on the left hand side. We hence proceed by picking some $\kappa \geq 1$ and decomposing $(t^{-\sigma} D_x) R_1^\mu u_\pm$ as

\[ \chi(t^{-\sigma} D_x) R_1^\mu u_\pm = \chi(t^\kappa D_x) R_1^\mu u_\pm + (1 - \chi)(t^\kappa D_x) \chi(t^{-\sigma} D_x) R_1^\mu u_\pm, \]

noticing that, as $\chi(t^\kappa \xi)$ is supported for very small frequencies $|\xi| \lesssim t^{-\kappa}$, by Sobolev injection we have that

\[ \| \chi(t^\kappa D_x) R_1^\mu u_\pm(t, \cdot) \|_{L^\infty} \lesssim t^{-\kappa} \| u_\pm(t, \cdot) \|_{L^2}. \]

Consequently, using the $L^2 - L^\infty$ continuity of $\chi_1(t^{-\sigma} D_x)$ along with a-priori estimates (1.111c), (1.111d), we have that for any $\mu = 0, 1$

\[ \| \chi_1(t^{-\sigma} D_x)(\Gamma^I v)_\pm(t, \cdot) \|_{L^\infty} \leq t^{\sigma - \kappa} \| (\Gamma^I v)_\pm(t, \cdot) \|_{L^2} \| u_\pm(t, \cdot) \|_{L^2} \leq C B \varepsilon t^{-\kappa + \sigma - \frac{j_3 - j_2}{2}}. \]
Choosing $\kappa = 1 + \sigma + \frac{d+\delta}{2}$ we deduce from (B.2.32) and the above inequality that

\[(B.2.33) \quad \| [\chi_1(t^{\sigma}D_x)(\Gamma^I v)_{\pm}(t, \cdot)] \chi(t^{\sigma}D_x) \mathbb{R}_1^\alpha u_{\pm}(t, \cdot) \|_{L^\infty} \leq \| [\chi_1(t^{\sigma}D_x)(\Gamma^I v)_{\pm}(t, \cdot)] (1 - \chi)(t^{\sigma}D_x) \chi(t^{\sigma}D_x) \mathbb{R}_1^\alpha u_{\pm}(t, \cdot) \|_{L^\infty} + C B \varepsilon t^{-1}.
\]

We then decompose $(\Gamma^I v)_{\pm}$ in frequencies using the wished operator $\chi(t^{\sigma}D_x)$. In order to estimate the $L^\infty$ norm of

\[\| [1 - \chi](t^{\sigma}D_x) \chi_1(t^{\sigma}D_x)(\Gamma^I v)_{\pm}(t, \cdot)] (1 - \chi)(t^{\sigma}D_x) \chi(t^{\sigma}D_x) \mathbb{R}_1^\alpha u_{\pm}(t, \cdot) \|_{L^\infty} \leq t^{-N(s)} \left( \| v_{\pm}(t, \cdot) \|_{H^s} + \| D_t v_{\pm}(t, \cdot) \|_{H^s} + \| D_t^2 v_{\pm}(t, \cdot) \|_{H^s} \right) \times \sum_{1 \leq |\alpha| + |\sigma| \leq 2 \atop |\mu| = 0, 1} \| x^\alpha \sigma^\alpha (1 - \chi)(t^{\sigma}D_x) \chi(t^{\sigma}D_x) \mathbb{R}_1^\mu u_{\pm} \|_{L^\infty},\]

Using system (2.1.2) with $|I| = 0$, (B.1.4c) with $s = 1$, (B.1.6a) and a-priori estimates, it is straightforward to check that

\[(B.2.35) \quad \| v_{\pm}(t, \cdot) \|_{H^s} + \| D_t v_{\pm}(t, \cdot) \|_{H^s} + \| D_t^2 v_{\pm}(t, \cdot) \|_{H^s} \leq C B \varepsilon t^{\frac{d}{2}}.
\]

Also, we have that

\[(B.2.36) \quad \| t^\alpha (1 - \chi)(t^{\sigma}D_x) \chi(t^{\sigma}D_x) \mathbb{R}_1^\mu u_{\pm} \|_{L^\infty} \leq t^{\alpha + \sigma} \| u_{\pm}(t, \cdot) \|_{L^2} \leq C B \varepsilon t^{\alpha + \sigma + \frac{d}{2}},\]

and for $|\alpha| \in \{1, 2\}$ we have that

\[(B.2.37) \quad \| x^\alpha (1 - \chi)(t^{\sigma}D_x) \chi(t^{\sigma}D_x) \mathbb{R}_1^\mu u_{\pm} \|_{L^\infty} \leq C B \varepsilon t^{|\alpha| + |\alpha| + \frac{d}{2}}.
\]

In fact, when $|\alpha| = 1$ this can be proved by commutating $x^\alpha$ with $(1 - \chi)(t^{\sigma}D_x)\chi(t^{\sigma}D_x)$, using that

\[\{x_n, (1 - \chi)(t^{\sigma}D_x)\chi(t^{\sigma}D_x)\} = -it^\alpha (\partial_n \chi)(t^{\sigma}D_x) + it^{-\sigma}(\partial_n \chi)(t^{\sigma}D_x), \quad n = 1, 2,\]

is bounded from $L^2$ to $L^\infty$ uniformly in $t$, and together with estimates (1.1.11d), (B.1.16a), and the following inequality

\[\| (1 - \chi)(t^{\sigma}D_x) \chi(t^{\sigma}D_x) [x^\alpha \mathbb{R}_1^\mu u_{\pm}](t, \cdot) \|_{L^\infty} \leq \sum_{|\mu| = 1} \| Z^\mu u_{\pm}(t, \cdot) \|_{L^2} + t \| u_{\pm}(t, \cdot) \|_{H^1} + \| x \text{NL}_w(t, \cdot) \|_{L^2},\]

which is obtained by writing

\[
(1 - \chi)(t^{\sigma}D_x) \chi(t^{\sigma}D_x)x_n \mathbb{R}_1^\mu \\
= t^{\kappa} \chi_1(t^{\sigma}D_x) \chi(t^{\sigma}D_x)x_n |D_x| \mathbb{R}_1^\mu + t^\kappa \chi_1(t^{\sigma}D_x) \chi(t^{\sigma}D_x) |D_x| |x| \mathbb{R}_1^\mu \\
= t^{\kappa} \chi_1(t^{\sigma}D_x) \chi(t^{\sigma}D_x) \mathbb{R}_1^\mu \left[ x_n |D_x| - t D_n + \frac{1}{2t} \frac{D_n}{|D_x|} \right] \\
+ t^\kappa \chi_1(t^{\sigma}D_x) \chi(t^{\sigma}D_x) \mathbb{R}_1^\mu \left[ t D_n - \frac{D_n}{2t |D_x|} \right] + \delta_{\mu=1} it^\kappa \chi_1(t^{\sigma}D_x) \chi(t^{\sigma}D_x) Op(|\xi| \partial_n (\xi_1 |\xi|^{-1})),
\]

177
with $\tilde{\chi}(\xi) := (1 - \chi(\xi))|\xi|^{-1}$ and using relation (B.2.12a) with $w = u_\pm$. The proof for $|\alpha| = 2$ is analogous. It is based on the commutation of $x^\alpha$ with $(1 - \chi)(t^\sigma D_x)\chi(t^{-\sigma} D_x)$ (the commutator is here a $L^2 - L^\infty$ bounded operator with norm $O(t^\gamma)$, on the fact that we can rewrite $(1 - \chi)(t^\sigma D_x)\chi(t^{-\sigma} D_x)x^\alpha R_1^t$ making appear $(x|D_x| - t D_x + \frac{1}{2} D_x^2)^\alpha$ by considering $\tilde{\chi}_2(\xi) := (1 - \chi(\xi))|\xi|^{-2}$ instead of previous $\tilde{\chi}_1$, and use relation (B.2.12a). Doing so we derive the following inequality

$$
(1 - \chi)(t^\sigma D_x)\chi(t^{-\sigma} D_x)[x^\alpha R_1^t u_\pm(t, \cdot)](t, \cdot) \leq C B \varepsilon t^{2+2\kappa+\frac{3}{2}},
$$

last inequality following from a-priori estimates, (B.1.9a) and (B.1.10). Summing up (B.2.33), (B.2.36), (B.2.37), together with the previous choice of $\kappa$ and the fact that in (B.2.34) $N(s) \geq 6$ if $s > 0$ is sufficiently large, we deduce that

$$
\|(1 - \chi)(t^{-\sigma} D_x)\chi(t^{-\sigma} D_x)(\Gamma I v)_{\pm}(t, \cdot)\|_{L^\infty} \leq C B \varepsilon t^{-\frac{3}{4}}.
$$

Therefore, from (B.2.31), (B.2.33), (B.2.38), and the uniform continuity on $L^\infty$ of $\chi(t^{-\sigma} D_x)$, we find that

$$
\|\chi(t^{-\sigma} D_x)(v^{\perp, NF} - v^L)(t, \cdot)\|_{L^\infty} \lesssim \sum_{\mu=0}^1 t^\sigma \|\chi(t^{-\sigma} D_x)(\Gamma I v)_{\pm}(t, \cdot)\|_{L^\infty} + \|R_1^t u_\pm(t, \cdot)\|_{L^\infty} + C B \varepsilon t^{-1},
$$

and as $\sigma$ is small and $\varepsilon_0 < (2A)^{-1}$, from (1.1.13a) we obtain (B.2.28).

In order to prove (B.2.29) we apply $Z_m$ to equality (B.2.30) and apply the Leibniz rule. As

$$
[Z_m, D_t] = -D_m, \quad [Z_m, D_1] = -\delta_{m1} D_t, \quad [Z_m, \{D_x\}] = -D_m (D_x)^{-1} D_t,
$$

with $\delta_{m1}$ the Kronecker delta, we find that

$$
2 \chi(t^{-\sigma} D_x) Z_m (v^{\perp, NF} - v^L)
= \chi(t^{-\sigma} D_x) \left[ (D_1 Z_m \Gamma I v)(D_1 u) - (D_1 Z_m \Gamma I v)(D_1 u) + D_1 [(Z_m \Gamma I v)(D_1 u)] - \{D_x\} [(Z_m \Gamma I v)(D_1 u)] + (D_1 \Gamma I v)(D_1 u) - (D_1 \Gamma I v)(D_1 u) + D_1 [(\Gamma I v)(D_1 u)] - \{D_x\} [(\Gamma I v)(D_1 u)]
- (D_m \Gamma I v)(D_1 u) + \delta_{m1} (D_1 \Gamma I v)(D_1 u) - \delta_{m1} D_t [(\Gamma I v)(D_1 u)] + \frac{D_m}{D_x} D_t [(\Gamma I v)(D_1 u)]
- \delta_{m1} (D_1 \Gamma I v)(D_1 u) + (D_1 \Gamma I v)(D_1 u) - \delta_{m1} D_t [(\Gamma I v)(D_1 u)] + \delta_{m1} (D_x) [(\Gamma I v)(D_1 u)]\right].
$$

The $L^2$ norm of all products in the above second, fourth and fifth line, i.e. those in which $Z_m$ is not acting on the wave component $u$, is estimated by

$$
\sum_{\mu=0}^1 t^\sigma \left( \|Z_m \Gamma I v\|_{L^2}^2 + \|\Gamma I v\|_{L^2}^2 \right) \left( \|R_1^t u_\pm(t, \cdot)\|_{L^\infty} + \|D_t u_\pm(t, \cdot)\|_{L^\infty} \right) \leq C A B \varepsilon t^{-\frac{3}{4} + \frac{\delta_0}{2} + \sigma},
$$

after inequality (B.1.5b) with $s = 0$ and a-priori estimates. The $L^2$ norm of products appearing in the second line are, instead, estimated by using (1.1.10) and (B.2.24b) with $L = L^2$, $\Gamma w = Z_m u,$
s > 0 sufficiently large so that \( N(s) \geq 2 \). It is hence bounded by
\[
t^\sigma \| (t^{-\sigma} D_x) (I^I v) (t, \cdot) \|_{L^\infty} \| (Z_m u) (t, \cdot) \|_{L^2} \\
+ t^{-2} \left( \sum_{|\mu|=0} \| \mu^\sigma (T^I v) (t, \cdot) \|_{L^2} + t \| (T^I v) (t, \cdot) \|_{L^2} \right) \left( \| u (t, \cdot) \|_{H^s} + \| D_t u (t, \cdot) \|_{H^s} \right)
\leq CB^2 e^{2\alpha + \frac{s - \frac{1}{2}}{2}} ,
\]
where the latter estimate is obtained using the fact that \( \chi(t^{-\sigma} D_x) \) is a bounded operator from \( L^2 \) to \( L^\infty \) with norm \( O(t^\sigma) \), together with (B.2.41), a-priori estimates (1.1.11b) and the fact that operator \( \chi(t^{-\sigma} D_x) \) is uniformly bounded on \( L^\infty \). Moreover, as this latter estimate is automatically satisfied when \( \rho \rightarrow 0 \) small such that \( \delta \rightarrow 0 \) as \( \sigma \rightarrow 0 \).

**Lemma B.2.8.** There exists a constant \( C > 0 \) such that, for any \( \rho \in \mathbb{N} \), \( \chi \in C_0^\infty(\mathbb{R}^2) \), equal to 1 in a neighbourhood of the origin, \( \sigma > 0 \) small, and every \( t \in [1, T] \),
\[
(\text{B.2.42}) \quad \sum_{|I|=1} \| \chi(t^{-\sigma} D_x) V^I (t, \cdot) \|_{H^{\rho, \infty}} \leq CB \varepsilon t^{-1+\beta + \frac{1}{2}},
\]
with \( \beta > 0 \) small such that \( \beta \rightarrow 0 \) as \( \sigma \rightarrow 0 \).

**Proof.** Since \( \chi(t^{-\sigma} D_x) \) is a bounded operator from \( L^\infty \) to \( H^{\rho, \infty} \) with norm \( O(t^\sigma) \), for any \( \rho \in \mathbb{N} \), it is enough to prove that the \( L^\infty \) norm of \( \chi(t^{-\sigma} D_x) V^I (t, \cdot) \) is bounded by the right hand side of (B.2.42). Moreover, as this latter inequality is automatically satisfied when \( \Gamma \) is a spatial derivative after a-priori estimate (1.1.15b) and the fact that operator \( \chi(t^{-\sigma} D_x) \) is uniformly bounded on \( L^\infty \), for the rest of the proof we will assume that \( \Gamma \in \{ \Omega, Z_j, j = 1, 2 \} \) is a Klinearn vector field. We also warn the reader that, throughout the proof, \( C \) will denote some positive constants that may change line after line, with \( \beta \rightarrow 0 \) as \( \sigma \rightarrow 0 \).

Instead of proving the result of the statement directly on \( \chi(t^{-\sigma} D_x) v^I_{\pm} \), we do it for \( \chi(t^{-\sigma} D_x) v^{I, NF}_{\pm} \), where \( v^{I, NF} \) has been introduced in (B.2.27) and is considered here for \( |I| = 1 \) and \( I^I = \Gamma^I \). In fact, by (B.2.28)
\[
(\text{B.2.43}) \quad \| \chi(t^{-\sigma} D_x) v_{\pm}^I (t, \cdot) \|_{L^\infty} \leq 2 \| \chi(t^{-\sigma} D_x) v^{I, NF}_{\pm} (t, \cdot) \|_{L^\infty} + CB \varepsilon t^{-1}.
\]

The advantage of dealing with this new function is related to the fact that it is solution to a fraction Klein-Gordon equation with a more suitable non-linearity (see (B.2.44)) than the equation satisfied by \( v_{\pm}^I \). In fact, it is a computation to show that from definition (B.2.27)
\[
(\text{B.2.44}) \quad [D_t + (D_x)] v^{I, NF}_{\pm} (t, x) = NL^{I, NF}_{kg},
\]
where
\[
(\text{B.2.45}) \quad NL_{kg}^{I, NF} = r_{kg}^{I, NF} (t, x) + Q_{0}^{kg} (v_{\pm}, D_t u_{\pm}^I) + G_{1}^{kg} (v_{\pm}, Du_{\pm}),
\]
with \( G_{1}^{kg} (v_{\pm}, Du_{\pm}) = G_{1} (v, \partial u) \) with \( G_{1} \) given by (1.1.16), and
\[
(\text{B.2.46}) \quad r_{kg}^{I, NF} (t, x) = -\frac{i}{4(2\pi)^2} \sum_{j_1, j_2 \in \{+,-\}} \int e^{i \xi \xi} B_{j_1, j_2, \pm} (\xi, \eta) \left[ \Gamma^{I} NL_{kg} (\xi - \eta) \right] d\xi d\eta.
\]
with $B_{1j}^{j_2,+}$ given by \((2.2.42)\) when $j_3 = +$ and $k = 1$. After \((B.2.27)\) and \((A.15)\) it appears that $r_{kg}^{I,NF}$ has the following nice explicit expression

\[
(B.2.47) \quad r_{kg}^{I,NF} = \frac{i}{2} \left( (\Gamma^i NL_{kg}) D_1 u - (D_1 \Gamma^i v) NL_w + D_1 [(\Gamma^i v) NL_w] \right).
\]

Using lemma \([B.2.6] \) and relation \((3.2.8)\) with $w = v^{I,NF}$, and reminding that $\|tw(t,\cdot)\|_{L^2} = \|w(t,\cdot)\|_{L^2}$, we find the following

\[
(B.2.48) \quad \left\| \chi(t^{-\sigma} D_x) v^{I,NF}(t,\cdot) \right\|_{L^\infty} \lesssim t^{-1+\beta} \sum_{|\mu|=0}^1 \left\| \chi(t^{-\sigma} D_x) Z^\mu v^{I,NF}(t,\cdot) \right\|_{L^2} + 2 t^{-1+\beta} \left\| \chi(t^{-\sigma} D_x) \left[ x_j NL_{kg}^{I,NF} \right] (t,\cdot) \right\|_{L^2}.
\]

From equality \((B.2.30)\), along with \((1.1.5)\), \((1.1.10)\), and a-priori estimates \((1.1.11a)\), \((1.1.11d)\), we immediately see that

\[
(B.2.49) \quad \left\| \chi(t^{-\sigma} D_x) (v^{I,NF} - v^I) (t,\cdot) \right\|_{L^2} \lesssim t^\sigma \left\| v_\pm^I (t,\cdot) \right\|_{L^2} \left( \left\| u_\pm^I (t,\cdot) \right\|_{L^\infty} + \left\| R_1 u_\pm^I (t,\cdot) \right\|_{L^\infty} \right) \leq C A B \varepsilon^2 t^{-1+\frac{\Delta}{2}+\sigma},
\]

and as $\sigma, \delta_2 \ll 1$ are small

\[
(B.2.50) \quad \left\| \chi(t^{-\sigma} D_x) v^{I,NF} (t,\cdot) \right\|_{L^2} \leq \left\| \chi(t^{-\sigma} D_x) v^I (t,\cdot) \right\|_{L^2} + \left\| \chi(t^{-\sigma} D_x) (v^{I,NF} - v^I) (t,\cdot) \right\|_{L^2} \leq C B \varepsilon t^{\frac{\Delta}{2}}.
\]

Moreover, from \((B.2.29)\) and a-priori estimate \((1.1.11d)\) we have that, for every $m = 1, 2$, $t \in [1, T],$

\[
(B.2.51) \quad \left\| \chi(t^{-\sigma} D_x) Z_m v^{I,NF} (t,\cdot) \right\|_{L^2} \leq C B \varepsilon t^{\frac{\Delta}{2}}.
\]

Finally, from \((B.2.47)\), \((1.1.5)\), \((1.1.10)\), \((B.1.10b)\), \((B.1.26a)\) and a-priori estimates, we derive that

\[
(B.2.52) \quad \left\| \chi(t^{-\sigma} D_x) \left[ x_j NL_{kg}^{I,NF} \right] (t,\cdot) \right\|_{L^2} \lesssim \left\| x_j \left[ \Gamma^i NL_{kg} t (t,\cdot) \right] \right\|_{L^2} \left( \left\| u_\pm^I (t,\cdot) \right\|_{L^\infty} + \left\| R_1 u_\pm^I (t,\cdot) \right\|_{L^\infty} \right) + \sum_{\mu=0}^1 t^\sigma \left( \left\| x_j^{\mu} v_\pm(t,\cdot) \right\|_{L^\infty} + \left\| x_j^{\mu} D_x \left( D_x \right) v_\pm(t,\cdot) \right\|_{L^\infty} \right) \left\| v_\pm^I (t,\cdot) \right\|_{L^2} \left\| v_\pm^I (t,\cdot) \right\|_{H^2} \leq C (A + B) B \varepsilon^2 t^{\frac{\Delta}{2}},
\]

while from \((B.1.5a)\) with $s = 0$, \((B.1.10a)\) and a-priori estimates

\[
(B.2.53) \quad \left\| \chi(t^{-\sigma} D_x) \left[ x_j NL_{kg}^{I,NF} \right] (t,\cdot) \right\|_{L^2} \leq C (A + B) B \varepsilon^2 t^{\frac{\Delta}{2}},
\]

so injecting \((B.2.50), (B.2.51), (B.2.53)\) into \((B.2.48)\), and summing it up with \((B.2.43)\), we obtain the result of the statement. \(\square\)
As done for the Klein-Gordon component in the above lemma, we also derive an estimate for the uniform norm of the wave component when a Klainerman vector field acts on it and its frequencies less or equal than $t^\sigma$ (see lemma [B.2.10]). We first need the following result.

**Lemma B.2.9.** Let $\Gamma \in \mathbb{Z}$, index $J$ be such that $\Gamma^J = \Gamma$, and $\tilde{u}^J(t,x) := t(\Gamma u)_-(t,tx)$. There exists a constant $C > 0$ such that, for any $\theta_0, \chi \in C_0^\infty(\mathbb{R}^2)$, $\sigma > 0$, and every $t \in [1,T]$,

\begin{align}
(B.2.54a) & \quad \|\tilde{u}^J(t,\cdot)\|_{L^2} \leq C B \varepsilon t^{\frac{\delta_2}{2}}, \\
(B.2.54b) & \quad \|\Omega_h \tilde{u}^J(t,\cdot)\|_{L^2} \leq C B \varepsilon t^{\frac{\delta_1}{2}}, \\
(B.2.54c) & \quad \|\mathcal{M} \tilde{u}^J(t,\cdot)\|_{L^2} \leq C B \varepsilon t^{\frac{\delta_1}{2}}, \\
(B.2.54d) & \quad \|\theta_0(x) \text{Op}^\varepsilon_n(\chi(h^\sigma \xi)) \Omega_h \mathcal{M} \tilde{u}^J(t,\cdot)\|_{L^2} \leq C B \varepsilon t^{\frac{\delta_0}{2}}.
\end{align}

**Proof.** We warn the reader that, throughout the proof, $C$ will denote a positive constant that may change line after line. We also recall that

\[ [D_t + (D_x)](\Gamma u)_-(t,x) = \Gamma N_{Lw}(t,x). \]

Estimates (B.2.54a) and (B.2.54b) are straightforward after (1.1.1d) and the fact that

\[ \|\tilde{u}^J(t,\cdot)\|_{L^2} = \|(\Gamma u)_-(t,\cdot)\|_{L^2}, \quad \|\Omega_h \tilde{u}^J(t,\cdot)\|_{L^2} = \|(\Omega \Gamma u)_-(t,\cdot)\|_{L^2}. \]

From (3.2.6) with $w = (\Gamma u)_-$ and $f = \Gamma N_{Lw}$, estimates (1.1.1d), (B.1.26b), along with the fact that $\delta_2 \ll \delta_1$ (e.g. $2\delta_2 \leq \delta_1$), and $(A + B)\varepsilon_0 < 1$, we obtain (B.2.54c). By (3.2.6) we also derive that, for any $n = 1,2$,

\[ \|\theta_0(x) \text{Op}^\varepsilon_n(\chi(h^\sigma \xi)) \Omega_h \mathcal{M} \tilde{u}^J(t,\cdot)\|_{L^2} \leq \|\Omega Z_n(\Gamma u)_-(t,\cdot)\|_{L^2} + \sum_{\mu=0}^{1} \|\Omega^\mu(\Gamma u)_-(t,\cdot)\|_{L^2} \]

(B.2.55)

\[ + \left\| \theta_0\left( \frac{x}{t} \right) \chi(t^{-\sigma}D_x) \Omega [x_n \Gamma N_{Lw}](t,\cdot) \right\|_{L^2}. \]

The first two norms in the above right hand side are controlled by $E^3_3(t;W)^{1/2}$ and are hence bounded by $C B \varepsilon t^{\frac{\delta_2}{2}}$. By commutating $x_n$ with $\chi(t^{-\sigma}D_x)\Omega$, and using that $\theta_0\left( \frac{x}{t} \right) x_n = t \theta_0\left( \frac{x}{t} \right)$, with $\theta_0\left( \frac{x}{t} \right) := \theta_0\left( \frac{x}{t} \right)$, we deduce that

\[ \|\theta_0\left( \frac{x}{t} \right) \chi(t^{-\sigma}D_x) \Omega [x_n \Gamma N_{Lw}](t,\cdot)\|_{L^2} \leq t \sum_{\mu=0}^{1} \|\chi(t^{-\sigma}D_x) \Omega^\mu \Gamma N_{Lw}\|_{L^2}, \]

for some new $\chi_1 \in C_0^\infty(\mathbb{R}^2)$. On the one hand, using (B.1.20b), (B.1.6a) with $s = 0$ and a-priori estimates we derive that

(B.2.56)

\[ t\|\Gamma N_{Lw}\|_{L^2} \lesssim t\|v_\pm(t,\cdot)\|_{H^{\infty}_2} \left( \|(\Gamma v)_\pm(t,\cdot)\|_{H^1} + \|v_\pm(t,\cdot)\|_{H^1} + \|D_t v_\pm(t,\cdot)\|_{L^2} \right) \lesssim C B \varepsilon t^{\frac{\delta_2}{2}}. \]

On the other hand, when we compute $\Omega \Gamma N_{Lw}$ we find among the out-coming quadratic terms the following ones

\[ Q^\varepsilon_0((\Omega v)_\pm, D_1(\Gamma v)_\pm) \quad \text{and} \quad Q^\varepsilon_0((\Gamma v)_\pm, D_1(\Omega v)_\pm), \]

which we estimate in the $L^2$ norm (when truncated for frequencies less or equal than $t^\sigma$) by means of (B.2.24a) with $L = L^2$, $\Gamma_w = \Omega v$, and $s > 0$ large enough to have $N(s) \geq 3$. From
and are hence bounded by $C_\beta > 0$ with $\beta > 0$, such that $C_\beta$ may change line after line, with $\beta$ small such that (B.2.42) and a-priori estimates, we obtain that

$$
\|\chi(t^{-\sigma} D_x)Q_0^w((\Omega v)_\pm, D_1(\Gamma v)_\pm)\|_{L^2} \leq t^\sigma \|\chi(t^{-\sigma} D_x)(\Omega v)_\pm(t, \cdot)\|_{L^\infty} \|\Gamma v\|_{H^1} + \sum_{|\mu| = 0} t^{-3} \|v_\pm(t, \cdot)\|_{H^1}\|x^\mu(\Gamma v)_\pm(t, \cdot)\|_{H^1}
$$

$$
\leq CB^2 \varepsilon^2 t^{-1+\beta+\frac{\delta_1+\delta_2}{2}},
$$

with $\beta > 0$ small such that $\beta \to 0$ as $\sigma \to 0$. All remaining quadratic contributions to $\Omega \Gamma \nu L w$ are estimated with

$$
\|\Omega(t, \cdot)\|_{H^1}\|v_\pm(t, \cdot)\|_{H^2} + \|\Omega(t, \cdot)\|_{L^2} \|v_\pm(t, \cdot)\|_{H^1} + \|D_t v_\pm(t, \cdot)\|_{L^2}
$$

$$
\leq C(A + B) B \varepsilon^2 t^{-1+\frac{\delta}{2}},
$$

which, together with (B.2.56) and the fact that $\beta + \frac{\delta_1+\delta_2}{2} \leq 0$, as $\delta_2 < 0$ and $\beta > 0$ is as small as we want provided that $\sigma$ is small, gives

$$
\left\|\theta_0\left(\frac{x}{t}\right) \chi(t^{-\sigma} D_x)\Omega[t, \Gamma \nu L w](t, \cdot)\right\|_{L^2} \leq CB \varepsilon t^{\frac{\delta}{2}}.
$$

Lemma B.2.10. There exists a constant $C > 0$ such that, for any $\rho \in \mathbb{N}$, $\chi \in C^\infty_0(\mathbb{R}^2)$ equal to 1 in a neighbourhood of the origin, $\sigma > 0$ small, and every $t \in [1, T]$,

$$
(B.2.57) \quad \sum_{|J| = 1} \sum_{|\mu| = 0} \|\chi(t^{-\sigma} D_x)R^\mu U^J(t, \cdot)\|_{H^\rho, \infty} \leq C(A + B) \varepsilon t^{-\frac{1}{2}+\beta+\frac{\delta}{2}},
$$

for a small $\beta > 0$, $\beta \to 0$ as $\sigma \to 0$.

Proof. We warn the reader that, throughout the proof, $C$ and $\beta$ will denote two positive constants that may change line after line, with $\beta \to 0$ as $\sigma \to 0$. Moreover, since $\chi(t^{-\sigma} D_x)$ is a bounded operator from $L^\infty$ to $H^{\rho, \infty}$ with norm $O(t^{\rho})$, for any $\rho \in \mathbb{N}$, we can reduce to prove that the $L^\infty$ norm of $\chi(t^{-\sigma} D_x)R^\mu U^J(t, \cdot)$ is bounded by the right hand side of (B.2.57). We observe that this estimate is automatically satisfied when $J$ is such that $\Gamma^J$ is a spatial derivative, as a consequence of a-priori estimate (B.2.42a). We therefore assume that $\Gamma^J$ is one of the Klainerman vector fields $\Omega, \zeta_m$, for $m \in \{1, 2\}$.

Introducing $\tilde{u}^J(t, x) := tu^J(t, x)$, passing to the semiclassical setting $(t \mapsto t, x \mapsto \frac{x}{t})$, and $h := 1/t$, and reminding that $u^J_\pm = -u^J_\mp$, inequality (B.2.57) becomes

$$
(B.2.58) \quad \sum_{|\mu| = 0} \left\|\text{Op}_h^w \left(\chi(h^\sigma)(\xi|\xi|^{-1})^\mu\right) \tilde{u}^J(t, \cdot)\right\|_{L^\infty} \leq C(A + B) \varepsilon h^{-\frac{1}{2}-\beta-\frac{\delta}{2}}.
$$

We consider a Littlewood-Paley decomposition such that

$$
(B.2.59) \quad \chi(h^\sigma \xi) = \tilde{\chi}(h^{-1} \xi) + \sum_k (1 - \tilde{\chi})(h^{-1} \xi) \psi(2^{-k} \xi) \chi(h^\sigma \xi),
$$

182
for some suitably supported $\tilde{\chi} \in C_0^\infty(\mathbb{R}^2)$, $\psi \in C_0^\infty(\mathbb{R}^2 \setminus \{0\})$, and immediately observe that the above sum is restricted to indices $k$ such that $h \lesssim 2^k \lesssim h^{-\sigma}$. By the classical Sobolev injection, the uniform continuity of $\text{Op}^w_h(\chi|\xi|^{-1})$ on $L^2$, and a-priori estimate (1.1.11d), we derive that for any $|\mu| \leq 1$, every $t \in [1, T]$,

$$
\|\text{Op}^w_h(\tilde{\chi}(h^{-1}\xi)(|\xi|^{-1})^\mu) \tilde{u}^J(t, \cdot)\|_{L^\infty} = \|\chi(D_x)\text{Op}^w_h((|\xi|^{-1})^\mu) \tilde{u}^J(t, \cdot)\|_{L^\infty} \lesssim \|u^J(t, \cdot)\|_{L^2} \leq CB\varepsilon t^{\frac{1}{2}}.
$$

(B.2.60)

If we concisely denote by $\phi_k(\xi)$ the $k$-th addend in decomposition (B.2.59) and introduce two smooth cut-off functions $\chi_0$, $\gamma$, with $\chi_0$ radial and equal to 1 on the support of $\phi_k$, $\gamma$ with sufficiently small support, we can write

$$
\text{Op}^w_h(\phi_k(\xi)(|\xi|^{-1})^\mu) \tilde{u}^J = \text{Op}^w_h(\gamma(\frac{|\xi| - \xi}{h^{1/2-\sigma}})\phi_k(\xi)(|\xi|^{-1})^\mu) \text{Op}^w_h(\chi_0(h^\sigma \xi)) \tilde{u}^J + \text{Op}^w_h((1 - \gamma)(\frac{|\xi| - \xi}{h^{1/2-\sigma}})\phi_k(\xi)(|\xi|^{-1})^\mu) \text{Op}^w_h(\chi_0(h^\sigma \xi)) \tilde{u}^J.
$$

On the one hand, after proposition (1.2.30), the fact that $2^k \lesssim h^{-\sigma}$, a-priori estimate (1.1.11d), and the uniform $L^2$ continuity of $\text{Op}^w_h(\chi_0(h^\sigma \xi))$, we have that for any $|\mu| \leq 1$

$$
\text{Op}^w_h(\gamma(\frac{|\xi| - \xi}{h^{1/2-\sigma}})\phi_k(\xi)(|\xi|^{-1})^\mu) \text{Op}^w_h(\chi_0(h^\sigma \xi)) \tilde{u}^J(t, \cdot) \lesssim h^{\frac{1}{2} - \beta} \left( \|\text{Op}^w_h(\chi_0(h^\sigma \xi)) \tilde{u}^J(t, \cdot)\|_{L^2} + \|\theta_0(x)\Omega_h \text{Op}^w_h(\chi_0(h^\sigma \xi)) \tilde{u}^J(t, \cdot)\|_{L^2} \right) \lesssim h^{\frac{1}{2} - \beta} \left( \|u^J(t, \cdot)\|_{L^2} + \|\Omega u^J(t, \cdot)\|_{L^2} \right) \leq CB\varepsilon t^{\frac{1}{2}}h^{\frac{1}{2} - \beta - \frac{1}{4}}.
$$

(B.2.61)

On the other hand, using that $(1 - \gamma)(z) = \gamma_1^2(z)z_j$, where $\gamma_1^2(z) := (1 - \gamma)(z)z_j|z|^2$ is such that $|\partial_x^\alpha \gamma_1^2(z)| \leq |z|^{1 - |\alpha|}$, we derive from (1.2.52b), the commutation between $M$ with $\text{Op}^w_h(\chi_0(h^\sigma \xi))$, and lemma (B.2.9), that

$$
\text{Op}^w_h((1 - \gamma)(\frac{|\xi| - \xi}{h^{1/2-\sigma}})\phi_k(\xi)(|\xi|^{-1})^\mu) \text{Op}^w_h(\chi_0(h^\sigma \xi)) \tilde{u}^J \lesssim h^{-\beta} \sum_{\gamma, |\alpha| = 0}^1 \|\theta_0(x)\Omega_h \gamma^\alpha M^\mu \text{Op}^w_h(\chi_0(h^\sigma \xi)) \tilde{u}^J(t, \cdot)\|_{L^2} \leq CB\varepsilon t^{\beta + \frac{1}{2}}.
$$

Combining this estimate with (B.2.61) we deduce that

$$
\|\text{Op}^w_h(\phi_k(\xi)(|\xi|^{-1})^\mu) \tilde{u}^J(t, \cdot)\|_{L^\infty} \leq C(A + B)\varepsilon h^{-\frac{1}{2} - \beta - \frac{1}{4}},
$$

for any $|\mu| \leq 1$, and hence (B.2.58) after (B.2.59), (B.2.64), up to a further loss $|\log h|$, as a consequence of the fact that the sum in (B.2.59) is finite and taken over indices $k$ such that $\log h \lesssim k \lesssim \log h^{-1}$.

Lemma B.2.11. There exists a positive constant $C > 0$ such that, for any $\chi \in C_0^\infty(\mathbb{R}^2)$ equal to 1 in a neighbourhood of the origin, $\sigma > 0$, and every $t \in [1, T]$,

$$
\sum_{|\mu| = 0}^1 \| \chi(t^{-\sigma}D_x) \left[ x_j \left( \frac{D_x}{(\sigma D_x)^\mu} \Gamma(v)_\pm(t, \cdot) \right) \right]\|_{L^\infty} \leq CB\varepsilon t^{\beta + \frac{1}{2}},
$$

with $\beta > 0$ small, $\beta \to 0$ as $\sigma \to 0$.  

183
Proof. We warn the reader that, throughout the proof, $C$ and $\beta$ will denote two positive constants that may change line after line, with $\beta \to 0$ as $\sigma \to 0$. As $\Gamma v_+ = -\Gamma v_-$, it is enough to prove the statement for $\Gamma v_-$. 

If $\Gamma$ is a spatial derivative, estimate \ref{b.2.62} is just consequence of the uniform continuity of $\chi(t^{-\sigma}D_x)$ on $L^\infty$ and of \ref{b.1.10b}. We then assume that $\Gamma \in \{\Omega, Z_m, m = 1, 2\}$ is a Klainerman vector field. First of all, we observe that by \ref{b.1.96} with $w = (\Gamma v)_-$ and $f = \Gamma NL_{kg}$, along with the classical Sobolev injection, 

\begin{equation}
\sum_{|\mu|=0}^1 \| x_j \left( \frac{D_x}{\langle D_x \rangle} \right)^\mu (\Gamma v)_-(t, \cdot) \|_{L^\infty} \lesssim \| Z_j(\Gamma v)_-(t, \cdot) \|_{H^1} + t \| (\Gamma v)_-(t, \cdot) \|_{H^2} + \sum_{\mu=0}^1 \| x_j^{\mu} \Gamma NL_{kg}(t, \cdot) \|_{L^\infty}.
\end{equation}

From equality \ref{b.1.20a} and lemma \ref{b.2.4} with $L = L^\infty$ and $s > 0$ large enough so that $N(s) \geq 3$, together with estimates \ref{b.1.11}, \ref{b.1.5a}, \ref{b.1.5b}, \ref{b.1.5c}, \ref{b.1.6a}, \ref{b.1.10a}, \ref{b.1.11}, \ref{b.2.42}, and \ref{b.2.57}, we get that

\begin{equation}
\| \Gamma NL_{kg}(t, \cdot) \|_{L^\infty} \lesssim \sum_{\mu=0}^1 \left( \| \chi(t^{-\sigma}D_x)(\Gamma v)_\pm(t, \cdot) \|_{H^1} \right) \| \Gamma NL_{kg}(t, \cdot) \|_{L^\infty}.
\end{equation}

Moreover, as

\begin{equation}
\| x_j G^b_{0}\left((\Gamma v)_\pm, D_1 u_\pm\right) \|_{L^\infty} \lesssim \sum_{|\mu|, \nu=0}^1 \| x_j \left( \frac{D_x}{\langle D_x \rangle} \right)^\mu (\Gamma v)_-(t, \cdot) \|_{L^\infty} \| R_1^{\nu} u_\pm(t, \cdot) \|_{H^2}.
\end{equation}

\begin{equation}
\| x_j G^b_{1}(v_\pm, D u_\pm) \|_{L^\infty} \lesssim \sum_{|\mu|=0}^1 \| x_j \left( D_x \right)^\mu v_\pm(t, \cdot) \|_{L^\infty} \| D t u_\pm(t, \cdot) \|_{H^2} + \| D t u_\pm(t, \cdot) \|_{H^1},
\end{equation}

and by lemma \ref{b.2.4} with $L = L^\infty$, $w = u$, and $s > 0$ large enough so that $N(s) \geq 3$,

\begin{equation}
\| x_j G^b_{0}(v_\pm, D_1 (\Gamma u)_\pm) \|_{L^\infty} \lesssim \sum_{|\mu|=0}^1 \| x_j \left( \frac{D_x}{\langle D_x \rangle} \right)^\mu (\Gamma v)_-(t, \cdot) \|_{L^\infty} \| (t^{-\sigma}D_x)(\Gamma u)_\pm(t, \cdot) \|_{H^2}.
\end{equation}

\begin{equation}
+ t^{-3} \sum_{|\mu|, \nu=0}^1 \left( \| x_j^{\mu} x_j^{\nu} v_\pm(t, \cdot) \|_{L^2} + t \| x_j^{\nu} v_\pm(t, \cdot) \|_{L^2} \right) \| u_\pm(t, \cdot) \|_{H^s} + \| D t u_\pm(t, \cdot) \|_{H^s},
\end{equation}

we derive that

\begin{equation}
\| x_j \Gamma NL_{kg}(t, \cdot) \|_{L^\infty} \leq C A t^{-\frac{1}{2}} + \sum_{|\mu|, \nu=0}^1 \| x_j \left( \frac{D_x}{\langle D_x \rangle} \right)^\mu (\Gamma v)_-(t, \cdot) \|_{L^\infty} + C(A + B) B \varepsilon^2 t^{-\frac{1}{2} + \beta + \frac{k_1 + k_2}{2}},
\end{equation}

184
as follows using \((B.1.5a), (B.1.5b)\) with \(s = 1\), \((B.1.10a), (B.1.10b), (B.1.27a), (B.2.57)\) and a-priori estimates. By injecting the above inequality into \((B.2.63)\) and using the fact that \(\varepsilon_0 < (2CA)^{-1}\), we initially obtain that

\[
(B.2.69) \quad \|x_j(\Gamma v)_-(t, \cdot)\|_{L^\infty} + \left\|x_j \frac{D_x}{\langle D_x \rangle}(\Gamma v)_-(t, \cdot)\right\|_{L^\infty} \leq CB \varepsilon t^{1 + \frac{\beta}{2}}.
\]

If we take any smooth cut-off function \(\chi\) and use equality \((B.1.9b)\), instead of \((B.2.63)\) we find that

\[
(B.2.70) \quad \sum_{|\mu| = 0}^{1} \left\| \chi(t^{-\sigma}D_x) \left[ x_j \left( \frac{D_x}{\langle D_x \rangle} \right)^\mu (\Gamma v)_-(t, \cdot) \right] \right\|_{L^\infty} \lesssim \|Z_j(\Gamma v)_-(t, \cdot)\|_{H^1} + t \|\chi(t^{-\sigma}D_x)(\Gamma v)_-(t, \cdot)\|_{L^\infty}
\]

\[
+ \sum_{|\mu| = 0}^{1} \left\| \chi(t^{-\sigma}D_x) \left[ x_j^\mu TL_{k_s}(t, \cdot) \right] \right\|_{L^\infty},
\]

where now

\[
\|\chi(t^{-\sigma}D_x) [x_j \Gamma NL_{k_s}(t, \cdot)]\|_{L^\infty} \lesssim \|x_j \Gamma NL_{k_s}(t, \cdot)\|_{L^\infty} \leq C(A + B) \varepsilon t^{1 + \frac{\beta}{2}},
\]

as follows injecting \((B.2.69)\) into \((B.2.68)\). Therefore, from \((B.2.64)\), lemma \((B.2.8)\) and a-priori estimate \((1.11d)\) with \(k = 2\), we find that

\[
(B.2.71) \quad \|\chi(t^{-\sigma}D_x) [x_j(\Gamma v)_-(t, \cdot)]\|_{L^\infty} + \left\| \chi(t^{-\sigma}D_x) \left[ x_j \frac{D_x}{\langle D_x \rangle}(\Gamma v)_-(t, \cdot) \right] \right\|_{L^\infty} \leq CB \varepsilon t^{1 + \frac{\beta}{2}}.
\]

Finally, by means of lemma \((B.2.2)\) with \(L = L^\infty\), \(w_1 = x(\Gamma v)_\pm\), and \(s > 0\) such that \(N(s) \geq 2\), we derive that for any \(\chi \in C_0^\infty(\mathbb{R}^2)\) there is some \(\chi_1 \in C_0^\infty(\mathbb{R}^2)\) such that

\[
\|\chi(t^{-\sigma}D_x)x_j Q^0_k (\Gamma v)_\pm, D_1 u_\pm)\|_{L^\infty} \lesssim \sum_{|\mu|, \nu = 0}^{1} \left\| \chi_1(t^{-\sigma}D_x) \left[ x_j \left( \frac{D_x}{\langle D_x \rangle} \right)^\mu (\Gamma v)_-(t, \cdot) \right] \right\|_{L^\infty} \|\chi(t^{-\sigma}D_x)R^\mu_1 u_\pm(t, \cdot)\|_{H^2, \infty}
\]

\[
+ \sum_{|\mu| = 0}^{1} t^{-2} \left\| x^\mu_j (\Gamma v)_\pm(t, \cdot) \right\|_{L^2} \|u_\pm(t, \cdot)\|_{H^s}. \quad \text{(B.2.71)}
\]

Then, combining such inequality with \((B.2.66), (B.2.67)\), together with \((B.1.17), (B.2.71)\), and all the other inequalities to which we already referred before, from \((B.1.20a)\) we find that

\[
\|\chi(t^{-\sigma}D_x) [x_j \Gamma NL_{k_s}(t, \cdot)]\|_{L^\infty} \leq C(A + B) \varepsilon t^{2 + \frac{3\beta}{2}},
\]

which injected into \((B.2.70)\) finally implies, together with \((1.11d)\) with \(k = 2\), lemma \((B.2.8)\) and \((B.2.64)\), the wished estimate \((B.2.62)\).}

Making use of lemmas \((B.2.8)\) and \((B.2.11)\) estimate \((B.2.62)\) can be improved of a factor \(t^{-\frac{\beta}{2}}\). This improvement, that will be useful to derive \((B.4.30)\), is showed in the following lemma.

**Lemma B.2.12.** Let \(I\) be a multi-index of length 1 and \(\tau^{N,F}_{k_s}\) be given by \((B.2.46)\). There exists a constant \(C > 0\) such that, for any \(\rho \in \mathbb{N}\), \(\chi \in C_0^\infty(\mathbb{R}^2)\), equal to 1 in a neighbourhood of the origin, \(\sigma > 0\) small, \(j = 1, 2\), and every \(t \in [1, T]\),

\[
(B.2.72) \quad \left\| \chi(t^{-\sigma}D_x) \left[ x_j^{I,N,F_{k_s}} \right] (t, \cdot) \right\|_{L^2} \leq C(A + B) A B \varepsilon^3 t^{-\frac{\beta}{2} + \frac{4 \beta + \alpha}{12}},
\]

with \(\beta > 0\) small, \(\beta \to 0\) as \(\sigma \to 0\).
Proof. Let us remind the explicit expression \[ B.2.47 \] of \( i_{kg}^{L,NF} \) and consider the cubic term \( x_j \Gamma^j NL_{kg}(D_1 u) \). Reminding \[ B.1.3 \] and applying lemma \[ B.2.2 \] with \( L = L^2 \) and \( s > 0 \) sufficiently large so that \( N(s) \geq 2 \), together with \[ B.1.26a \] and a-priori estimates, we derive that there is some \( \chi_1 \in C_0^\infty(\mathbb{R}^2) \) such that

\[(B.2.73) \quad \left\| \chi(t^{-\sigma} D_x) \left[ x_j \Gamma^j NL_{kg}(D_1 u) \right] (t, \cdot) \right\|_{L^2} \leq C \left( A + B \right) B \varepsilon t^{\frac{1}{2} + \beta + \frac{\delta + \delta_1}{2}}, \]

Then, recalling \[ B.1.20a \] and using again lemma \[ B.2.2 \], we find that there is a new \( \chi_2 \in C_0^\infty(\mathbb{R}^2) \) such that

\[
\left\| \chi_1(t^{-\sigma} D_x) \left[ x_j NL_{kg}^I \right] (t, \cdot) \right\|_{L^2} \leq C(A + B) B \varepsilon t^{\frac{1}{2} + \beta + \frac{\delta + \delta_1}{2}},
\]

where the latter estimate is obtained from \[ B.1.5a \] with \( s = 0 \), \[ B.1.10b \], \[ B.1.17 \] with \( k = 1 \), \[ B.2.62 \] and a-priori estimates. This implies, combined with \[ B.2.73 \], that

\[
\left\| \chi(t^{-\sigma} D_x) \left[ x_j NL_{kg}^I(D_1 u) \right] (t, \cdot) \right\|_{L^2} \leq C(A + B) A B \varepsilon t^{\frac{1}{2} + \beta + \frac{\delta + \delta_1}{2}},
\]

and from \[ B.2.47 \] and a-priori estimates,

\[
\left\| \chi(t^{-\sigma} D_x) \left[ x_j i_{kg}^{L,NF} \right] (t, \cdot) \right\|_{L^2} \leq C(A + B) B \varepsilon t^{\frac{1}{2} + \beta + \frac{\delta + \delta_1}{2}},
\]

which concludes the proof of the statement. \( \square \)

**Lemma B.2.13.** Let \( I \) be a multi-index of length 2. There exists a constant \( C > 0 \) such that, for every \( j = 1, 2 \), \( t \in [1, T] \),

\[(B.2.74) \quad \left\| x_j \Gamma^j NL_{kg}(t, \cdot) \right\|_{L^2} \leq C(A + B) B \varepsilon t^{\frac{1}{2} + \beta + \frac{\delta + \delta_1}{2}},\]

with \( \beta > 0 \) small, \( \beta \to 0 \) as \( \sigma \to 0 \).

**Proof.** We remind the reader about \[ B.1.23 \]. Instead of using \[ B.1.24 \], which was obtained by Sobolev injection, we apply lemma \[ B.2.2 \] with \( L = L^2 \), \( \Gamma u = \Gamma \ell_2 u \), \( s > 0 \) sufficiently large so that \( N(s) \geq 3 \), and exploit the fact that we have an estimate of the \( H^{\alpha,\infty} \) norm of \( D_1 u \) when
truncated for frequencies less or equal than \( t^\sigma \) (see lemma [B.2.10]). Therefore, for \((I_1, I_2) \in \mathcal{I}(I)\) such that \(|I_1| = |I_2| = 1\) we obtain that

\[
\left\| x_j Q_0^{k_x} \left( \nu_{l_1}^{t, D_1 u_{l_2}^t} \right)(t, \cdot) \right\|_{L^2} \lesssim \sum_{\mu = 0}^{1} \left\| x_j^{\mu} v_{l_1}^{t, i}(t, \cdot) \right\|_{L^2} \left\| \chi(t^{-\sigma} D_x u_{l_2}^t(t, \cdot)) \right\|_{H^{2, \infty}}
\]

\[
+ t^{-3} \left( \left\| u_{l_1}^t(t, \cdot) \right\|_{H^\sigma} + \left\| D_t u_{l_1}^t(t, \cdot) \right\|_{H^\sigma} \right) \left[ 2 \left\| x_\mu v_{l_1}^{t, i}(t, \cdot) \right\|_{L^2} + \sum_{|\mu| = 0}^{1} t \left\| x_\mu v_{l_1}^{t, i}(t, \cdot) \right\|_{L^2} \right]
\]

\[
\leq C(A + B) B^{\frac{s}{2} + \beta + \frac{\delta_1 + \delta_2}{2}},
\]

last estimate following from lemma [B.2.10] together with (B.1.5a), (B.1.17) with \( k = 1 \), (B.1.28), a-priori estimates, and the fact that \( \delta_1, \delta_2 \ll 1 \) are small. Consequently, from the following inequality

\[
\left\| x_j \Gamma^I \nu I_{kg}(t, \cdot) \right\|_{L^2} \lesssim \sum_{\mu = 0}^{1} \left\| R_1^{\mu} v_{l_1}^t(t, \cdot) \right\|_{H^{2, \infty}} \sum_{|J| \leq 2} \left\| x_\mu \left( \Gamma^I v \right)(t, \cdot) \right\|_{L^2}
\]

\[
+ \sum_{|\mu| = 0}^{1} \left\| x_j \left( \frac{D_x}{D_z} \right)^\mu v_{l_1}^t(t, \cdot) \right\|_{L^\infty} \left[ \left\| u_{l_1}^t(t, \cdot) \right\|_{H^1} + \sum_{|J| \leq 2} \left( \left\| u_{l_1}^t(t, \cdot) \right\|_{H^1} + \left\| D_t u_{l_1}^t(t, \cdot) \right\|_{L^2} \right) \right]
\]

\[
+ \sum_{|I_1| = |I_2| = 1} \left\| x_j Q_0^{k_x} \left( v_{l_1}^{t, i}, D_1 u_{l_2}^t \right)(t, \cdot) \right\|_{L^2},
\]

together with (B.1.10b), (B.1.5a) with \( s = 0 \), (B.1.7), and (B.1.17) with \( k = 1 \), we finally derive (B.2.74).

\[\Box\]

**Lemma B.2.14.** Let us fix \( s \in \mathbb{N} \). There exists a constant \( C > 0 \) such that, if we assume that a-priori estimates (1.1.11) are satisfied in some interval \([1, T]\), for a fixed \( T > 1 \), with \( n \geq s + 2 \), then we have, for any \( \chi \in C_0^\infty(\mathbb{R}^2) \) and \( \sigma > 0 \) small,

\[
\text{(B.2.75a)} \quad \left\| \tilde{v}(t, \cdot) \right\|_{H^\sigma} \leq C B \varepsilon t^{\frac{7}{2}},
\]

\[
\text{(B.2.75b)} \quad \sum_{|\mu| = 1} \left\| \text{Op}^{n_0}_0(\chi(h^\sigma \xi)) \mathcal{L}_\mu \tilde{v}(t, \cdot) \right\|_{L^2} \leq C B \varepsilon t^{\frac{7}{2}},
\]

for every \( t \in [1, T] \).

**Proof.** We warn the reader that, throughout the proof, \( C \) and \( \beta \) will denote two positive constants that may change along line after line, with \( \beta > 0 \) is small as long as \( \sigma \) is small.

It is straightforward to check that the \( H^\sigma \) norm of \( \tilde{v} \) is bounded by energy \( E_n(t; W) \frac{1}{2} \) whenever \( n \geq s + 2 \), after definitions (3.2.2), (3.1.3), inequality (3.1.7a), and a-priori estimates (1.1.11a), (1.1.11b).

In order to prove (B.2.75b) we first use relation (3.2.9b) and definition (3.1.3) to derive that

\[
\text{(B.2.76)} \quad \left\| \text{Op}^{n_0}_0(\chi(h^\sigma \xi)) \mathcal{L}_m \tilde{v}(t, \cdot) \right\|_{L^2} \lesssim \left\| Z_m V(t, \cdot) \right\|_{L^2} + \left\| \chi(t^{-\sigma} D_x) Z_m (v^{NF} - v_\varepsilon)(t, \cdot) \right\|_{L^2}
\]

\[
+ \left\| \tilde{v}(t, \cdot) \right\|_{L^2} + \left\| \chi(t^{-\sigma} D_x) [\sigma_m r_{kg}^{NF}](t, \cdot) \right\|_{L^2},
\]

with \( r_{kg}^{NF} \) given by (3.1.3). Using (1.1.11) we can rewrite (3.1.10) and (3.1.11) similarly to (B.2.30), (B.2.47), as:

\[
\text{(B.2.77)} \quad v^{NF} - v_\varepsilon = - \frac{i}{2} \left[ (D_t v)(D_1 u) - (D_1 v)(D_1 u) + D_1 [v D_1 u] - \langle D_x \rangle [v D_1 u] \right]
\]

187
Consequently, using estimates (1.1.11), (B.1.5a) with $\chi_{\text{wave one}}$. In this way we get that, for some new $L$.

Lemma B.3.1.

$$0 \sigma > h \Leftrightarrow \lim_{\tau \to 0} \left( ||U(t, \cdot)||_{L^2} + ||U(t, \cdot)||_{L^2} + ||V(t, \cdot)||_{L^2} + ||\nabla^2 \chi(t, \cdot)||_{L^2} \right)$$

Similarly to (B.2.40),

$$2i\chi(t^{-\sigma}D_x)Z_m(v^{\infty} - v_-)$$

We bound the $L^2$ norm of all products in the first line of the above equality by means of lemma [B.2.22] and all the others by the $L^\infty$ norm of the Klein-Gordon factor times the $L^2$ norm of the wave one. In this way we get that, for some new $\chi_1 \in C_0^\infty(\mathbb{R}^2)$ and $s > 0$ sufficiently large, we derive that

$$||\chi(t^{-\sigma}D_x)Z_m(v^{\infty} - v_-)(t, \cdot)||_{L^2} \lesssim t^\sigma ||\chi(t^{-\sigma}D_x)(Z_mv)(t, \cdot)||_{L^\infty} ||u_\pm(t, \cdot)||_{L^2} + t^{-1} ||(Z_mv)(t, \cdot)||_{L^2} ||u_\pm(t, \cdot)||_{H^s} + t^\sigma ||v_\pm(t, \cdot)||_{H^{1, \infty}} (||(Z_mu)(t, \cdot)||_{L^2} + ||u_\pm(t, \cdot)||_{L^2} + ||D_t u_\pm(t, \cdot)||_{L^2}).$$

Consequently, using estimates (1.1.11), (B.1.5a) with $s = 0$, and (B.2.42), we obtain that

$$||\chi(t^{-\sigma}D_x)Z_m(v^{\infty} - v_-)(t, \cdot)||_{L^2} \leq C(A + B)B\epsilon^2 t^{-1/2 + \sigma + (2 + 4\delta)/2},$$

which plugged into (B.2.76), along with (B.2.79), (B.2.75a) and (1.1.1d), gives (B.2.75b). 

**B.3 Last range of estimates**

The aim of this section is to show that a-priori estimates (1.1.11) also infer a moderate growth in time of the $L^2(\mathbb{R}^2)$ norm of $\mathcal{L}^{\mu, \nu}$, for $|\mu| = 2$, when this function is restricted to frequencies less or equal than $h^{-\sigma}$, for $\sigma > 0$ small. This is proved in lemma (B.3.7). Lemmas from (B.3.1) to (B.3.6) are intermediate technical results.

Lemma B.3.1. Let us consider $v^{\infty}$ introduced in (3.1.3) and $v^{1, \infty}$ as in (B.2.27) with $|I| = 1$ and $\Gamma^I = Z_n$, for $n \in \{1, 2\}$. There exists a constant $C > 0$ such that, for any $\chi \in C_0^\infty(\mathbb{R}^2)$, $\sigma > 0$ small, and every $t \in [1, T],$

$$||\chi(t^{-\sigma}D_x)(Z_n v^{\infty} - v^{1, \infty})(t, \cdot)||_{L^2} \leq C(A + B)B\epsilon^2 t^{-1/2 + \sigma + (2 + 4\delta)/2},$$

188
\[(B.3.2) \quad \| \chi(t^{-\sigma}D_x)[x_m Z_n(v^{\text{NF}} - v_-)(t, \cdot)] \|_{L^2} + \| \chi(t^{-\sigma}D_x)[x_m (Z_n v_+ - v^{I, \text{NF}})](t, \cdot) \|_{L^2} \leq C(A + B)B\epsilon^2 t^{\beta + \frac{1 + \delta}{4}}.\]

The same estimates hold true when $Z_n$ is replaced with $\Omega$.

**Proof.** By comparing equality (B.2.30), with $|I| = 1$ and $\Gamma^I = Z_n$, with (B.2.80) we see that $\chi(t^{-\sigma}D_x)[v^{I, \text{NF}} - (Z_n v)_-]$ corresponds to the first line in the right hand side of (B.2.80). Therefore, inequality (B.3.1) is automatically satisfied after (B.2.81), which was obtained by estimating the right hand side of (B.2.80) term by term. In order to prove (B.3.2), let us consider equality (B.2.30) but with $\chi(t^{-\sigma}D_x)$ replaced with $\chi(t^{-\sigma}D_x)x_m$. The $L^2$ norm of each product in the second to fourth line is bounded by

\[
t^\sigma \sum_{\mu, \nu = 0}^1 \left\| x_m^\mu \left( \frac{D_x}{D_x} \right)^\nu v_\pm(t, \cdot) \right\|_{L^\infty} \left\| (Z_m u)_\pm(t, \cdot) \right\|_{L^2} + \left\| u_\pm(t, \cdot) \right\|_{L^2} + \left\| D_1 u_\pm(t, \cdot) \right\|_{L^2},
\]

and then by the right hand side of (B.3.2) after (1.1.11), (B.1.5a) with $s = 0$, and (B.1.10b). Using lemma (B.2.2) with $L = L^2$ and $s > 0$ large enough to have $N(s) \geq 2$, we obtain that the $L^2$ norm of products in the first line of (the modified) (B.2.80) is bounded by

\[
\sum_{\mu, \nu = 0}^1 \left\| \chi_1(t^{-\sigma}D_x)[x_m^\mu \left( \frac{D_x}{D_x} \right)^\nu (Z_m v)_\pm(t, \cdot)] \right\|_{L^\infty} \left\| u_\pm(t, \cdot) \right\|_{L^2} + \sum_{\nu = 0}^1 \left\| \chi_1(t^{-\sigma}D_x)[x_m^\mu (Z_m v)_\pm(t, \cdot)] \right\|_{L^2} \left\| u_\pm(t, \cdot) \right\|_{H^s},
\]

for some smooth cut-off $\chi_1$, and hence by the right hand side of (B.3.2) after (1.1.11), (B.1.17) and (B.2.62) with $\Gamma = Z_m$. This concludes the proof of (B.3.2).

When $Z_n$ is replaced with $\Omega$, instead of referring to (B.2.80) one uses that

\[
2i\Omega (v^{\text{NF}} - v_-) = (D_1 \Omega v)(D_1 u) - (D_1 \Omega v)(D_1 u) + D_1[(\Omega v)(D_1 u) - (\Omega v)(D_1 u)]
\]

and applies the same argument as above to recover the wished estimates.

**Lemma B.3.2.** Let $v^{\text{NF}}$ be defined as in (3.1.3). There exists a constant $C > 0$ such that, for any $\chi \in C_0^\infty(\mathbb{R}^2)$, $\sigma > 0$ small, $m = 1, 2$,

(B.3.3a) \quad $\| \text{Op}_h^{m}(\chi(h^\sigma \xi))[tZ_n v^{\text{NF}}(t, tx)] \|_{L^2(dx)} \leq CB\epsilon t^{\frac{\delta}{2}}$,

(B.3.3b) \quad $\| \text{Op}_h^{m}(\chi(h^\sigma \xi))\mathcal{L}_m[tZ_n v^{\text{NF}}(t, tx)] \|_{L^2(dx)} \leq CB\epsilon t^{\frac{\delta}{2}}$,

for every $t \in [1, T]$.

**Proof.** Let us write $Z_n v^{\text{NF}}$ as follows:

(B.3.4) \quad $Z_n v^{\text{NF}} = Z_n(v^{\text{NF}} - v_-) + [Z_n v]_+ - v^{I, \text{NF}} + v^{I, \text{NF}} + \frac{D_n}{(D_x)} v^{\text{NF}} + \frac{D_n}{(D_x)} (v_- - v^{\text{NF}}),$
with $v^{I,NF}$ given by (B.2.27) with $|I| = 1$ and $\Gamma^{I} = Z_{n}$. From the fact that $\|tw(t,t^{*})\|_{L^{2}} = \|w(t^{*})\|_{L^{2}}$ and estimates (1.1.11), (3.1.8a), (B.2.50), (B.2.51), (B.2.53), (B.3.1), along with the following estimates (1.1.11), (3.1.8a), (B.2.50), (B.2.51), (B.2.53), it follows that

$$\|\chi(t^{-\sigma}D_{x})D_{n}\langle D_{x}\rangle^{-1}v^{NF}(t,\cdot)\|_{L^{2}} \leq \|\chi(t^{-\sigma}D_{x})D_{n}\langle D_{x}\rangle^{-1}(v_{-} - v^{NF})(t,\cdot)\|_{L^{2}} \leq CB\varepsilon t^{2},$$

we immediately obtain (B.3.3a).

From (B.3.4) we also derive that

(B.3.5) $\|\text{Op}_{h}^{w}(\chi(h^{\sigma}Q))L_{m}[tZ_{n}v^{NF}(t,tx)]\|_{L^{2}(dx)} \lesssim \|\text{Op}_{h}^{w}(\chi(h^{\sigma}Q))L_{m}[tZ_{n}(v^{NF} - v_{-})(t,tx)]\|_{L^{2}(dx)} + \|\text{Op}_{h}^{w}(\chi(h^{\sigma}Q))L_{m}[tZ_{n}v^{NF}(t,tx)]\|_{L^{2}(dx)}$

$$+ \|\text{Op}_{h}^{w}(\chi(h^{\sigma}Q))L_{m}[tD_{n}\langle D_{x}\rangle^{-1}v^{NF}(t,tx)]\|_{L^{2}(dx)} + \|\text{Op}_{h}^{w}(\chi(h^{\sigma}Q))L_{m}[tD_{n}\langle D_{x}\rangle^{-1}(v_{-} - v^{NF})(t,tx)]\|_{L^{2}(dx)}.$$

By relation (3.2.8) with $w = v^{I,NF}$ and estimates (B.2.50), (B.2.51), (B.2.53), it follows that

$$\|\text{Op}_{h}^{w}(\chi(h^{\sigma}Q))L_{m}[tv^{I,NF}(t,tx)]\|_{L^{2}} \leq CB\varepsilon t^{\frac{\beta}{2}},$$

while from (B.2.2) and (B.2.75b) we have that

$$\|\text{Op}_{h}^{w}(\chi(h^{\sigma}Q))L_{m}[tD_{n}\langle D_{x}\rangle^{-1}v^{NF}(t,tx)]\|_{L^{2}} \leq CB\varepsilon t^{\frac{\beta}{2}}.$$
In the following lemma we are going to prove that the product of the semiclassical wave function \( \tilde{u} \) with the Klein-Gordon one enjoys a better \( L^2 \) (resp. \( L^\infty \)) estimate than the one roughly obtained by taking the \( L^2 \) (resp. \( L^\infty \)) norm of the former times the \( L^\infty \) norm of the latter.

Estimates

\[
\|\tilde{v}(t, \cdot)\|_{L^2} \lesssim \|\tilde{v}(t, \cdot)\|_{L^\infty} \|\tilde{u}(t, \cdot)\|_{L^2} \leq CAB\varepsilon h^{-\frac{1}{2}},
\]

\[
\|\tilde{v}(t, \cdot)\|_{L^\infty} \lesssim \|\tilde{v}(t, \cdot)\|_{L^\infty} \|\tilde{u}(t, \cdot)\|_{L^\infty} \leq CA^2\varepsilon h^{-\frac{1}{2}} - \frac{d}{2},
\]

which follows from \((B.2.1a), (B.3.3), (B.3.9)\), can be in fact improved of a factor \( h^{1/2} \) (see \((B.3.7)\)). This comes from the fact that the main contribution to \( \tilde{u} \) is localized around manifold \( \Lambda_w \) introduced in \((3.2.43)\), whereas \( \tilde{v} \) concentrates around \( \Lambda_{kg} \) defined in \((1.2.66)\), and these two manifolds are disjoint.

**Figure B.1:** Manifolds \( \Lambda_{kg} \) and \( \Lambda_w \).

**Lemma B.3.3.** Let \( h = t^{-1}, \tilde{u}, \tilde{v} \) be defined in \((3.2.2)\), \( a_0(\xi) \in S_{0,0}(1) \), and \( b_1(\xi) = \xi_j \) or \( b_1(\xi) = \xi_j \xi_k|\xi|^{-1} \), with \( j, k \in \{1, 2\} \). There exists a constant \( C > 0 \) such that, for any \( \chi, \chi_1 \in C_0^\infty(\mathbb{R}^2) \), \( \sigma > 0 \), and every \( t \in [1, T] \), we have that

\[
(B.3.7a) \quad \|\text{Op}_h^w(\chi(h^\sigma \xi)a_0(\xi))\tilde{v}(t, \cdot)]\|_{L^2} \leq C(A + B)B\varepsilon h^{\frac{1}{2}} - \beta - \frac{\delta + \delta}{\sigma},
\]

\[
(B.3.7b) \quad \|\text{Op}_h^w(\chi(h^\sigma \xi)b_1(\xi))\tilde{u}(t, \cdot)]\|_{L^\infty} \leq C(A + B)B\varepsilon h^{-\beta} - \frac{\delta + \delta}{\sigma},
\]

with \( \beta > 0 \) small, \( \beta \to 0 \) as \( \sigma \to 0 \).

**Proof.** Before entering in the details of the proof, we warn the reader that \( C \) and \( \beta \) denote two positive constants that may change line after line, with \( \beta \to 0 \) as \( \sigma \to 0 \). Also, we will denote by \( R(t, x) \) any contribution, in what follows, that satisfies inequalities \((B.3.7)\), and by \( \chi_2 \) a smooth cut-off function, identically equal to 1 on the support of \( \chi_1 \), so that

\[
\text{Op}_h^w(\chi_1(h^\sigma \xi))\tilde{u} = \text{Op}_h^w(\chi_1(h^\sigma \xi))\text{Op}_h^w(\chi_2(h^\sigma \xi))\tilde{u},
\]

assuming that at any time \( \tilde{u} \) can be replaced with \( \text{Op}_h^w(\chi_2(h^\sigma \xi))\tilde{u} \). Finally, it is useful to remind that from \((3.2.2), (3.1.15), (3.1.20a), (3.1.20c)\), and a-priori estimates,

\[
(B.3.8) \quad \|\tilde{u}(t, \cdot)\|_{H_{h^2}^{\sigma+1, \infty}} + \sum_{|\xi| = 1} \|\text{Op}_h^w(\xi|\xi|^{-1})\tilde{u}(t, \cdot)\|_{H_{h^2}^{\sigma+1, \infty}} \leq CA\varepsilon h^{-\frac{1}{2}},
\]

191
After decomposition \((B.3.10)\) and estimates \((B.2.1a)\) and \((B.3.11b)\), we see that (B.2.75a).

First of all, we take \(\gamma \in C^\infty_c(\mathbb{R}^2)\) equal to 1 in a neighbourhood of the origin and with sufficiently small support, and define

\[
\tilde{v}_{\lambda \eta_p}(t, x) := \text{Op}_h(\gamma \left(\frac{x - p'(\xi)}{\sqrt{h}}\right) \chi(h^\sigma \xi) a_0(\xi)) \tilde{v}(t, x),
\]

\[
\tilde{v}_{\lambda \eta_p}(t, x) := \text{Op}_h\left((1 - \gamma) \left(\frac{x - p'(\xi)}{\sqrt{h}}\right) \chi(h^\sigma \xi) a_0(\xi)\right) \tilde{v}(t, x),
\]

with \(p(\xi) := \langle \xi \rangle\), so that (B.3.10)

\[
\text{Op}_h(\chi(h^\sigma \xi) a_0(\xi)) \tilde{v} = \tilde{v}_{\lambda \eta_p} + \tilde{v}_{\lambda \eta_p}.
\]

The following estimates hold:

\[
\|\tilde{v}_{\lambda \eta_p}(t, \cdot)\|_{L^\infty} \leq C A \varepsilon h^{-\beta},
\]

\[
\|\tilde{v}_{\lambda \eta_p}(t, \cdot)\|_{L^\infty} \leq C B \varepsilon h^{\frac{1}{2} - \beta - \frac{\delta}{4}}.
\]

The former one is a straight consequence of proposition \((1.2.39)\) with \(p = +\infty\) and \((B.3.9)\). On the other hand, if we write

\[
(1 - \gamma) \left(\frac{x - p'(\xi)}{\sqrt{h}}\right) \chi(h^\sigma \xi) a_0(\xi) = \sum_{j=1}^{2} \gamma_j \left(\frac{x - p'(\xi)}{\sqrt{h}}\right) \chi(h^\sigma \xi) a_0(\xi) \left(\frac{x - p'(\xi)}{\sqrt{h}}\right)
\]

with \(\gamma_j(z) := (1 - \gamma)(z)\), \(|z|^2\), such that \(|\partial_z \gamma_j(z)| \lesssim |z|^{-1-|\alpha|}\), and use \((1.2.39)\) with \(c(x, \xi) = \chi(h^\sigma \xi) a_0(\xi)\), we obtain that (B.3.12)

\[
\|\tilde{v}_{\lambda \eta_p}(t, \cdot)\|_{L^\infty} \lesssim \sum_{j=1}^{2} \sqrt{h} \left\| \text{Op}_h(\gamma_j \left(\frac{x - p'(\xi)}{\sqrt{h}}\right) \chi(h^\sigma \xi) a_0(\xi) \right\|_{L^\infty} + \sum_{j=1}^{2} \sqrt{h} \left\| \text{Op}_h(\gamma_j \left(\frac{x - p'(\xi)}{\sqrt{h}}\right) \partial_j \chi(h^\sigma \xi) a_0(\xi) \right\|_{L^\infty} + \sum_{j=1}^{2} \sum_{|\alpha|+2 = 2} \sqrt{h} \left\| \text{Op}_h(\partial_j \gamma_j \left(\frac{x - p'(\xi)}{\sqrt{h}}\right) \chi(h^\sigma \xi) a_0(\xi) \right\|_{L^\infty} + \left\| \text{Op}_h(r(x, \xi) \tilde{v}(t, \cdot)\right\|_{L^\infty},
\]

with \(r \in h^{1-\beta} S_{\frac{3}{2}, \sigma}((x-p'(\xi))/\sqrt{h})^{-1}\). Since \(\gamma_j\) vanishes in a neighbourhood of the origin, we derive from inequality \((3.2.17a)\), equation \((3.1.4)\) and relation \((3.2.8)\) with \(w = v^{NF}\), lemmas \((B.3.14)\) \(B.3.12\), and estimate \((B.2.75a)\), that the first sum in the above right hand side is bounded by the right hand side of \((3.3.7b)\). The same is true for the above second and third sums after \((3.2.17a)\) and lemma \((B.2.14)\) and for the above latter \(L^\infty\) norm because of proposition \((1.2.39)\) and estimate \((B.2.75a)\).

After decomposition \((B.3.10)\) and estimates \((B.2.1a)\), \((B.3.8)\), and \((B.3.11b)\), we see that

\[
\text{Op}_h(\chi(h^\sigma \xi) a_0(\xi)) \tilde{v} \text{Op}_h(\chi(h^\sigma \xi) b_1(\xi)) \tilde{u} = \tilde{v}_{\lambda \eta_p} \text{Op}_h(\chi(h^\sigma \xi) b_1(\xi)) \tilde{u} + R(t, x).
\]

192
For some suitably supported $\chi_0 \in C_0^\infty(\mathbb{R}^2)$, $\varphi \in C_0^\infty(\mathbb{R}^2 \setminus \{0\})$, we also consider the following decomposition

$$\text{Op}_h^w(\chi_0(h^\sigma \xi) b_1(\xi)) \tilde{u} = \text{Op}_h^w(\chi_0(h^{-1} \xi) b_1(\xi)) \tilde{u} + \sum_k \text{Op}_h^w((1 - \chi_0)(h^{-1} \xi) \varphi(2^{-k} \xi) \chi_1(h^\sigma \xi) b_1(\xi)) \tilde{u},$$

and observe that, from proposition [1.2.36] and the classical Sobolev injection,

$$\|\text{Op}_h^w(\chi_0(h^{-1} \xi) b_1(\xi)) \tilde{u}(t, \cdot)\|_{L^2} + \|\text{Op}_h^w(\chi_0(h^{-1} \xi) b_1(\xi)) \tilde{u}(t, \cdot)\|_{L^\infty} \lesssim h\|\tilde{u}(t, \cdot)\|_{L^2}.$$

Combining the above decomposition and estimate with (B.3.11a) and (B.2.1a) we derive that

$$(B.3.13) \quad \tilde{v}_{\Lambda_k} \text{Op}_h^w(\chi(h^\sigma \xi) b_1(\xi)) \tilde{u} = \sum_k \tilde{v}_{\Lambda_k} \text{Op}_h^w(\phi_k(\xi) b_1(\xi)) \tilde{u} + R(t, x),$$

where $\phi_k(\xi) := (1 - \chi_0)(h^{-1} \xi) \varphi(2^{-k} \xi) \chi(h^\sigma \xi)$. We can further decompose $\text{Op}_h^w(\phi_k(\xi) b_1(\xi)) \tilde{u}$ by defining

$$\tilde{v}_{\Lambda_k}^k(t, x) := \text{Op}_h^w \left( \gamma \left( \frac{|\xi|}{h^{1/2 - \sigma}} \right) \phi_k(\xi) b_1(\xi) \right) \tilde{u}(t, x),$$

and observe that

$$\left\| \tilde{v}_{\Lambda_k}^k(t, \cdot) \right\|_{L^2} \lesssim h^{\frac{1}{2} - \beta} \left[ \left\|\tilde{u}(t, \cdot)\right\|_{L^2} + \sum_{\mu, |\nu| = 0} \left\| (\theta_0(x) \Omega_h)^\mu M^\nu \text{Op}_h^w(\chi_2(h^\sigma \xi)) \tilde{u}(t, \cdot) \right\|_{L^2} \right]$$

$$\leq CB \varepsilon h^{\frac{1}{2} - \beta - \frac{1}{4}},$$

and

$$\left\| \tilde{v}_{\Lambda_k}^k(t, \cdot) \right\|_{L^\infty} \lesssim h^{-\beta} \left[ \left\|\tilde{u}(t, \cdot)\right\|_{L^2} + \sum_{\mu, |\nu| = 0} \left\| (\theta_0(x) \Omega_h)^\mu M^\nu \text{Op}_h^w(\chi_2(h^\sigma \xi)) \tilde{u}(t, \cdot) \right\|_{L^2} \right]$$

$$\leq CB \varepsilon h^{-\beta - \frac{1}{4}},$$

as follows by using the following equality

$$(1 - \gamma_1 \left( \frac{|\xi|}{h^{1/2 - \sigma}} \right) \phi_k(\xi) b_1(\xi) = \sum_{j=1}^2 \gamma_1^j \left( \frac{|\xi|}{h^{1/2 - \sigma}} \right) \left( \frac{x_j|\xi|}{h^{1/2 - \sigma}} \right) \phi_k(\xi) b_1(\xi),$$

with $\gamma_1^j(z) := (1 - \gamma_1(z) z_j |z|^2)^{-1}$, together with [1.2.32] with $a \equiv 1$, $p = 1$, and lemma [B.2.1].

Then, as the sum over $k$ in the right hand side of (B.3.13) is actually restricted to indices $k$ such that $h \lesssim 2^k \lesssim h^{-\sigma}$, the above estimates and (B.3.11a) imply that

$$\sum_k \tilde{v}_{\Lambda_k} \text{Op}_h^w(\phi_k(\xi) b_1(\xi)) \tilde{u} = \sum_k \tilde{v}_{\Lambda_k} \tilde{v}_{\Lambda_w}^k + R(t, x).$$

Moreover, using lemma [1.2.38] symbolic calculus and remark [1.2.22] each $\tilde{v}_{\Lambda_k} \tilde{v}_{\Lambda_w}^k$ in the above right hand side can be replaced with

$$\frac{\theta_h(x)}{|x|^2 - 1} \tilde{v}_{\Lambda_k} \frac{|x|^2 - 1}{|x|^2} \tilde{v}_{\Lambda_w}^k$$

193
up to a new remainder $R(t, x)$. Since $|\theta_h(x)(|x|^2 - 1)| \lesssim h^{-2\sigma}$ on the support of $\theta_h(x)$, from proposition \[1.2.36\] and estimates \([1.2.75a], [1.3.11a]\), we get that

\[
(B.3.14a) \quad \left\| \theta_h(x)\tilde{u}_{\Lambda_k}(t, \cdot) \tilde{u}_{\Lambda_k}^k(t, \cdot) \right\|_{L^2} \leq CB\varepsilon h^{-\frac{\alpha}{2} - \beta} \left\| \theta_h(x)(|x|^2 - 1)\tilde{u}_{\Lambda_k}^k(t, \cdot) \right\|_{L^\infty},
\]

\[
(B.3.14b) \quad \left\| \theta_h(x)\tilde{u}_{\Lambda_k}(t, \cdot) \tilde{u}_{\Lambda_k}^k(t, \cdot) \right\|_{L^\infty} \leq CA\varepsilon h^{-\beta} \left\| \theta_h(x)(|x|^2 - 1)\tilde{u}_{\Lambda_k}^k(t, \cdot) \right\|_{L^\infty}.
\]

Then the end of the proof relies on the fact that $\theta_h(x)(|x|^2 - 1)\tilde{u}_{\Lambda_k}^k$ can be expressed in terms of $h\tilde{M}\tilde{u}$. In fact, for a fixed $N \in \mathbb{N}$ and up to some negligible multiplicative constants, we have from proposition \([1.2.21]\) that

\[
(B.3.15) \quad \left[ \theta_h(x)(|x|^2 - 1) \right] \left[ \frac{\gamma \left( \frac{|x| - \xi}{h^{1/2 - \sigma}} \right)}{h^{1/2 - \sigma}} \phi_k(\xi) b_1(\xi) \right] = \gamma \left( \frac{|x| - \xi}{h^{1/2 - \sigma}} \right) \phi_k(\xi) b_1(\xi) \theta_h(x)(|x|^2 - 1)
\]

\[
+ h \left\{ \theta_h(x)(|x|^2 - 1), \gamma \left( \frac{|x| - \xi}{h^{1/2 - \sigma}} \right) \phi_k(\xi) b_1(\xi) \right\}.
\]

\[
+ \sum_{|a|=2} h^{\alpha} \partial_x^{|a|} \left[ \theta_h(x)(|x|^2 - 1) \right] \partial^\alpha \left[ \gamma \left( \frac{|x| - \xi}{h^{1/2 - \sigma}} \right) \phi_k(\xi) b_1(\xi) \right] + r_N(x, \xi),
\]

with

\[
(B.3.16) \quad r_N(x, \xi) = \frac{h^N}{(\pi h)^4} \sum_{|a|=N} \int e^{\frac{\pi (y - z)^2}{h}} \int_0^1 \partial_x^{|a|} \theta_h(x)(|x|^2 - 1) \left| (x + t\xi)(1 - t) \right|^{-N-1} dt \times \partial^\alpha \left[ \gamma \left( \frac{|x| - \xi}{h^{1/2 - \sigma}} \right) \phi_k(\xi) b_1(\xi) \right] \left| (x + \xi, \xi + \eta) \right| dy dz d\eta d\xi.
\]

As

\[
|x|^2 - 1 = x \cdot x - \xi \cdot \xi \frac{\xi}{|\xi|^2} = (x|\xi| - \xi \cdot x) + (x|\xi| - \xi),
\]

the first term in the right hand side of \([B.3.15]\) appears to be linear combination of products of the form $\gamma \left( \frac{|x| - \xi}{h^{1/2 - \sigma}} \right) \phi_k(\xi) a_0(\xi)(x_j\xi|\xi| - \xi_j)$, for some smooth compactly supported function $a(x)$, and $b_0(\xi)$ such that $|\partial^\alpha b_0(\xi)| \lesssim |\xi|^{-|\alpha|}$. From \([1.2.52a]\) and lemma \([1.2.1]\), we hence deduce that

\[
(B.3.17a) \quad \left\| \text{Op}_h^{\gamma} \left( \gamma \left( \frac{|x| - \xi}{h^{1/2 - \sigma}} \right) \phi_k(\xi) b_1(\xi) \theta_h(x)(|x|^2 - 1) \right) \tilde{u}(t, \cdot) \right\|_{L^\infty} \leq CB\varepsilon h^{\frac{\alpha}{2} - \beta - \frac{\lambda}{4}}.
\]

An explicit computation shows that

\[
\left\{ \theta_h(x)(|x|^2 - 1), \gamma \left( \frac{|x| - \xi}{h^{1/2 - \sigma}} \right) \phi_k(\xi) b_1(\xi) \right\}
\]

\[
= \sum_i h^\lambda \partial_x^i [\theta_h(x)(|x|^2 - 1)] \sum_j (\partial^i \gamma \left( \frac{|x| - \xi}{h^{1/2 - \sigma}} \right)) (x_j \xi_i - \delta_{ij}) \phi_k(\xi) b_1(\xi)
\]

\[
+ h \gamma \left( \frac{|x| - \xi}{h^{1/2 - \sigma}} \right) \phi_k(\xi) b_0(\xi)(x_j|\xi| - \xi_j),
\]

with $\delta_{ij} = 1$ being the Kronecker delta. One the one hand, since the first contribution to the above right hand side is still supported for $|x| < 1 - ch^{2\sigma}$, we can multiply and divide it by $|x|^2 - 1$ so that it writes as linear combination of terms of the form $h^\lambda \gamma_1 \left( \frac{|x| - \xi}{h^{1/2 - \sigma}} \right) \phi_k(\xi) a(x) b_0(\xi)(x_j|\xi| - \xi_j)$, for a new $\gamma_1 \in C_0^\infty (\mathbb{R}^2)$, and some new $a(x), b_0(\xi)$ with the same properties as the ones we
considered before. On the other hand, as \( \partial_q [\phi_k(x) b_1(x)] \) is uniformly bounded and supported for frequencies of size \( 2^k \), the second term in the above right hand side writes as linear combination of products of the form \( h^\gamma \left( \frac{x^\xi - \xi}{h^{1/2-\sigma}} \right) \phi_k^j(\xi) a(x) b_0(\xi) \), for some new \( \phi_k^j \in C_0^\infty(\mathbb{R}^2 \setminus \{0\}) \). Therefore, inequality (12.2.20b), proposition 1.2.30, and lemma B.2.1 give that

\[
\tag{B.3.18}
\left\| h \text{Op}_h^\mu \left\{ \theta_h(x)(|x|^2 - 1), \gamma \left( \frac{x^\xi - \xi}{h^{1/2-\sigma}} \right) \phi_k(x) b_1(x) \right\} \right\|_{L^\infty} \leq CB \varepsilon h^{\frac{1}{2} - \beta - \frac{m}{2}}.
\]

As concerns \(|\alpha|-\text{order terms}, \) for each fixed \( 2 \leq |\alpha| \leq N - 1, \) we find using (12.2.26) that they are given by

\[
h^{[\alpha]} \gamma \left( \frac{x^\xi - \xi}{h^{1/2-\sigma}} \right) \partial_q^\alpha [\theta_h(x)(|x|^2 - 1)] \partial_q^\beta (\phi_k(x) b_1(x))
\]

\[
+ \sum_{|\beta_1| + |\beta_2| = |\alpha| - 1} h^{[\alpha] - j(\frac{1}{2} - \sigma)} \gamma_j \left( \frac{x^\xi - \xi}{h^{1/2-\sigma}} \right) \tilde{b}_j(x) b_{j+\beta_1}(\xi) \partial_q^\beta (\phi_k(x) b_1(x)),
\]

for some \( \gamma_j, \tilde{b}_j \in C_0^\infty(\mathbb{R}^2) \). Since \( |\alpha| \geq 2 \) and \( |\partial_q^\mu (\phi_k(x) b_1(x))| \lesssim 2^{-k(|\mu| - 1)} \), for any \( \mu \in \mathbb{N}^2 \), by proposition 1.2.30 and lemma B.2.1 we obtain that the action of their quantization on \( \tilde{u} \) is estimated in the uniform norm by

\[
\tag{B.3.19}
\left\| \tilde{u}(t, \cdot) \right\|_{L^2} + \sum_{\mu, |\nu| = 0} \left\| (\theta_h)^{\mu} \text{Op}_h^\nu (\chi_1(h^\sigma \xi) \tilde{u}(t, \cdot)) \right\|_{L^2} \leq CB \varepsilon h^{\frac{1}{2} - \beta - \frac{m}{2}}.
\]

Finally, by integrating in \( dyd\zeta \) and using (12.2.24) in (B.3.16) we find that \( r_N(x, \xi) \) can be written as

\[
\sum_{j \leq N} h^{N - j(\frac{1}{2} - \sigma)} \frac{1}{\pi h^2} \int \phi_j (x + t \zeta)(1 - t)^{N-1} dt
\]

\[
\times \sum_{j \leq N} h^{N - j(\frac{1}{2} - \sigma)} \phi_j^l (\xi + \eta) \partial_q^j (\phi_k (\xi + \eta) b_{j+1}^{-N}(\xi + \eta) d\zeta d\eta,
\]

for some new smooth compactly supported \( \theta_N, \gamma_j, \phi_k^j \). From the last part of proposition 1.2.31 then follows that the quantization of the above integral is a bounded operator from \( L^2 \) to \( L^\infty \), with norm controlled by

\[
\sum_{j \leq N} h^{N - j(\frac{1}{2} - \sigma)} \phi_j^l (\xi + \eta) \partial_q^j (\phi_k (\xi + \eta) b_{j+1}^{-N}(\xi + \eta) d\zeta d\eta,
\]

if \( N \) is sufficiently large (e.g. \( N \geq 10 \)), and consequently that

\[
\tag{B.3.20}
\left\| \text{Op}_h^\mu(r_N(x, \xi)) \tilde{u}(t, \cdot) \right\|_{L^\infty} \lesssim h \left\| \tilde{u}^k(t, \cdot) \right\|_{L^2} \leq CB \varepsilon h^{1 - \frac{1}{2}}.
\]

Finally, summing up the above estimates with formulas from (B.3.15) to (B.3.19) we obtain that

\[
\left\| \theta_h(x)(|x|^2 - 1) \tilde{u}_\lambda(t, \cdot) \right\|_{L^\infty} \lesssim CB \varepsilon h^{\frac{1}{2} - \beta - \frac{m}{2}},
\]

which injected in (B.3.14) gives that \( \theta_h(x) \tilde{u}_{\lambda y}(\xi) \tilde{u}_\lambda^k \) is a remainder \( R(t, x) \). That concludes the proof of the statement.
Lemma B.3.4. Let \( \beta \) be defined in (B.3.22), \( \beta^J \) as in (B.3.21), \( a_0(\xi) \in S_{0,0}(1) \), and \( b_1(\xi) = \xi_j \) or \( b_1(\xi) = \xi_j \xi_k |\xi|^{-1} \), with \( j, k \in \{1, 2\} \). There exists a constant \( C > 0 \) such that, for any \( \chi, \chi_1 \in C_0^\infty(\mathbb{R}^2) \), \( \sigma > 0 \), and every \( t \in [1, T] \), we have that

\[
(B.3.22a) \quad \| \text{Op}_h^w(\chi(h^\sigma \xi a_0(\xi))\hat{\nu}(t, \cdot)) \|_{L^2} \leq C(A + B)B\varepsilon^2h^{\frac{5}{2} - \beta'},
\]

\[
(B.3.22b) \quad \| \text{Op}_h^w(\chi(h^\sigma \xi b_1(\xi))\hat{\nu}^J(t, \cdot)) \|_{L^\infty} \leq C(A + B)B\varepsilon^2h^{-\beta'},
\]

with \( \beta' > 0 \) small, \( \beta \to 0 \) as \( \sigma, \delta_0 \to 0 \).

Proof. The proof of this result is analogous to that of lemma B.3.3 except that, instead of referring to (B.3.8), we should use that

\[
(L.3.23) \quad \| \text{Op}_h^w(\chi(h^\sigma \xi))\hat{\nu}(t, \cdot) \|_{H^{\rho+1, \infty}} + \sum_{|\mu|=1} \| \text{Op}_h^w(\chi(h^\sigma \xi)\xi^{\mu})\hat{\nu}(t, \cdot) \|_{H^{\rho+1, \infty}} \leq CA^\varepsilon h^{-\frac{1}{2} - \beta + \frac{5}{4}},
\]

which is the semiclassical translation of (B.2.27), and to lemma B.2.9 instead of lemma B.2.1.

Lemma B.3.5. Let \( a_0(\xi) \in S_{0,0}(1) \), \( b_1(\xi) \in \{\xi_j, \xi_j \xi_k |\xi|^{-1}, |\xi|, j, k = 1, 2\} \), \( b_0(\xi) \in \{1, \xi_j |\xi|^{-1}, j = 1, 2\} \). There exists a constant \( C > 0 \) such that, for any \( \chi \in C_0^\infty(\mathbb{R}^2) \), \( \sigma > 0 \) small, and every \( t \in [1, T] \),

\[
(B.3.24) \quad \| \chi(t^{-\sigma}D_x)[a_0(D_x)u_-][b_1(D_x)u_-b_0(D_x)u_-] \|_{L^\infty} \leq C(A + B)AB\varepsilon^3t^{-\frac{5}{2} + \beta + \frac{5}{4} + \frac{1}{2}},
\]

with \( \beta > 0 \) small, \( \beta \to 0 \) as \( \sigma \to 0 \). Consequently

\[
(B.3.25) \quad \| \chi(t^{-\sigma}D_x)r_{kg}^{NF} \|_{L^\infty} \leq C(A + B)AB\varepsilon^3t^{-\frac{5}{2} + \beta + \frac{5}{4} + \frac{1}{2}},
\]

where \( r_{kg}^{NF} \) is given by (B.2.78).

Proof. We warn the reader that we denote by \( C \) and \( \beta \) two positive constants that may change line after line during this proof, with \( \beta \to 0 \) as \( \sigma \to 0 \). Moreover, we are going to denote generically by \( R(t, x) \) each term satisfying

\[
\| R(t, \cdot) \|_{L^\infty} \leq C(A + B)AB\varepsilon^3t^{-\frac{5}{2} + \beta + \frac{5}{4} + \frac{1}{2}}.
\]

From lemma B.3.2 with \( L = L^\infty \) and \( s > 0 \) large enough to have \( N(s) \geq 3 \), and a-priori estimates (L.1.11), we can reduce ourselves to estimate the \( L^\infty \) norm of the product in the left hand side of (B.3.2) when all its factors are supported for moderate frequencies less or equal than \( t^\sigma \), up to remainders \( R(t, x) \). Moreover, since

\[
(B.3.26a) \quad \| \chi(t^{-\sigma}D_x)a_0(D_x)[u^{NF} - u_-] \|_{L^\infty} \leq CA^2\varepsilon^2t^{-\frac{5}{2} + \beta + \frac{5}{4} + \frac{1}{2}},
\]

and

\[
(B.3.26b) \quad \| \chi(t^{-\sigma}D_x)b_1(D_x)[u^{NF} - u_-] \|_{L^\infty} \leq CA^2\varepsilon^2t^{-2 + \beta},
\]

196
as follows by \([B.2.77]\) and \([A.26b]\) with \(\rho = 2\) (as consequence of lemma \([A.8]\), together with a-priori estimates, we can also suppose \(\nu_-\) (resp. \(\nu_-\)) be replaced with \(\nu^{NF}\) (resp. \(\nu^{NF}\)) up to some new \(R(t,x)\). This reduces us to prove that

\[
\begin{aligned}
\|\chi(t^{-\sigma}D_x)a_0(D_x)v^{NF}\|_{L^\infty} &\leq C(A + B)AB\varepsilon^3t^{-\frac{1}{2}+\beta+\frac{3+\delta_1}{2}},
\end{aligned}
\]

or rather, reminding \([1.111a]\), to show that

\[
\begin{aligned}
\|\chi(t^{-\sigma}D_x)a_0(D_x)v^{NF}\|_{L^\infty} &\leq C(A + B)B\varepsilon^2t^{-2+\beta+\frac{3+\delta_1}{2}}.
\end{aligned}
\]

But after writing the above product in the semi-classical setting and reminding definition \([3.2.2]\), one can immediately check that this estimate is satisfied thanks to \([B.3.24]\), which concludes the proof of \([B.3.24]\).

The last part of the statement follows from \([B.111]\), the fact that

\[
\begin{aligned}
\|\chi(t^{-\sigma}D_x)\left[\frac{D_x}{\langle D_x \rangle} (v_+ - v_-) NL_w + D_1 [\langle D_x \rangle^{-1} (v_+ - v_-) NL_w] \right](t, \cdot)\|_{L^\infty} &\leq CA^3\varepsilon t^{-3+\sigma}
\end{aligned}
\]

for every \(t \in [1, T]\), which is consequence of \([B.1.3b]\) and a-priori estimate \([1.111a]\), and from the observation that the remaining contributions to \(t_{k\rho}^{NF}\) are products of the form

\[
[a_0(D_x)v_-]b_1(D_x)u_- R_1 u_-
\]

with \(a_0(\xi)\) equal to 1 or to \(\xi_j(\xi)^{-1}\), and \(b_1(\xi)\) equal to \(\xi_t\) or to \(\xi_j\xi_t|\xi|^{-1}\), for \(j = 1, 2\). \(\square\)

**Lemma B.3.6.** Under the same assumptions as in lemma \([B.3.3]\)

\[(B.3.27a)\]

\[
\|\chi(t^{-\sigma}D_x)\left[x_m[a_0(D_x)v_-]b_1(D_x)u_- b_0(D_x)u_-\right](t, \cdot)\|_{L^2(dx)} \leq C(A + B)^2B\varepsilon^3t^{-1+\beta+\frac{3}{2}},
\]

\[(B.3.27b)\]

\[
\|\chi(t^{-\sigma}D_x)\left[x_m[x_m[a_0(D_x)v_-]b_1(D_x)u_- b_0(D_x)u_-\right](t, \cdot)\|_{L^2(dx)} \leq C(A + B)^2B\varepsilon^3t^{\beta+\frac{3}{2}},
\]

for every \(t \in [1, T]\), \(m, n = 1, 2\), with \(\beta > 0\) small, \(\beta \rightarrow 0\) as \(\sigma \rightarrow 0\). Moreover,

\[(B.3.28a)\]

\[
\|\chi(t^{-\sigma}D_x)\left[x_m x_n R_{k\rho}^{NF}(t, \cdot)\right]\|_{L^2(dx)} \leq C(A + B)^2B\varepsilon^3t^{-1+\beta+\frac{3+\delta_1}{2}},
\]

\[(B.3.28b)\]

\[
\|\chi(t^{-\sigma}D_x)\left[x_m x_n R_{k\rho}^{NF}(t, \cdot)\right]\|_{L^2(dx)} \leq C(A + B)^2B\varepsilon^3t^{\beta+\frac{3+\delta_1}{2}}.
\]

**Proof.** We warn the reader that we will denote by \(C\) and \(\beta\) two positive constants that may change line after line, with \(\beta \rightarrow 0\) as \(\sigma \rightarrow 0\). We also denote by \(R(t,x)\) any contribution verifying

\[(B.3.29a)\]

\[
\|\chi(t^{-\sigma}D_x)\left[x_m R_{k\rho}(t, \cdot)\right]\|_{L^2(dx)} \leq C(A + B)^2B\varepsilon^3t^{-1+\beta+\frac{3+\delta_1}{2}},
\]

\[(B.3.29b)\]

\[
\|\chi(t^{-\sigma}D_x)\left[x_m x_n R_{k\rho}(t, \cdot)\right]\|_{L^2(dx)} \leq C(A + B)^2B\varepsilon^3t^{\beta+\frac{3+\delta_1}{2}}.
\]

Let us first notice that, after \([B.1.3b]\), \([B.1.11a]\), \([B.1.27a]\) and a-priori estimates, we have that

\[
\begin{aligned}
\|\chi(t^{-\sigma}D_x)\left[-x_m \frac{D_x}{\langle D_x \rangle} (v_+ - v_-) NL_w + x_m D_1 [\langle D_x \rangle^{-1} (v_+ - v_-) NL_w] \right](t, \cdot)\|_{L^2} &\lesssim t^\alpha \sum_{\mu=0}^1 \|x_m v_\mu(t, \cdot)\|_{L^2} \|NL_w(t, \cdot)\|_{L^\infty} &\leq CA^2B\varepsilon^3t^{-1+\sigma+\frac{3}{2}}
\end{aligned}
\]
and
\[
\left\| \chi(t^{-\sigma}D_x) \left[ -x_m x_n \frac{D_x}{(D_x)^{\mu}} (v_+ - v_-) NL_w + x_m x_n D_1 \left[ (D_x)^{-1} (v_+ - v_-) NL_w \right] (t, \cdot) \right] \right\|_{L^2} 
\lesssim t^\sigma \sum_{\mu_1, \mu_2 = 0}^1 \left\| x_m^\mu x_n^\mu v_+(t, \cdot) \right\|_{L^2} \left\| NL_w(t, \cdot) \right\|_{L^\infty} \leq C(A + B)A B\varepsilon^3 t^{\sigma + \frac{1}{2}}.
\]

Therefore, since from (B.1.111) and (B.1.11b) the remaining contributions to \( r_{k9}^{NF} \) are of the form
\[
[a_0(D_x)v_-][b_1(D_x)u_-]R_1 u_-
\]
with \( a_0(\xi) \) equal to 1 or to \( \xi_j(\xi)^{-1} \), and \( b_1(\xi) \) equal to \( \xi_1 \) or to \( \xi_j \xi_1 |\xi|^{-1} \), for \( j = 1, 2 \), estimates (B.3.28) will follow from (B.3.27). Our aim is hence to prove that the above product is a remainder \( R(t, x) \).

Applying lemma (B.3.2) with \( L = L^2 \), \( w_1 = x_n a_0(D_x)v_- \) (resp. \( w_1 = x_m x_n a_0(D_x)v_- \), \( s > 0 \) sufficiently large so that \( N(s) > 2 \), and using estimates (B.1.10a) (resp. (B.1.27a)), (1.11a), (1.11c), we can suppose all above factors truncated for moderate frequencies less or equal than \( t^\sigma \), up to remainders \( R(t, x) \). Let us also observe that, from (B.1.10b), (B.3.26b) and (1.11c),
\[
\left\| \chi(t^{-\sigma}D_x) \left[ \left[ x_m x_n a_0(D_x)v_- \right] (\chi(t^{-\sigma}D_x) b_1(D_x)(u^{NF} - u_-)) \right] (t, \cdot) \left( t, \cdot \right) \right\|_{L^2} 
\lesssim \sum_{\mu_1, \mu_2}^1 \left\| x_m^\mu x_n^\mu v_+(t, \cdot) \right\|_{L^\infty} \left\| \chi(t^{-\sigma}D_x) b_1(D_x)(u^{NF} - u_-) \right\|_{L^\infty} \left\| u_+(t, \cdot) \right\|_{L^2} 
\leq C(A + B) A^2 B C t^{-2 + \beta + \frac{\delta + \delta_j}{2}}.
\]

This means that we can actually replace \( u_- \) by \( u^{NF} \) up to some new \( R(t, x) \). Furthermore, we can also substitute \( \chi_1(t^{-\sigma}D_x)[x_m x_n a_0(D_x)v_-] \) with \( \chi(t^{-\sigma}D_x)[x_m x_n a_0(D_x)v_-] \), for any \( k \in \{0, 1\} \), up to a new remainder \( R(t, x) \) in consequence of a-priori estimate (1.1.11a), the fact that
\[
(B.3.30) \quad \left\| u^{NF}(t, \cdot) \right\|_{L^2} \leq C B \varepsilon t^{\frac{1}{2}},
\]
(see (B.2.1a) in semi-classical coordinates), and the following inequalities
\[
(B.3.31a) \quad \left\| \chi_1(t^{-\sigma}D_x) \left[ x_m a_0(D_x)(v^{NF} - v_-) \right] (t, \cdot) \right\|_{L^\infty} 
\lesssim \sum_{\mu_1, \mu_2, \mu_3}^1 t^\sigma \left\| x_m^\mu x_n^\mu v_+(t, \cdot) \right\|_{L^\infty} \left\| R_1^u(t, \cdot) \right\|_{L^\infty} \leq C(A + B) A e^{2} t^{-\frac{1}{2} + \varepsilon + \frac{\delta}{2}}
\]
and
\[
(B.3.31b) \quad \left\| \chi_1(t^{-\sigma}D_x) \left[ x_m x_n a_0(D_x)(v^{NF} - v_-) \right] (t, \cdot) \right\|_{L^\infty} 
\lesssim \sum_{\mu_1, \mu_2, \mu_3}^1 \left\| x_m^\mu x_n^\mu \left( \frac{D_x}{(D_x)^{\mu}} \right)^{\nu} v_+(t, \cdot) \right\|_{L^\infty} \left\| R_1^u(t, \cdot) \right\|_{L^\infty} \leq C(A + B) A e^{2} t^{\frac{1}{2} + \varepsilon + \frac{\delta}{2}},
\]
198
derived from \([B.1.10]\), \([B.1.10b]\), \([B.1.27b]\), \([1.1.1a]\) and \([1.1.11b]\). This reduces us to prove that, for \(k = 0, 1\),
\[
\left\| \left[ \chi_1(t^{-\sigma} D_x)x^k_m x_n a_0(D_x)u^{N_F} \right] \left[ \chi(t^{-\sigma} D_x)b_1(D_x)u^{N_F} \right] \left[ \chi(t^{-\sigma} D_x)b_0(D_x)u \right] (t, \cdot) \right\|_{L^2(dx)} \leq C(A + B)^2 B \varepsilon^{3k+1+k+\beta+\frac{1}{2}},
\]
or rather, after \([1.1.11a]\), that
\[
\left\| \left[ \chi_1(t^{-\sigma} D_x)x^k_m x_n a_0(D_x)u^{N_F} \right] \left[ \chi(t^{-\sigma} D_x)b_1(D_x)u^{N_F} \right] (t, \cdot) \right\|_{L^2(dx)} \leq C(A + B) B \varepsilon^{2k+1+k+\beta+\frac{1}{2}}.
\]
Passing to the semi-classical setting, this corresponds to prove that \((B.3.32)\)
\[
\sum_{k=0}^{1} \left\| \left[ \text{Op}_h^m(\chi_1(h^\sigma \xi))[x^k_m x_n \text{Op}_h^w(a_0(\xi))\tilde{v}] \left[ \text{Op}_h^w(\chi(h^\sigma \xi)b_1(\xi))\tilde{u} \right] (t, \cdot) \right\|_{L^2(dx)} \leq C(A + B) B \varepsilon^{h^{1-\beta-\frac{1}{2}}}.
\]
First of all let us notice that, from the commutation of \(x_n\) with \(\text{Op}_h^w(a_0(\xi))\) and definition \(\text{1.2.68}\) of \(\mathcal{L}_n\),
\[
(B.3.33) \quad x_n \text{Op}_h^m(a_0(\xi))\tilde{v} = h \text{Op}_h^w(a_0(\xi))\mathcal{L}_n \tilde{v} + \text{Op}_h^w \left( a_0(\xi) \frac{\xi_n}{\xi} \right) \tilde{v} - \frac{h}{2i} \text{Op}_h^w(\partial_{\xi_n} a_0(\xi)) \tilde{v},
\]
while from the commutation of \(x_m\) with \(\text{Op}_h^w(\chi(h^\sigma \xi)b_1(\xi))\), definition \(\text{1.2.49}\) of \(M_m\), and symbolic calculus,
\[
(B.3.34) \quad x_m \text{Op}_h^m(\chi(h^\sigma \xi)b_1(\xi))\tilde{u} = h \text{Op}_h^w(\chi(h^\sigma \xi)b_1(\xi)\xi^{-1})M_m \tilde{u} - \frac{h}{2i} \text{Op}_h^w(\partial_{\xi_m} \chi(h^\sigma \xi)b_1(\xi)\xi^{-1})\tilde{u} \nonumber + \text{Op}_h^w(\chi(h^\sigma \xi)b_1(\xi)\xi_m\xi^{-1})\tilde{u} - \frac{h}{2i} \text{Op}_h^w(\partial_{\xi_m} \chi(h^\sigma \xi)b_1(\xi))\tilde{u}.
\]
On the one hand, using equality \((B.3.33)\), lemma \(\text{B.2.14}\) and estimates \(\text{B.3.7a}, \text{B.3.8}\), we deduce that
\[
(B.3.35) \quad \left\| \left[ \text{Op}_h^w(\chi_1(h^\sigma \xi))[x_n \text{Op}_h^w(a_0(\xi))\tilde{v}] \left[ \text{Op}_h^w(\chi(h^\sigma \xi)b_1(\xi))\tilde{u} \right] \left( t, \cdot \right) \right\|_{L^2} \leq \left\| \left[ \text{Op}_h^w \left( \chi_1(h^\sigma \xi) \frac{\xi_n}{\xi} \right) \tilde{v} - \text{Op}_h^w(\chi(h^\sigma \xi)\xi_i)\tilde{u} \right] \left( t, \cdot \right) \right\|_{L^2} + C A B \varepsilon^{h^{\frac{1}{2}} - \beta - \frac{1}{2}}.
\]
On the other hand, when we deal with the \(L^2\) norm in the left hand side of \((B.3.32)\) corresponding to \(k = 1\) we first commute \(x_m\) with \(\text{Op}_h^m(\chi_1(h^\sigma \xi))\) and see, using symbolic calculus, that
\[
\left\| \left[ \text{Op}_h^w(\chi_1(h^\sigma \xi))[x_m \text{Op}_h^w(a_0(\xi))\tilde{v}] \left[ \text{Op}_h^w(\chi(h^\sigma \xi)b_1(\xi))\tilde{u} \right] \left( t, \cdot \right) \right\|_{L^2(dx)} \leq \left\| h \text{Op}_h^w((\partial_\chi_1)(h^\sigma \xi))[x_n \text{Op}_h^w(a_0(\xi))\tilde{v}] \left[ \text{Op}_h^w(\chi(h^\sigma \xi)b_1(\xi))\tilde{u} \right] (t, \cdot) \right\|_{L^2(dx)} + \left\| \text{Op}_h^w(\chi_1(h^\sigma \xi))[[x_m \text{Op}_h^w(a_0(\xi))\tilde{v}] \left[ x_m \text{Op}_h^w(\chi(h^\sigma \xi)b_1(\xi))\tilde{u} \right] \left( t, \cdot \right) \right\|_{L^2(dx)}.
\]
The first norm in the above right hand side satisfies an inequality analogous to \((B.3.35)\). In order to derive an estimate for the latter one, we first use equality \((B.3.33)\) and observe the following: from the semi-classical Sobolev injection and estimates \(\text{B.2.14}, \text{B.2.75}\), we have that
\[
(B.3.36) \quad \left\| \text{Op}_h^w(\chi_1(h^\sigma \xi)a_0(\xi))\mathcal{L}_n \tilde{v} \right\|_{L^2} \left\| \text{Op}_h^w(\chi(h^\sigma \xi)b_1(\xi)\xi_m\xi^{-1})M_m \tilde{u} (t, \cdot) \right\|_{L^2} \leq C(A + B) B \varepsilon^{h^{1-\delta_2-\beta}};
\]
a similar chain of inequalities as in (2.2.80), together with (3.1.20a), (3.1.20b) and (1.1.11), gives that for any $\theta \in ]0,1[$

\[(B.3.37) \quad \| \text{Op}_h^w(\chi_1(\epsilon^\sigma\xi)\alpha_0(\xi)) \mathcal{L}_n \tilde{\nu}| \mathcal{T}_0^\nu \rangle \|_{L^2} = t \| b_1(D_x)D_m|D_x|^{-1}u^{NF}(t,\cdot)\|_{L^\infty} \lesssim t \| u^{NF}(t,\cdot)\|_{H^{\beta}} \leq CA^{1-\theta}B^{9\varepsilon} \varepsilon t^{1+\frac{(1+4\beta)}{\varepsilon}}.
\]

Therefore, from equality (B.3.34) and estimates (B.2.7a), (B.3.8), (B.3.37) and (B.3.36), we find that

\[(B.3.38) \quad h \| \text{Op}_h^w(\chi_1(\epsilon^\sigma\xi)\alpha_0(\xi)) \mathcal{L}_n \tilde{\nu}[x_m \text{Op}_h^w(\chi(\epsilon^\sigma\xi)\beta_1(\xi))\tilde{\nu}] (t,\cdot)\|_{L^2} \leq C(A+B)B^{2}h^{\frac{1}{2}-\frac{\beta}{2}}.
\]

Moreover, using again (B.3.34) along with (B.2.1a), (B.2.1c), (B.3.2a) and (B.3.9),

\[
\begin{align*}
\| \text{Op}_h^w(\chi_1(\epsilon^\sigma\xi)a_0(\xi)) \tilde{\nu} + h \text{Op}_h^w(\chi_1(\epsilon^\sigma\xi)\partial_\xi a_0(\xi)) \tilde{\nu} \|_{L^2(dx)} &\leq \| \text{Op}_h^w(\chi_1(\epsilon^\sigma\xi)a_0(\xi)) \tilde{\nu} \|_{L^2(dx)} + C(A+B)B^{2}h^{1-\frac{\beta}{2}} \\
&\leq C(A+B)B^{2}h^{\frac{1}{2}-\beta}\frac{(1+4\beta)}{\varepsilon}.
\end{align*}
\]

Choosing $\theta \ll 1$ small enough, this concludes that

\[(B.3.39) \quad \| \text{Op}_h^w(\chi_1(\epsilon^\sigma\xi)) |x_m x_n \text{Op}_h^w(\alpha_0(\xi))\tilde{\nu}| \text{Op}_h^w(\chi(\epsilon^\sigma\xi)\beta_1(\xi))\tilde{\nu} |t,\cdot\|_{L^2(dx)} \leq C(A+B)B^2 h^{1-\beta}\frac{(1+4\beta)}{\varepsilon}
\]

and, together with (B.3.35), the proof of (B.3.32).

We can finally prove the following:

**Lemma B.3.7.** There exists a constant $C > 0$ such that, for any $\chi \in C_0^\infty(\mathbb{R}^2)$, $\sigma > 0$ small, and every $t \in [1,T]$,

\[(B.3.40) \quad \sum_{|\mu|=2} \| \text{Op}_h^w(\chi(\epsilon^\sigma\xi)) \mathcal{L}_m^\nu \tilde{\nu}(t,\cdot)\|_{L^2} \leq CB\varepsilon t^{\beta+\frac{\beta+4}{\varepsilon}},
\]

with $\beta > 0$ small, $\beta \to 0$ as $\sigma \to 0$.

**Proof.** From relation (3.2.9b) and the commutation between $\mathcal{L}_m$ and $\text{Op}_h^w(\chi(\xi))$ we deduce that

\[(B.3.41) \quad \| \text{Op}_h^w(\chi(\epsilon^\sigma\xi)) \mathcal{L}_m^\nu \tilde{\nu}(t,\cdot)\|_{H^1_k} \lesssim \sum_{\mu=0}^1 \left[ \| \text{Op}_h^w(\chi(\epsilon^\sigma\xi)) \mathcal{L}_m^{\nu}[tZ_nv^{NF}(t,tx)]\|_{L^2(dx)} + \right. \\
\| \text{Op}_h^w(\chi(\epsilon^\sigma\xi)) \mathcal{L}_m^{\mu}[t(tx_n)v^{NF}(t,tx)]\|_{L^2(dx)} \right],
\]

so the result of the statement follows from lemmas B.2.1a, B.2.1b and inequalities (B.3.6), (B.3.28) .

\[\Box\]
The sharp decay estimate of the Klein-Gordon solution with a Klainerman vector field

This last section is devoted to prove that, for any admissible vector field \( \Gamma \), the \( L^\infty(\mathbb{R}^2) \) norm of functions \( (\Gamma v)_\pm \), when restricted to moderate frequencies less or equal than \( t^\sigma \), for some small \( \sigma > 0 \), decays in time at the same sharp rate \( t^{-1} \) of the two-dimensional linear Klein-Gordon solution. This result is proved in lemma B.4.14 under the hypothesis that a-priori estimates \( (1.1.11) \) are satisfied in some fixed interval \( [1, T] \), with \( \varepsilon_0 < (2A + B)^{-1} \) and \( 0 < \delta \ll \delta_2 \ll \delta_1 \ll \delta_0 \ll 1 \) sufficiently small, and is fundamental when proving lemmas 2.1.2 and 2.1.3. All the other lemmas of this section are to be meant as preparatory intermediate results.

**Lemma B.4.1.** With the convention that \( D = D_1 \) whenever \( |I_1| + |I_2| = 2 \), \( D \in \{ D_j, D_t, j = 1, 2 \} \), otherwise, there exists a positive constant \( C > 0 \) such that, for any \( \chi \in C_0^\infty(\mathbb{R}^2) \), \( \sigma > 0 \) small, \( n = 1, 2 \), and every \( t \in [1, T] \),

\[
\sum_{|I_1| + |I_2| \leq 2 \atop |I_1| \leq 2} \left\| \chi(t^{-\sigma} D_x) \left[ x_n Q_0^{kg} (v^I_{\pm}, D u^I_{\pm}) \right] (t, \cdot) \right\|_{L^2(dx)} \leq C(A + B) B e^{2 t^{\beta/4}} \frac{\delta_1 + \delta_2}{t},
\]

with \( \beta > 0 \) small such that \( \beta \to 0 \) as \( \sigma \to 0 \).

**Proof.** We estimate the \( L^2 \) norms in the left hand side of \((B.4.1)\) separately.

- When \( |I_1| = 0, |I_2| = 2 \), we derive from \((B.1.10d)\) and \((1.1.1d)\) that

\[
\left\| \chi(t^{-\sigma} D_x) \left[ x_n Q_0^{kg} (v^I_{\pm}, D_1 u^I_{\pm}) \right] (t, \cdot) \right\|_{L^2(dx)} \lesssim \sum_{|\mu| = 0} \left\| x_n \left( \frac{D_x}{D_x} \right)^\mu v^I_{\pm} (t, \cdot) \right\|_{L^\infty} \| u^I_{\pm} (t, \cdot) \|_{H^1} \leq C(A + B) B e^{2 t^{\beta/4}} \frac{\delta_1 + \delta_2}{t};
\]

- When \( |I_1| = |I_2| = 1 \) and \( \Gamma^I_2 \in \{ \Omega, Z_m, m = 1, 2 \} \) is a Klainerman vector field we use inequalities \((B.2.22)\) with \( L = L^2 \), \( w_{j_n} = x_n (D_x (D_x)^{-1})^\mu v^I_{\pm} \) with \( |\mu| = 0, 1 \), and \( s \) large enough so that \( N(s) \geq 2 \), to derive that

\[
\left\| \chi(t^{-\sigma} D_x) \left[ x_n Q_0^{kg} (v^I_{\pm}, D_1 u^I_{\pm}) \right] (t, \cdot) \right\|_{L^2(dx)} \lesssim \sum_{|\mu| = 0} \left\| \chi(t^{-\sigma} D_x) \left[ x_n \left( \frac{D_x}{D_x} \right)^\mu v^I_{\pm} \right] (t, \cdot) \right\|_{L^\infty} \| u^I_{\pm} (t, \cdot) \|_{H^1} + \sum_{|\mu| = 0, 1} t^{-2} \left( \| x^\mu v^I_{\pm} (t, \cdot) \|_{L^2} + t \| x^\mu v^I_{\pm} (t, \cdot) \|_{L^2} \right) \left( \| u^I_{\pm} (t, \cdot) \|_{L^\infty} + \| D_t u^I_{\pm} (t, \cdot) \|_{H^1} \right)
\]

\[
\leq C B^2 e^2 t^{\frac{\delta_1 + \delta_2}{t}};
\]

where last estimate is deduced using \((B.1.5a), (B.1.17), (B.1.28), (B.2.62)\) and \((1.1.1d)\);

- When \( |I_1| = |I_2| = 1 \) and \( \Gamma^I_2 \) is a spatial derivative we use lemma \((B.2.22)\) with \( L = L^2 \), \( w_1 = x_n (D_x (D_x)^{-1})^\mu v^I_{\pm} \) with \( |\mu| = 0, 1 \), \( s \) large enough so that \( N(s) \geq 1 \), and again estimates
We estimate (B.4.3) is evidently satisfied when replaced with the 
\( \chi \Gamma \)

- When \(|I_1| + |I_2| \leq 1\), by the assumption derivative \( D \) can be equal to \( D_x \) or to \( D_t \). Then
  - If \(|I_1| = 0\), after (B.1.5a), (B.1.7), (B.1.10a) and (1.1.11)
    \[
    \left\| \chi(t^{-\sigma} D_x) \left[ x_n Q_0^{k\mathcal{S}}(v_{\pm}^1, Du_{\pm}^\|) \right] (t, \cdot) \right\|_{L^2(dx)} \\
    \lesssim \sum_{|\mu|=0}^1 \left\| \chi_1(t^{-\sigma} D_x) \left[ x_n \left( \frac{D_x}{\langle D_x \rangle} \right)^\mu v_{\pm}^1 \right] (t, \cdot) \right\|_{L^\infty} \|u_{\pm}(t, \cdot)\|_{H^2} \\
    + \sum_{|\mu|=0}^1 t^{-1} \|x^\mu v_{\pm}^1(t, \cdot)\|_{L^2} \|u_{\pm}(t, \cdot)\|_{H^*} \leq CB^2 \varepsilon^2 t^{\beta+\frac{1}{2}};
    \]
  - If \(|I_1| = 1\), \(|I_2| = 0\), using lemma [B.2.2] as done above, together with (B.1.5a), (B.1.10),
    (B.1.17), (B.2.62) and a-priori estimates, we derive that
    \[
    \left\| \chi(t^{-\sigma} D_x) \left[ x_n Q_0^{k\mathcal{S}}(v_{\pm}^1, Du_{\pm}^\|) \right] (t, \cdot) \right\|_{L^2(dx)} \\
    \lesssim \sum_{|\mu|=0}^1 \left\| \chi_1(t^{-\sigma} D_x) \left[ x_n \left( \frac{D_x}{\langle D_x \rangle} \right)^\mu v_{\pm}^1 \right] (t, \cdot) \right\|_{L^\infty} (\|u_{\pm}(t, \cdot)\|_{H^1} + \|D_t u_{\pm}^I(t, \cdot)\|_{L^2}) \leq C(A + B)B \varepsilon^2 t^{\frac{1}{2}};
    \]

- If \(|I_1| = 1\), \(|I_2| = 0\), we do it

**Lemma B.4.2.** There exists a positive constant \( C > 0 \) such that, for any \( \chi \in C_0^\infty(\mathbb{R}^2) \), \( \sigma > 0 \)
small, \( \rho \in \mathbb{N} \), and every \( t \in [1, T] \),

\[
\sum_{|I|=2} \left\| \chi(t^{-\sigma} D_x) V^I(t, \cdot) \right\|_{H_{\rho, \infty}} \leq CB \varepsilon t^{-1+\beta+\frac{1}{2}},
\]

with \( \beta > 0 \) small such that \( \beta \to 0 \) as \( \sigma \to 0 \).

**Proof.** Estimate (B.4.3) is evidently satisfied when \( \Gamma^I \) contains at least one spatial derivative
thanks to lemma [B.2.8]. We then focus on the case when \( \Gamma^I \) is the product of two Klainerman vector fields.
As \( v_{\pm}^I = -v_{\mp}^I \), we prove the statement for \( \chi(t^{-\sigma} D_x) v_{\pm}^I \). Moreover, from the
\( L^\infty - H_{\rho, \infty} \) continuity of \( \chi(t^{-\sigma} D_x) \) with norm \( O(\varepsilon^{\sigma\rho}) \), we can assume the \( H_{\rho, \infty} \) norm in (B.4.3)
replaced with the \( L^\infty \) one, up to a loss \( t^{\sigma\rho} \).

As done in lemma [B.2.8] instead of proving the statement directly on \( \chi(t^{-\sigma} D_x) v_{\pm}^I \) we do it
for \( \chi(t^{-\sigma} D_x) v_{\pm}^{I, NF} \), with \( v_{\pm}^{I, NF} \) introduced in (B.2.27) and considered here with \(|I| = 2\). This
is justified by inequality \[ \text{(B.2.43)}. \] From definition \[ \text{(B.2.27)} \] of \( v^{I,NF} \), equation \[ \text{(B.1.18a)} \] and equality \[ \text{(B.1.23)} \] one can check that

\[
[D_t + \langle D_x \rangle]v^{I,NF} = NL^{I,NF}_{k_2}
\]

(B.4.4)

where \( NL^{I,NF}_{k_2} = r^{I,NF}_{k_2}(t,x) + \sum_{|I_1|<2} c_{I_1,I_2} Q^{k_2}_{0}(v^{I_1 \pm}_{1}, Du^{I_2}_{\pm}) \),

with \( r^{I,NF}_{k_2} \) given by the same integral expression as in \[ \text{(B.2.46)} \] but with \( |I| = 2 \) (and hence having the explicit expression \[ \text{(B.2.47)} \]), and \( c_{I_1,I_2} \in \{-1,0,1\} \), \( c_{I_1,I_2} = 1 \) when \( |I_1| + |I_2| = 2 \) (in which case derivative \( D \) corresponds to \( D_1 \)). It is straightforward to show that inequalities \[ \text{(B.2.48)}, \text{(B.2.49)}, \text{(B.2.50)} \] hold even when \( |I| = 2 \), up to replacing \( \delta_2 \) with \( \delta_1 \). Therefore, using those latter ones together with

\[
\sum_{j=1}^{2} \| \chi(t^{-\sigma} D_x) Z_j v^{I,NF}(t,\cdot) \|_{L^2} \leq CB\varepsilon t^{\frac{\beta}{2}},
\]

which is consequence of \[ \text{(1.1.10a)} \] with \( k = 0 \) and of \[ \text{(B.2.29)} \] with \( j = 2 \), we derive that

\[
\| \chi(t^{-\sigma} D_x) v^{I,NF}(t,\cdot) \|_{L^\infty} \leq CB\varepsilon t^{\frac{\beta}{2}} + \sum_{j=1}^{2} C t^{-1+\beta} \| \chi(t^{-\sigma} D_x) \left[ x_j NL^{I,NF}_{k_2} \right](t,\cdot) \|_{L^2(dx)}.
\]

The only thing we need to show in order to prove the statement is hence that

(B.4.5) \[
\| \chi(t^{-\sigma} D_x) \left[ x_j NL^{I,NF}_{k_2} \right](t,\cdot) \|_{L^2(dx)} \leq C(A + B)B^{2+\frac{|I|}{2}}.
\]

But from \[ \text{(3.4.4)} \] and \[ \text{(3.2.17)} \] with \( |I| = 2 \) we have that

(B.4.6) \[
\begin{align*}
\| \chi(t^{-\sigma} D_x) \left[ x_j NL^{I,NF}_{k_2} \right](t,\cdot) \|_{L^2(dx)} & \lesssim \| x_j NL^{I}_{k_2}(t,\cdot) \|_{L^2} (\| u_{\pm}(t,\cdot) \|_{L^\infty} + \| R_1 u_{\pm}(t,\cdot) \|_{L^\infty}) \\
+ \sum_{|I_1|<2} t^\sigma \left( \| x_j^\mu v_{\pm}(t,\cdot) \|_{L^\infty} + \| x_j D_x v_{\pm}(t,\cdot) \|_{L^\infty} \right) \| v_{\pm}(t,\cdot) \|_{L^2} \| v_{\pm}(t,\cdot) \|_{H^2}\end{align*}
\]

so \[ \text{(B.4.5)} \] follows from a-priori estimates, \[ \text{(3.1.10a)}, \text{(B.2.24)} \] and \[ \text{(B.4.1)} \]. As \( \delta_2 \ll \delta_1 \ll \delta_0 \), that concludes that

(B.4.7) \[
\| \chi(t^{-\sigma} D_x) v^{I,NF}(t,\cdot) \|_{L^\infty} \leq CB\varepsilon t^{-1+\beta+\frac{\delta_0}{2}}.
\]

**Lemma B.4.3.** There exists a positive constant \( C > 0 \) such that, for any multi-index \( I \) of length 2, any \( \chi \in C_0^\infty(\mathbb{R}^2) \), \( \sigma > 0 \) small, \( j = 1,2 \), and every \( t \in [1,T] \)

(B.4.8) \[
\| \chi(t^{-\sigma} D_x) \left[ x_j (\Gamma^I v)_{\pm} \right](t,\cdot) \|_{L^\infty} \leq CB\varepsilon t^{\beta+\frac{\delta_0}{2}},
\]

with \( \beta > 0 \) small, \( \beta \to 0 \) as \( \sigma \to 0 \).
Proof. If $\Gamma'$ contains at least one spatial derivative $[B.4.8]$ is satisfied after (B.1.11b), (B.1.10b) and (B.2.62). Let us then assume that $\Gamma'$ is produced of two Klainerman vector fields.

From equation (B.1.18a), equality (B.1.9b) with $t \geq 0$, equation (B.4.9) with $x = \chi_{O}(t)$, we derive that

$$\|\chi(t^{-\sigma}D_x)\|_{L^{\infty}(dx)} \lesssim t^\sigma \|Z_j(\Gamma'v)_-(t,\cdot)\|_{L^2} + t \|\chi(t^{-\sigma}D_x)(\Gamma'v)_-(t,\cdot)\|_{L^\infty} + t^\sigma \|\chi(t^{-\sigma}D_x) x_j \chi(\Gamma' NL_{k\beta})(t,\cdot)\|_{L^\infty}.$$

Reminding (B.1.23) and applying lemma B.2.2 with $L = L^\infty$ and $w_1 = (D_x(D_x)^{-1})^\mu v_1^\sigma$, for $|\mu| = 0, 1$, to the contribution coming from the first quadratic term in the right hand side of (B.1.23), we find that there is some $\chi_1 \in C^\infty_0(\mathbb{R}^2)$ such that

$$\|\chi(t^{-\sigma}D_x)\|_{L^{\infty}(dx)} \lesssim \sum_{\mu,\nu = 0}^1 \|\chi_1(t^{-\sigma}D_x) x_j \chi(\Gamma' v_\pm)(t,\cdot)\|_{L^\infty} \|R^\nu u_\pm(t,\cdot)\|_{H^2,\infty} + t^{-N(s)} \sum_{\mu = 0}^1 \|x_j \chi(\Gamma' v_\pm)(t,\cdot)\|_{L^2} \|u_\pm(t,\cdot)\|_{H^s} + \sum_{(j,\ell) \in \mathcal{S}(l)} \|\chi(t^{-\sigma}D_x) x_j \chi_1 \chi(\Gamma' NL_{k\beta})(v_\pm^1, Dv_\pm^1)(t,\cdot)\|_{L^\infty}.$$

Therefore, picking $s > 0$ large so that $N(s) > 1$ and using the $L^2 - L^\infty$ continuity of $\chi_1(t^{-\sigma}D_x)$ with norm $O(t^\sigma)$, together with the estimates (B.1.11c), (B.1.11d) with $k = 2$, along with (B.4.1), we find at first that

$$\|\chi(t^{-\sigma}D_x)\|_{L^{\infty}(dx)} \leq CAB \varepsilon t^{\frac{1}{2}+\sigma+\frac{\delta}{2}}.$$

Injecting the above estimate, together with (B.1.11d) and (B.4.3), into (B.4.9) we derive that

$$\|\chi(t^{-\sigma}D_x)\|_{L^{\infty}(dx)} \leq C B \varepsilon t^{\frac{1}{2}+\sigma+\frac{\delta}{2}}.$$

The above inequality holds for any $\chi \in C^\infty_0(\mathbb{R}^2)$, so injecting it into (B.4.10) and using again a-priori estimates, (B.1.17), (B.4.1), together with the fact that $\beta + (\delta + \delta_2)/2 \leq \delta_1/2$ as $\beta$ is as small as we want as long as $\sigma$ is small and $\delta, \delta_2 \ll \delta_1$, we find the following enhanced estimate

$$\|\chi(t^{-\sigma}D_x)\|_{L^{\infty}(dx)} \leq C(A + B) B \varepsilon t^{\frac{1}{2}+\sigma+\frac{\delta}{2}}.$$

Consequently, summing up this latter one with (B.1.11d) and (B.4.3), we end up with (B.4.8). \[\square\]

**Lemma B.4.4.** Let $\Gamma \in \mathbb{Z}$ be an admissible vector field. There exists a positive constant $C$ such that, for any $\chi \in C^\infty_0(\mathbb{R}^2)$, $\sigma > 0$ small, $i, j = 1, 2$, and every $t \in [1, T]$,

$$\|\chi(t^{-\sigma}D_x) x_j(\Gamma v_\pm(t,\cdot))\|_{L^\infty(dx)} \leq C B \varepsilon t^{1+\beta+\frac{\delta}{2}},$$

with $\beta > 0$ such that $\beta \to 0$ as $\sigma \to 0$. 204
Proof. Since \( (\Gamma v)_+ = -\overline{(\Gamma v)}_+ \) we reduce to prove that inequality (B.4.11) holds true for \((\Gamma v)_-\).
Moreover, we only focus on the case where \( \Gamma \in \{ \Omega, Z_m, m = 1, 2 \} \) is a Klainerman vector field, as (B.4.11) with \( \Gamma \) being a spatial derivative is simply a consequence of (B.1.27b).

We remind that \((\Gamma v)_-\) is solution to non-linear Klein-Gordon equation (B.1.18a) with \( \Gamma^I = \Gamma \), and that the non-linearity \( \Gamma NL_{kg} \) is given by (B.7.20a). Hence, multiplying \( x_i \) to relation (B.1.9b) with \( w = (\Gamma v)_- \) and making use of lemma (B.2.2) we find that

\[
\begin{align*}
(\text{B.4.12}) \\
\frac{1}{\mu} \sum_{\mu=0}^1 t^\sigma \| \chi(t^{-\sigma} D_x) [x_i x_j (\Gamma v)_- (t, \cdot)] \|_{L^\infty(dx)} & \lesssim \sum_{\mu=0}^1 t^\sigma \| \chi(t^{-\sigma} D_x) [x_i x_j \Gamma NL_{kg}] (t, \cdot) \|_{L^2(dx)} \\
& \lesssim \sum_{\mu_1, \mu_2, \nu=0}^1 t^\sigma \| t^{\mu_1} x_j^{\mu_2} (\Gamma v)_- (t, \cdot) \|_{L^2(dx)} \| R_1^{\nu} u_\pm (t, \cdot) \|_{H^2, \infty} \\
& \quad + \sum_{\mu, |\nu|=0}^1 t^\mu \| t^{\nu} x_i x_j \left( \frac{D_x}{D_{\Gamma}} \right)^\nu u_\pm (t, \cdot) \|_{L^\infty(dx)} (\| (\Gamma u)_\pm (t, \cdot) \|_{H^1} + \| u_\pm (t, \cdot) \|_{H^1} + \| D_t u_\pm (t, \cdot) \|_{L^2}) \\
& \quad \leq C(A + B) B \varepsilon t^{\frac{3}{2} + \sigma + \frac{\mu}{2}}.
\end{align*}
\]

Injecting this estimate, along with \( (\text{B.2.42}), (\text{B.2.62}), (\text{B.4.3}) \) and \( (\text{B.4.8}) \), into (B.4.12) we deduce that for any smooth cut-off function \( \chi \)

\[
(\text{B.4.14}) \quad \frac{1}{\mu} \sum_{\mu=0}^1 \frac{1}{\mu} \| \chi(t^{-\sigma} D_x) [x_i x_j (\Gamma v)_- (t, \cdot)] \|_{L^\infty(dx)} \leq C B \varepsilon t^{\frac{3}{2} + \sigma + \frac{\mu}{2}}.
\]

Now, if we change the approach of bounding the \( L^\infty(dx) \) norm of \( x_i x_j Q_{kg}^b ((\Gamma v)_-), D_t u_\pm \), which is one of the contributions to \( x_i x_j \Gamma NL_{kg} \) after (B.1.20a), and make use of lemma (B.2.2) with \( L = L^\infty \) instead of (B.4.13), we see that

\[
\begin{align*}
(\text{B.4.13}) \\
\frac{1}{\mu} \sum_{\mu=0}^1 \| \chi(t^{-\sigma} D_x) [x_i x_j \Gamma NL_{kg}] (t, \cdot) \|_{L^\infty(dx)} & \lesssim \sum_{\mu_1, \mu_2, \nu=0}^1 \| t^{\mu_1} x_j^{\mu_2} (\Gamma v)_- (t, \cdot) \|_{L^\infty(dx)} \| R_1^{\nu} u_\pm (t, \cdot) \|_{H^2, \infty} \\
& \quad + \sum_{\mu, |\nu|=0}^1 \| t^{\mu} x_i x_j \left( \frac{D_x}{D_{\Gamma}} \right)^\nu u_\pm (t, \cdot) \|_{L^\infty(dx)} (\| (\Gamma u)_\pm (t, \cdot) \|_{H^1} + \| u_\pm (t, \cdot) \|_{H^1} + \| D_t u_\pm (t, \cdot) \|_{L^2}).
\end{align*}
\]
Then, choosing $s > 0$ sufficiently large so that $N(s) \geq 3$ and using again (1.11), (B.1.10b), (B.1.17) with $k = 1, (B.2.76), (B.2.88), (B.2.62)$, together with (B.4.13), we obtain that

$$
\sum_{\mu=0}^{1} \| |x|D_x| [x^i x_j \Gamma_{NLk}] (t, \cdot) \|_{L^\infty(dx)} \leq C(A + B)B_\varepsilon c^{\frac{3}{2}+\frac{1}{2}}
$$

which enhances (B.4.13) of a factor $t^{1/2}$. Combining the above estimate with (B.2.42), (B.2.62), (B.4.3) and (B.4.8), we finally end up with the result of the statement. \[\square\]

**Lemma B.4.5.** Let $\Gamma \in \{ \Omega, Z_m, m = 1,2 \}$ be a Klaiber vector field, $v^{I,NF}$ the function defined in (2.2.27) with $|I| = 1$ and $\Gamma^I = \Gamma$, and $B_{(j_1, j_2, j_3)}^k (\xi, \eta)$ the multiplier introduced in (2.2.12) (resp. in (2.2.13)) for any $k = 1, 2$ (resp. $k = 3$), any $j_i \in \{ +, - \}$ for $i = 1, 2, 3$. Let us define

$$
V^I_{\Gamma, NF}(t, x) := v^{I, NF}(t, x) - \frac{i}{4(2\pi)^2} \sum_{j_1, j_2 \in \{+, -\}} \int e^{ix \cdot \xi} B_{(j_1, j_2, +)}^1 (\xi, \eta) \hat{v}_{j_1}(\xi - \eta) \langle \Gamma_{j_2} \rangle \eta d\xi d\eta
\]

$$
+ \delta \frac{i}{4(2\pi)^2} \sum_{j_1, j_2 \in \{+, -\}} \int e^{ix \cdot \xi} B_{(j_1, j_2, +)}^2 (\xi, \eta) \hat{v}_{j_1}(\xi - \eta) \hat{v}_{j_2}(\eta) d\xi d\eta
\]

$$
+ \delta \frac{i}{4(2\pi)^2} \sum_{j_1, j_2 \in \{+, -\}} \int e^{ix \cdot \xi} B_{(j_1, j_2, +)}^3 (\xi, \eta) \hat{v}_{j_1}(\xi - \eta) \hat{v}_{j_2}(\eta) d\xi d\eta,
$$

where $\delta$ (resp. $\delta_2$) is equal to 1 if $\Gamma = \Omega$ (resp. if $\Gamma = Z_1$), 0 otherwise. There exists a constant $C > 0$ such that, for any $\chi \in C_0^\infty(\mathbb{R}^2)$, $\sigma > 0$, and every $t \in [1, T]$,

$$
\| \chi(t^{-\sigma}D_x)(V^I_{\Gamma, NF} - (\Gamma v)_-)(t, \cdot) \|_{L^\infty} \leq C(A + B)A\varepsilon c^{\frac{3}{2}} t^{-\frac{3}{2}}.
$$

Moreover, for every $m = 1, 2$ and $t \in [1, T]$,

$$
\| \| \chi(t^{-\sigma}D_x)Z_m(V^I_{\Gamma, NF} - (\Gamma v)_-)(t, \cdot) \|_{L^2} \leq C(A + B)B_\varepsilon c^{\frac{3}{2}+\frac{3}{2}} + \delta.
$$

**Proof.** From definition (B.4.15) of $V^I_{\Gamma, NF}$ and equalities (A.15), (A.16), we find that

$$
V^I_{\Gamma, NF} - (\Gamma v)_- = v^{I, NF} - (\Gamma v)_-
\]

$$
- \frac{i}{2} [(D_1 v)(D_1 \Gamma u) - (D_1 v)(D_1 \Gamma u) + D_1 [v(D_1 \Gamma u)] - (\langle D_x \rangle v)(D_1 \Gamma u)]
\]

$$(B.4.18)
\]

$$
+ \delta \frac{i}{2} [(D_1 v)(D_2 u) - (D_2 v)(D_2 u) + D_2 [v(D_2 u)] - (\langle D_x \rangle v)(D_2 u)]
\]

$$
+ \delta_2 \frac{i}{2} [(D_1 v)(D_2 u) + v(|D_1|^2 u) - (\langle D_x \rangle v)(D_2 u)],
$$

where $v^{I, NF} - (\Gamma v)_-$ has the explicit expression (B.2.30). We use (1.10), (1.10) and lemma (B.2.2) with $L = L^\infty$, $w_1 = R^\mu u_\pm$ (resp. $w_1 = R^\mu (\Gamma u)_\pm$) for $\mu = 0, 1$, and $s > 0$ large enough to have $N(s) \geq 2$, in order to estimate the $L^\infty$ norm of products appearing in (B.2.30) (resp. in the second line in the above right hand side). For some new $\chi_1 \in C_0^\infty(\mathbb{R}^2)$ we have that

$$
\| \chi(t^{-\sigma}D_x)(V^I_{\Gamma, NF} - (\Gamma v)_-)(t, \cdot) \|_{L^\infty} \lesssim \| \chi(t^{-\sigma}D_x)(v^{I, NF} - (\Gamma v)_-)(t, \cdot) \|_{L^\infty}
$$

$$
+ \sum_{|\mu|=0} t^{\sigma} \| v_\pm(t, \cdot) \|_{H^{1, \infty}} \| \chi_1(t^{-\sigma}D_x)R^\mu_1 (\Gamma u)_\pm(t, \cdot) \|_{L^\infty} + t^{-2} \| v_\pm(t, \cdot) \|_{H^{1, \infty}} \| (\Gamma u)_\pm(t, \cdot) \|_{L^2}
$$

$$
+ \sum_{|\mu|=0} t^{\sigma} \| v_\pm(t, \cdot) \|_{H^{1, \infty}} \| R^\mu_1 u_\pm(t, \cdot) \|_{H^{2, \infty}},
$$
In order to derive (B.4.17) we apply Estimate (B.4.16) follows then from (1.1.11), (B.2.42) and (B.2.57).

\[
\chi(t^{-\sigma}D_x)(v^{\mu NF} - (\Gamma v)_-)(t, \cdot) \lesssim \sum_{\mu=0}^{1} t^\sigma \| \chi(t^{-\sigma}D_x)(\Gamma v)_+(t, \cdot)\|_{L^\infty} \| R^n u_\pm(t, \cdot)\|_{L^\infty} + t^{-2} \| (\Gamma v)_\pm(t, \cdot)\|_{L^2}(u_\pm(t, \cdot))_{H^s}.
\]

Estimate (B.4.16) follows then from (1.1.11), (B.2.42) and (B.2.57).

In order to derive (B.4.17) we apply \( Z_m \) to (B.4.18) and use the Leibniz rule, reminding formulas (B.2.39). Among the quadratic terms coming out from the action of \( Z_m \) on the second line in (B.4.18) we see appear products where \( W \) is acting on \( v \) and \( \Gamma \) on \( w \). We estimate the \( L^2 \) norm of those ones, when truncated by operator \( \chi(t^{-\sigma}D_x) \), using inequalities (B.2.24) with \( L = L^2 \), \( w = u \), \( w_j = (D_x(D_v)^{-1})^\mu Z_m v \) for \( |\mu| = 0, 1 \), and \( s > 0 \) large enough to have \( N(s) > 1 \). We bound instead the \( L^2 \) norm of all other remaining products with the \( L^\infty \) norm of factor that does not contain any vector field times the \( L^2 \) norm of the remaining one. Hence

(B.4.19)
\[
\left\| \chi(t^{-\sigma}D_x)Z_m \left( V_\Gamma^{NF} - (\Gamma v)_- \right)(t, \cdot) \right\|_{L^2} \lesssim \left\| \chi(t^{-\sigma}D_x)Z_m \left( v^{\mu NF} - (\Gamma v)_- \right)(t, \cdot) \right\|_{L^2} + t^\sigma \left\| \chi(t^{-\sigma}D_x)(Z_m v)_\pm(t, \cdot) \right\|_{L^\infty} \left\| (\Gamma u)_\pm(t, \cdot) \right\|_{L^2} + t^{-2} \left\| (\Gamma v)_\pm(t, \cdot) \right\|_{L^2} \left\| u_\pm(t, \cdot) \right\|_{H^s} + \left\| D_t u_\pm(t, \cdot) \right\|_{H^s} + \left\| u_\pm(t, \cdot) \right\|_{H^s} + \left\| D_t u_\pm(t, \cdot) \right\|_{L^2}.
\]

and estimate (B.4.17) is obtained from (1.1.11), (B.1.5a), (B.1.7), (B.1.17), (B.2.29) with \( j = 1 \), and (B.2.42).

**Lemma B.4.6.** Let \( \Gamma \in \{ \Omega, Z_m, m = 1, 2 \} \) be a Klainerman vector field, \( V_\Gamma^{NF} \) the function defined in (B.4.15) and

(B.4.20)
\[
\tilde{V}_\Gamma(t, x) := tV_\Gamma^{NF}(t, tx).
\]

There exists a positive constant \( C > 0 \) such that, for any \( \chi \in C_0^\infty(\mathbb{R}^2) \), \( \sigma > 0 \) small, and every \( t \in [1, T] \),

- \( \| \tilde{V}_\Gamma(t, \cdot) \|_{L^2} \leq C B t^{\frac{\delta}{2}} \),
- \( \sum_{|\mu|=1} \| \text{Op}_h^\mu(\chi(\sigma \xi))L^\mu \tilde{V}_\Gamma(t, \cdot) \|_{L^2} \leq C B t^{\frac{\delta}{2}} \).

**Proof.** Let us recall equalities (B.2.30) with \( \Gamma^I = \Gamma \) and (B.4.18). From a-priori estimates we immediately derive that, for every \( t \in [1, T] \),

\[
\| [V_\Gamma^{NF} - (\Gamma v)_-](t, \cdot) \|_{L^2} \leq C A B t^{\frac{\delta}{2}} + \frac{\delta}{4} + \sigma,
\]

and consequently that

(B.4.22)
\[
\| \tilde{V}_\Gamma(t, \cdot) \|_{L^2} = \| V_\Gamma^{NF}(t, \cdot) \|_{L^2} \leq C B t^{\frac{\delta}{2}}.
\]

207
Using definition (B.4.15) one can check that $V_T^{NL}$ is solution to
\[(B.4.23) \quad [D_t + \langle D_x \rangle] V_T^{NL}(t, x) = NL_T^{kg,c}(t, x) - \delta Z_1 Q_0^{kg} (v_\pm, Q_0^w (v_\pm, D_1 v_\pm)) \]
with
\[(B.4.24) \quad NL_T^{kg,c}(t, x) = r_k^{I,NF}(t, x) - \frac{i}{4(2\pi)^2} \int e^{ix \cdot \xi} B_{(j_1 j_2, +)}(\xi, \eta) \left[ NL_{k\eta}(\xi - \eta) (\Gamma u)_{(j_1 j_2)}(\eta) - \hat{v}_{j_1}(\xi - \eta) \hat{\Gamma} NL_{\eta\eta}(\eta) \right] d\xi d\eta \]
\[+ \delta_1 \frac{i}{4(2\pi)^2} \int e^{ix \cdot \xi} B_{(j_1 j_2, +)}(\xi, \eta) \left[ NL_{k\eta}(\xi - \eta) \hat{u}_{j_2}(\eta) - \hat{v}_{j_1}(\xi - \eta) \hat{\Gamma} NL_{\eta\eta}(\eta) \right] d\xi d\eta \]
and $r_k^{I,NF}$ given by (B.2.46) (or, explicitly, by (B.2.47)) with $I = 1$. Superscript $c$ in $NL_T^{kg,c}$ stands for cubic and wants to stress out the fact that, passing from function $(\Gamma v)_-$ to $V_T^{NF}$, we have replaced all quadratic terms in the right hand side of (B.1.18a) (when $I = 1$ and $\Gamma^I = \Gamma$) with cubic ones. Hence, from relation (B.2.3a) with $w = V_T^{NF}$ and equation (B.4.23) we get that
\[(B.4.25) \quad \left\| \chi(t^{\sigma} D_x) Z_m V_T^{NF}(t, \cdot) \right\|_{L^2} + \left\| \chi(t^{\sigma} D_x) \left[ x_m NL_T^{kg,c}(t, \cdot) \right] \right\|_{L^2(dx)} + \delta Z_1 \left\| \chi(t^{\sigma} D_x) \left[ x_m Q_0^{kg} (v_\pm, Q_0^w (v_\pm, D_1 v_\pm)) \right] \right\|_{L^2(dx)} \]
and $v_\pm$ are chosen sufficiently small so that $3\sigma + \delta_2 \leq \delta_1/2$, as $\delta_2 \ll \delta_1$, it is straightforward to see that
\[(B.4.26) \quad \left\| \chi(t^{\sigma} D_x) Z_m V_T^{NF}(t, \cdot) \right\|_{L^2} \leq C B \epsilon t^{\frac{\delta_1}{2}}. \]
Moreover, from (B.1.3a), (B.1.10b) and a-priori estimates,
\[(B.4.27) \quad \left\| \chi(t^{\sigma} D_x) \left[ x_m Q_0^{kg} (v_\pm, Q_0^w (v_\pm, D_1 v_\pm)) \right] \right\|_{L^2(dx)} \leq \sum_{|\mu|=0} \left\| x_n \left( \frac{D_0}{D_x} \right)^{\mu} v_\pm(t, \cdot) \right\|_{L^\infty(dx)} \left\| NL_{\eta\eta}(t, \cdot) \right\|_{L^2} \leq C(A + B) AB \epsilon^3 t^{-1 + \frac{3+2\sigma}{2}}. \]
Using instead equalities (A.15) and (A.16) we derive the following explicit expression for $NL_T^{kg,c}$:
\[(B.4.28) \quad NL_T^{kg,c}(t, x) = r_k^{I,NF}(t, x) - \frac{i}{2} \left[ NL_{k\eta}(D_1 \Gamma u) - (D_1 v) \Gamma NL_{\eta\eta} + D_1 [v \Gamma NL_{\eta\eta}] \right] \]
\[+ \delta \frac{i}{2} \left[ NL_{k\eta}(D_2 u) - (D_2 v) NL_{\eta\eta} + D_2 [v NL_{\eta\eta}] \right] \]
\[+ \delta Z_1 \left[ NL_{k\eta}(D_1 u) + (D_1 v) NL_{\eta\eta} - \langle D_\xi \rangle [v NL_{\eta\eta}] \right]. \]
Hence, reminding estimates (B.1.11), (B.1.3a), (B.1.5a) with $s = 0$, (B.1.10b), (B.2.72), and equality (B.1.20b) from which follows that
\[(B.4.29) \quad \left\| \Gamma NL_{\eta\eta}(t, \cdot) \right\|_{L^2} \lesssim \left\| v_\pm(t, \cdot) \right\|_{H^{1,\infty}} \left( \left\| v_\pm^l(t, \cdot) \right\|_{H^1} + \left\| v_\pm(t, \cdot) \right\|_{H^1} + \left\| D_1 v_\pm(t, \cdot) \right\|_{L^2} \right), \]
we find that
\[
\left\| \chi(t^{-\sigma} D_x) \left[ x_j N L^{\text{g.c.}}_F \right] (t, \cdot) \right\|_{L^2(dx)} \lesssim \left\| \chi(t^{-\sigma} D_x) \left[ x_j r_{k g}^{I, NF} \right] (t, \cdot) \right\|_{L^2(dx)}
\]
\[
+ \sum_{|\mu|, \nu = 0}^{1} \left\| x_j \left( \frac{D_x}{D_z} \right)^{\mu} v_{\pm}(t, \cdot) \right\|_{L^\infty(dx)} \left\| R^v u_{\pm}(t, \cdot) \right\|_{H^{2.\infty}} (||\Gamma u_{\pm}(t, \cdot)||_{L^2} + ||u_{\pm}(t, \cdot)||_{L^2})
\]
(B.4.30)
\[
+ \sum_{k, |\mu| = 0}^{1} \left\| x_j^k \left( \frac{D_x}{D_z} \right)^{\mu} v_{\pm}(t, \cdot) \right\|_{L^\infty(dx)} (||\Gamma NL_w(t, \cdot)||_{L^2} + ||NL_w(t, \cdot)||_{L^2})
\]
\[
\leq C(A + B) A B \varepsilon^2 t^{-\frac{1}{2} + \beta + \frac{4 + \delta_1 + \delta_2}{2}}.
\]
By injecting the above estimate, together with \((B.4.21a), (B.4.26), (B.4.27),\) into \((B.4.25),\) we finally deduce \((B.4.25)\) and conclude the proof of the statement. \(\square\)

**Lemma B.4.7.** Let \(\Gamma \in \{\Omega, Z_m, m = 1, 2\}\) be a Klainerman vector field and \(I_1, I_2\) two multi-indices such that \(\Gamma^{I_1} = \Gamma\) and \(\Gamma^{I_2} = Z_m \Gamma,\) with \(m \in \{1, 2\} .\) Let also \(v^{I, NF}\) be the function defined in \((B.2.27)\) for a generic multi-index \(I\) of length equal to 1 or 2. There exists a constant \(C > 0\) such that, for any \(\chi \in C^0_0(\mathbb{R}^2),\) \(\sigma > 0\) small, \(m, n = 1, 2,\) every \(t \in [1, T],\)

\[(B.4.31a) \quad \left\| \chi(t^{-\sigma} D_x) \left[ Z_m \left( v^{I_{1, NF}} - (\Gamma v)_- \right) \right] (t, \cdot) \right\|_{L^2} + \left\| \chi(t^{-\sigma} D_x) \left( v^{I_{2, NF}} - (Z_m \Gamma v)_- \right) (t, \cdot) \right\|_{L^2} \leq C(A + B) B \varepsilon^2 t^{-1 + \beta + \frac{4 + \delta_1 + \delta_2}{2}}\]

and

\[(B.4.31b) \quad \left\| \chi(t^{-\sigma} D_x) \left[ x_n Z_m \left( v^{I_{1, NF}} - (\Gamma v)_- \right) \right] (t, \cdot) \right\|_{L^2} + \left\| \chi(t^{-\sigma} D_x) \left[ x_n \left( v^{I_{2, NF}} - (Z_m \Gamma v)_- \right) \right] (t, \cdot) \right\|_{L^2} \leq C(A + B) B \varepsilon^2 t^{2 \beta + \frac{4 + \delta_1 + \delta_2}{2}}\]

with \(\beta > 0\) small such that \(\beta \to 0\) as \(\sigma \to 0.\) Moreover, if \(V^\Gamma_{1 NF}\) is the function defined in \((B.4.14),\) then for every \(t \in [1, T]\)

\[(B.4.32a) \quad \left\| \chi(t^{-\sigma} D_x) \left[ Z_m \left( V^\Gamma_{1 NF} - (\Gamma v)_- \right) \right] (t, \cdot) \right\|_{L^2} \leq C(A + B) B \varepsilon^2 t^{-1 + \beta + \frac{4 + \delta_1 + \delta_2}{2}}\]

\[(B.4.32b) \quad \left\| \chi(t^{-\sigma} D_x) \left[ x_n Z_m \left( V^\Gamma_{1 NF} - (\Gamma v)_- \right) \right] (t, \cdot) \right\|_{L^2} \leq C(A + B) B \varepsilon^2 t^{2 \beta + \frac{4 + \delta_1 + \delta_2}{2}}\]

**Proof.** We warn the reader that throughout the proof we denote by \(C\) and \(\beta\) two positive constants that may change line after line, with \(\beta \to 0\) as \(\sigma \to 0.\)

We refer to equality \((B.2.40)\) with \(I = I_1\) and bound the \(L^2\) norm of each product in the first, third and fifth line of its right hand side by means of lemma \((B.2.22)\) with \(L = L^2.\) The \(L^2\) norm of the remaining products in the second line of the mentioned equality is instead estimated using inequalities \((B.2.21)\) with \(L = L^2\) and \(w_{j_0} = \langle D_x (D_x)^{-1} \rangle^\mu (\Gamma^I_{1, v})_\pm.\) In this way we obtain that there is some \(\chi_1 \in C^0_0(\mathbb{R}^2)\) such that

\[
\left\| \chi(t^{-\sigma} D_x) \left[ Z_m \left( v^{I_{1, NF}} - (\Gamma v)_- \right) \right] (t, \cdot) \right\|_{L^2} \lesssim t^\sigma \left\| \chi_1(t^{-\sigma} D_x) (Z_m \Gamma v)_\pm (t, \cdot) \right\|_{L^\infty} ||u_{\pm}(t, \cdot)||_{L^2}
\]
\[
+ t^{-N(a)} ||(Z_m \Gamma v)_\pm (t, \cdot)||_{L^2} ||u_{\pm}(t, \cdot)||_{H^\ast} + t^\sigma \left\| \chi_1(t^{-\sigma} D_x) (\Gamma v)_\pm (t, \cdot) \right\|_{L^\infty} ||(Z_m u_{\pm}(t, \cdot)||_{L^2}
\]
\[
+ t^{-N(a)} \left( \sum_{j = 0}^{1} ||x^{\mu}_j (\Gamma v)_\pm (t, \cdot)||_{L^2} + t ||(\Gamma v)_\pm (t, \cdot)||_{L^2} \right) ||u_{\pm}(t, \cdot)||_{H^\ast} + ||D_t u_{\pm}(\cdot, \cdot)||_{H^\ast}
\]
\[
+ t^{-N(a)} ||(\Gamma v)_\pm (t, \cdot)||_{L^2} ||u_{\pm}(t, \cdot)||_{H^\ast} + ||D_t u_{\pm}(t, \cdot)||_{H^\ast}.
\]
Choosing \( s > 0 \) large so that \( N(s) > 1 \) and using estimates \((1.1.11), \ (B.1.5a), \ (B.1.7)\), together with lemmas \((B.2.8)\) and \((B.4.2)\), we hence find that
\[
\| (t^{−\sigma} D_x) [Z_m (v^{1.t,NF} − (\Gamma v)_−)] (t, \cdot)\|_{L^2} \leq C (A + B) B \varepsilon^2 t^{-1+\beta + \frac{\alpha + \beta}{2}}.
\]

Analogously,
\[
\| (t^{−\sigma} D_x) [x_n Z_m (v^{1.t,NF} − (\Gamma v)_−)] (t, \cdot)\|_{L^2} \lesssim t^\sigma \| \chi_1 (t^{−\sigma} D_x) [x_n Z_m (\Gamma v)] (t, \cdot)\|_{L^2} \| u_±(t, \cdot)\|_{L^2} + t^{-N(s)} \| x_n Z_m (\Gamma v) (t, \cdot)\|_{L^2} \| u_±(t, \cdot)\|_{H^s} + t^{\sigma} \| \chi_1 (t^{−\sigma} D_x) [x_n (\Gamma v)] (t, \cdot)\|_{L^2} \| (Z_m u_±) (t, \cdot)\|_{L^2}
\]
\[
+ t^{-N(s)} \left( \sum_{\mu \geq 0} \| x_u x_n (\Gamma v) (t, \cdot)\|_{L^2} + t \| x_n (\Gamma v) (t, \cdot)\|_{L^2} \right) \left( \| u_±(t, \cdot)\|_{H^s} + \| D_t u_±(t, \cdot)\|_{H^s} \right)
\]
\[
\| v±(t, \cdot)\|_{H^1} \left( \| (Z_m \Gamma u_±) (t, \cdot)\|_{L^2} + \| (\Gamma u_±) (t, \cdot)\|_{L^2} + \| D_t (\Gamma u_±) (t, \cdot)\|_{L^2} \right)
\]
\[
\| u±(t, \cdot)\|_{L^2} + \| D_t u±(t, \cdot)\|_{L^2}.
\]

Inequalities \((B.4.31)\) follows then just by the observation that, after the hypothesis on multi-indices \( I_1, I_2 \) and the comparison between \((B.2.30)\) with \( I = I_2 \) and \((B.2.40)\) with \( I = I_1 \), \(2t \chi (t^{−\sigma} D_x) (v^{1.t,NF} − (Z_m \Gamma v)_−)\) corresponds to the first line in the right hand side of \((B.2.40)\).

In order to derive estimate \((B.4.32a)\) we apply \( Z_m \) to both sides of equality \((B.4.18)\), use \((B.4.31)\), formulas \((B.2.39)\), and successively proceed as follows: products in which \( Z_m \) acts on \( v \) and \( \Gamma \) on \( u \), that arise from the action of \( Z_m \) on the second line of \((B.4.18)\), are estimated using inequalities \((B.2.24)\) with \( L = L^2 \) and \( W = u \); products in which \( Z_m \) is acting on \( v \) and there are no Kleinerman vector fields acting on \( u \) are estimated applying lemma \((B.2.2)\) with \( L = L^2 \); the \( L^2 \) norm of the remaining ones are controlled by the \( L^\infty \) norm of the Klein-Gordon factor times the \( L^2 \) norm of the wave one. In this way we get that
\[
\| (t^{−\sigma} D_x) [Z_m (V_1^{1.t,NF} − (\Gamma v)_−)] (t, \cdot)\|_{L^2} \lesssim \| (t^{−\sigma} D_x) [Z_m (v^{1.t,NF} − (\Gamma v)_−)] (t, \cdot)\|_{L^2}
\]
\[
+ t^{\sigma} \| x_n Z_m (\Gamma v) (t, \cdot)\|_{L^2} + \| D_t u_±(t, \cdot)\|_{H^s}
\]
\[
+ \| v±(t, \cdot)\|_{H^1} \left( \| (Z_m \Gamma u_±) (t, \cdot)\|_{L^2} + \| (\Gamma u_±) (t, \cdot)\|_{L^2} + \| D_t (\Gamma u_±) (t, \cdot)\|_{L^2} \right)
\]
\[
\| u±(t, \cdot)\|_{L^2} + \| D_t u±(t, \cdot)\|_{L^2}.
\]
and estimate (B.4.32b) is obtained by choosing $s > 0$ large so that $N(s) > 1$ and using (B.1.5a), (B.1.7), (B.1.10b), (B.1.12) with $k = 1$, (B.1.28), (B.2.62), (B.4.31b) and a-priori estimates.

Lemma B.4.8. Let $\Gamma \in \{ \Omega, Z_m, m = 1, 2 \}$ be a Klainerman vector field and $V_{1}^{NF}$ be the function defined in (B.4.15). There exists a constant $C > 0$ such that, for any $\chi \in C_0^{\infty}(\mathbb{R}^2)$, $\sigma > 0$ small, $m, n = 1, 2$, and every $t \in [1, T]$,

$$\| Op_h^w(\chi(h^s \sigma \xi))L_m[t Z_n V_{1}^{NF}(t, tx)] \|_{L^2(dx)} \leq CB\varepsilon t^{\frac{\delta_0}{\sigma}}.$$  

Proof. We warn the reader that, throughout the proof, we denote by $C$ and $\beta$ two positive constants that may change line after line, with $\beta \to 0$ as $\sigma \to 0$.

Let $v^{I, NF}$ be the function defined in (B.2.27) for a generic multi-index $I$ of length 1 or 2, and $I_1, I_2$ two multi-indices such that $I^I_1 = I$, $I^I_2 = Z_n \Gamma$. Using (2.1.15b) we rewrite $Z_n V_{1}^{NF}$ as follows:

$$Z_n V_{1}^{NF} = Z_n (V_{1}^{NF} - (\Gamma v)_-) + [(Z_n \Gamma v)_- - v^{I_2, NF}] + v^{I_1, NF} + \frac{D_n}{(D_x)} v^{I_1, NF} + \frac{D_n}{(D_x)} [(\Gamma v)_- - v^{I_1, NF}]$$

so that

$$\| Op_h^w(\chi(h^s \sigma \xi))L_m[t Z_n V_{1}^{NF}(t, tx)] \|_{L^2(dx)} \leq \| Op_h^w(\chi(h^s \sigma \xi))L_m[t Z_n (V_{1}^{NF} - (\Gamma v)_-) (t, tx)] \|_{L^2(dx)} + \| Op_h^w(\chi(h^s \sigma \xi))L_m[t [(Z_n \Gamma v)_- - v^{I_2, NF}] (t, tx)] \|_{L^2(dx)}$$

Since $v^{I_2, NF}$ satisfies (B.4.4) with $I = I_2$, we derive from relation (B.2.8) with $w = v^{I_2, NF}$ that

$$\| Op_h^w(\chi(h^s \sigma \xi))L_m[t v^{I_2, NF}(t, tx)] \|_{L^2(dx)} \leq \| \chi(t^{-\sigma} D_x) Z_m (I^I_2 v)_- (t, \cdot) \|_{L^2}$$

A-priori estimate (1.1.11d) with $k = 0$, (B.2.29) with $I = I_2$, (B.4.5), (B.4.7), the fact that $\delta \ll \delta_2 \ll \delta_1 \ll \delta_0$ and that $\beta$ is small as long as $\sigma$ is small, imply

$$\| Op_h^w(\chi(h^s \sigma \xi))L_m[t v^{I_2, NF}(t, tx)] \|_{L^2(dx)} \leq CB\varepsilon t^{\frac{\delta_0}{\sigma}}.$$  

Analogously, commutating $L_m$ with $Op_h^w(\xi_n(\xi_1)^{-1})$, using (B.2.8) with $w = v^{I_1, NF}$ and the fact that $v^{I_1, NF}$ is solution to (B.2.44) with non-linear term given by (B.2.45), together with inequalities (B.2.50), (B.2.51), (B.2.55), we derive that

$$\| Op_h^w(\chi(h^s \sigma \xi))L_m[t \frac{D_n}{(D_x)} v^{I_1, NF}(t, tx)] \|_{L^2(dx)} \leq CB\varepsilon t^{\frac{\delta_0}{\sigma}}.$$  

Finally, the remaining norms in the right hand side of (B.4.33) are estimated by the right hand side of (B.4.33) after (B.3.6) and lemma B.4.7.
Lemmas [B.2.8] and [B.4.8] allow us to prove an analogous result to that of lemma [B.3.3] where \( \tilde{v} \) is replaced with \( V^\Gamma \) introduced in [B.4.20].

**Lemma B.4.9.** Let \( h = t^{-1}, \tilde{u}, V^\Gamma \) be respectively defined in [B.2.3] and [B.3.20], \( a_0(\xi) \in S_{0,0}(1) \), and \( b_1(\xi) = \xi_j \) or \( b_1(\xi) = \xi_j \xi_k |\xi|^{-1} \), with \( j, k \in \{1, 2\} \). There exists a constant \( C > 0 \) such that, for any \( \chi, \chi_1 \in C^\infty_0(\mathbb{R}^2) \), \( \sigma > 0 \), and every \( t \in [1, T] \), we have that

\[
(B.4.35a) \quad \| [\text{Op}_h^w(\chi(h^s \xi) a_0(\xi)) V^\Gamma_t(t, \cdot)] [\text{Op}_h^w(\chi_1(h^s \xi) b_1(\xi)) \tilde{u}(t, \cdot)] \|_{L^2} \leq C (A + B) B \varepsilon^{2} h^{\frac{1}{2} - \beta'},
\]

\[
(B.4.35b) \quad \| [\text{Op}_h^w(\chi(h^s \xi) a_0(\xi)) V^\Gamma_t(t, \cdot)] [\text{Op}_h^w(\chi_1(h^s \xi) b_1(\xi)) \tilde{u}(t, \cdot)] \|_{L^\infty} \leq C (A + B) B \varepsilon^{2} h^{-\beta'},
\]

with \( \beta' > 0 \) small, \( \beta \to 0 \) as \( \sigma, \delta_0 \to 0 \).

**Proof.** The proof of this result has the same structure as that of lemma [B.3.3] Only few differences occur due to the fact that we are replacing \( \tilde{v} \) with \( V^\Gamma \). We limit here to indicate them.

Instead of referring to estimate [B.3.9] we use the fact that, after [B.2.32] in classical coordinates, there exists a constant \( C > 0 \) such that for any \( \rho \in \mathbb{N} \)

\[
(B.4.36) \quad \| \text{Op}_h^w(\chi(h^s \xi)) V^\Gamma_t(t, \cdot) \|_{H_{\rho, \infty}} \leq C B \varepsilon h^{-\beta - \frac{\delta}{4}},
\]

with \( \beta > 0 \) small such that \( \beta \to 0 \) as \( \sigma \to 0 \). We successively decompose \( V^\Gamma \) into \( V^\Gamma_{\Lambda_{kg}} + V^\Gamma_{\Lambda_{kg}^c} \), with

\[
\tilde{V}^\Gamma_{\Lambda_{kg}}(t, x) := \text{Op}_h^w \left( \gamma \left( \frac{x - \rho'(\xi)}{\sqrt{h}} \right) \chi(h^s \xi) a_0(\xi) \right) \tilde{V}^\Gamma(t, x),
\]

\[
\tilde{V}^\Gamma_{\Lambda_{kg}^c}(t, x) := \text{Op}_h^w \left( (1 - \gamma) \left( \frac{x - \rho'(\xi)}{\sqrt{h}} \right) \chi(h^s \xi) a_0(\xi) \right) \tilde{V}^\Gamma(t, x).
\]

On the one hand, from the fact that above operators are supported for frequencies \( |\xi| \lesssim h^\sigma \), together with proposition [1.2.39] with \( p = +\infty \) and [B.4.36], we have that

\[
\| \tilde{V}^\Gamma_{\Lambda_{kg}}(t, \cdot) \|_{L^\infty} \leq C B \varepsilon h^{-\beta - \frac{\delta}{4}}.
\]

On the other hand, combining the analogous of [B.3.12] with lemma [B.4.6] (instead of [B.2.14]), estimates [B.4.26], [B.4.33] (instead of lemma [B.3.2] and [B.4.30] (instead of [B.2.79]),

\[
\| \tilde{V}^\Gamma_{\Lambda_{kg}^c}(t, \cdot) \|_{L^\infty} \leq C B \varepsilon h^{\frac{1}{2} - \beta - \frac{\delta}{4}}.
\]

**Lemma B.4.10.** Let \( \Gamma \in \{\Omega, Z_m, m = 1, 2\} \) be a Klainerman vector field and \( V^\Gamma_{1NF} \) be the function defined in [B.4.12]. There exists a constant \( C > 0 \) such that, for any \( \chi \in C^\infty_0(\mathbb{R}^2) \), \( \sigma > 0 \) small, \( m, n = 1, 2 \), and every \( t \in [1, T] \),

\[
(B.4.37a) \quad \| \chi(t^{-\sigma} D_x) \left[ x_m \left( V^\Gamma_{1NF} - (\Gamma v)_- \right) \right] (t, \cdot) \|_{L^\infty} \leq C (A + B)^2 \varepsilon^2 t^{\frac{1}{2} + \beta + \frac{\delta_1 + \delta_2}{4}},
\]

\[
(B.4.37b) \quad \| \chi(t^{-\sigma} D_x) \left[ x_n x_m \left( V^\Gamma_{1NF} - (\Gamma v)_- \right) \right] (t, \cdot) \|_{L^\infty} \leq C (A + B)^2 \varepsilon^2 t^{\frac{1}{2} + \beta + \frac{\delta_1 + \delta_2}{4}},
\]

with \( \beta > 0 \) small such that \( \beta \to 0 \) as \( \sigma \to 0 \).
Proof. We remind the reader about explicit expression (B.4.18) of the difference $V_{I NF} - (\Gamma v)_-$, and (B.2.30), here considered with $|I| = 1$ such that $\Gamma^I = \Gamma$.

We first use equalities (1.1.5), (1.1.10), and, after some commutations, multiply $x_m$ (together with $x_n$ when proving (B.4.37b)) against each Klein-Gordon factor. Successively, we estimate the contribution coming from $V_{I NF} - (\Gamma v)_-$ using lemma [2.2.2] with $L = L^\infty$, and all products coming from the second line of (B.4.18) by means of inequalities (B.2.24) with $L = L^\infty$, $w = u$ and $w_{j_0} = (D_x(D_x)^{-1})^{\mu}Z_m v$ for $|\mu| = 0, 1$. On the one hand, we obtain that

\[ \| \chi(t^{-\sigma}D_x) [x_m (V_{I NF} - (\Gamma v)_-)] (t, \cdot) \|_{L^\infty} \]

\[ \lesssim \sum_{\mu=0}^1 t^\sigma \| \chi_1(t^{-\sigma}D_x) [x_m (\Gamma v)\pm (t, \cdot)] \|_{L_\infty} \| R_{\mu}^{1} u_\pm (t, \cdot) \|_{L^\infty} + t^{-N(s)} \| x_m (\Gamma v)\pm (t, \cdot) \|_{L^2} \| u_\pm (t, \cdot) \|_{H^s} \]

\[ + \sum_{|\mu| = 0}^2 t^{-N(s)} \| x^\mu v_\pm (t, \cdot) \|_{L^2} \left( \| u_\pm (t, \cdot) \|_{H^s} + \| D_t u_\pm (t, \cdot) \|_{H^s} \right) \]

\[ + \sum_{|\mu|, |\nu| = 0}^1 t^\sigma \| x_m \left( \frac{D_x}{D_{\mu}} \right)^\mu v_\nu \|_{L^\infty} \| R^\mu u_\pm (t, \cdot) \|_{H_{2,\infty}} \]

and estimate (B.4.37b) follows choosing $s > 0$ large enough to have $N(s) \geq 2$ and using (1.111), (B.1.5a), (B.1.10), (B.1.17) with $k = 1$, (B.2.62), (B.2.59). On the other hand,

\[ \| \chi(t^{-\sigma}D_x) [x_n x_m (V_{I NF} - (\Gamma v)_-)] (t, \cdot) \|_{L^\infty} \]

\[ \lesssim \sum_{\mu=0}^1 t^\sigma \| \chi_1(t^{-\sigma}D_x) [x_n x_m (\Gamma v)\pm (t, \cdot)] \|_{L_\infty} \| R_{\mu}^{1} u_\pm (t, \cdot) \|_{L^\infty} \]

\[ + t^{-N(s)} \| x_n x_m (\Gamma v)\pm (t, \cdot) \|_{L^2} \| u_\pm (t, \cdot) \|_{H^s} \]

\[ + \sum_{|\mu| = 0}^1 t^\sigma \| x_n x_m \left( \frac{D_x}{D_{\mu}} \right)^\mu v_\nu \|_{L^\infty} \| \chi_1(t^{-\sigma}D_x) (\Gamma u)_- (t, \cdot) \|_{L^\infty} \]

\[ + \sum_{|\mu| = 0}^3 t^{-N(s)} \| x^\mu v_\pm (t, \cdot) \|_{L^2} \left( \| u_\pm (t, \cdot) \|_{H^s} + \| D_t u_\pm (t, \cdot) \|_{H^s} \right) \]

\[ + \sum_{|\mu|, |\nu| = 0}^1 t^\sigma \| x_n x_m \left( \frac{D_x}{D_{\mu}} \right)^\mu v_\nu \|_{L^\infty} \| R^\mu u_\pm (t, \cdot) \|_{H_{2,\infty}} \]

so picking the same $s$ as before and using (B.1.5a), (B.1.10a), (B.1.27), (B.1.28), (B.1.32), (B.2.57) and (B.4.11), together with a-priori estimates, we derive (B.4.37b).

**Lemma B.4.11.** Let $\Gamma \in \{ \Omega, Z_m, m = 1, 2 \}$ be a Klainerman vector field and $N^k_{\Gamma} L^c$ be given by (B.4.28). There exists a constant $C > 0$ such that for any $\chi \in C_0^\infty(\mathbb{R}^2)$, $\sigma > 0$ small, $m, n = 1, 2$, and every $t \in [1, T]$,

(B.4.38a) \[ \left\| \chi(t^{-\sigma}D_x) [x_n N^k_{\Gamma} L^c] (t, \cdot) \right\|_{L^2} \leq C(A + B)^2 \varepsilon^3 t^{-1 + \beta'}, \]

(B.4.38b) \[ \left\| \chi(t^{-\sigma}D_x) [x_m x_n N^k_{\Gamma} L^c] (t, \cdot) \right\|_{L^2} \leq C(A + B)^2 \varepsilon^3 t^{3\beta'}, \]
with \( \beta' > 0 \) small such that \( \beta' \to 0 \) as \( \sigma, \delta_0 \to 0 \). Moreover, in the same time interval

\[
\left\| \chi(t^{-\sigma} D_x) N L_{L_1}^{k,g,c} (t, \cdot) \right\|_{L^\infty} \leq C (A + B)^2 B \varepsilon^3 t^{-\frac{5}{2} + \beta'}.
\]

**Proof.** We warn the reader that we will denote by \( C, \beta, \beta' \) some positive constants that may change line after line, with \( \beta \to 0 \) (resp. \( \beta' \to 0 \)) as \( \sigma \to 0 \) (resp. as \( \sigma, \delta_0 \to 0 \)). For a seek of compactness we also denote by \( R(t, x) \) any contribution verifying

\[
\left\| \chi(t^{-\sigma} D_x) [x_n R(t, \cdot)] \right\|_{L^2} \leq C (A + B)^2 B \varepsilon^3 t^{-1 + \beta'},
\]

\[
\left\| \chi(t^{-\sigma} D_x) [x_m x_n R(t, \cdot)] \right\|_{L^2} \leq C (A + B)^2 B \varepsilon^3 t^{3 \beta'},
\]

together with

\[
\left\| \chi(t^{-\sigma} D_x) R(t, \cdot) \right\|_{L^\infty} \leq C (A + B)^2 B \varepsilon^3 t^{-\frac{5}{2} + \beta'}.
\]

Let us introduce \( N L_{cub} \) as follows

\[
N L_{cub} := - \frac{i}{2} [(D_1 \Gamma) v] N L_w + D_1 [(\Gamma v) N L_w]
\]

\[
- \frac{i}{2} [(D_1 v) \Gamma] N L_w + D_1 [v \Gamma N L_w] + \frac{i}{2} \delta \Omega [(D_2 v) N L_w + D_2 [v N L_w]]
\]

\[
+ \delta Z_1 [(D_1 v) N L_w' - (D_x) [v N L_w]],
\]

so that from (B.4.24)

\[
N L_{L_1}^{k,g,c} = \frac{i}{2} [(\Gamma N L_{kg})(D_1 u) + N L_{kg}(D_1 \Gamma u)] + \delta \Omega \frac{i}{2} N L_{kg}(D_2 u) + \delta Z_1 N L_{kg}(D_1 u) + N L_{cub}^{cub},
\]

with \( \delta \Omega \) (resp. \( \delta Z_1 \)) equal to 1 when \( \Gamma = \Omega \) (resp. \( \Gamma = Z_1 \)), 0 otherwise. After \( (1.1.3), \ (1.1.10), \) and estimates \( (1.1.11), \ (B.1.3a), \ (B.1.6a) \) with \( s = 0, \ (B.1.10b), \ (B.4.29) \), \( N L_{cub} \) verifies the following:

\[
\left\| \chi(t^{-\sigma} D_x) \left[ x_n N L_{cub}^{cub} \right] (t, \cdot) \right\|_{L^2} \leq \sum_{1}^{1} t^\sigma \left\| x_n^\mu \left( D_x \frac{D_x}{(D_x)} \right) v_{\pm} (t, \cdot) \right\|_{L^\infty} \left[ \left\| \Gamma N L_w (t, \cdot) \right\|_{L^2} + \left\| N L_w (t, \cdot) \right\|_{L^2} + \left\| v_{\pm} (t, \cdot) \right\|_{H^2, \infty} + \left\| (\Gamma v)_{\pm} (t, \cdot) \right\|_{L^2} \right] \leq C (A + B) AB \varepsilon^3 t^{-1 + \sigma + \delta_2}.
\]

From the mentioned inequalities and the additional \( (B.1.27b) \), it also satisfies

\[
\left\| \chi(t^{-\sigma} D_x) \left[ x_m x_n N L_{cub}^{cub} \right] (t, \cdot) \right\|_{L^2} \leq \sum_{1}^{1} t^\sigma \left\| x_m^\mu x_n^\nu \left( D_x \frac{D_x}{(D_x)} \right) v_{\pm} (t, \cdot) \right\|_{L^\infty} \left[ \left\| \Gamma N L_w (t, \cdot) \right\|_{L^2} + \left\| N L_w (t, \cdot) \right\|_{L^2} + \left\| v_{\pm} (t, \cdot) \right\|_{H^2, \infty} + \left\| (\Gamma v)_{\pm} (t, \cdot) \right\|_{L^2} \right] \leq C (A + B) AB \varepsilon^3 t^{\sigma + \delta_2}.
\]

Moreover, applying twice lemma \( (B.2.2) \) with \( L = L^\infty \) and \( s > 0 \) large enough to have \( N (s) \geq 2 \), the first time to estimate products involving \( \Gamma v \) and \( N L_w \) in \( (B.4.42) \), the second one to estimate...
the first two quadratic contributions to $\Gamma NL_w$ (see (B.1.20a)), we derive that there are two smooth cut-off functions $\chi_1, \chi_2$ such that

$$
\|\chi(t^{-\sigma} D_x)NL^{\text{ub}}_{\varepsilon}(t, \cdot)\|_{L^\infty} \lesssim t^\sigma \|\chi_1(t^{-\sigma} D_x)(\Gamma v)_{+}(t, \cdot)\|_{L^\infty} \|NL_w(t, \cdot)\|_{L^\infty}
$$

$$
+ t^{-2}\|\|\Gamma v\|(t, \cdot)\|_{L^2} \|NL_w(t, \cdot)\|_{H^1} + t^\sigma \|\chi_1(t^{-\sigma} D_x)\Gamma NL_w(t, \cdot)\|_{L^\infty} \|v_{\pm}(t, \cdot)\|_{H^1\infty}
$$

and

$$
\|\chi_1(t^{-\sigma} D_x)\Gamma NL_w(t, \cdot)\|_{L^\infty} \lesssim \|\chi_2(t^{-\sigma} D_x)(\Gamma v)_{+}(t, \cdot)\|_{H^2\infty} \|v_{\pm}(t, \cdot)\|_{H^2\infty}
$$

$$
+ t^{-2}\|\|\Gamma v\|(t, \cdot)\|_{H^1} \|v_{\pm}(t, \cdot)\|_{H^1} + \|v_{\pm}(t, \cdot)\|_{H^1\infty} (\|v_{\pm}(t, \cdot)\|_{H^2\infty} + \|D_1 v_{\pm}(t, \cdot)\|_{H^1\infty}).
$$

From a-priori estimates, (B.1.3b), (B.1.3c), (B.1.5a) with $s = 0$, (B.1.6b) with $s = 1$ and $\theta \ll 1$ small, (B.2.42), (B.4.29), we then recover

$$
\|\chi(t^{-\sigma} D_x)NL^{\text{ub}}_{\varepsilon}(t, \cdot)\|_{L^\infty} \leq CA^2 B^3 t^{-3+\beta'}.
$$

Those inequalities make $NL^{\text{ub}}_{\varepsilon}$ a contribution of the form $R(t, x)$, so from (B.4.43) we are left to prove that the same is true for $\Gamma NL_{kg}(D_1 u), NL_{kg}(D_1 \Gamma u), NL_{kg}(D_2 u)$ and $NL_{kg}(D_1 u)$. 

We immediately observe, from (B.1.1b) and (1.1.5), that the cubic contributions to $NL_{kg}(D_2 u)$ and $NL_{kg}(D_1 u)$ are of the form

(B.4.44)

$$
[a_0(D_x) v_-][b_1(D_x) u_-]b_0(D_x) u_-,
$$

with $a_0(\xi) \in \{1, \xi, (\xi)^{-1}, j = 1, 2\}$, $b_1(\xi) \in \{\xi, \xi_j, (\xi_j)^{-1}, j = 1, 2\}$, $b_0(\xi) \in \{1, \xi_2|\xi|^{-1}\}$. Therefore, lemmas (B.3.3), (B.3.4) imply that $NL_{kg}(D_2 u)$ and $NL_{kg}(D_1 u)$ are remainders $R(t, x)$. Furthermore, from (B.1.20a) and (1.1.10) and the equation satisfied by $u_\pm$ in (2.1.2) with $|I| = 0$,

$$
\Gamma NL_{kg} = Q^{kg}_0 ((\Gamma v)_{+}, D_1 u_{\pm}) + Q^{kg}_0 (v_{\pm}, D_1 (\Gamma u)_{+})
$$

$$
- \delta_\Omega Q^{kg}_0 (v_{\pm}, D_2 u_{\pm}) - \delta_{Z_1} \left[Q^{kg}_0 (v_{\pm}, |D_1 u| u_{\pm}) + Q^{kg}_0 (v_{\pm}, Q^{kg}_0 (v_{\pm}, D_1 v_{\pm}))\right],
$$

with $\delta_{\Omega}$ (resp. $\delta_{Z_1}$) equal to 1 if $\Gamma = \Omega$ (resp. $\Gamma = Z_1$), 0 otherwise. Estimates (1.1.11a) and (B.4.27) imply that

$$
\|\chi(t^{-\sigma} D_x) \left[ x_n Q^{kg}_0 (v_{\pm}, Q^{kg}_0 (v_{\pm}, D_1 v_{\pm})) (D_1 u) \right] (t, \cdot)\|_{L^2(dx)} \leq C(A + B) A^2 B^3 t^{-\frac{1}{2} + \frac{\delta + \delta_2}{2}},
$$

while after (1.1.11a), (B.1.3a), (B.2.27b),

$$
\|\chi(t^{-\sigma} D_x) \left[ x_m x_n Q^{kg}_0 (v_{\pm}, Q^{kg}_0 (v_{\pm}, D_1 v_{\pm})) (D_1 u) \right] (t, \cdot)\|_{L^2(dx)} \lesssim \sum_{|\mu| = 0} \left\|x_m x_n \left(\frac{D_x}{\langle D_x \rangle}\right)^\mu v_{\pm}(t, \cdot)\right\|_{L^\infty(dx)} \|NL_w(t, \cdot)\|_{L^2(dx)} \|R_1 u_{\pm}(t, \cdot)\|_{L^\infty}
$$

$$
\leq C(A + B) A^2 B^3 t^{-\frac{1}{2} + \frac{\delta + \delta_2}{2}},
$$

Also, for any $\theta \in [0, 1]$,

$$
\|\chi(t^{-\sigma} D_x) \left[ Q^{kg}_0 (v_{\pm}, Q^{kg}_0 (v_{\pm}, D_1 v_{\pm})) (D_1 u) \right] (t, \cdot)\|_{L^\infty(dx)} \lesssim \|v_{\pm}(t, \cdot)\|_{H^{1\infty}} \|NL_w(t, \cdot)\|_{H^{1\infty}} \|R_1 u_{\pm}(t, \cdot)\|_{L^\infty} \leq CA^4 - \theta B^2 \frac{4}{3} t^{-\frac{3}{2} + \theta(1 + \frac{1}{2})},
$$

215
as follows from \[ B.1.3d \] with \( s = 1 \) and a-priori estimates. Thus \( Q_0^{k_\bar{s}}(v_\pm, Q_0^n(v_\pm, D_1v_\pm))(D_1u) \) is a remainder \( R(t, x) \). The same holds true for

\[
\left[ -\delta_t Q_0^{k_\bar{s}}(v_\pm, D_2u_\pm) - \delta_{x_1} Q_0^{k_\bar{s}}(v_\pm, |D_x|u_\pm) \right] (D_1u)
\]

thanks to lemmas \[ B.3.3 \] and \[ B.3.6 \] since the above term is linear combination of products of the form

\[
[a_0(D_x)v_-] [b_1(D_x)u_-] R_1 u_-,
\]

with the same \( a_0(\xi) \) as before and \( b_1(\xi) \in \{ \xi_2, \xi_2\xi_j|\xi|^{-1}, |\xi|, j = 1, 2 \} \), as one can check using \[ 2.1.1 \] and \[ 1.1.5 \].

Summing up, the very contributions for which we have to prove estimates \[ B.4.40 \] and \[ B.4.41 \] are the following:

\[
\begin{align*}
(B.4.45a) & \quad [a_0(D_x)(\Gamma v)_-] [b_1(D_x)u_-] R_1 u_- \\
(B.4.45b) & \quad [a_0(D_x)v_-] [b_1(D_x)(\Gamma u)_-] R_1 u_-,
\end{align*}
\]

which are the remaining types of products in \( (\Gamma NL_{k_\bar{y}})(D_1u) \), and

\[
(B.4.45c) \quad [a_0(D_x)v_-] [b_1(D_x)u_-] R_1 (\Gamma u)_-,
\]

which are the products appearing in \( NL_{k_\bar{y}}(D_1\Gamma u) \), with \( a_0 \) being the same as above and \( b_1(\xi) \) equal to \( \xi_1 \) or to \( \xi_j \xi_j|\xi|^{-1} \), with \( j = 1, 2 \). All the manipulations we are going to make in what follows are aimed at showing that these estimates follow from lemmas \[ B.3.3 \] \[ B.3.4 \] and \[ B.4.9 \].

Firstly, we can assume that all factors in \[ B.4.45 \] are truncated for moderate frequencies less or equal than \( t^s \), up to \( R(t, x) \) contributions. As regards \[ B.4.45a \], this comes out from the application of lemma \[ B.2.2 \]. In fact, taking \( L = L^2 \), \( w_1 = x_m^k x_n a_0(D_x)(\Gamma v)_- \) for \( k \in \{ 0, 1 \} \), \( s > 0 \) large enough to have \( N(s) > 2 \), and using a-priori estimates and \[ B.1.17 \], \[ B.1.28 \], we find that there is some \( \chi_1 \in C_0^\infty(\mathbb{R}^2) \) such that, for \( k = 0, 1 \),

\[
\begin{align*}
\left\| \chi(t^{-\sigma}D_x) \left[ x_m^k x_n a_0(D_x)(\Gamma v)_- \right] [b_1(D_x)u_-] R_1 u_- \right\|_{L^2(dx)} \\
\lesssim \left\| \chi(t^{-\sigma}D_x) \left[ x_m^k x_n a_0(D_x)(\Gamma v)_- \right] \left[ \chi(t^{-\sigma}D_x)b_1(D_x)u_- \right] \left[ \chi(t^{-\sigma}D_x)R_1 u_- \right] \right\|_{L^2(dx)} \\
+ t^{-2} \sum_{\mu_1, \mu_2, |\nu| = 0} \| x_m^{\delta k_1 \mu_1} x_n^{\mu_2} (\Gamma v)_-(t, \cdot) \|_{L^2(dx)} \| R^\nu u_-(t, \cdot) \|_{H^{2, \infty}} \| u_-(t, \cdot) \|_{H^s} \\
\lesssim \left\| \chi(t^{-\sigma}D_x) \left[ x_m^k x_n a_0(D_x)(\Gamma v)_- \right] \left[ \chi(t^{-\sigma}D_x)b_1(D_x)u_- \right] \left[ \chi(t^{-\sigma}D_x)R_1 u_- \right] \right\|_{L^2(dx)} \\
+ CAB^2\varepsilon^3 t^{-\frac{2}{3}(1-k)+\frac{k+1}{2}},
\end{align*}
\]

where \( \delta_{k_1} \) is the Kronecker delta. Taking instead \( L = L^\infty \), from a-priori estimates we derive that

\[
\begin{align*}
\left\| \chi(t^{-\sigma}D_x) \left[ \left[ a_0(D_x)(\Gamma v)_- \right] [b_1(D_x)u_-] R_1 u_- \right] \right\|_{L^\infty(dx)} \\
\lesssim \left\| \chi(t^{-\sigma}D_x) \left[ a_0(D_x)(\Gamma v)_- \right] \left[ \chi(t^{-\sigma}D_x)b_1(D_x)u_- \right] \left[ \chi(t^{-\sigma}D_x)R_1 u_- \right] \right\|_{L^\infty(dx)} \\
+ t^{-2} \sum_{|\nu| = 0} \| (\Gamma v)_-(t, \cdot) \|_{L^2} \| R^\nu u_-(t, \cdot) \|_{H^{2, \infty}} \| u_-(t, \cdot) \|_{H^s} \\
\lesssim \left\| \chi(t^{-\sigma}D_x) \left[ a_0(D_x)(\Gamma v)_- \right] \left[ \chi(t^{-\sigma}D_x)b_1(D_x)u_- \right] \left[ \chi(t^{-\sigma}D_x)R_1 u_- \right] \right\|_{L^\infty(dx)} \\
+ CAB^2\varepsilon^3 t^{-\frac{2}{3}(1-k)+\frac{k+1}{2}}.
\end{align*}
\]

216
As concerns instead products (B.4.45b) and (B.4.45c), this follows applying inequalities (B.2.24) with

\[ \|\chi(t^{-\sigma}D_x) [x_m^k x_n^l a_0(D_x)v_-] [b_1(D_x)(\Gamma u)_{-}] R_1 u_{-}\|_{L^2(dx)} \]

\[ \lesssim \left[ \chi(t^{-\sigma}D_x) [x_m^k x_n^l a_0(D_x)v_-] [b_1(D_x)(\Gamma u)_{-}] \chi(t^{-\sigma}D_x) R_1 u_{-}\right]_{L^2(dx)} \]

\[ + t^{-3} \sum_{\mu_{1}, \mu_{2}, \mu_{3} = 0}^{1} \left( \|x_{m\mu_{1}} x_{n\mu_{2}} x_{n\mu_{3}} v_{-}(t, \cdot)\|_{L^2(dx)} + t \|x_{n\mu_{2}} v_{-}(t, \cdot)\|_{L^2}\right) \|u_{\pm}(t, \cdot)\|_{H^5} \|R_1 u_{-}(t, \cdot)\|_{L^\infty} \]

\[ \lesssim \left[ \chi(t^{-\sigma}D_x) [x_m^k x_n^l a_0(D_x)v_-] [b_1(D_x)(\Gamma u)_{-}] \chi(t^{-\sigma}D_x) R_1 u_{-}\right]_{L^2(dx)} \]

\[ + CAB^2 \varepsilon^2 t^{-\frac{5}{2} + \frac{\delta + \delta_5}{2}}. \]

Using instead (B.2.24) with \( L = L^\infty \) along with (1.1.11) and (B.1.10a),

\[ \|\chi(t^{-\sigma}D_x) [a_0(D_x)v_-] [b_1(D_x)(\Gamma u)_{-}] R_1 u_{-}\|_{L^\infty} \]

\[ \lesssim \left[ \chi(t^{-\sigma}D_x) a_0(D_x)v_- [b_1(D_x)(\Gamma u)_{-}] \chi(t^{-\sigma}D_x) R_1 u_{-}\right]_{L^\infty} + CAB^2 \varepsilon^2 t^{-\frac{5}{2} + \frac{\delta + \delta_5}{2}}. \]

Secondly, we can assume that in (B.4.45a) (resp. in (B.4.45b)) \( b_1(D_x)u_{-} \) is replaced with \( b_1(D_x)u^{NF} \) (with \( u^{NF} \) introduced in (3.1.13)). This is justified up to some \( R(t, x) \) terms that satisfy (B.4.49) as consequence of (1.1.11a), (1.1.17), (B.1.28) (resp. (B.1.10a), (B.1.27a)), (B.3.26b), and also (B.4.41) because of (1.1.11b), (2.2.42) (resp. (1.1.11b)) and (B.3.26b). Hence we are led to estimate the \( L^2 \) norm of

(B.4.46a)

\[ \left[ \chi(t^{-\sigma}D_x) [x_m^k x_n^l a_0(D_x)(\Gamma u)_{-}] \chi(t^{-\sigma}D_x) R_1 u_{-}\right] \]

(B.4.46b)

\[ \left[ \chi(t^{-\sigma}D_x) [x_m^k x_n^l a_0(D_x)v_-] [b_1(D_x)(\Gamma u)_{-}] \chi(t^{-\sigma}D_x) R_1 u_{-}\right] \]

(B.4.46c)

\[ \left[ \chi(t^{-\sigma}D_x) [x_m^k x_n^l a_0(D_x)v_-] [b_1(D_x)(\Gamma u)_{-}] \chi(t^{-\sigma}D_x) R_1 u_{-}\right] \]

for \( k = 0, 1, l = 1, \) and the \( L^\infty \) norm of above products when \( k = l = 0. \)

Thirdly, we can think of \( a_0(D_x)(\Gamma u)_{-} \) in (B.4.46a) and of \( a_0(D_x)v_- \) in (B.4.46b), (B.4.46c) as replaced with \( a_0(D_x)V_{t}^{NF} \) and \( a_0(D_x)v^{NF} \) respectively, where \( V_{t}^{NF} \) has been introduced in (B.4.15) and \( v^{NF} \) in (3.1.3). For (B.4.46a) (resp. (B.4.46c)) this substitution is justified up to some \( R(t, x) \) terms that satisfy (B.4.40) and (B.4.41), the former because of a-priori estimate (1.1.11a), (B.3.30) and (B.4.37) (resp. (B.2.57), (B.3.30) and (B.3.31)), the latter after (1.1.11a), (B.4.16) (resp. (B.3.26a), (B.2.57)) and the classical translation of the semi-classical (B.3.8)

\[ \|u^{NF}(t, s)\|_{H^{s, \infty}} + \|Ru^{NF}(t, s)\|_{H^{s, \infty}} \leq CB\varepsilon t^{-\frac{3}{2}}. \]

Therefore, in order to conclude the proof we must prove that, for some \( \chi, \chi \in C_0^\infty(\mathbb{R}^2) \) and \( k \in \{0, 1\} \),

\[ \left\| \chi(t^{-\sigma}D_x) [x_m^k x_n^l a_0(D_x)(\Gamma u)_{-}] [b_1(D_x)(\Gamma u)_{-}] \chi(t^{-\sigma}D_x) R_1 u_{-}\right\|_{L^2(dx)} \]

\[ + \left\| \chi(t^{-\sigma}D_x) [x_m^k x_n^l a_0(D_x)v_-] [b_1(D_x)(\Gamma u)_{-}] \chi(t^{-\sigma}D_x) R_1 u_{-}\right\|_{L^2(dx)} \]

\[ + \left\| \chi(t^{-\sigma}D_x) [x_m^k x_n^l a_0(D_x)v_-] [b_1(D_x)(\Gamma u)_{-}] \chi(t^{-\sigma}D_x) R_1 u_{-}\right\|_{L^2(dx)} \]

\[ \leq C(A + B^2) \varepsilon^3 t^{-1+k+\beta}. \]
\[
\left\| \chi(t^{-\alpha} D_x) a_0(D_x)(\Gamma u)_- \right\|_{L^\infty(dx)} + \left\| \chi(t^{-\alpha} D_x) b_1(D_x) u^{NF} \right\|_{L^\infty(dx)} \leq C(A + B)^2 B \varepsilon^{3} h^{-\frac{1}{2} - \beta'}.
\]

Moreover, one can check that
\[
\left\| \chi(t^{-\alpha} D_x) a_0(D_x)(\Gamma u)_- \right\|_{L^\infty(dx)} + \left\| \chi(t^{-\alpha} D_x) b_1(D_x) u^{NF} \right\|_{L^\infty(dx)} \leq C(A + B) B \varepsilon^{3} h^{-\beta'}.
\]

Actually, using \( (1.1.11a), \) \( (2.2.57), \) and passing to the semi-classical framework and unknowns with \( \bar{V}^\Gamma \) introduced in \( (3.4.20), \) \( \bar{u}, \bar{v} \) in \( (2.2.2), \) and \( \bar{u}^I(t,x) = t^{-1} (\Gamma u)_-(t,t^{-1}x) \), above inequalities will follow respectively from
\[
\sum_{k=0}^{1} \left\| \begin{array}{c}
\left[ \text{Op}_h^w \left( \chi_1(h^\sigma \xi) \right) x_m \sigma_n \text{Op}_h^w (a_0(\xi)) \bar{V}^\Gamma \right] \left[ \text{Op}_h^w \left( \chi(h^\sigma \xi) b_1(\xi) \right) \bar{u} \right] (t,\cdot) \\
\end{array} \right\|_{L^2(dx)} + \left\| \begin{array}{c}
\left[ \text{Op}_h^w \left( \chi_1(h^\sigma \xi) \right) x_m \sigma_n \text{Op}_h^w (a_0(\xi)) \bar{V}^\Gamma \right] \left[ \text{Op}_h^w \left( \chi(h^\sigma \xi) b_1(\xi) \right) \bar{u} \right] (t,\cdot) \\
\end{array} \right\|_{L^2(dx)} \leq C(A + B) B \varepsilon^{3} h^{-\beta'}.
\]

We immediately obtain from inequalities \( (3.3.35) \) and \( (3.3.39) \) that
\[
\sum_{k=0}^{1} \left\| \begin{array}{c}
\left[ \text{Op}_h^w \left( \chi_1(h^\sigma \xi) \right) x_m \sigma_n \text{Op}_h^w (a_0(\xi)) \bar{V}^\Gamma \right] \left[ \text{Op}_h^w \left( \chi(h^\sigma \xi) b_1(\xi) \right) \bar{u} \right] (t,\cdot) \\
\end{array} \right\|_{L^2(dx)} \leq C(A + B) B \varepsilon^{3} h^{-\beta'}.
\]

Moreover, one can check that
\[
\left\| \begin{array}{c}
\left[ \text{Op}_h^w \left( \chi_1(h^\sigma \xi) \right) x_m \sigma_n \text{Op}_h^w (a_0(\xi)) \bar{V}^\Gamma \right] \left[ \text{Op}_h^w \left( \chi(h^\sigma \xi) b_1(\xi) \right) \bar{u} \right] (t,\cdot) \\
\end{array} \right\|_{L^2(dx)} \leq C(A + B) B \varepsilon^{3} h^{-\beta'}.
\]

and
\[
\left\| \begin{array}{c}
\left[ \text{Op}_h^w \left( \chi_1(h^\sigma \xi) \right) x_m \sigma_n \text{Op}_h^w (a_0(\xi)) \bar{V}^\Gamma \right] \left[ \text{Op}_h^w \left( \chi(h^\sigma \xi) b_1(\xi) \right) \bar{u} \right] (t,\cdot) \\
\end{array} \right\|_{L^2(dx)} \leq C(A + B) B \varepsilon^{3} h^{-\beta'}.
\]
This can be done using a similar argument to the one that led us to \((\text{B.3.3a})\) and \((\text{B.3.39})\), up to replacing \(\tilde{\nu}\) with \(\tilde{V}^\Gamma\) in \((\text{B.3.33})\), referring to lemma \((\text{B.4.36})\) instead of \((\text{B.2.1a})\) and to estimate \((\text{B.4.36})\) instead of \((\text{B.3.9})\), in order to derive the former two inequalities; up to replacing \(\tilde{u}\) with \(\tilde{u}^\Gamma\) in \((\text{B.3.34})\), using lemma \((\text{B.2.9})\) instead of \((\text{B.2.1a})\), \((\text{B.2.1c})\), estimate \((\text{B.3.23})\) instead of \((\text{B.3.8})\), and the fact that for any \(\theta \in ]0,1[\)

\[
\| \text{Op}_h^w(\chi(h^\sigma)\xi)\phi \|_{L^2(dx)} \leq C(A + B)B^\beta \varepsilon h \frac{1}{2 - \beta'}.
\]

\[
\| \text{Op}_h^w(\chi(h^\sigma)\xi)\phi \|_{L^2(dx)} \leq C(A + B)B^\beta \varepsilon h \frac{1}{2 - \beta'}.
\]

which is the analogous of \((\text{B.3.37})\) (last estimate deduced using \((\text{B.2.57})\) and \((\text{1.1.1d})\) with \(k = 1\)), to demonstrate the latter two ones. Therefore, above inequalities and \((\text{B.3.36})\) imply \((\text{B.4.47})\). Finally, \((\text{B.4.48})\) is consequence of \((\text{B.3.7b})\), \((\text{B.3.22b})\) and \((\text{B.4.35b})\). That concludes the proof of the statement.

**Lemma B.4.12.** Let \(NL_{\Gamma}^{k,c}\) be given by \((\text{B.4.28})\). There exists a constant \(C > 0\) such that, for any \(\chi \in C_0^\infty(\mathbb{R}^2)\), \(\sigma > 0\) small, \(m, n = 1, 2\), and every \(t \in [1, T]\),

\[
\| \text{Op}_h^w(\chi(h^\sigma)\xi)\mathcal{L}_m \left[ t(tnx)NL_{\Gamma}^{k,c}(t, tx) \right] \|_{L^2(dx)} \leq C(A + B)^2B^\beta \varepsilon t^{1/2 - \beta'},
\]

\[
\| \text{Op}_h^w(\chi(h^\sigma)\xi)\mathcal{L}_m \left[ t(tnx)Q_0^{k_w}(v_{+}, Q_0^w(v_{+}, D_1 v_{+})) \right] (t, tx) \|_{L^2(dx)} \leq C(A + B)AB\varepsilon^3 t^{1/2 - \beta'},
\]

with \(\beta' > 0\) such that \(\beta' \to 0\) as \(\sigma, \delta_0 \to 0\).

**Proof.** Straightforward after \((\text{B.3.6})\), lemma \((\text{B.4.11})\) and \((\text{B.4.27})\) and the following inequality

\[
\| \chi(t^{-\sigma}D_x) \left[ x_{m}x_{n}Q_0^{k_\mu}(v_{+}, Q_0^w(v_{+}, D_1 v_{+})) \right] (t, \cdot) \|_{L^2(dx)} \leq C(A + B)^2B^\beta \varepsilon t^{1/2 - \beta'},
\]

\[
\| \chi(t^{-\sigma}D_x) \left[ x_{m}x_{n}Q_0^{k_\mu}(v_{+}, Q_0^w(v_{+}, D_1 v_{+})) \right] (t, \cdot) \|_{L^2(dx)} \leq C(A + B)AB\varepsilon^3 t^{1/2 - \beta'},
\]

\[
\| \chi(t^{-\sigma}D_x) \left[ x_{m}x_{n}Q_0^{k_\mu}(v_{+}, Q_0^w(v_{+}, D_1 v_{+})) \right] (t, \cdot) \|_{L^2(dx)} \leq C(A + B)AB\varepsilon^3 t^{1/2 - \beta'},
\]

deduced from \((\text{1.1.11})\), \((\text{B.1.3a})\) and \((\text{B.1.27b})\).
The result of the statement follows then from (B.4.26), (B.4.27), (B.4.30), (B.4.33), and lemmas B.4.6, B.4.12.

**Lemma B.4.14.** There exists a constant $C > 0$ such that, for any $\chi \in C^\infty_0(\mathbb{R}^2)$ equal to $1$ in a neighbourhood of the origin, $\sigma > 0$ small, and every $t \in [1, T]$,

$$\sum_{|\ell|=1} \| \chi(t^{-\sigma} D_x) V(t, \cdot) \|_{L^\infty} \leq C B \varepsilon t^{-1}. \tag{B.4.50}$$

**Proof.** As this estimate is evidently satisfied when $I$ is such that $\Gamma^I$ is a spatial derivative after a-priori estimate (1.1.1b), we focus on proving the statement for $\Gamma^I \in \{ \Omega, Z_m, m = 1, 2 \}$ being a Klainerman vector field. For simplicity, we refer to $\Gamma^I$ simply by $\Gamma$.

Instead of proving the result of the statement directly on $(\Gamma v)_\pm$ we show that

$$\| V^{NF}_\Gamma(t, \cdot) \|_{L^\infty} \leq C B \varepsilon t^{-1}, \tag{B.4.51}$$

where $V^{NF}_\Gamma$ has been introduced in (B.4.15). After (B.4.16), the above inequality evidently implies the statement. The main idea to derive the sharp decay estimate in (B.4.51) is to use the same argument that, in subsection 3.2.1, led us to the propagation of a-priori estimate (1.1.11b), i.e. to move to the semi-classical setting and deduce an ODE from equation (B.4.22) satisfied by $V^{NF}_\Gamma$. The most important feature that will provide us with (B.4.51) is that the uniform norm of all involved non-linear terms is integrable in time. Before going into the details, we also remind the reader our choice to denote by $C, \beta$ and $\beta'$ some positive constants that may change line after line, with $\beta \to 0$ (resp. $\beta' \to 0$) as $\sigma \to 0$ (resp. as $\sigma, \delta_0 \to 0$).

Let us consider $\tilde{V}^F(t, x) := t V^{NF}_\Gamma(t, tx)$, operator $\Gamma^{kg}$ as follows

$$\Gamma^{kg} := OP^w_h \left( \gamma \left( \frac{x - p'(\xi)}{\sqrt{h}} \right) \chi_1(h^\sigma \xi) \right),$$

with $\gamma, \chi_1 \in C^\infty_0(\mathbb{R}^2)$ such that $\gamma \equiv 1$ close to the origin, $\chi_1 \equiv 1$ on the support of $\chi$, $p(\xi) := \langle \xi \rangle$, and

$$\tilde{V}^F_{\Lambda_{kg}}(t, x) := \Gamma^{kg} OP^w_h(\chi(h^\sigma \xi)) \tilde{V}^F(t, x),$$

$$\tilde{V}^F_{\Lambda^\prime_{kg}}(t, x) := OP^w_h \left( 1 - \gamma \left( \frac{x - p'(\xi)}{\sqrt{h}} \right) \chi_1(h^\sigma \xi) \right) \Gamma^{kg} \tilde{V}^F(t, x),$$

so that

$$OP^w_h(\chi(h^\sigma \xi)) \tilde{V}^F(t, \cdot) = \tilde{V}^F_{\Lambda_{kg}} + \tilde{V}^F_{\Lambda^\prime_{kg}}.$$

It immediately follows from inequality (3.2.18b) and lemmas B.4.6, B.4.13 that

$$\left\| \tilde{V}^F_{\Lambda_{kg}}(t, \cdot) \right\|_{L^\infty} \leq \sum_{|\mu|=0} h^{\frac{\mu}{2} - \beta} \left\| OP^w_h(\chi(h^\sigma \xi)) \mathcal{L}^\mu \tilde{V}^F(t, \cdot) \right\|_{L^2} \leq C B \varepsilon t^{-\frac{1}{2} + \beta'} \tag{B.4.52}.$$

On the other hand, as $V^{NF}_\Gamma$ is solution to (B.4.22) an explicit computation shows that $\tilde{V}^F$ satisfies the following semi-classical pseudo-differential equation:

$$[D_t - OP^w_h(\chi(h^\sigma \xi)) \mathcal{L}^\mu \tilde{V}^F(t, x)] = h^{-1} NL^{b,c}_I(t, tx) - \delta Z, h^{-1} Q^c_0(v_\pm, Q^c_0(v_\pm, D_1 v_\pm))(t, tx),$$

with $NL^{b,c}_I$ given explicitly by (B.4.23). Applying successively operators $OP^w_h(\chi(h^\sigma \xi))$ and $\Gamma^{kg}$ to the above equation we find, from symbolic calculus and the first part of lemma 3.2.5 that
\( \tilde{V}_k^T \) satisfies

\[
(B.4.53) \quad [D_t - \text{Op}_h^w(x, \xi - \langle \xi \rangle)] \tilde{V}_k^{T}(t, x) = h^{-1} \Gamma^{k^g} \text{Op}_h^{w}(\chi(h^\sigma \xi)) \left[ NL^{k^g,c}_T(t, x, \xi) \right] \\
- \delta_{z_1} h^{-1} \Gamma^{k^g} \text{Op}_h^{w}(\chi(h^\sigma \xi))[Q^{k^g}_0(v_{\pm}, Q^w_0(v_{\pm}, D_1 v_{\pm}))(t, x)] - \text{Op}_h^{w}(b(x, \xi)) \text{Op}_h^{w}(\chi(h^\sigma \xi)) \tilde{V}^T(t, x) \\
+ i\sigma h^{1+\gamma} \Gamma^{k^g} \text{Op}_h^{w}(\langle \partial \chi \rangle(h^\sigma \xi \cdot h^\sigma \xi)) \tilde{V}^T(t, \cdot),
\]

with symbol \( b \) given by (B.2.24). Since \( \gamma \)'s derivatives vanish in a neighbourhood of the origin and \( \partial \chi_1 \equiv 0 \) on the support of \( \chi \), from symbolic calculus of lemma 1.2.24 and remark 1.2.22 together with inequalities (3.2.17b), (3.2.18b), that

\[
\left\| \text{Op}_h^{w}(b(x, \xi)) \text{Op}_h^{w}(\chi(h^\sigma \xi)) \tilde{V}^T(t, \cdot) \right\|_{L^\infty} \leq h^{\frac{3}{2} - \beta} \sum_{|\mu| = 0}^2 \left\| \text{Op}_h^{w}(\chi(h^\sigma \xi)) \chi^\nu \tilde{V}^T(t, \cdot) \right\|_{L^2} + h^2 \left\| \tilde{V}^T(t, \cdot) \right\|_{L^2} \leq CB\varepsilon t^{-\frac{3}{4} + \beta'},
\]

where last estimate is obtained using lemmas B.4.6, B.4.13 Moreover, reminding lemma 1.2.38 and using symbolic calculus we see that, for any \( N \in \mathbb{N} \) as large as we want,

\[
(B.4.54) \quad h^{1+\gamma} \left\| \Gamma^{k^g} \text{Op}_h^{w}((\partial \chi(h^\sigma \xi) \cdot (h^\sigma \xi)) \tilde{V}^T(t, \cdot) \right\|_{L^\infty} \leq h^{1+\gamma} \left\| \Gamma^{k^g} \theta_h(x) \text{Op}_h^{w}((\partial \chi(h^\sigma \xi) \cdot (h^\sigma \xi)) \tilde{V}^T(t, \cdot) \right\|_{L^\infty} + h^N \left\| \tilde{V}^T(t, \cdot) \right\|_{L^2},
\]

where \( \theta_h(x) \) is a smooth cut-off function supported in closed ball \( B_{1-\varepsilon,2\varepsilon}(0) \), with \( c > 0 \) small. Denoting \( (\partial \chi)(\xi) := \tilde{\chi}(\xi) \), we observe from proposition 1.2.39 with \( p = +\infty \), together with the uniform continuity on \( L^\infty \) of \( \tilde{\chi}(t^{-\sigma} D_x) \), the definition of \( \tilde{V}^T \) in terms of \( V^{NF}_T \), and (3.4.10), that

\[
h^{1+\gamma} \left\| \Gamma^{k^g} \theta_h(x) \text{Op}_h^{w}(\tilde{\chi}(h^\sigma \xi)) \tilde{V}^T(t, \cdot) \right\|_{L^\infty} \leq h^{1-\beta} \left\| \theta_h(x) \text{Op}_h^{w}(\tilde{\chi}(h^\sigma \xi)) \tilde{V}^T(t, \cdot) \right\|_{L^\infty} \leq t^\beta \left\| \theta_h(\frac{x}{t}) \tilde{\chi}(t^{-\sigma} D_x)(\Gamma v)_{\cdot}(t, \cdot) \right\|_{L^\infty} + C(A + B)B\varepsilon t^{-\frac{5}{4} + \beta}.\]

Using the fact that, for \( \theta_h(z) := \theta_h(z)\cdot_1 \),

\[
\theta_h(\frac{x}{t}) (\Omega v)_{-} = t \left[ \theta_h^m(\frac{x}{t}) \partial_2 v_{-} - \theta_h^0(\frac{x}{t}) \partial_1 v_{-} \right]
\]

and

\[
\theta_h(\frac{x}{t}) (Z_m v)_{-} = t \left[ \theta_h^m(\frac{x}{t}) \partial_1 v_{-} + \theta_h^0(\frac{x}{t}) \partial_m v_{-} \right] + \theta_h(\frac{x}{t}) \frac{D_m}{(D_x)} v_{-}, \quad m = 1, 2,
\]

and making some commutations, we can express \( (\Gamma v)_{\cdot} \) in terms of \( v_{\cdot} \) and its derivatives up to a loss in \( t \). Thus, from the classical Sobolev injection combined inequality (B.1.2), we obtain that

\[
t^{-\beta} \left\| \tilde{\chi}(t^{-\sigma} D_x) \theta_h(\frac{x}{t}) (\Gamma v)_{\cdot}(t, \cdot) \right\|_{L^\infty} \leq t^{-N(s)+1+\beta} \left( \| D_t v_{\pm}(t, \cdot) \|_{H^s} + \| v_{\pm}(t, \cdot) \|_{H^s} \right) \leq CB\varepsilon t^{-\frac{2}{4}},
\]

last estimate following by taking \( s > 0 \) large enough to have \( N(s) \geq 3 \) and using a-priori estimates along with (B.1.6a) with \( s = 0 \). From (3.4.21a) and (3.4.54) we hence derive that

\[
h^{1+\gamma} \left\| \Gamma^{k^g} \text{Op}_h^{w}((\partial \chi(h^\sigma \xi) \cdot (h^\sigma \xi)) \tilde{V}^T(t, \cdot) \right\|_{L^\infty} \leq CB\varepsilon t^{-\frac{2}{4}},
\]
so the last two terms in the right hand side of equation \((B.4.53)\) are remainders \(R(t,x)\) such that
\[
\|R(t,\cdot)\|_{L^\infty} \leq C B \varepsilon t^{-\frac{5}{4}},
\]
for every \(t \in [1,T]\).

After proposition \(1.2.39\) with \(p = +\infty\), estimate \((B.4.39)\), and the fact that for any \(\theta \in \]0, 1[\),
\[
\left\| Q_0^{k_s} (v_\pm, Q_0^w (v_\pm, D_1 v_\pm) (t, \cdot)) \right\|_{L^\infty(dx)} \leq C A^{3-\theta} B^\theta \varepsilon^{3-\theta(1+\frac{2}{\theta})},
\]
as follows by \((B.1.3c)\) with \(s = 1\) and a-priori estimates, we deduce (up to taking \(\theta \ll 1\) small in the above inequality) that also the first two non-linear terms in the right hand side of \((B.4.53)\) satisfy \((B.4.55)\) and can be included into \(R(t,x)\). Therefore, \(\tilde{V}_{\Lambda_{kg}}^{\Gamma}\) satisfies
\[
\left[D_t - \text{Op}_h^{w}(x \cdot \xi - \langle \xi \rangle)\right] \tilde{V}_{\Lambda_{kg}}^{\Gamma} (t,x) = R(t,x),
\]
and using \((3.2.21)\) along with inequality \((3.2.23b)\), together with lemmas \(B.4.6, B.4.13\), we deduce that, for the same family of cut-off functions \(\theta_h\) introduced above, \(\tilde{V}_{\Lambda_{kg}}^{\Gamma}\) is solution to the following ODE:
\[
(B.4.56) \quad D_t \tilde{V}_{\Lambda_{kg}}^{\Gamma} (t,x) = -\theta_h(x) \phi(x) \tilde{V}_{\Lambda_{kg}}^{\Gamma} (t,x) + R(t,x),
\]
with \(\phi(x) = \sqrt{1 - |x|^2}\). Since the inhomogeneous term \(R(t,x)\) decays, in the uniform norm, at a rate which is integrable in time, we get that
\[
\| \tilde{V}_{\Lambda_{kg}}^{\Gamma} (t,\cdot) \|_{L^\infty} \lesssim \| \tilde{V}_{\Lambda_{kg}}^{\Gamma} (1,\cdot) \|_{L^\infty} + C B \varepsilon \leq C B \varepsilon,
\]
which summed up with \((B.4.52)\) implies \((B.4.51)\), and hence the conclusion of the proof. \([\square]\)
Bibliography

[1] T. Alazard and J.-M. Delort. Sobolev estimates for two dimensional gravity water waves. *Astérisque*, (374):viii+241, 2015. ISSN: 0303-1179.

[2] S. Alinhac and P. Gérard. *Pseudo-differential operators and the Nash-Moser theorem*, volume 82 of *Graduate Studies in Mathematics*. American Mathematical Society, Providence, RI, 2007. pages viii+168. ISBN: 978-0-8218-3454-1. DOI: [10.1090/gsm/082](https://doi.org/10.1090/gsm/082) URL: [https://doi.org/10.1090/gsm/082](https://doi.org/10.1090/gsm/082) Translated from the 1991 French original by Stephen S. Wilson.

[3] J.-M. Bony. Calcul symbolique et propagation des singularités pour les équations aux dérivées partielles non linéaires. *Ann. Sci. École Norm. Sup. (4)*, 14(2):209–246, 1981. ISSN: 0012-9593. URL: [http://www.numdam.org/item?id=ASENS_1981_4_14_2_209_0](http://www.numdam.org/item?id=ASENS_1981_4_14_2_209_0).

[4] J.-M. Delort. A quasi-linear Birkhoff normal forms method. Application to the quasi-linear Klein-Gordon equation on $S^1$. *Astérisque*, (341):vi+113, 2012. ISSN: 0303-1179.

[5] J.-M. Delort. Long-time Sobolev stability for small solutions of quasi-linear Klein-Gordon equations on the circle. *Trans. Amer. Math. Soc.*, 361(8):4299–4365, 2009. ISSN: 0002-9947. DOI: 10.1090/S0002-9947-09-04747-3 URL: [http://dx.doi.org/10.1090/S0002-9947-09-04747-3](http://dx.doi.org/10.1090/S0002-9947-09-04747-3).

[6] J.-M. Delort. Quasi-linear perturbations of Hamiltonian Klein-Gordon equations on spheres. *Mem. Amer. Math. Soc.*, 234(1103):vi+80, 2015. ISSN: 0065-9266. DOI: 10.1090/memo/1103 URL: [http://dx.doi.org/10.1090/memo/1103](http://dx.doi.org/10.1090/memo/1103).

[7] J.-M. Delort. Semiclassical microlocal normal forms and global solutions of modified one-dimensional KG equations. *Annales de l’Institut Fourier*, 2016.

[8] M. Dimassi and J. Sjöstrand. *Spectral asymptotics in the semi-classical limit*, volume 268 of *London Mathematical Society Lecture Note Series*. Cambridge University Press, Cambridge, 1999, pages xii+227. ISBN: 0-521-66544-2. DOI: 10.1017/CBO9780511662195 URL: [http://dx.doi.org/10.1017/CBO9780511662195](http://dx.doi.org/10.1017/CBO9780511662195).

[9] V. Georgiev. Global solution of the system of wave and Klein-Gordon equations. *Math. Z.*, 203(4):683–698, 1990. ISSN: 0025-5874. URL: [https://doi.org/10.1007/BF02570764](https://doi.org/10.1007/BF02570764).

[10] L. Hörmander. *Lectures on nonlinear hyperbolic differential equations*, volume 26 of *Mathématiques & Applications (Berlin) [Mathematics & Applications]*. Springer-Verlag, Berlin, 1997, pages viii+289. ISBN: 3-540-62921-1.

[11] L. Hörmander. *The analysis of linear partial differential operators. III*. Classics in Mathematics. Springer, Berlin, 2007, pages viii+525. ISBN: 978-3-540-49937-4. DOI: 10.1007/978-3-540-49938-1 URL: [http://dx.doi.org/10.1007/978-3-540-49938-1](http://dx.doi.org/10.1007/978-3-540-49938-1). Pseudo-differential operators, Reprint of the 1994 edition.

[12] J. K. Hunter, M. Ifrim, and D. Tataru. Two dimensional water waves in holomorphic coordinates. *Comm. Math. Phys.*, 346(2):483–552, 2016. ISSN: 0010-3616. DOI: 10.1007/s00220-016-2708-6 URL: [http://dx.doi.org/10.1007/s00220-016-2708-6](http://dx.doi.org/10.1007/s00220-016-2708-6).
[13] J. K. Hunter, M. Ifrim, D. Tataru, and T. K. Wong. Long time solutions for a Burgers-Hilbert equation via a modified energy method. Proc. Amer. Math. Soc., 143(8):3407–3412, 2015. ISSN: 0002-9939. DOI: 10.1090/proc/12215 URL: http://dx.doi.org/10.1090/proc/12215

[14] M. Ifrim and D. Tataru. Global bounds for the cubic nonlinear Schrödinger equation (NLS) in one space dimension. Nonlinearity, 28(8):2661–2675, 2015. ISSN: 0951-7715. URL: https://doi.org/10.1088/0951-7715/28/8/2661

[15] M. Ifrim and D. Tataru. Two dimensional water waves in holomorphic coordinates II: Global solutions. Bull. Soc. Math. France, 144(2):369–394, 2016. ISSN: 0037-9484.

[16] A. D. Ionescu and F. Pusateri. Global solutions for the gravity water waves system in 2d. Invent. Math., 199(3):653–804, 2015. ISSN: 0020-9910. DOI: 10.1007/s00222-014-0521-4 URL: https://doi.org/10.1007/s00222-014-0521-4

[17] A. Ionescu and B. Pausader. On the global regularity for a wave-Klein-Gordon coupled system. Preprint, 2017, arXiv:1703.02846.

[18] S. Katayama. Global existence for coupled systems of nonlinear wave and Klein-Gordon equations in three space dimensions. Math. Z., 270(1-2):487–513, 2012. ISSN: 0025-5874. URL: https://doi.org/10.1007/s00209-010-0808-0

[19] S. Klainerman. The null condition and global existence to nonlinear wave equations. In Nonlinear systems of partial differential equations in applied mathematics, Part 1 (Santa Fe, N.M., 1984). Volume 23, Lectures in Appl. Math. Pages 293–326. Amer. Math. Soc., Providence, RI, 1986.

[20] P. G. LeFloch and Y. Ma. The global nonlinear stability of Minkowski space for self-gravitating massive fields, volume 3 of Series in Applied and Computational Mathematics. World Scientific Publishing Co. Pte. Ltd., Hackensack, NJ, 2018, pages xi+174. ISBN: 978-981-3230-85-9.

[21] P. G. LeFloch and Y. Ma. The global nonlinear stability of Minkowski space for self-gravitating massive fields. The Wave-Klein-Gordon model. Comm. Math. Phys., 346(2):603–665, 2016. ISSN: 0010-3616. URL: https://doi.org/10.1007/s00220-015-2549-8

[22] P. G. LeFloch and Y. Ma. The hyperboloidal foliation method, volume 2 of Series in Applied and Computational Mathematics. World Scientific Publishing Co. Pte. Ltd., Hackensack, NJ, 2014, pages x+149. ISBN: 978-981-4641-62-3.

[23] Y. Ma. Global solutions of non-linear wave-Klein-Gordon system in one space dimension. arXiv:1808.06850.

[24] Y. Ma. Global solutions of non-linear wave-Klein-Gordon system in two space dimension: semi-linear interactions. arXiv:1712.05315.

[25] Y. Ma. Global solutions of quasilinear wave-Klein-Gordon system in two-space dimension: completion of the proof. J. Hyperbolic Differ. Equ., 14(4):627–670, 2017. ISSN: 0219-8916. DOI: 10.1142/S0219899117500217 URL: https://doi.org/10.1142/S0219899117500217

[26] Y. Ma. Global solutions of quasilinear wave-Klein-Gordon system in two-space dimension: technical tools. J. Hyperbolic Differ. Equ., 14(4):591–625, 2017. ISSN: 0219-8916. DOI: 10.1142/S0219899117500205 URL: https://doi.org/10.1142/S0219899117500205

[27] G. Métivier. Para-differential calculus and applications to the Cauchy problem for nonlinear systems, volume 5 of Centro di Ricerca Matematico Ennio De Giorgi (CRM) Series. Edizioni della Normale, Pisa, 2008, pages xii+140. ISBN: 978-88-7642-329-1; 88-7642-329-1.

[28] T. Ozawa, K. Tsutaya, and Y. Tsutsumi. Remarks on the Klein-Gordon equation with quadratic nonlinearity in two space dimensions. GAKUTO Internat. Ser. Math. Sci. Appl. 10:383–392, 1997.
[29] A. Stingo. Global existence and asymptotics for quasi-linear one-dimensional Klein-Gordon equations with mildly decaying Cauchy data:46, 2015. To appear in Bulletin de la Société Mathématique de France.

[30] Q. Wang. An intrinsic hyperboloid approach for Einstein Klein-Gordon equations. Preprint, 2016, arXiv:1607.01466.

[31] Q. Wang. Global existence for the Einstein equations with massive scalar fields. In 2015. Lecture at the workshop Mathematical Problems in General Relativity.

[32] M. Zworski. Semiclassical analysis, volume 138 of Graduate Studies in Mathematics. American Mathematical Society, Providence, RI, 2012, pages xii+431. ISBN: 978-0-8218-8320-4.
# Index

Admissible cut-off function, 16

$b_m(\xi)$, function, 23

c_w, cubic term in the wave equation after a normal form, 101

$E_0(t; u_\pm, v_\pm)$, energy, 12

$E_3^k(t; u_\pm, v_\pm)$, generalized energy, 12

$E_n(t; u_\pm, v_\pm)$, generalized energy, 12

$E_n(t; W)$, first modified energy, 67

$E_n(t; W)$, first modified energy, 67

$\Gamma^I$, product of admissible vector fields, 12

$\Gamma^{kg}$, operator, 105

$\gamma_n$, function, 23

$h$, semi-classical parameter, 102

$H^p,\infty(\mathbb{R}^d)$, space, 15

$H^p,\infty_h(\mathbb{R}^d)$, space, 20

$H^s(\mathbb{R}^d)$, space, 15

$H^s_h(\mathbb{R}^d)$, space, 20

$I(I)$, set of multi-indices, 14

$I^I$, set of multi-indices, 53

$I_n$, set of multi-indices, 53

$K$, set of integers, 23

$\mathcal{K}$, set of multi-indices, 57

Klainerman vector fields, 12

$\Lambda^{kg}$, manifold associated to the Klein-Gordon equation, 14

$\Lambda^{w}$, manifold associated to the wave equation, 115

Littlewood Paley decomposition, 17

$L_j$, operator, 46

$M_j$, operator, 39

$M^m_0(a;n)$, seminorm, 15

$NL_{kg}$, quadratic non-linearity in the Klein-Gordon equation satisfied by $v_\pm$, 157

$NL_w$, quadratic non-linearity in the wave equation satisfied by $u_\pm$, 157

$\Omega$, Euclidean rotation, 12

$\Omega_h$, semi-classical Euclidean rotation, 30

$Op^B_R$, para-differential operator, 16

$Op^B_R$, remainder para-differential operator, 16

$Op^h_0$, standard semi-classical quantization, 20

$Op^h_0$, semi-classical Weyl quantization, 20

Order function, 19

$p(\xi)$, function, 42

$Q_0(v,w)$, null form, 11

$Q_0^k(v_\pm, D_au_\pm)$, null form, 50

$q_w$, quadratic term in the wave equation after a normal form, 100

$Q_0^w(v_\pm, D_av_\pm)$, null form, 50

$r_{NF}^{kg}$, cubic term in the Klein-Gordon equation after a normal form, 98

$r_{NF}^{w}$, cubic term in the wave equation after a normal form, 101

$S_{b,\sigma}(M)$, class of symbols, 19

$\Sigma^m_0(\mathbb{R}^d)$, class of symbols, 15

$\Sigma^m_r(\mathbb{R}^d)$, class of symbols, 15

$S^m_0(\mathbb{R}^d)$, class of symbols, 15

$S^m_r(\mathbb{R}^d)$, class of symbols, 15

Sobolev injection, semi-classical, 20

$U$, wave vector, 52

$U^I$, wave vector with admissible vector fields, 52

$u^I_{\pm}$, wave components with admissible vector fields, 12
$u^{NF}$, wave component after a normal form, \[100\]
$u_{\pm}$, wave components, \[12\]
$\tilde{u}_{\Sigma,k}$, wave component in semi-classical setting, localised for frequencies \(\sim 2^k\), \[116\]
$\tilde{u}$, wave component in semi-classical setting, \[102\]
$\tilde{u}_{\Sigma,j,k}$, wave component in semi-classical setting, localised for frequencies \(\sim 2^k\), \[116\]
$\tilde{u}_{\Lambda_w}$, wave component in semi-classical setting, localised around $\Lambda_w$, \[116\]
$\tilde{u}_{\Lambda_c}$, wave component in semi-classical setting, localised away from $\Lambda_w$, \[116\]

$V$, Klein-Gordon vector, \[52\]
$V^I$, Klein-Gordon vector with admissible vector fields, \[52\]
$v_{I,\pm}$, Klein-Gordon components with admissible vector fields, \[12\]
$\mathcal{V}^k$, set of multi-indices, \[57\]
$v^{NF}$, Klein-Gordon component after a normal form, \[98\]
$V^{NF}_I$, normal form function defined from $(\Gamma v)_-$, \[206\]
$v^{I,NF}$, normal form function defined from $(\Gamma^I v)_-$, \[176\]
$v_{\pm}$, Klein-Gordon components, \[12\]
$\tilde{v}$, Klein-Gordon component in semi-classical setting, \[102\]
$\tilde{V}^I$, function $V^{NF}_I$ in semi-classical setting, \[207\]
$\tilde{v}_{\Lambda_w}$, Klein-Gordon component in semi-classical setting, localised around $\Lambda_w$, \[105\]
$\tilde{v}_{\Lambda_c}$, Klein-Gordon component in semi-classical setting, localised away from $\Lambda_w$, \[105\]

$W$, wave-Klein-Gordon vector, \[52\]
$W^I$, wave-Klein-Gordon vector with admissible vector fields, \[52\]
$W^s$, wave-Klein-Gordon vector after symmetrization, \[63\]
$W^{\rho,(\mathbb{R}^d)}$, space, \[15\]

$Z$, family of admissible vector fields, \[12\]
$Z^j$, Lorentzian boost, \[12\]